PLATE V.

CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES

ON THE

GALRIC WAR;

WITH

NOTES, DICTIONARY, AND A MAP OF GAUL.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS, LL. D.
PROFESSOR IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

REVISED EDITION, ILLUSTRATED.

NEW YORK:
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,
1, 8, AND 5 BOND STREET.
1890.
COPYRIGHT, 1870, 1882, 1896,
BY ALBERT HARKNESS.
PREFACE

TO THE REVISED EDITION.

In preparing a new edition of Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War, it has been the special aim of the editor to explain and illustrate with the requisite fulness the subject-matter treated by his author. When his first edition was published, the demand for small text-books compelled him to exclude from his pages much collateral information which, in the interest of the learner, he would gladly have admitted. The Commentaries portray the stirring events of military campaigns. To understand and appreciate them, the student needs to know something of the Roman mode of warfare, and especially of the organization and movement of armies in the time of Caesar. The present volume aims to furnish him the desired information, not in scattered notes, but in a connected treatise. In the preparation of this part of the work, the editor has not only availed himself of the leading ancient authorities on the subject, as Livy, Polybius, Vegetius, and
Hyginus, but he has also endeavored to profit by the recent researches of European scholars.

For the benefit of teachers who may be interested in the military system of the Romans, a list of the works cited in the foot notes is inserted on page lxiii.

This edition is furnished with colored plates and other illustrations, in the best style of the art. In the plans of battles, the Romans are represented in red, while the hostile lines are in black. The learner thus sees at a glance the relation of the opposing forces to each other. The plates are based upon the labors of Napoleon III., Göler, and Rheinhard, while the other illustrations have been derived from various sources, though chiefly from Marquardt, Rückert, Rüstow, and Köchly.

In conclusion, the editor desires to express his special obligations to his son, Professor Albert G. Harkness, of Madison University, for important aid in the work of revision.

Brown University, July, 1886.
PREFACE.

This edition of Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War is intended to follow the Latin Reader. It accordingly assumes that the student is already familiar with the regular forms and the general principles of the language; that he has acquired, by actual experience, some facility in translating; and that he is now prepared to enter with success upon the consecutive study of a Latin classic. Starting from this point, it aims to conduct him to a higher knowledge of the power and use of the Latin tongue, and to introduce him to an appreciative study of a standard literary work.

For the student who is just entering upon a course of study in Latin authors, no better work can be found than the Commentaries on the Gallic War. The purity of the style, the dramatic interest of the narrative, and the historical significance of the wonderful career of discovery and conquest which they record, all unite to render them at once attractive and valuable.

The Notes are intended to guide the faithful efforts of the student, and to prepare him for that course of direct instruction and illustration which belongs exclusively to the teacher. They aim to furnish such collat-
eral information as will enable the learner to understand and appreciate the stirring events recorded in the Commentaries, and such special aid as will enable him to surmount real and untried difficulties of construction and idiom. They will thus, it is hoped, render an acceptable service both to the instructor and the learner, by lightening the burden of the one, and by promoting the progress of the other.

The text is the result of a careful collation of the several editions most approved by European scholars. It is based, however, chiefly upon the critical labors of Schneider, Kraner, and Nipperdey, with constant reference to the authority of the best manuscripts, as presented in the works of those distinguished editors.

The outline of the Life of Caesar, prefixed to this edition, will furnish the student, it is hoped, much interesting information in regard to his author.

Brown University, February, 1870.
LIFE OF CAESAR.

Gaius Julius Caesar, the author of the Commentaries, was born at Rome, on the 12th of July, 100 B. C. He belonged to the illustrious Julian family, whose ancient lineage tradition traced to the early kings of Rome and the immortal heroes of the Iliad. At the time of his birth, his uncle, Gaius Marius, the intrepid champion of the popular party, had just won immortal honors by his victories over the Cimbri and the Teutones, while Lucius Cornelius Sulla, destined to be the bitter opponent of Marius, and the most formidable obstacle to the career of Caesar, was rapidly rising to power and influence.

In youth, Caesar not unfrequently yielded to the fascinations of luxury and pleasure. He lived in a degenerate age, when the sterner virtues of the old Roman character were rapidly disappearing from the fashionable life of the day. By the death of his father, he was left an orphan at the age of sixteen; but his mother, Aurelia, a woman of rare gifts and of superior wisdom, superintended his education with the greatest care, and exerted a powerful influence in moulding his character, and in preparing him for the brilliant career of greatness and glory upon which he was so soon to enter. By his marriage with Cornelia, the daughter of Lucius Cornelius Cinna, a prominent leader of the popular party, he early incurred the deadly hatred of Sulla, who had just been raised to the dictatorship, and was already entering upon his terrible career of proscription and bloodshed. The relentless
dictator, by an act of tyranny in keeping with his general character, issued an order that all persons who had allied themselves by marriage with the party of Marius, should at once sever that alliance by divorce. Pompey and others, dreading the terrible vengeance of the despot, hastened to comply; but the youthful Caesar, taking counsel of his own dauntless spirit, and asserting his rights as a Roman citizen and a man, defied, with sovereign contempt, the mad edict of the tyrant. But he did it at his peril. He was at once deposed from the priestly office, to which he had been recently appointed, was deprived of his wife's dowry, and declared incapable of holding his own ancestral estates. Finding the hand of persecution heavy upon him, he left the city, and remained in concealment until the earnest solicitations of influential parties finally extorted from Sulla a reluctant pardon, accompanied by those memorable words, almost prophetic, "Be assured, friends, that he for whom you plead will one day ruin the cause for which we have fought; for in Caesar is many a Marius."

At the early age of twenty, Caesar distinguished himself, at the siege of Mitylenae, by gallant conduct in saving the life of a Roman soldier, and was rewarded by the praetor with the high honor of a civic crown.

On the death of Sulla, two years later, Caesar returned to Rome, and at once instituted prosecutions against Dolabella, and other influential partisan leaders, for crimes and misdemeanors committed under the administration of the dictator. His fearless defence of law, and his persuasive eloquence, attracted the attention of the people, who hailed the youthful orator as the champion of their imperilled rights. Encouraged by this success, Caesar determined to prepare himself, by a judicious course of study, for the attractive profession which seemed already to be opening before him a brilliant career of honor and influence. Accordingly, repairing to Rhodes, then the home of the most illustrious rhetoricians and philosophers, he placed himself under the instruction of that accomplished professor of eloquence, Apollonius Molo, the distinguished teacher of Cicero.
At the age of twenty-seven, Caesar was elected pontiff and military tribune; at thirty-two, quaestor; at thirty-five, aedile; at thirty-seven, grand pontiff; at thirty-eight, praetor, and at forty, consul.

In the capacity of curule aedile, one of the three highest civil officers known to the republic, Caesar, in accordance with Roman custom, entertained the people with public festivities and amusements. Under his administration, the Forum and the Capitol were magnificently decorated; the gladiatorial exhibitions displayed unwonted pomp, and the Roman games were celebrated with a splendor never before witnessed. At that moment, when all eyes were turned to him as the idol of the people, when the unprecedented splendor of his aedileship had won for him an unbounded personal influence, he resolved upon a bold stroke, both for himself and for his country. The popular cause had been for years without a leader. The terrible proscriptions of Sulla had silenced the friends of progress, and removed from the public gaze all memorials of their past successes and victories. Even the statues and trophies commemorative of the illustrious deeds of their favorite champion, Marius, had disappeared from the Capitol. But one morning the Romans awoke to find all these trophies restored to their former places. The unexpected sight filled the nobles with rage and terror, but awakened in the people glad memories of glory and liberty. The friends of progress gazed with joy upon these cherished memorials of their great champion, and hailed Caesar as his worthy successor. From that moment the aedile was their acknowledged head and leader.

The military career of Caesar dates from his appointment as propraetor of Spain. Though thirty-nine years of age, he was then, for the first time in his life, at the head of an army. He at once displayed the high qualities of a great commander, and won for himself an enviable military fame. The senate, though politically opposed to him, was compelled to acknowledge the greatness of his services, and in recognition of his brilliant achievements awarded him, by special decree, the honor of a triumph.
At the age of forty, Caesar, on his return from Spain, came forward as a candidate for the consulship, the highest civil office in the state. His towering ambition, his fearless independence, and his attachment to the popular cause, made him the recognized champion of the people; but he desired to win to his standard some of the illustrious men whose fame had given such prestige to the senatorial party. His efforts were not without success. Soon the three leading spirits of the age, Caesar, Pompey, and Crassus, made common cause, and, wielding a united influence, which was absolutely irresistible, assumed the control of the destinies of the republic.

Caesar was unanimously elected consul, and at once brought forward radical propositions for reform, which his colleague, Marcus Bibulus, opposed with great bitterness and vigor. But the contest was of short duration. Bibulus, finding himself no match for the determined reformer, after the most humiliating defeats, withdrew from all participation in the government, leaving Caesar the undisputed master of the situation. This fact gave rise to the playful remark that the two consuls for the year were Julius and Caesar.

Thus relieved from the factious opposition of his colleague, Caesar at once signalized his consulship by several bold and remarkable measures. He made himself the idol of the people by procuring the enactment of an agrarian law, by which twenty thousand families received allotments of public lands; he won the favor of the equestrian order by relieving it from an oppressive contract, and bound Pompey still more closely to his person and his destinies by giving him in marriage his accomplished daughter Julia, and by procuring for him the ratification of all his acts in Asia.

At the close of his term of office, Caesar was made proconsul of Gaul for a period of five years, which was afterwards extended to ten. His province, including Transalpine and Cisalpine Gaul, with Illyricum, opened to him a new career directly in the line of his aspiring ambition, his cherished hopes, and his lofty military genius; but that career was beset
with the most appalling difficulties and dangers. The Gauls were an energetic and warlike people. While Rome was yet in its infancy, they had scaled the Alps, taken possession of the fertile valley of the Po, and converted Northern Italy into a Gallic province. In the fourth century B.C., they suddenly passed the Apennines, descended upon Latium, won the victory of the Allia, and entering Rome in triumph, burned the greater portion of the city. Three centuries later the hordes of the Cimbri and Teutones, descending in their desolating march upon Southern Europe, threatened the very existence of the Roman republic. But at length the brilliant victories of Marius and other Roman generals checked the encroachments of these hardy nations of the north, and even made conquests on either side of the Alps.

When Caesar received his commission, Cisalpine Gaul had already, for a century and a half, been a Roman province; and even beyond the Alps, the colony of Narbo and the conquest of the Allobroges had led to the organization of a small Roman province.

Caesar arrived early in the spring of 58 B.C. in the province of Narbo. The warlike Helvetii, three hundred and fifty thousand in number, had burned their own towns and villages, and were already commencing their hostile movements; one hundred and fifty thousand Germans had crossed the Rhine, and established themselves in Gaul, and one hundred thousand more were preparing to follow their example. The countless hordes of the north were again in motion. Caesar saw the magnitude of the danger; he well knew that a reverse to his arms would be a crushing calamity to the republic and to all Italy. With a lively appreciation of the great trusts committed to his hands, he entered boldly upon a career of Transalpine conquest as complete as it was glorious. His genius speedily converted Gaul into one vast battle-field of victory and glory. His very first campaign was crowned with signal success. It not only annihilated the power of the Helvetii, and established the prestige of the Roman arms, but also humbled the haughty Ariovistus, and extended the Roman province to the banks
of the Rhine. His second campaign, scarcely less brilliant than the first, added Belgic Gaul to the Roman dominions, and assured the final triumph of his arms throughout the whole extent of Gaul.

The effect of these successes was felt on both sides of the Alps. One Gallic people after another presented to the conqueror their protestations of allegiance, while the tidings of victory filled Rome with joy and gladness. Political animosity was for the hour laid aside, and the Roman senate, Caesar’s bitterest partisan foe, decreed a public thanksgiving for fifteen days in honor of the great achievements of the people’s favorite.

But the Gauls, though repeatedly vanquished upon the field of battle, were not yet subjugated. Those hardy warriors loved liberty too well to bear with meekness any foreign rule. The spirit of revolt, ever rife among them, was moreover fostered by their warlike neighbors, the Britons and the Germans. But the decree had gone forth that Gaul should be subdued and Romanized. Accordingly Caesar gave himself, year after year, to the great work which had been committed to his hands. Twice he crossed the Rhine and struck terror into the hearts of the Germans; twice he stood upon the hitherto unknown soil of Britain; and when at length, after six years of toil and war, the conquest seemed almost complete, the Gauls rose in one final and desperate struggle for independence. Nations and tribes hitherto jealous and hostile to each other took their places side by side under one common standard, for one common cause.

Vercingetorix, the intrepid leader of the Gauls, at length established himself, with eighty thousand men, in the strongly fortified town of Alesia, the capital of the Mandubii. Caesar at once invested the city, and for forty days lay intrenched before it, between two concentric lines of almost impregnable works; but at length a mighty array of confederate Gauls, two hundred and fifty thousand strong, arrived in the rear of his intrenchments. A simultaneous assault was made upon the Roman lines, by the besieged on the one hand, and by the army of relief on the other. Utter de-
struction seemed inevitably to await Caesar and his cause; but the genius of the great commander rose with the magnitude of the occasion. Roman valor and discipline, inspired and guided by that genius, triumphed over all obstacles, and wrested victory from the hands of the enemy. A few days later, the despatches of Caesar announced to the Roman senate the fall of Alesia and the triumph of the Roman arms.

Another year of warfare followed, and the conquest of Gaul was complete. Eight years of heroic daring and bloody strife had added a mighty realm to the Roman dominions. But already the question of the recall of Caesar was discussed in the senate, and a few months later, at the instance of Pompey, who had become his bitter rival, a decree was passed requiring him, under penalty of being declared a traitor to his country, to resign the governorship of both Gauls and disband his army. The news of this action reached Caesar at Ravenna, on the 10th of January, 49 B.C. Scarcely a day elapsed before his decision was made. With a single legion he crossed the Rubicon, the southern boundary of his province, and advanced into Italy. The prestige of his name gathered numerous recruits to his standard; town after town threw open its gates to the conqueror, and in sixty days after the edict of the senate declaring him a traitor to his country, the proscribed outlaw entered the capital the undisputed master of Italy. A bloodless victory and a triumphal march from the Rubicon to Rome, had accomplished one of the most remarkable revolutions recorded in the annals of the world.

The senatorial party, panic-stricken, had fled from the city in anticipation of the reënactment of the bloody scenes of proscription which had marked the triumphs of Marius and Sulla. But the magnanimity of Caesar disappointed both friends and foes. The frantic passion of the aristocracy, in their impotence and exile breathing out threats of proscription, contrasted strangely with the calm moderation of the victor in all the plenitude of his power.
During the next twelve months, by a series of rapid military movements, Caesar secured Sicily, the great granary of the republic, conquered the senatorial forces in Spain, and finally, at Pharsalia, achieved a decisive victory over Pompey and his entire army.

The remaining four years of Caesar's life were divided between military campaigns abroad and political reforms at home. We hear of him successively in Egypt, placing the disputed crown upon the head of Cleopatra; in Pontus, crushing the power of Pharnaces, and reporting his victory in those memorable words, "Veni, vidi, vici;" in Numidia, winning the signal victory of Thapsus; and finally in Spain, annihilating, in the desperate and bloody conflict at Munda, the last army which upheld the banner of Pompey. These varied military movements left him but little time for his contemplated work in the capital; yet the civil and political reforms which he actually accomplished, to say nothing of the magnificent schemes which he conceived, excite our wonder and admiration. With the comprehensive views of the true statesman, with marvellous power to arrange and organize, and with a keen perception of all the conditions of success, he entered with zeal upon the great work of reconstructing the Roman state. He corrected abuses, enriched the public treasury, reformed the calendar, equalized the public burdens, and strove in every way, as the head of a great nation, to give unity and symmetry to the new empire. But while he was yet in the midst of his wonderful career, with gigantic plans yet unaccomplished, designing men were plotting his ruin and his death. He had been loaded with titles and honors, and had been declared dictator for life; but his greatness had excited the envy of the nobles, while his insatiable ambition had awakened the fears of the people. He was suspected of aiming at the sceptre and the crown, and he paid the penalty with his life. He was assassinated in the senate house, on the 15th of March, 44 B.C.

Such was the tragic death of this remarkable man. He had achieved success in almost every field in which he had
been called upon to act. He was a great commander, an eloquent orator, an accomplished writer, and a consummate statesman. Some of the finest literary works of the age were the productions of his genius. They related to a variety of subjects, and embraced both prose and poetry. The Commentaries on the Gallic and the Civil War have been commended and admired in all ages. They will amply repay patient and careful study.
THE MILITARY SYSTEM OF THE ROMANS.

1. The Roman legion, *legio*, was an organized body of Roman soldiers. It contained originally 3,000 infantry and 800 cavalry; but its numerical strength was subsequently increased. In the time of Caesar it consisted entirely of heavy-armed infantry, and probably numbered from 3,500 to 5,000 men.¹

CAESAR'S ARMY IN GAUL.

2. Caesar's army in Gaul consisted of two distinct parts, the Roman legions and the auxiliaries.
   1. The Roman legions consisted of heavy-armed soldiers.²
   2. The auxiliaries,³ consisting of foreign soldiers of various nationalities, served either as cavalry⁴ or as light-armed infantry.⁵

3. The entire force at the command of Caesar during his Gallic campaigns seldom, if ever, exceeded 70,000 men. Beginning his work with a single legion, the tenth, afterwards so famous in the Gallic wars, he proceeded at once to raise re-enforcements, and soon found himself at the head of

¹ A legion whose numbers were fully up to the normal standard was called *legio plenissima* and probably contained about 5,000 men. Veteran legions weakened by losses in battle were considerably below this standard.
² In general, the legions were composed of Roman citizens.
³ Some of these were armed, equipped, and disciplined according to the Roman method, while others retained their native arms.
⁴ Caesar's cavalry was composed chiefly of Gauls; but it contained a few Germans and Spaniards.
⁵ Of the auxiliary infantry, the Balearian archers and the Cretan slingers were the most noted.
an army consisting of six legions and a force of auxiliaries nearly 20,000 strong.

4. The numerical strength of Caesar's army varied somewhat from year to year; but he generally had in his service about 5,000 auxiliary cavalry and from 15,000 to 20,000 auxiliary infantry. The following is a general estimate of the forces at his command during the seven successive campaigns described in the Commentaries.

1. In campaign I., 58 B.C., six legions, and about 20,000 auxiliaries,—cavalry and infantry; in all, from 40,000 to 50,000 men.¹

2. In campaigns II., III., and IV., 57, 56, and 55 B.C., eight legions, with the usual force of auxiliaries; in all, from 50,000 to 60,000 men.²

3. In campaign V., 54 B.C., eight and a half legions (subsequently reduced by losses to seven), with the usual force of auxiliaries; in all, from 50,000 to 60,000 men.³

4. In campaign VI., 53 B.C., ten legions, with the usual force of auxiliaries; in all, from 60,000 to 70,000 men.⁴

5. In campaign VII., 52 B.C., eleven legions, with about 25,000 or 30,000 auxiliaries; in all, not far from 70,000 men.⁵

¹ Caesar found the 10th legion in Gaul, brought the 7th, 8th, and 9th from their winter-quarters, and enrolled two new legions—the 11th and 12th—in Cisalpine Gaul. His auxiliaries consisted of 4,000 cavalry and a large force of light-armed infantry. The number of the latter, not definitely given in the Commentaries, has been variously estimated from 15,000 to 30,000. The estimate of Rheinhardt is 15,000, that of General von Göler, 30,000.

² For the second campaign Caesar enrolled two new legions—the 13th and the 14th. These were added to the six already in his service.

³ Napoleon III. accounts for the half legion by assuming that Caesar procured several separate cohorts to serve in his fleet in his second expedition into Britain. The five cohorts and almost the whole of the 14th legion were lost under Sabinus and Cotta, among the Eburovices. See Book V., 37.

⁴ In preparation for the sixth campaign, Caesar levied two new legions—the 14th and the 15th—and obtained another—the 1st—from Pompey. The 14th took the place of the 14th that was lost.

⁵ Caesar entered upon the seventh campaign with ten legions; but another—the 6th—was added to the number in the course of the summer. These eleven legions were the 1st, 6th, 7th, 8th, 9th, 10th, 11th, 12th, 13th, 14th, and 15th. During this campaign, Caesar probably had a larger force of auxiliaries than at any previous time, as he besought the Aedui to send him all their cavalry and 10,000 infantry, and demanded cavalry and light-armed infantry from subject states in Germany. Moreover, he speaks of 22 cohorts of auxiliaries, collected from the province by Lucius Caesar. See Book VII., 34 and 65.
OF THE ROMANS.

HISTORY OF THE ROMAN LEGION.

5. The history of the Roman legion naturally divides itself into three periods.

I. During the first period, the infantry of the legion in battle-array stood in the form of a solid phalanx, probably from six to eight ranks deep. The division of cavalry, 300 in number, belonging to the legion, was generally stationed in front of the phalanx.

II. During the second period, the infantry of the legion was divided into thirty maniples, or companies, which, in battle-array, were arranged in three lines, with intervals between them, as follows:

| Hastati   | — — — — — — — — — — |
| Principes | — — — — — — — — — — |
| Triaríi   | — — — — — — — — — — |

1. The soldiers in the first line were called Hastati; those in the second, Principes; and those in the third, Triaríi. The Hastati were comparatively young men, who had seen less service than the soldiers in either of the other lines; the Principes were in the full strength of mature manhood; while the Triaríi were veterans in the service.

2. Each maniple in the legion consisted of two divisions, or companies, called centuries, each nominally under the

---

1 The unbroken front of this phalanx was probably about 1,500 feet long. Its original depth is not known, but Marquardt and Mommsen conjecture that it contained at first six ranks, Rübstow and Köchly that in its later form it contained eight ranks. Livy, I. 43, compares it to the famous Macedonian phalanx.

2 The change from the phalanx to the legion of maniples is supposed to have been made in the early part of the fourth century before Christ. It is generally ascribed to Camillus, but see Fröhlich, Kriegführung und Kriegskunst der Römer.—Berlin: 1886.

3 The interval was probably equal to the length of a maniple. The legion of maniples was, doubtless, somewhat slowly developed. The form here given is that described by Polybius. A legion, arranged in three lines, of 15 maniples each, is mentioned by Livy.

4 The origin of these terms is doubtful; but it has been suggested that Principes, in its original application, probably designated the soldiers who were best armed and equipped; that Hastati was a general name for all the heavy-armed soldiers, though finally retained only by those in the first line, i.e., by the inexperienced soldiers; while the others had more specific and honorable titles; and finally, that the Triaríi, derived from tres, were so called from their place in the third line, which was then the post of honor.

5 The century (centurio), originally a hundred men, probably contained at this time from 60 to 80.
command of an officer, called centurion; though the centurion of the right century generally led the whole maniple.\(^1\) In active service, the two centuries stood side by side.

3. The quota of cavalry, 300 in number, due to each legion was stationed on the wings. It was divided into ten companies, called *turmae*, which were each sub-divided into three sections, called *decuriae*. Each *decuria* was under the command of a *decurion*.

III. During the third period, including the time of Caesar, the thirty maniples of the legion were combined into ten groups, of three maniples each.\(^2\) To this new military body, formed by uniting three maniples, the name cohort was given. The legion thus changed ordinarily stood, when in battle-array, in three lines, with four cohorts in the first line, three in the second, and three in the third.\(^3\)

**Phalanx, Maniples, and Cohorts.**

6. The *phalanx*, though it could present a front like a wall to an advancing foe, was yet too unwieldy for the exigencies of the battle-field. To an attempt to remedy this defect the legion of maniples owed its origin; but experience soon showed that the division had been carried too far, and that the maniple was too small a body to stand alone in the line of battle. Accordingly Marius, in re-organizing the army, proceeded at once to reunite every three maniples into a single company, called a cohort. The value of the change was soon apparent. The legion of cohorts, as organized by Marius, and perfected by later generals, while it avoided the special evils of the *phalanx* and of the legion of maniples, was found, in actual practice, to unite in a large measure the advantages of both.

7. The post of honor in the *phalanx* was awarded to wealth and station; in the other forms of the legion, to military achievement and experience. In the legion of mani-

---

\(^1\) He was called the first centurion (*centurio prior*): in his absence, the second centurion commanded.

\(^2\) This change was made by Marius, about one hundred years before Christ.

\(^3\) For a full account of this order of battle, see 28. In the time of Caesar the cavalry had ceased to form a part of the legion.
pleas, however, the tried veterans were stationed in the third line as a reserve, to be summoned into action only in cases of special emergency; but in the legion of cohorts, they occupied the forefront, and received the first shock of battle. The Romans had at length learned how much depended upon the first onset.

Arms of Legionary Soldiers.

8. All legionary soldiers were armed with swords and with spears (hastae) or javelins (pila). The defensive armor, both in the phalanx and in the legion of maniples, consisted of a coat of mail, a helmet, greaves, and a shield.

9. In the time of Caesar, the essential articles in a soldier's equipment were as follows:—

1. A plain woollen tunic (tunica), with very short sleeves, which scarcely covered half of the upper arm. This was the main article of dress; it extended to the knee, and was girded about the loins.

2. A coat of mail (lorica). This was sometimes a simple coat of leather, as represented on the light-armed soldiers in plate I.; and sometimes it was covered with metal, as seen in the figures of the legionaries in the same plate. Observe that flexible bands of steel or bronze encircle the waist; that similar bands extend over the shoulders; and that the upper part of the chest is protected by metallic plates.

3. A thick woollen cloak, or shawl, the sagum, sometimes worn by soldiers when not in action. It was thrown over the shoulders in such a manner as to leave the arms comparatively free. It was generally secured by a clasp.

The corresponding garment for the general and the

---

1 In the legion of cohorts, the post of honor was the post of danger, while in the legion of maniples it was a place of comparative security.
2 In the legion of maniples, the light-armed soldiers (velites), carried a very light spear (hasta velictoria).
3 In the phalanx, only the front ranks appeared in full armor. The others, being exposed to less danger, dispensed with the coat of mail.
4 This seems to have been made, originally, of strips of sole-leather put together in the most substantial manner. Moreover, a metallic breast-plate, 9 or 10 inches square, was sometimes worn under it.
higher officers was the *paludamentum*, which differed from the *sagum* in the fact that it was of larger size, of finer texture, and of more brilliant color. The *paludamentum* of the commander-in-chief was of purple. For the manner in which the *sagum* and the *paludamentum* were worn, see plates I. and II.

4. Sandals, or shoes. Of these, there were two or three varieties. The *solea* merely protected the sole of the foot; the *calceus* was an ordinary shoe; the *caliga* was a military shoe, or boot, which covered the whole foot and a part of the ankle. See plates.

5. A helmet, either of bronze (*cassis*), or of leather bound with bronze (*galea*). For the general form and style, see plates I., II., and III. The helmets of the higher officers were generally adorned with plumes of feathers or of horse-hair.\(^1\)

6. Greaves of bronze (*ocreae*). Usually, however, only one was worn, as the left leg was sufficiently protected by the shield.\(^2\)

7. A large rectangular shield, the *scutum*, four feet long and two and one-half wide, slightly curved, as seen in plate I., on the arm of one of the legionary soldiers. It was made of wood; but it was covered with leather, and was bound around the edges with iron. It was furnished with a metallic boss (*umbo*), a knob or projection, which not only imparted strength and beauty to the shield, but often caused missiles to glance off from it.\(^3\)

Shields were ornamented with various devices, as winged thunderbolts, eagles, and laurel wreaths. The name of the soldier and the number of his cohort were sometimes inscribed on the inside.\(^4\)

---

1 Even soldiers of the rank and file are occasionally represented with plumes.
2 Soldiers sometimes protected their legs, in cold weather, by wearing strips of cloth, *fasciae*, wound about them. In plate I., they are represented with tight-fitting breeches, *braccae*, reaching a little below their knees. Whether these were in use in the time of Caesar is very doubtful.
3 For a general view of the arms of the cavalry and of the light-armed infantry, see plate I.
4 Upon the march, the shield was protected from rain and dust by a leathern case drawn over it for the purpose. This was removed before going into battle. See Book II., 21.
PLATE I.

1. Funditor. 2. Levis Armature Pedites. 3. Legionarii Milites.
4. Sarvinae. 5. Equites.
8. The so-called Spanish sword (gladius Hispanus), the only sword used by the legions of Caesar. It had a two-edged pointed blade, about two feet long and almost four inches wide, well adapted both for thrusting and for striking, though ordinarily used for thrusting. It was generally worn on the right side, suspended from a belt (balleus) passing over the left shoulder, as seen in plate I.; but the higher officers wore it on the left side, suspended from a girdle (cingulum.) The sheath and hilt were sometimes richly ornamented.

9. A heavy javelin (pilum). This weapon, intended for hurling, not for thrusting, was about six feet and a half long. It consisted of a wooden shaft, upwards of an inch thick and about four feet long, from which projected an iron, from two to three feet long, terminating in a steel head. The pilum and the sword were the weapons with which the Roman legions conquered the world.

1 The pilum as described by Polybius was 6 feet and 9 inches long, but, from researches recently made, it seems probable that the pilum in the time of Caesar was about 6 feet long. The shaft was either round or square. The momentum of the weapon, when hurled by the strong hand of a legionary soldier, was very great. It crushed through the shields of the enemy, and, bending under the weight of the blow, could be drawn out only with the greatest difficulty. In no event could it be hurled back upon the legions. It has been estimated that a pilum hurled with ordinary force would cut through an oak board half an inch thick, lined with sheet iron, and that it would undoubtedly penetrate both the shield and the coat of mail. For the effect of the pilum, see Book I., 25. For a full account of this weapon, see Marquardt, Römische Staatsverwaltung, vol. H. pages 328 to 332; Jühns, Geschichte des Kriegswesens, pages 199 to 201; Guhl und Koner, Das Leben der Griechen und Römer, page 710; and Lindenschmit, Tract und Bewaffnung des Römischen Heeres.

2 The corresponding weapons of the Gauls were the gaesum and the sword. The former was a heavy javelin or spear, used mostly as a missile. See Book III., 4.

The Gallic swords were very long, but without points; well adapted for striking but not for thrusting. Livy, XXII. 46, characterizes them as gladii perlongi ac sine mucronibus.

The Gallic helmet, with its large bushy plume, was intended to give the wearer the appearance of superhuman size. Sometimes, according to Diodorus, horns or frightful figures of beasts or birds projected above it.

The Gauls wore breastplates or coats of mail, and carried shields, which are described as very large (vasta scuto) though not very wide (ad amplitudinem corporum parum lato).

For the arms and the general appearance of Gallic soldiers, infantry and cavalry, see plate IV.
MILITARY SERVICE.—PAY OF SOLDIERS.

10. Originally the Roman army was simply the state temporarily in arms. Each citizen armed and supported himself as he was merely doing his own work. Campaigns in those days were of short duration; and the citizen, after having discharged the duties of the soldier for a few weeks, returned to his home. Afterwards, military service was regarded as a tax which every citizen might occasionally be called upon to pay to the state, for the protection of life and property. But about 400 B.C., when Rome began to be involved in more protracted wars, a small allowance was made from the public treasury to furnish the army with supplies. In the time of Caesar, however, service in the army, which had previously been an occasional duty required of all citizens, had become a permanent profession. Young men of vigor and enterprise entered the army either to become professional soldiers or to qualify themselves for the high offices of state, for which only those were eligible who had served a definite number of campaigns. The soldiers received regular pay, fully equal to that of laborers in Rome; while their perquisites, in the form of booty and presents, were by no means unimportant.

11. The soldiers received their pay once in four months, from which a small deduction was made, for supplies furnished them by the state.

12. The recruit was required to bring to the service a sound and vigorous body; but no definite stature seems to have been prescribed. He entered at once upon a long and severe course of professional training. The success of the Roman arms was due largely to discipline and military drill.

---

1 The legionary soldier probably received, per annum, about 260 denarii, a little less than 50 dollars. The pay of the centurion was twice as much as that of the common soldier.

2 The deduction in the time of Polybius was only one-thirtieth part of the pay, and though, in consequence of the higher price of grain, it was somewhat larger in the time of Caesar, it was still very inconsiderable. Thus the pay of a Roman soldier was much higher, relatively to the cost of living, than that of a soldier in a modern European army. The auxiliaries received army-ration, but their pay came from their own people.

3 The regular allowance of wheat, per month, for each man in the rank and file was a bushel, 4 modii; for a centurion, two bushels. Supplies were furnished twice a month, half the monthly allowance at a time. For a discussion of the general subject of supplies for the army, and the pay of soldiers, see Sonkler, Abhandlung über die Heeresverwaltung der alten Römer.
OF THE ROMANS.

THE LEGION IN THE TIME OF CAESAR.

13. In the time of Caesar, the regular or normal strength of a Roman legion when mustered into service was probably about 5,000 men.\(^1\) The actual numerical strength of Caesar's legions in Gaul, after years of hard service, was, of course, far below this standard. Indeed, it is doubtful whether the muster-roll of some of the veteran legions in the later Gallic campaigns would much exceed 2,000. Rüstow estimates the average numerical strength of the legions in Gaul at 8,600.\(^2\)

14. The legion consisted of ten cohorts. To understand, therefore, the organization and action of the legion as a whole, we must first get a clear idea of the size, form, and movements of the cohort, which is the tactical unit on which everything depends.

15. It seems safe to assume that the standard numerical strength of the cohort was about 500; but that the actual strength of Caesar's cohorts in Gaul did not upon the average much exceed 360.

16. It will be remembered that the cohort was formed by uniting three maniples, and that each maniple consisted of two centuries, each under the command of a centurion. When the cohort was in battle-array, the men probably stood in rank and file as follows:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>III.</th>
<th>II.</th>
<th>I.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Diagram of cohort in line of battle" /></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Cohort in Line of Battle. Front 120 feet, depth 40 feet.*

---

\(^1\) This is the estimate of Lange and of General von Göler. Mommsen estimates a full legion in the time of Marius at 6,000. Napoleon III. gives the same estimate for the legions engaged in the battle near Bibraeia. For Caesar's account of this battle, see Book I., 24-26.

\(^2\) Kranen's estimate is a little lower, from 3,000 to 3,600, and Mommsen's considerably higher, from 3,500 to 5,000.
17. Here I., II., and III. represent the three maniples united to form the cohort. Number I., on the right wing, is the veteran maniple of the cohort, and holds the post of honor; maniple II., in the centre, consists of soldiers who, though in mature manhood, have not yet attained the rank of veterans; while maniple III. contains those who have seen the least service of all. Originally, maniple I. was designated by the name Triarii, or Pilani; II., by the name Principes; and III., by the name Hastati; but as these names do not occur in the Commentaries on the Gallic War, and as they have all lost their original signification, the simple numerals, first, second, and third, seem to be the most appropriate designations of the maniples, especially as they indicate their true rank and order.

18. Each maniple contained 120 men, arranged in ten ranks of twelve men each. The space allowed to a soldier was three feet wide and four feet deep. The first five ranks formed the first century, the last five the second century. The two centurions occupied positions at the right of the centuries which they commanded. For their use the space of four feet was left at the right of each maniple, as indicated in the figure under 16. The centurion at the extreme right in front was the chief centurion of the cohort. He not only led his own century, but was also charged with the general command of the entire cohort.

19. The length or front of the maniple, occupied as it was by twelve men and one centurion, was 40 feet, while the depth, or file, occupied by ten men, was also 40 feet. Thus the maniple was 40 feet square, and three such squares

---

1 Thus it appears probable that Marius, in organizing the cohort, took one maniple from each of the three lines in which the legion had previously been marshalled for battle, naturally awarding the post of honor, on the right wing, to the veteran maniple, the Triarii, also called Pilani; the centre to the Principes, and the left wing to the Hastati. See 6.

2 These ancient names could not fail to be misleading to the learner, if applied to the maniples in the cohort; as Hastati, for instance, means armed with the hasta, while the third maniple, to which it was applied, was armed not with the hasta, but with the pilum; again, Principes means holding the first place or rank, and yet the second maniple did not hold either the first place or the first rank.

3 In other words, each rank contained 12 men, and each file 10.

4 That is, each file occupied 3 feet, and each rank 4 feet.

5 The century, originally called centuria, is called ordus in the Commentaries.

6 That is 12 × 3 + 4 = 40, and 10 × 4 = 40.
placed side by side formed the cohort, which was accordingly 120 feet long and 40 deep.¹

20. The following figure represents a cohort in various positions,² as in line of battle and on the march: —

1. ABCD represents a cohort 360 strong in line of battle.
2. abcd, the same cohort marching in column of centuries, with the first maniple in front.
3. abcd, the same column with the third maniple in front.
4. efgh, the cohort in column of centuries of half the usual width and twice the usual length, with the first maniple in front.
5. efgh, the same column with the third maniple in front.
6. ijkl, cohort in column of maniples, with the first maniple in front.
7. ijkl, the same column with the third maniple in front.

¹ The arrangement here given, in which the three maniples stand side by side in the cohort, while the second century stands directly behind the first in each maniple, has been quite generally accepted, but General von Göler places the two centuries, two ranks deep, side by side in the maniple, and stations the first maniple at the head of the cohort, the second directly behind the first, and the third directly behind the second.
² A rectangle with a diagonal across it may represent any company or body of
21. In 'abcd' and 'abcde,' the column is called a column of centuries, because it consists of the six centuries of the cohort, placed one directly behind another. The column thus formed was 40 feet wide and 120 feet long. The column of centuries was the usual order of march, and was formed from the line of battle in two ways, as follows:—

1. The right wing, or maniple I., marched straight forward; maniple II. fell directly in the rear of I., and maniple III. in the rear of II. This movement gives 'abcd,' already mentioned, as a cohort marching in column of centuries, with the right wing, or maniple I., in front.  

2. The left wing, or maniple III., marched straight forward, maniple II. fell directly in the rear of III., and maniple I. in the rear of II. This movement gives 'abcde,' a cohort marching in column of centuries with the left wing, or maniple III., in front.

22. It will be observed that the column of centuries is 40 feet wide, having exactly the width of a maniple. This seems to have been the favorite column on the march through an open country, or upon highways of sufficient width. Caesars's famous bridge over the Rhine was 40 feet wide, and thus exactly adapted to the width of an army marching in column of centuries. Many roads in Gaul, however, were not more than 15 or 20 feet wide. In what form could a Roman army march over such roads? In the regular column of centuries, the 60 men belonging to a century were arranged in 5 ranks of 12 men each; but the century was sometimes arranged in 10 ranks of 6 men each. Such an arrangement is represented in 'efgh.' Here each century, each maniple, and the entire cohort have only half the usual width, but twice the usual length. The column has only 6 men abreast, and is only 18 feet wide, or, including the centurion, 22 feet. By adopting a close order, the

soldiers, as a century, maniple, or cohort. In this figure it represents a century. The diagonal is drawn from the right of the front to the left of the rear.

1 That is, the maniple which in battle-array formed the right wing of the cohort, became the head of the column.
width could be reduced in case of need to 18, or even 15 feet.1

23. In ‘ijkl’ and ‘ijkl’ the column is called a column of maniples, because it consists of the three maniples of the cohort placed one directly behind another. Here the two centuries of each maniple stand abreast. In ‘ijkl’ the cohort is said to be marching by the right flank, because in forming this column from the line of battle, each man turns, or faces to the right, and thus the file which formed the right flank in battle-array becomes the front rank of the column. In ‘ijkl,’ the cohort is said to be marching by the left flank, because in forming this column, each man turns or faces to the left.2

24. It will be observed that the column of maniples will be considerably longer than the column of centuries, as it contains more ranks.3 In this column, each maniple, as it has 12 ranks, will be 48 feet long, or, if we allow 4 feet for the centurion, who probably kept his place at the head of his century, it will be 52 feet long. This gives 156 feet as the length of the cohort marching in a column of maniples. As this column was formed from the line of battle by simply facing to the right or left, the depth of the cohort, 40 feet, naturally became the width of the column, but in marching, as there were only 10 men abreast, the width was often reduced to 30 feet. Upon narrow roads the column of maniples, like the column of centuries, was sometimes reduced to one-half its usual width by doubling its length. Such a column had only 5 men abreast, and could without difficulty march over a road 15, or even 12, feet wide. In forming this column from the regular column of maniples, one of the two centuries in each maniple marched straight on while the other fell in its rear.

1 The regular or normal width of Roman roads was 18 feet. See Jähne, Geschichte des Kriegswesens, page 304.
2 When the cohort marches by the right flank, the right wing, or maniple I., becomes the head of the column; when it marches by the left flank, the left wing, or maniple III., becomes the head.
3 The learner should carefully distinguish between a column of centuries, as seen in ‘abcd’ and ‘abcd,’ and a column of maniples, as seen in ‘ijkl’ and ‘ijkl.’ In the former, the column is an unbroken series of centuries, arranged one behind another; while in the latter, the two centuries of each maniple stand abreast.
25. The following summary gives the length and width of the cohort in different positions:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Front.</th>
<th>Depth.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Cohort in line of battle</td>
<td>120 feet</td>
<td>40 feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Cohort in column of centuries</td>
<td>40 &quot;</td>
<td>120 &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Cohort in column of centuries, with 6 files</td>
<td>18 to 22 &quot;</td>
<td>240 &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Cohort in column of maniples²</td>
<td>30 to 40 &quot;</td>
<td>144 to 156 &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Cohort in column of maniples, with 5 files</td>
<td>15 to 20 &quot;</td>
<td>288 to 300 &quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

26. As an army on the march was liable to attack, it was often necessary to form the line of battle from the line of march. If the enemy appeared on the flank, this was most easily effected from the column of maniples marching in loose order, i.e., with 40 feet front. The simple command, "Halt, front," was all that was needful.² If, however, the enemy appeared in front, the line of battle was most readily formed from the column of centuries.⁴

LEGION IN LINE OF BATTLE.

27. As a legion is only an aggregate of ten cohorts properly arranged, we may now apply to the legion what we have already learned in regard to the cohort. A legion in line of battle consists simply of ten cohorts, each in its proper position and in battle-array; a legion on the march, of ten cohorts marching in due order, and with the proper intervals between them.

28. But we have already learned⁵ that in a legion in battle-array, the ten cohorts were arranged in three lines,

---

¹ The full allowance would be 22 feet, 18 for the 6 files, and 4 for the centurion, reduced in case of need to 18 or less.
² In loose order, 40 feet; but this gives each man 4 feet; if we reduce the allowance to 3 feet, the front of the column becomes 30 feet.
³ Thus if an enemy appeared on the right flank of a column of maniples, as represented by 'ijkl,' it was only necessary for each man to face to the right to place the cohort in line of battle; but if the enemy appeared on the left flank, it was of course necessary for the men to face to the left.
⁴ Thus if the enemy appeared in front of the column of centuries represented by 'abed,' maniple I. halted, maniple II. placed itself at the left of I., and maniple III. at the left of II.
⁵ See 5, III.
with four cohorts in the first or front line, three in the second, and three in the third, as follows:\(^1\):

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
4 & 3 & 2 & 1 \\
7 & 6 & 5 &  \\
10 & 9 & 8 & \\
\end{array}
\]

*Legion in Line of Battle.*

29. Observe that the cohorts are arranged with intervals between them, that the cohorts in the second line are directly behind the intervals in the first, and that the cohorts in the third line are directly behind the intervals in the second.\(^2\) The cohorts are numbered from 1 to 10, according to the rank and military experience of the centurions and soldiers.\(^3\) A position in the front line is more honorable than in either of the others, while in either line a position on the right wing is more honorable than on the left. The first cohort, holding the post of honor, is on the

---

\(^1\) This order of battle is generally supposed to be the *acies triplex,* so often mentioned by Caesar, but General von Göler claims that the *acies triplex* refers, not to the three lines of cohorts, but to the three great divisions of an army, viz., the main body or the central division, and the two wings.

\(^2\) As the third line was held as a reserve, and was not often called into action, the exact position of the cohorts seems not to have been as definitely determined as in the other lines. The order here given has been adopted from Rüstow. Göler arranges the cohorts as follows:

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
4 & 3 & 2 & 1 \\
7 & 6 & 5 &  \\
10 & 9 & 8 & \\
\end{array}
\]

\(^3\) Thus promotions both of centurions and of men were from the tenth cohort to the ninth, from the ninth to the eighth, from the eighth to the seventh, and so on through all the cohorts to the first.
extreme right of the front line, while the tenth, holding the lowest rank in the legion, is on the extreme left of the third line.

30. The interval between the cohorts in each line was 120 feet, the length of a cohort, but the interval between the lines was probably 240 or 250 feet. Thus the front or length of a legion in battle-array was 840 feet, while its depth from the front of the first line of cohorts to the rear of the third line was from 600 to 620 feet.

31. When an army consisting of several legions was marshalled in order of battle, each legion was arranged in three lines, as already described, and the several legions were separated by intervals, probably varying in length with the nature of the ground, but seldom less than 120 feet, the length of a cohort. If we assume that this interval was 120 feet, we shall find that the front of Caesar's line of battle on the Axona, with six legions, was 5,640 feet and its depth, 600 feet. Thus the line of battle of an army of six legions, numbering in all about 25,000 men, was considerably more than a mile long and almost an eighth of a mile deep, and occupied upwards of 75 acres of ground.

Officers in a Roman Army.

32. In a Roman army engaged in an important work like the conquest of Gaul, the regular officers were the commander-in-chief, the lieutenant-generals, the questor, the military tribunes, the centurions, the praefects, and the decurions.

33. The commander-in-chief, called dux bellicus or imperator, had in his own province almost unlimited military power. He was clothed with the full measure of authority which belongs to a commander-in-chief in modern warfare.

34. The lieutenant-generals, legati, were the highest officers in the army under the commander-in-chief. They

---

1 The front, or length, of the legion was made up of the length of four cohorts and of three intervals, each 120 feet. It was therefore $7 \times 120 = 840$ feet. The depth was made up of the depth of the three lines of cohorts, each 40 feet, and two intervals, each 240 or 250 feet, i.e., it was $120 + 240 = 360$ or 600 feet.

2 That is $6 \times 840 + 5 \times 120 = 5,040 + 600 = 5,640$ feet.
PLATE II.

were all of senatorial rank and received their appointment from the senate. In the absence of the commander-in-chief, they assumed his duties. They were sometimes placed in command of important detachments detailed for special service. In the battle with Ariovistus, Caesar placed one of his legions under the command of his quaestor and each of the other five under the command of one of his lieutenants.

35. The quaestor had charge of the military chest, and was the quartermaster of the army. He had the rank of a lieutenant-general, legatus, and was sometimes entrusted with a command in battle.

36. The special officers of the separate legions were the military tribunes and the centurions.

37. Each legion had six military tribunes, tribuni militum, who formerly commanded in rotation, two at a time for a period of two months. In the army in Gaul, however, the tribunes were mostly young men of wealth and social position whom Caesar, from personal friendship or political considerations, had selected from the equestrian order and placed upon his staff. They had little military experience or knowledge, and were accordingly incompetent to take the general command of a legion in battle, though they were sometimes entrusted with the command of small detachments detailed for special service. In general, they administered the internal affairs of the legion. They served as staff-officers to the commander-in-chief and as adjutants to the lieutenant-generals and the quaestor.

38. Each legion had also 60 centurions. These officers were in general men of large military experience, who had been promoted from the ranks, as a reward of good service. They were the real commanders, not only of centuries, but also of maniples and cohorts, and, in a certain sense, under the legatus, of the legion as a whole. The two centurions in each maniple differed from each other in rank; the first,

---

1 The two tribunes commanded by turns, each for one day. See Marquardt, Römische Staatverwaltung, Vol. II., p. 352; also Jähne, Geschichte des Kriegswesens, p. 225.
2 See Book I., 39.
3 According to Göler, there were 120 centurions in each legion, but he includes in this number the 60 assistant centurions, called optiones.
called centurio prior, commanded the maniple, while the second, called centurio posterior, served as his adjutant. The first centurion of the first maniple commanded the cohort, and the first centurion of the first maniple of the first cohort, called primi pili centurio, or primipilus,1 was the chief centurion of the legion, and had much to do with the general command.

39. The Romans in their military system seem to have aimed to stimulate ambition and reward fidelity. An enterprising recruit who on entering the service took his place at the very foot of the legion, in the second century of the third maniple of the tenth cohort, had before him a long career of advancement in the rank and file of the army, and if, by bravery and fidelity, he succeeded in attaining the coveted office of centurion, the prospect of promotion was still before him. He might hope to rise from maniple to maniple, and from cohort to cohort, until, in the end, having passed through all the grades of honor, he should become the chief centurion, the primipilus of the legion. This was the height of his ambition, the goal of his aspirations.

40. The exact order of promotion is still a disputed question. According to Rüstow, the six centurions of each cohort formed a separate class, the centurions of the first cohort forming the first class, those of the tenth cohort the tenth class. Thus there were ten classes, and each class contained six centurions.2 This is probably the prevailing view among scholars.3

---

1 See Book II., 25, and Book III., 5.
2 To determine the rank of a centurion, we must know to which cohort he belonged, to which maniple in the cohort, and to which century in the maniple. Thus the full designation of his rank required the use of three separate titles: (1), an ordinal numeral, as primus, if he belonged to the first cohort, secundus, if he belonged to the second; (2), the word pilus, if he belonged to the first maniple in his cohort, princeps, if he belonged to the second, and hastatus, if he belonged to the third; and (3) prior, if he belonged to the first century in his maniple, and posterior, if he belonged to the second. Thus primus pilus prior, applied to a centurion, denotes that he commanded the first century of the first maniple of the first cohort,—in other words, that he was the chief centurion of the legion; decimus hastatus posterior denotes that he commanded the second century of the third maniple of the tenth cohort, i.e., that he was the lowest centurion in the legion, while quintus princeps prior denotes that he commanded the first century of the second maniple of the fifth cohort.
3 According to Gbéler, however, the first centurion of each cohort belonged to the first class, the second to the second class, the third to the third class, and so
41. The centurions of the first class, called sometimes primorum ordinum centuriones, and sometimes simply 
primi ordines, enjoyed certain honors and privileges not often accorded to the other centurions. As a general rule, 
they alone of the centurions were invited by the commander to seats in all councils of war in company with the lieutenants and the military tribunes.

42. The praefects, praefecti, commanded divisions of auxiliaries, either infantry or cavalry. The praefects in the army of Caesar in Gaul were mostly young men who had seen little military service.

43. The decurions commanded small companies of cavalry. Each company, or troop, called turma, numbering thirty horse, was divided into three sections, called decuriae, each under the command of a decurion; but the first, or senior, decurion commanded not only his own decuria, but also the entire turma.

Order of March.

44. The usual order of march was either the simple column, agmen pilatum, or the line of battle, acies instructa. The square, agmen quadratum, was resorted to only in extreme cases.

Legions Marching in Column—Agmen Pilatum.

45. A cohort in column of centuries, as we have already seen (25), has a front of 40 feet, with a depth of 120 feet. If the column was formed from the right, the first cohort led, and was followed by the others in the order of their numbers, but if the column was formed from the left, the tenth cohort led and was followed by the others in the inverse order of their numbers, i.e., the ninth, eighth, etc.

---

1 See Book V., 28 and 30; Book VI., 7.
2 See Book I., 41, and Book V., 28.
3 See Book I., 39.
46. On the march, the cohorts are supposed to have been separated from each other by an interval of 20 or 30 feet. Assuming an interval of 20 feet, we find that a legion, marching in column of centuries, with a front of 40 feet, was 1,400 feet long, and with a front of 20 feet, 2,600 feet long.\(^1\)

47. In general, every Roman soldier carried his own personal baggage. The different articles, consisting of clothing, cooking utensils, and rations for one, two, or more weeks, weighing, probably, in the aggregate, from 30 to 50 pounds, were carefully put up in packages, sarcinae, and firmly secured to a rod, as represented in plate I. On the march, the rod was carried on the shoulder.\(^2\)

48. The general baggage of the army, called impedimenta, comprising tents, tools, and supplies of various kinds, was carried by beasts of burden, jumenta. According to Rütsow's estimate,\(^3\) the length of the baggage-train of a legion marching in a column of centuries of full width, was 650 feet, and that of a legion marching in a column of centuries of half the usual width, 1,800 feet.

49. We have just seen (46) that a legion without baggage-train, in a column of centuries of full width, was 1,400 feet long, and in a column of half the usual width, 2,600 feet long. Including the baggage-train, therefore, the entire length of the column of full width must have been about 2,050 feet, or two-fifths of a mile, and the entire length of the column of half the usual width, about 3,900 feet, or almost four-fifths of a mile.\(^4\)

50. Before the battle of the Sabis, Caesar had eight legions on the march.\(^5\) The length of a column of centuries, containing such a force, would be 16,400 feet, upwards

---

\(^1\) The length of a column of full width was \(10 \times 120\) feet \(+ 10 \times 20\) feet \(= 1,400\) feet, and the length of a column of half the usual width was \(10 \times 240\) feet \(+ 10 \times 20\) feet \(= 2,600\) feet. This estimate includes the interval of 20 feet between the last cohort of the legion and the first cohort of the next.

\(^2\) This arrangement for the convenience of the soldier, introduced by Marius, was called from him mulus Marianus, the "mule of Marius." It was simply a primitive knapsack.

\(^3\) This estimate allows to each legion 520 beasts of burden, arranged in 65 full ranks, with 8 animals in a rank, and gives 10 feet to each rank.

\(^4\) The column of maniples of any given force would be about one-fifth longer than the column of centuries.

\(^5\) See Book II., 18 to 27.
of three miles, if the column was of full width; and 31,200 feet, upwards of six miles, if the column was of half the usual width.

Marching in Line of Battle—Acies Instructa.

51. A legion marching in line of battle was usually arranged in three parallel lines of cohorts; but these lines might be formed in two different ways, as follows:—

1. The three lines of cohorts which constituted the usual order of battle, the *triplex acies*, formed the three parallel columns. Thus cohorts 1, 2, 3, and 4 formed the first column, 5, 6, and 7 the second, and 8, 9, and 10 the third, as seen in figure 2, below.

*Fig. 3.*

*Fig. 1.*

*Fig. 2.*

Figure 1 represents a legion in order of battle.
Figure 2, a legion marching in order of battle, with its cohorts in column of maniples.
Figure 3, a legion marching in order of battle, with its cohorts in column of centuries.
In forming these columns, each man faced to the right or left, and marched by the right or left flank. Each cohort marched in column of maniples. In an army of several legions, marching in this order, the second legion was placed directly in the rear of the first, the third directly in the rear of the second, and so on to the end of the column. Thus the whole army marched in three parallel columns of maniples. If the enemy appeared on either flank, the columns halted, each man faced to the right or left, as the case required, the cohorts separated, and the whole army was in battle-array. This order of march was usually adopted when the enemy was expected on the flank.

2. When the enemy was expected in front, the legion marched straight forward with its cohorts in column of centuries: the three cohorts on the right wing of the legion, viz., 1, 5, and 8, fell into line and formed the right column, the central cohorts, 2, 6, and 9, formed the middle column, and the left cohorts, 3, 4, 7, and 10, the left column, as seen in figure 3, above. In an army of several legions, marching in this order, the legions were all placed abreast, and there were three times as many columns as there were legions. Thus an army of 6 legions marched in 18 parallel columns. To form the line of battle from these columns, it was only necessary for each cohort to arrange its own maniples in order of battle, as already described (26, foot-note), and then take its proper station in the line.

52. The square, the agmen quadratum, was adopted on the march only in the presence of an overwhelming force of the enemy. In regard to its exact formation, there is some diversity of opinion. According to Rüstow, the ten cohorts of each legion formed a rectangle enclosing the baggage, as seen in the accompanying figure.

Cohorts 1, 2, and 3, in column of centuries, formed the vanguard; cohorts 8, 9, and 10, also in column of centuries, formed the rear-guard; while 5 and 6, in columns of maniples of 5 files, formed the right wing, and 4 and 7, also in column of maniples with 5 files, formed the left wing.
53. In an army on the march, we recognize three parts, more or less distinct:—

1. The vanguard, the head of the column, *primum agmen.*
2. The main body of the army, *exercitus, omnes copiae.*
3. The rear-guard, the rear, *novissimum agmen.*

54. The special organization of the different parts of the column, and indeed the entire order of march, depended largely upon the direction of the movement in relation to the enemy.

**Order of March in Advancing.**

55. In advance movements in the Gallic campaigns, the vanguard of Caesar's army ordinarily consisted of cavalry and light-armed infantry, together with the tribunes, centurions, and legionaries entrusted with the duty of selecting and measuring off the ground for the camp. It was its special duty to reconnoitre the country, to take note of all hostile preparations, to gain tidings of the enemy, and in due time to select a suitable place for the camp.

56. The main body of the army followed the van at a convenient distance. It marched in column of centuries, each legion with its baggage directly behind it; but the last legion probably detailed a few cohorts to protect its baggage, and in that event the cohorts thus detailed formed the rear-guard of the army. In this order of march, the legions, thus separated by their baggage, were exposed in case of an attack to great peril; they were accordingly said to be *impeditae,* entangled or impeded by baggage, *impedimentum.*

57. In advancing in the presence of the enemy the legions marched either in column of centuries, with collected baggage, or in order of battle. With the first arrangement, the main body, consisting of three-fourths of all the legions, followed close upon the advance-guard, and was itself imme-
diately followed by the collected baggage-train of the army. The few remaining legions formed the rear-guard of the column. In this order of march, the legions were comparatively ready for action, and were said to be expeditae, disentangled, or free from encumbrance; but the individual soldiers were still impediti, and in case of an attack, they required time to dispose of their personal baggage, to remove the coverings from their shields, to put on their helmets, to adjust their field-badges, and, in a word, to prepare for action. In such an emergency, it was the special duty of the advance-guard to secure for them the needful time by engaging the enemy, and thus retarding his movements.

58. Sometimes in advancing in the immediate presence of the enemy, if the ground permitted, the several legions marched abreast, each in three parallel columns in order of battle. For the special formation and arrangement of the columns, see 51. In this order of march, every soldier, free from his baggage, and fully armed and equipped, was expeditus, ready for immediate action.

Order of March in Retreat.

59. The order of march in retreat was usually the simple column of centuries with collected baggage. The vanguard, consisting of a legion or more, started in advance, with the entire baggage-train of the army; at a suitable distance behind marched the other legions, followed by the rear-guard, consisting of cavalry, archers, and slingers.

60. In cases of extreme peril, the agmen quadratum, already explained (52), was adopted in retreat. In such an emergency, all the legions of the army were sometimes massed around their baggage in a single square or rectangle, and sometimes each legion enclosed its own baggage, as explained in 52. The cavalry, archers, and slingers, remaining outside of the squares, served as skirmishers.

---

1 See Book II., 19; Book V., 2; Book VII., 40.
2 See Book I., 24, sarcinas in unum locum conferri.
3 See Book II., 21, ad galeas induendas scutisque legimentera detrudenda; also ad insignia accommodanda.
4 See Book VII., 18, sarcinas conferri, arma expediri, jussit.
5 See Book IV., 14.
OF THE ROMANS.

ORDER OF MARCH IN FLANK MOVEMENTS.

61. Flank marches¹ were always made in order of battle. The legions generally marched in three columns of maniples. For the formation of these columns, see 51, 1. In an open country, the cavalry, archers, and slingers, marched on the flank toward the enemy, while the baggage-train was stationed on the other flank. In special cases, each legion was followed by its own baggage.

62. The day's march of a Roman army in the field began at four or five o'clock in the morning and continued till about mid-day. Most of the afternoon was occupied in fortifying the camp and in attending to various duties connected with camp-life. The distance usually accomplished in a day does not seem to have differed much from an ordinary day's march of modern armies. The average distance was probably about fifteen or sixteen miles. Forced marches (magna itinera) were, of course, much longer. In one instance,² Caesar marched about fifty miles in a little more than twenty-four hours; but this was an exceptional achievement, accomplished under the pressure of a military necessity.

ROMAN CAMP.

63. In the military history of Rome the camp has a degree of importance without a parallel in modern warfare. It was the soldier's home, a place of rest and security after the labors and dangers of the day; in it was the altar at which he worshipped. It was always fortified, even when intended for a single night. Indeed, it was like a fortified city, encompassed and protected by ramparts and a moat. A Roman general seldom went into battle without a fortified camp directly in the rear. In modern warfare, those who are defeated in battle are exposed to all the perils of a disorderly retreat; a Roman army, on the contrary, after a defeat, retired in comparative safety to a well fortified camp.

64. In the Roman camp, each legion, cohort, and maniple, had a definite space assigned to it; and this space was bounded on all sides by a street of greater or less width.

¹ An army is said to make a flank movement when it passes near the flank of the enemy or marches in a direction parallel to his line of march.
² See Book VII., 40 and 41.
Each maniple occupied a rectangle 108 feet long and 48 feet wide, surrounded by a street 12 feet wide. Accordingly, the entire space assigned to a maniple, including half the width of the streets which separated it from the adjacent maniples, was 120 feet long and 60 feet wide, as seen in the accompanying figure.

ABCD, the entire space assigned to a maniple, including half the street.

abcd, the smaller rectangle, 108 feet long and 48 wide, actually occupied by the maniple. Along the side ‘ab,’ in this last rectangle, were placed eight tents for the first century; and along the side ‘dc’ eight tents for the second century. The tents were 10 feet square, and were separated from each other by intervals of 4 feet. They were all placed with the front to the street; accordingly, the two rows faced in opposite directions. The beasts of burden were placed in the rear of the tents.

65. As a cohort contained three maniples, it would require for its accommodation three such rectangles as we have now described. Accordingly, the space occupied by a cohort in camp was 180 feet long and 120 wide, as seen in the accompanying figure.

ABCD, the space occupied by one cohort, including one half the width of the streets which separate it from the other cohorts.

abcd, the space occupied by each maniple for tents, arms, and beasts of burden.

In the arrangement of the three maniples of the cohort, the first was placed nearest to the wall of the camp.

---

1 The tents were covered with the skins of animals or with leather; hence the expression sub pellibus, in tents, in camp. See Book III, 29.
66. Ten rectangles, 180 feet long and 120 feet wide, would furnish quarters for a legion; fifty such rectangles for five legions; but a camp for a Roman army must provide quarters not only for the legions, but also for the auxiliaries. The following plan, taken, with slight modifications, from Rüstow, shows the general arrangement of a Roman camp for an army consisting of five legions, with the usual force of auxiliaries:

Plan of a Roman Camp. Length, 2,100 feet. Width, 1,400 feet.¹

¹ The Roman camp was either a square, or a rectangle whose width was two-thirds of its length. The plan represents the latter form. The ancient authorities on the camp are Polybius, who lived in the second century, B.C., and a certain Hyginus, who, in the opinion of Marquardt, lived about the beginning of the third century, A.D.

The size of the camp must, of course, be adapted to the size of the army to be quartered in it. Rüstow gives the following formula to determine in feet the length and breadth of a camp for an army of any given size:
1. There were four gates, one in each side: (1) the Porta Praetoria, in front, marked Praetoria in the plan; (2) the Porta Decumana, on the opposite side, marked Decumana; (3) the Porta Principalis Dextra, on the right side, marked Dex.; and (4) the Porta Principalis Sinistra, on the left side, marked Sin.\(^1\)


3. *Aux.* = *Auxilia.*

4. The figure \(\text{[X]}\) represents the space occupied by cavalry.

5. The figure \(\text{[\_]}\) the space occupied by the general and staff,\(^2\) together with troops devoted to their personal service.

6. The figure \(\text{[\_]}\) the space occupied by the archers and slingers.

7. The rectangles with numerals represent the spaces occupied by the separate cohorts.\(^3\)

67. When a battle was anticipated, the camp was placed with its front to the enemy; in other cases, it faced in the direction in which the army was marching. It was divided internally into three nearly equal parts by the two principal streets, both parallel to the front — the *Via Principalis* and the *Via Quintana*. The first or front part was called the *Praetentura*, the second or middle part the *Latera praetorii*, and the third *Retentura*. The *Via Praetoria*, another important street, led from the *Porta Praetorium* to the *Via Principalis*, dividing the *Praetentura* into two equal parts. On a line with the *Via Praetoria* were situated (1), in the middle division of the camp, the *Praetorium*,— the headquarters of the army,\(^4\) — and (2), in the *Retentura*, the

\[ s = 200\sqrt{5} \text{ and } \frac{s}{f} = 1\frac{1}{2} \times f. \]

In which \(f\) equals the length of the front, \(c\) the number of cohorts in the army, and \(s\) the length of the side.

The camp represented in the plan is intended to accommodate five legions, or fifty cohorts. Here \(c = 50\). Hence \(f\) (the front) = \(200\sqrt{50} = 200 \times 7 = 1,400\) feet. \(s = 1\frac{1}{2}\) times \(1,400 = 2,100\) feet.

\(^1\) Except the corners of the wall are rounded so as to be more easily defended.

\(^2\) The upper numeral is the number of the legion; the lower numeral the number of the cohort. Thus \(\text{[\_]}\) represents the space occupied by the fifth cohort of the second legion.

\(^3\) Except the lieutenants and tribunes.

\(^4\) The *Praetorium* extended in length from the *Via Principalis* to the *Via Quintana*, and was from two hundred to three hundred feet wide. In it were the quarters of the general, the altars of the gods, and the tribunal, or judgment-seat, of the army.
Quaestorium,—the quarters of the quaestor and his staff.¹

68. In the plan of the camp, observe (1) that between the wall and the tents was left an open space, probably from one hundred to two hundred feet wide, extending entirely around the camp, and (2) that the forces were distributed as follows:—

1. In the Praetentura were stationed (1), sixteen of the fifty cohorts; (2), the lieutenants and tribunes; (3), one-half of all the cavalry; and (4), all the archers and slingers.

2. In the Middle Division of the camp, called Latera praetorii, were stationed, besides the commander-in-chief, who occupied the Praetorium (1), twelve of the fifty cohorts; (2), one-half of all the cavalry; and (3), the entire staff of the commander-in-chief, except the lieutenants and the tribunes, together with the troops devoted to their personal service.

3. In the Retentura were stationed, in addition to the quaestor and his staff, (1) twenty-two of the fifty cohorts, and (2) the auxiliaries, except the cavalry, archers, and slingers.²

69. In a camp intended for winter-quarters, wooden huts, thatched with straw, took the place of ordinary tents, and sheds were erected to protect the beasts of burden from wind and weather. Moreover, the space allowed to the different parts of the army was doubtless somewhat more ample than in a summer camp.

70. The fortifications of the camp consisted of a wall, vallum, and a ditch, or fosse, fossa. The wall seems to have been ordinarily about 6 feet high, and 6 or 8 feet broad at the top, the ditch about 9 feet wide at the top, and 7 feet deep.³ Doubtless, in fortifying a permanent camp, castra stativa, in a hostile country, the ditch was

¹ The Quaestorium furnished quarters, not only for the quaestor and his staff, but, also, for foreign ambassadors, and for hostages and prisoners. In it were also stored the supplies and the booty.

² Observe in the internal arrangements of the camp that the auxiliaries, both cavalry and infantry, are stationed near the general and his staff, and that they are completely surrounded by the legionary soldiers.

³ Vegetius, Book I, 24, says that the ordinary ditch was either 9 feet wide and 7 feet deep, or 12 feet wide and 9 feet deep. In these dimensions, it has been observed that the width, as 9 or 12, is divisible by 3, and that the depth is obtained by adding one to § of the width, as width 9, depth § of 9 + 1 = 7, or
made wider and deeper, and the wall higher and broader. It was sometimes surmounted with a breastwork of palisades, \textit{lorica}, and in special cases wooden towers were erected on it at convenient intervals. Each gate was probably 40 feet wide, and was defended within and without either by a transverse or by a tambour, as seen in the above plan.  

71. The following figure represents a vertical section of a wall and ditch, the former surmounted with a breastwork of palisades:—

\begin{center}
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{vertical-section-of-a-wall-and-ditch.png}
\end{center}

abcd represents a ditch, \textit{fossa, fastigata}, 9 feet wide and 7 feet deep. Imno, a wall or rampart, \textit{wallum}, 6 feet high, and 6 feet wide at the top, furnished with steps on the inside, i.e., on the side ‘mrsn.’ pp, palisades. ff, fascines imbedded in the work, to strengthen it.

width 12, depth $\frac{1}{2}$ of 12 + 1 = 9. Rüstow infers that these instances are illustrations of a law, and that having the width of any ditch, we can thus at once obtain the depth. As a matter of fact, Caesar generally gives only the width.

In opposition to the view of Rüstow, Göler thinks that the normal depth of a ditch, whatever its width, was 9 feet, and that Caesar specifies the depth only when it does not conform to the ordinary standard.  

1 It has been observed that when Caesar gives the height of a wall with the width of the accompanying ditch, as ditch 9 feet wide, wall 6 feet high; ditch 15 feet wide, wall 10 feet high; ditch 18 feet wide, wall 12 feet high, the height of the wall is $\frac{1}{2}$ of the width of the ditch. This Rüstow believes to be the regular law. Indeed, such a relation as this between the dimensions of the ditch and the wall seems natural, as the earth thrown out of the former was used in constructing the latter.

2 The breastwork was usually made by driving green stakes into the ground, and by binding them firmly together by intertwining their branches. The general height of the breastwork was four or five feet, but in some instances pinnacles, \textit{pinnae}, projected above it two or three feet, as seen in the figure in 71.

3 The Gauls and the Germans fortified their camps, not by permanent works like the Romans, but by arranging their chariots and wagons in a circle, and using them as a rampart. After a defeat, they often retreated to these temporary defences. See Book I., 26.
1. Materia ad Castra Munienda comportatur. 2. Captivi.
72. The side of the ditch nearest to the wall is called the scarp, and the opposite side, the counterscarp. A ditch with sloping sides, as in the figure, was called fossa fastigata; with vertical sides, fossa directis lateribus, and with sloping scarp but vertical counterscarp, fossa punica.¹

73. The wall was constructed largely from the earth and stone taken from the ditch, but to give the structure greater firmness and strength, branches of trees, bushes, stakes, and fascines were imbedded in it. When the sides of the wall were quite steep, they were usually covered with sods or with brush in the form of fascines. Sometimes logs were used for the same purpose. Moreover, these logs and fascines could be arranged in steps, so that from within the bank or wall could be easily ascended. See figure in 71. The selection of the place for the camp was a duty which required skill, judgment, and experience.² Accordingly, this important trust was generally committed to a tribune, or to some other officer of the staff, at the head of a detachment of centurions and legionaries. They marched in advance of the main body of the army, under the protection of the vanguard, and were expected to have the outlines of the camp well defined on the arrival of the legions.

74. For Roman soldiers, marching through a hostile country, no small part of each day’s work was the fortification of the camp, but they shrank from no labor, and were scarcely less expert with the pick and the spade than with the spear and the sword. With such laborers, three or four hours, in the judgment of Rüstow, would be ample for the complete fortification of the camp.

75. But Roman camps in a hostile country were not only strongly fortified, but also carefully guarded. In cases requiring only ordinary vigilance, the duty of keeping guard during the night-watches was entrusted to five cohorts detailed for the purpose from different legions.

¹ The first form was generally used by Caesar, though the second also occurs. See Book VII., 72.
² It was of vital importance that the camp should be pitched, if possible, on a gently sloping hillside of sufficient extent, within easy reach of a good supply of wood and water. It was also important that it should not be near any hill from which an enemy could reconnoitre it, or near any dense forest in which he could be concealed.
The tattoo, the signal for setting the night-watches, was sounded at nightfall. A cohort was stationed at each gate, and sentinels were posted on every part of the wall. A fifth cohort was detailed for guard duty in the quarters of the general and quaestor, while every cohort had its own sentry. In cases of unusual peril, the guard was greatly strengthened; sometimes two or three cohorts guarded each gate.

As the night was divided into four equal watches, the guard was divided into four reliefs, each one of which was on duty during one-fourth of the night. The three reliefs not on duty slept upon their arms, as a sort of picket-guard.

76. The reveille was sounded at daybreak. If the march was to be resumed, three successive signals were sounded. At the first signal, the tents were struck; at the second, the beasts of burden received their loads; and at the third, the column moved. If, however, a battle was imminent, the march was not resumed; the tents were left standing, and the camp was committed to the care of a strong guard.1 Then the soldiers, disencumbered of their knapsacks, and armed and equipped for action, truly expedite, marched out of the camp, and were at once marshalled in line of battle.

77. Roman generals made it an unfailing rule to take every possible advantage of position. For them an open plain was not a good battle-field. The Roman mode of attack required an elevated position, from which the heavy javelins could be hurled into the ranks of the enemy with the greatest effect.2

Military Standards and Martial Music.

78. The general standard of the army was the banner, vexillum, of the commander-in-chief. When displayed from the general’s tent in the Praetorium, it was a signal to

---

1 This guard sometimes consisted of four or five cohorts, detailed from separate legions, and sometimes of one or more legions recently enrolled. See Book III., 26; Book II., 8.

2 For Caesar’s own description of his favorite position for marshalling his army for battle, see Book II., 8. From this description, we see how very important it was that the camp should be pitched upon a hillside of sufficient extent to enable the general to marshal his army for battle near his camp, if not in front of it.
prepare for immediate action, and when waved before the legions advancing in order of battle, it was the signal for the charge, incursus. It contained the name of the general and of the army, inscribed in large red letters on a white ground.

79. Each legion had its own standard, which was entrusted to the special care of the chief centurion, the primipilus of the legion. It was an eagle of the size of a dove, generally of silver, though under the empire sometimes of gold. The eagle was represented with uplifted wings, as seen in plate II., 9. Sometimes a small banner, vexillum, on which was embroidered the number of the legion, was placed directly below the eagle.

80. The ten cohorts of the legion had their special standards, signa, which were of various forms, sometimes very simple and sometimes more elaborate. For specimens of the latter, see plate II., 5.

81. The standards carried by the cavalry, by the light-armed infantry, and by detachments detailed for special service, were simple banners, vexilla. For the general appearance, form, and size of the vexilla, see plate I., 5, and plate II., 8.

82. The chief musical instrument in a Roman army, and indeed the only one mentioned in the Commentaries on the Gallic war, was the trumpet, tuba. This was a wind instrument of brass in the form of a modern trumpet. The only musicians mentioned by Caesar, in either of his works,

---

1 The loss of a standard was a calamity and a disgrace, both to the standard-bearer and to the legion.
2 Göler thinks that the maniples had standards, and that the standard of the first maniple was also the standard of the entire cohort, but Rüstow rejects this view as utterly untenable.
3 The general name for a standard was signum, and for a standard-bearer signifer, but the more specific names aquila and aquilifer were generally used to designate the standard and the standard-bearer of the legion. The bravest and strongest soldiers were selected as standard-bearers. See Book IV., 25; also signiferi in plate II., 5.
4 A standard was sometimes simply the figure of an open hand upon a staff, and sometimes the figure of an animal, as a wolf or an ox.
5 See Book VI., 36.
6 Observe in plate II., 5, that one of the elaborate standards has a vexillum at the top.
7 Göler thinks that every century had at least one tuba.
8 See Book II., 29, Book VII., 47; and Civil War, Book II., 35.
are the *tubicines* and the *bucinatores*, both of whom are represented with their instruments in plate II., 6 and 7; but the *lituus*, a modification of the trumpet, curved near the end, was doubtless used in the cavalry.\(^4\)

**Roman Mode of Attack.**

**83.** When the Roman general had secured his favorite position on the gentle declivities of a range of hills with the enemy sufficiently near in the plain below, he ordered the signal to be sounded with the trumpet. The legions advanced slowly and steadily in order of battle until they were within five hundred or six hundred feet of the enemy, when the standard of the commander-in-chief was displayed, and the united blasts of the horn and the trumpet sounded the signal for the charge. From this point, the legions, with poised javelins in their front ranks, *pilis infestis*, advanced upon the run until the hostile lines were within forty or fifty feet of each other, when a salvo of javelins from the front of the legions carried consternation and death into the ranks of the opposing phalanx.\(^5\) Then, with drawn swords, the Roman soldiers charged the broken ranks of the foe.\(^4\)

**84.** Thus all along the front line a deadly conflict was waged hand to hand; — a series of duels, as Rüstow expresses it.\(^5\) For the moment, it was of course impossible to

---

\(^1\) It seems probable that the *bucinatores* used not only the *bucina*, but also the *cornu*, the horn, a wind instrument made generally from the horn of a wild ox, and furnished with a silver mouth-piece, but sometimes made from brass. According to Götler, the various military evolutions were first signalled by the horn, and then proclaimed throughout the army by the trumpet. The *classis*, which, on the field of battle, was the signal for the charge, was made by the united blasts of the horn and the trumpet.

\(^2\) Lucan, *Pharsalia*, I., 237, characterizes the notes of the *lituus* and the *tuba* in these words: *stridor lituum clangorque tubarum*.

\(^3\) The *pila* which penetrated the hostile shields often stuck fast in them, thus rendering the men unfit for action. Sometimes three or more shields in the dense phalanx were pinned together by these weapons. See Book II., 35.

\(^4\) This onset of the Roman legions with plume and sword has been compared to a volley of musketry, instantly followed by a bayonet-charge.

It is not probable that all the men in the front rank charged with the sword at the same time, as they stood too close together in rank and file to allow the free use of that weapon. Rüstow conjectures that the odd numbers in the front rank sprang forward, while the even numbers kept their places in the line, and that thus each man secured ample room for the charge.

\(^5\) In this account of the Roman mode of attack, we have followed Rüstow.
PLATE IV.

preserve unbroken ranks in the front of the cohorts thus engaged. Along the front line, the whole of the first century of each maniple participated, either directly or indirectly, in the terrible struggle. While the first two ranks bore the brunt of the battle, the other three, as opportunity offered, hurled their javelins over the heads of the combatants into the hostile ranks in the rear, and held themselves in readiness to rush to the relief of their companions in case of need. Meanwhile, the second century of each maniple, remaining firm and immovable, gave stability to the line.

85. Thus far the cohorts of the second line had taken no part in the battle; but soon they, too, were seen to be in motion, and, advancing quickly in battle-array through the intervals of the first line, they hurled their javelins into the ranks of the bewildered foe, and then with drawn swords rushed into the thickest of the fight. The exhausted cohorts, thus timely relieved, retired to reform their shattered line, and to recover breath and strength for a new onset. Thus the first and second lines continued the conflict, alternately relieving each other, until the enemy, exhausted and demoralized, yielded to the repeated onsets of the Roman cohorts. The third line formed the reserve, and was summoned to the front only in cases of special need.

**ROMAN METHOD OF TAKING FORTIFIED PLACES.**

86. The Romans recognized three different methods of taking fortified places:—

1. By Storm, Assault — *oppugnatio repentina*.
2. By Investment, Blockade — *obsidio*.
3. By Siege, with active operations — *oppugnatio operibus*.

---

1 In the opinion of Rüstow, a line of Roman cohorts seldom remained in active conflict more than fifteen minutes at a time.

2 The Gallic mode of conducting a battle was wholly unlike the Roman. The Gauls staked the issue largely on the first onset. Raising their fearful battle-cry, they advanced against the enemy in solid phalanx, and strove to overwhelm him by the mere momentum and weight of moving masses.

The unit in the German line of battle was the solid wedge, the *cuneus*, so celebrated in the early history of Germany. The different tribes were massed separately. The charge on the field of battle was an impetuous onset in masses. See Book I., 31.
87. In attacking fortified towns, the Romans often employed certain engines which corresponded to artillery in modern warfare. They were designated by the general name *tormenta*, from *torqueo*, to twist, as their motive power was derived from the torsion of firmly twisted ropes; but they were of several varieties.

1. The Scorpion—*scorpio*—was a large cross-bow, resting on a standard, as seen in the accompanying figure.

2. The Catapult—*catapulta*—was an engine for hurling heavy javelins or other missiles. This was also a modification of the cross-bow; but the arms of the bow were straight sticks of timber, and its elasticity, or its power of recoil, was produced by the torsion of a large rope, or cable, made from hair or sinews twisted to the greatest possible tension.¹ The construction of the catapult, and the mode of working it, are seen in the following figure:

¹ Only the very strongest hair was used for this purpose; and Jähns suggests that it was probably subjected to a special process to increase its strength. The sinews and tendons from the necks of bulls and from the legs of goats, were especially prized for this purpose.

Observe that the two sticks of timber, 'a' and 'b,' are inserted in two large ropes, or cables, and that their ends, like the ends of a bow, are connected together by a strong cord. In working the catapult, the middle of this cord was drawn back by means of a windlass, 'cd.' Practically, therefore, the catapult was a bow of immense power.
3. The *Ballista* was an engine for hurling balls, stones, and even heavy sticks of wood. In principle the motive power was the same as in the catapult, from which it differed mainly in the fact that it hurled missiles at an angle of 45 degrees. For the mode of working the *ballista* see figure 5 in the foreground of plate V.

4. The *Onager* was a modification of the catapult. It had only one arm, and that arm worked vertically, while the arms of the catapult worked horizontally. See figure 4 in the foreground of plate V.

88. The *Turris ambulatoria* was a movable tower, often used by the Romans in attacking fortified cities. It was, of course, of various sizes; but ordinarily it consisted of ten stories, and was about ninety feet high, twenty-five feet square at the base and twenty at the top. Each story had an outer gallery, extending entirely around it. See plate V, 1.

89. The tower, which was moved forward by means of rollers worked from within, was supplied with one or more drawbridges, which, on being let down upon the wall, furnished the attacking party a passage to the enemy's works. The lower story was usually supplied with a battering-ram; while the upper stories were occupied with the engines of war—the *tormenta*. The *turris ambulatoria*, armed with the battering-ram and the *tormenta*, and well supplied with archers and slingers, was a movable battery of great power.

90. The *Vinea*, used to protect soldiers and workmen during siege operations, was a movable shed or arbor, resting on rollers. According to Vegetius, it was usually 16

---

1 According to Rüstow und Köchly, Geschichte des griechischen Kriegswesens, Book IV., 3, the *ballista* had such remarkable projectile force that it threw heavy missiles, on an average, a quarter of a mile, and that it sometimes reached twice that distance.

In the Commentaries on the Civil War, Book II., 2, Caesar tells us that beams, or poles, 12 feet long, pointed with iron, hurled from ballistae, passed through four rows of hurdles, probably in the form of *vineaec* (90), or *plotes* (92), and planted themselves in the earth.

The *ballista* is sometimes compared to the modern mortar. It was capable of throwing missiles of great weight. Stones weighing from one hundred to one hundred and thirty pounds were at times hurled by it. See Rüstow und Köchly; also Schambach, Geschutzeverwendung bei den Römern.—Altenburg: 1883.

2 Observe that the arm is drawn down by means of a windlass, and that it flies back with great violence as soon as it is released.

3 Athenaeus, the author of a work, *ο Μακεδόνας* ὁρατός, written, probably, about 200 B.C., mentions a tower 180 feet high and 36 feet square at the base.
feet long, 7 wide, and 8 high. The roof was of timber, or thick plank, supported by upright posts; the sides were of strong wicker-work. It was sometimes entirely open at both ends, and sometimes partially closed. The roof and sides were covered with raw hides, as a protection against fire.

91. The Musculus was a variety of the vinea. It was of smaller size than the ordinary vinea, but of much greater strength, as it was intended to be used in the immediate vicinity of the enemy's works, especially to protect sappers and miners in undermining the wall. See the accompanying figure.

92. The Pluteus was a movable breastwork, or screen,

---

1 Caesar, in his Commentaries on the Civil War, Book II., 10, has described the kind of musculus which he used in the siege of Massilia. It was so strong that blocks of stone hurled from the top of the wall fell harmless upon it. The roof was made of sticks of timber two feet thick, overlaid with brick and mortar, covered with raw hides.
resting on rollers. It was usually seven or eight feet in height, and was supplied with loop-holes, through which archers could discharge their arrows. It was of various forms, as seen in figures 1, 2, and 3.

93. The Testudo arietaria, also used in storming cities, consisted of a movable shed, like a vinea, in which was suspended a battering-ram (aries), in the form of a heavy stick of timber, from sixty to a hundred feet long, armed with a large head of bronze or iron. It was worked by men under the cover of the testudo, and was used to effect a breach in the wall. For the general appearance of this machine, and the mode of working it, see the testudo arietaria battering the tower in the background of plate V.1

The Storming of Cities — Oppugnatio repentina.

94. This method of attack was usually adopted when there was a reasonable prospect of immediate success without great loss, especially in proceeding against cities which were well supplied with provisions, but were neither strongly garrisoned nor defended by formidable works.

95. Aided by his engines of war, a Roman general who could lead veteran legions to the attack sometimes found the capture of a walled town a comparatively easy task.

96. Archers and slingers, protected by plutei, and sharpshooters with catapulta and ballistae, drove the enemy from his works. Some filled the moat, while others, under the cover of musculi, strove to undermine the wall, or to set fire to the gates; the tower was moved slowly forward, the battering-ram began its work; numerous storming columns,

1 Caesar seems to have made little use of the battering-ram. The Gallic walls, according to his description, Book VII., 22, were so substantially constructed, of large beams, stones, and earth, that they could not be destroyed either by fire or by the battering-ram. The following figure is from Goller: —
forming the *testudo*, with their shields close-locked over their heads, as seen in plate V., advanced to the attack; the ladders were quickly applied; the sharpshooters, archers, and slingers, redoubled their efforts; the walls were scaled; the gates were thrown open, and the legions entered.

**Investment, Blockade of Cities—**

**Obsidio.**

97. The Romans sometimes compelled hostile cities to surrender, by enclosing them so completely within a continuous line of strong fortifications, that neither supplies nor succor could reach them. This plan was adopted when the place was too strongly fortified and too strongly garrisoned to be taken by storm, especially if the population was large, and the supply of provisions limited. To ensure success, it was sometimes necessary to construct a second line of works at a suitable distance from the first, and outside of the investing army, as a precaution against attack from without, in case any attempt should be made to relieve the city.

The most remarkable instance mentioned in the Commentaries of this method of taking fortified towns, was the investment of Alesia. The town was garrisoned by a force of 80,000 Gauls; Caesar invested it, and for forty days he lay intrenched before it between two concentric lines of almost impregnable works; a mighty array of confederate Gauls, 250,000 strong, arrived in the rear of his intrenchments;
but Roman valor triumphed, and Alesia surrendered to the conqueror.

98. The works with which Caesar enclosed this stronghold of the Gauls were in some respects among the most remarkable mentioned in Roman history. The figure on the preceding page, from Napoleon and Göler, represents a vertical section of the inner line of works, called in modern phraseology, contravallation.¹

**Siège de Fortifiés Lieux — Oppugnatio Operibus.**

99. With the Romans, a formal siege involved, not only the use of all the ordinary engines of war, but also the long and tedious labor of constructing an agger. It was resorted to only in difficult cases, when a simple investment would be inadequate and when a direct assault without special preparation would promise little success. The agger was a mound, or rampart, beginning several hundred feet from the wall of the besieged city, and extending directly toward it, until it finally reached and overtopped it, and thus furnished a broad highway, on which a storming column could advance directly to the highest part of the enemy’s works.²

100. An agger of the ordinary dimensions, 400 or 500 feet long, 50 or 60 feet wide, and from 50 to 80 feet high,³ required for its construction an enormous amount of timber, stones, earth, and brush. The trunks of trees from 20 to 40 feet in length, and from 1 to 2 feet in thickness, were of the first importance; indeed the words of Lucan must have been at times almost literally true⁴: —

"Procumbunt nemora et spoliantur robore silvae."

---

¹ In modern phraseology, the inner line, or that which invests the city, is called contravallation, that outside of the investing army, circumvallation.

This line of works was 11 Roman miles in length, and 400 feet in width. Observe that on the side toward the city was a ditch 20 feet wide; that on the opposite side, 400 feet from this ditch, was a rampart 12 feet high, and that between these two points were arranged (1) two ditches, each 15 feet wide; (2) five rows of trunks of trees, with branches sharpened to a point, so planted in the earth that only the branches were in sight, called cippi; (3) eight rows of small pits 3 feet deep, each with a sharpened stake firmly set in its centre, called lilia, lilies, and (4) an indefinite number of short stakes entirely sunk in the earth, to which iron hooks were attached, called stimuli, spurs.

² In some cases the agger did not reach the top of the wall, but was surmounted by one or more towers, which, on being moved up to the enemy’s works, secured the necessary height for the storming party.

³ The agger at Avaricum was 80 feet high. See Book VII., 24.

⁴ Lucan’s Pharsalia, III., 395.
101. To aid the learner in understanding the more important steps in a formal siege, we add the following illustrations. Fig. 1, page lix, *Ground Plan of Siege Operations*:

1. ABCD represents the enemy’s wall.
2. abcd, the space to be occupied by the agger.
3. mm, musculi, protecting laborers levelling the ground.
4. VV, the line of *vineae*, forming a covered way through which materials were brought for the agger.
5. PP, a line of *plutei*, protecting the men while building the first section of the agger.
6. TT, *turres ambulatoriae*, armed with *tomenta*, and supplied with archers and slingers.
7. pppp, a continuous line of *plutei*, nearly parallel to the enemy’s wall, protecting archers and slingers.
8. vv, vv, two lines of *vineae*, parallel to the agger, forming each a covered way by which soldiers passed to the towers and to the lines of *plutei*.¹
9. cdef, a horizontal section of a part of the first story of the agger, showing how the logs were arranged, with intervals between them, and in layers at right angles with each other, showing also an open gallery or way through the middle.

102. An agger, 80 feet in height, usually consisted of eight or ten stories. On each floor was an open gallery, or hall, 10 or 12 feet wide and 8 or 10 feet high, extending the whole length of the agger. The work of construction began at a distance of 400 or 500 feet from the enemy’s wall, from which most of its defenders had been driven by the archers and slingers behind the line of *plutei*, and by the artillery-men in the towers. The materials were brought through the covered way formed by the line of *vineae ‘VV’, while those who were engaged in the actual work of construction were protected by the *plutei, ‘PP’. First, large logs were placed firmly upon the ground parallel to each other and at suitable intervals; upon these was placed a second layer of logs at right angles with them, as seen in figure 1. The open spaces between the logs were then filled with earth, stones, sods, brush, etc. Through the middle was left a passage, or open gallery, 10 or 12 feet wide, as stated above. The work continued in this way

¹ The line of *plutei*, parallel to the enemy’s works, and the lines of *vineae leading to it, are sometimes compared to the parallels and approaches in modern warfare.
Figure 1. Ground Plan of Siege Operations.
Figure 2. Vertical Section of an Agger in Process of Construction.

1. AF, represents the enemy's wall.
2. ABCDEF, section of the entire agger.
3. BCDE, part that may be regularly constructed.
4. ABEF, part especially exposed to the enemy's missiles, to be filled at least as best it may.
5. cs, part already constructed on the first, second, and third floors.
6. ms, a story with gallery, or hall, through its whole length.
7. s, stairs leading from one floor to another.
8. on, landing at the top of the stairs.
9. P, a line of pilæi protecting the men at work.
until the sides reached the height of 8 or 10 feet, when the open passage was covered overhead with a layer of timbers placed across it. Thus was finished the first section of the first story of the agger.

103. The *plutei*, ‘PP,’ were next moved forward 30 or 40 feet, and under their protection the second section of the first story was constructed in the same style and manner as the first section. A line of *plutei*, ‘P,’ as seen in figure 2, was then placed across the front of the second floor, and the building of the first section of the second story was begun. The materials were all brought through the *vineae* and up the stairs, ‘s,’ to the landing, ‘on,’ which was a platform extending the whole width of the agger, thus affording easy access to the gallery, or hall, on the second floor.

104. As soon as the second section of the first story was finished, the *plutei* were again moved forward, and the third section was begun. At the same time, the *plutei* on the second floor, ‘P,’ in figure 2, were moved forward, and the second section of the second story was begun. *Plutei*, ‘P,’ were then placed on the third floor, and the first section of the third story was begun. This, like the second, was reached by stairs, leading to the landing, which furnished access to the hall, or passage, on this floor.

105. Thus the construction of the agger went on; one section after another was added, one story after another, until BCDE was finished. The part nearest to the enemy, ABEF, still remained to be filled as best it might. Then through all the halls on the different floors were brought logs, stones, brush, fascines, sods, and the like, and were hurled into one confused mass, until the space was filled. The top of the heap was next hastily levelled off and made passable. The decisive moment, for which all this elaborate preparation had been made, had at length arrived. The archers and slingers redoubled their efforts, and the heavy

---

1 The timber and other materials were brought first through the *vineae*, ‘VV,’ and then through the covered gallery in the first section.

2 The enemy often attempted to prevent the completion of the agger, either by setting it on fire, or by undermining it (Book VII., 22 and 24); but, if he failed in this, he ordinarily lost courage, and surrendered before the completion of the works. Thus the Adiutaei surrendered when they saw the tower approaching the wall: see Book II., 31.
artillery swept the walls with its missiles, as the storming column advanced over the agger, and planted the Roman eagle upon the enemy's works.

**SHIPS OF WAR—** _Naves Longae_.

106. Caesar had no organized navy during his Gallic campaigns, but he built ships as occasion required, and manned them with his legionary soldiers.¹ His veteran legions could fight either on land or sea.

107. The Roman ships of war were seven or eight times as long as they were wide, and were accordingly called _naves longae_, in distinction from the transports, _naves onerarias_,² which were much shorter in proportion to their width. They were armed in front with a formidable beak (rostrum), with which they often pierced and sunk the enemy's ships. Though provided with sails, they were propelled chiefly by oars. They carried the usual engines of war, the _tormenta_, were furnished with grappling-irons, and sometimes had towers on their decks. The most important varieties were the _triremes_,³ with three banks of oars, and the _quinqueremes_, with five banks.⁴ See plate VI.

¹ Rowers and sailors could be readily obtained. See Book III., 9.
² The _naves onerarias_ were transports, or ships of burden. They were four times as long as they were wide; they were propelled chiefly by means of sails, although supplied with oars to be used in case of need.
³ According to _Graser_, a _trireme_ was 149 feet long, with a deck 18 feet wide, and carried 232 tons burden. Without the use of sails, it had 24 horse-power, and its rate of speed was 10 knots an hour. The oars were arranged in tiers or banks, those in the upper bank being 13½ feet long, those in the middle bank 10½, and those in the lower bank 7½.

The regular complement of men for a _trireme_ seems to have been 225, of whom 31 were officers and soldiers, 20 sailors, and 174 rowers; for a _quinquereme_, 375, of whom 310 were rowers; but we learn on the authority of _Polybius_ that the Romans increased the number of soldiers, and that the _quinqueremes_ in the Punic wars generally had each 120 soldiers on board.

⁴ The _naves acturiae_ and the _naves speculatoriae_, also called (Book IV., 26) _speculatoria navigia_, were small light vessels constructed for speed.
TITLES OF WORKS CITED

ON THE MILITARY SYSTEM OF THE ROMANS.

GÖLZER, A. VON. Caesars galischer Krieg und das römische Kriegswesen. Freiburg, 1884.
GRASEB, B. De Veterum Re Navali. Berolini.
GUHL UND KÖNER. Das Leben der Griechen und Römer nach antiken Bildwerken.
HYGINUS. Liber de munitionibus castrorum.
KÖCHLY UND RÜSTOW. Griechische Kriegsschriftsteller.
LANGE, C. C. L. Historia Mutationum Rei Militaris Romanorum.
LINDENSMIT, L. Tracht und Bewaffnung des römischen Heeres.
MARQUARDT, J. Römische Staatsverwaltung.
MOMMSEN, T. History of Rome.
NAPOLEON III. History of Julius Caesar.
NISSEN, H. Das Tempelum.
RHEINHARD, H. Griechische und römische Kriegsalterthümer.
RÜSTOW UND KÖCHLY. Geschichte des griechischen Kriegswesens.
RÜSTOW, W. Heerwesen und Kriegführung Cäsars.
SONKLAAR, R. A. Abhandlung über die Heerewirtschaft der alten Römer.
SHAMBACH. Einige Bemerkungen über die Geschützverwendung bei den Römern, besonders zur Zeit Cäsars. Altenburg, 1883.
VEGETTIUS. Epitoma Rei Militaris.
6. JUNI CAESARIS

COMMENTARII

DE

BELLO GALLICO.

LIBER I.

I. GALLIA est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum unam
incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam, qui ipsorum lin-
guà Celtae, nostrà Galli appellantur. - Hí omnes linguà,
institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitānis
Garumnà flumen, a Belgis Matrōna et Sequāna dividit. 5
Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a
cultu atque humanitate provinciæ longissime absunt,
minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe commeant, atque ea,
quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent, important; prox-
imique sunt Germānis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibus-
cum continenter bellum gerunt; quà de causà Helvetii
quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere quo-
tidianis proeliiis cum Germānis contendunt, cum aut suis
finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum
gerunt. 15 Eorum una pars, quam Gallos obtinere dictum est,
initium capit a flumine Rhodāno; continetur Garumnà
flumine, Oceāno, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab
Sequānis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad sep-
temtriones. Belgae ab extremis Galliæ finibus oriuntur;
pertinent ad inferiorum partem fluminis Rheni; spectant 20
in septemtriones et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumnà
flumine ad Pyrenaëos montes et eam partem Oceāni,
DE BELLO GALLICO

quae est ad Hispanicam, pertinet; spectat inter occasum solis et septemtriones.

II. Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgetōrīx. Is, Marco Messālā et Marco Pisoēone consulibus, regni cupiditate inductus conjunctionem nobilitatis fecit et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent; perfacile esse, cum virtute omnibus praestarent, totius Galliae imperio potiri. Id hoc facilius eis persuasit, quod undique loci naturā Helvetii continentur, unā ex parte flūmine Rhenō, latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germānīs dividit; altera ex parte, monte Jūra altissimo, qui est inter Sequānos et Helvetios; tertia, lacu Lemanno et flūmine Rhodānō, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. His rebus fēbat, ut et minus latē vagarentur et minus facilē finitimis bellum infere possent; quā de causā homines bellandi cupidī magno dolore afficiēbantur. Pro multitūdine autem hominum et pro gloriā belli atque fortitudinis, angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinēm millia passuum ducenta et quadraginta, in latitudinēm centum et octoginta patebant.

III. His rebus adducti et auctoritate Orgetōrigis permotit, constituerunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent, comparare; jumentorum et carorum quam maximum numerum coēmere; sementes quam maximas facere, ut in itinere copia frumenti suppeteret; cum proximis civitatisibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. Ad eās res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt; in tertium annum professionem lege confirmant. Ad eās res conficiendas Orgetōrīx deligitur. Is sibi legationem ad civitates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castīco Catamantalsēdis filio, Sequāno, cujus pater regnum in Sequānis multos annos obtinuerat et a senatu populi Romānī amicus appellantus erat, ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgi Aeduō, fratri Divītīāci, qui eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat at maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur, persuadet, eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat. Perfacile factu esse illis probat conata perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitatis
imperium obtenturus esset; non esse dubium, quin totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possent; se suis copiis suoque exercitu illis regna conciliaturum confirmat. Hae oratione adducti inter se fidem et jusjurandum dant et, regno occupato, per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos totius Galliae seque potiri posse sperant. 

IV. Ea res est Helvetii per indicium enuntiata. Moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coegerunt. Damnatum poenam sequi oportebat, ut igni cremaretur. Die constitutâ cause dictionis Orgetôrix ad judicium omne suam familiam, ad hominum millia decem, undique coegit, et omnes clientes oabatosque suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit; per eos, ne casam diceret, se eripuit. Cum civitas ob eam rem incitata armis jus suum exsequi conaretur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistratus oegerent, Orgetôrix mortuus est; neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.

V. Post ejus mortem nihil minus Helvetii id, quod constituerant, facere contur, ut e finibus suis exeam. Ubi jam se ad eam rem paratus esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentes, reliqua privata sedistica incidunt; frumentum omne, preter quam quod secum portatur erant, comburunt, ut, domum reditionis spe sublatâ, paritores ad omnia pericula subeun- da essent; trium mensium molitas cibaria sibi quemque domo effere jubent. Persuadent Raurocis et Tulingis et Latovicis, finitimis, uti, eodem usi consilio, oppidis suis vicisque existis, una cum iis proficiscuntur; Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerant et in agrum Noricum transierant 30 Norêamque oppugnarant, receptos ad se socios sibi adsciscunt.

VI. Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent: unum per Sequanos, angustum et difficile, inter montem Juram et flumen Rhodanum, vix qua singuli carridi ducerentur; mons autem altissimus impendebat, ut facile perpaucri prohibere possent: alterum per provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius, propter ea quod
DE BELLO GALLICO


VII. Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe proficisci, et, quam maximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriorum contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Provinciae toti quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnino in Gallia ulteriore legio una); pontem, qui erat ad Genavam, jubet rescindiri. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt, nobilissimos civitatis, cujus legationis Nametii et Verudictii principem locum obtinebant, qui dicerent, sibi esse in animo sineullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod alius iter haberent nullum; rogare, ut ejus voluntate id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriae tenebat Lucium Cassium consulem oecism, exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiiis pulsum et sub jugum missum, concedendum non putabat; quae homines inimico animo, data facultate per provinciam itineris faciendi, temperaturas et injuria et maleficium existimabant. Tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset, dum milites, quos imperaverat, convenirent, legatis respondit, diem se ad deliberandum sumpturum; si quid vellent, ad Idus Apriles reverterentur.

VIII. Interea eae legione, quam secum habebat, milites, que ex provinciis convenierant, a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influxit, ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis dividit, millia passuum decem novem murum, in altitudinem pedum sedecim, fossamque perucit. Eo opere perfecto praesidia disposita, castella
COMMUNIT, quo facilius, si se invito transire conarentur, prohibere possit. Ubi ea dies, quam constituerat cum legatis, venit, et legati ad eum revertemur, negat, se more et exemplo populi Romani posse iter ulla per provinciam dare, et, si vim facere contentur, prohibiturum ostendit.

Helvetii ea spe dejecti, navibus junctis ratibusque compluribus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, qua minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdiu, saepius noctu, si perrumpere possent, conati, operis munitione et militum concursu et telis repulsi, hoc conatu destiterunt.  

IX. Relinquebatur una per Sequanos via, qua, Sequanis invitis, propter angustias ire non poterant. His cum sua sponte persuaderent non posset, legatos ad Dunmorigem Aeduum mittunt, ut eo decrecatore a Sequanis impetrarent. Dunmorix gratia et largitione apud Sequanos plurimum poterat, et Helvetii erat amicus, quod ex ea civitate Orgetorix filiam in matrimonium duxerat et cupiditate regni adductus novis rebus studebat, et quam plurimas civitates suo sibi beneficio habere obstrictas volebat. Itaque rem suscipit et a Sequanis impetravit, ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patiantur, obsidesque uti inter sese dent, perfectione Sequani, ne itinere Helvetios prohibeat; Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et injuria transissa.

X. Cesaris renuntiatur Helvetii esse in animo per agrum Sequonorum et Aeduorum iter in Santonum fines facere, qui non longe a Tolosatum finibus absunt, quae civitas est in provinciis. Id si fieret, intelligeret magna cum periculo provinciae futurum, ut, homines bellicosos, populi Romani inimicos, locis patentibus maximeque frumentariis finitimos haberet. Ob eam causam ei munitioni, quam fecerat: Titum Labienum legatum praefecit; ipse in Italiam magis itineribus contendit duasque ibi legiones conscribit, et tres, quae circum Aquiliam hiemabant, ex hibernis educit, et qua proximum iter in ulteriorum Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit. Ibi Centrones et Graioceli et Caturiges, locis superioribus occupatias, itinere exercitum prohibere conantur. Compluribus his proeliis pulsae, ab Ocelo, quod est ceterioris provinciae
DE BELLO GALLICO

extremum, in fines Vocontiorum ulterioris provinciae die septimo pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fines, ab Allobrogi-bus in Segusianos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodanum princi.

XI. Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias transduxerant, et in Aeduorum fines pervenerant eorumque agros populabantur. Aedui, cum se suaque ab ies defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium. Ita se omni tempore de populo Romano meritos esse, ut paene in conspectu exercitus nostri agri vastari, liberi eorum in servitutem abduci, oppida expugnari non debuerint. Eodem tempore Aedui Ambarri, necessarii et consaguae Aeduorum, Caesarem certiorum faciunt, sese depopulatis agris non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere. Item Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant, fugae se ad Caesarem recipiunt et demonstrant, sibi praeter agri solum nihil esse reliqui. Quibus rebus adductus Caesar non spectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnibus fortunis sociorum consumptis, in Santonos Helvetii pervenirent.

XII. Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Aeduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis, in utram partem fluat, judicari non possit. Id Helvetii ratibus ac lintibus junctis transibant. Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus est, tres jam copiarum partes Helvetios id flumen transduxisse, quartam vero partem citra flumen Ararium reliquam esse, de tertia vigili cum legionibus tribus et castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit, quae nondum flumen transierat. Eos impeditos et inopinantes aggressus magnam eorum partem condidit; reliqui fugae sese mandarunt atque in proximas silvas ad-diderunt. Is pagus appellabatur Tigrinus; nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quattuor pagos divisa est. Hic pagus unus, cum domo exisset patrum nostrorum memoria, Lucium Cassium consulem interfecerat et ejus exercitum sub jugum miserat. Ita, sive casa, sive consilio deorum immortalium, quae pars civitatis Helvetiae insignem calamitatem populo Romano intulerat, ea princeps poenas
persolvit. Qua in re Caesar non solum publicas, sed etiam privatæs injurias ultus est, quod ejus soceri Lucii Pisônis avum, Lucium Pisônem legatum, Tigrinii eodem proelio, quo Cassium, interfecerant.

XIII. Hoc proelio facto, reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut 5 consequi posset, pontem in Arâre faciendum curat atque ita exercitum transducit. Helvetii repentino ejus adventu commoti, cum id, quod ipsi diebus viginti aegerrime consecrerant, ut flumen transirent, illum uno die fecisse intelligerent, legatos ad eum mittunt; cujus legationis Divico 10 princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiâno dux Helvetiorum fuerat. Ita cum Caesaris agit: Si pacem populus Românus cum Helvetis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eós Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bello perseveraret, reminisceretur et 15 veteris incommodi populi Români et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod impróviso unum pagum adortus esset, cum ii, qui flumen transissent, suis auxiliis ferre non possent, ne oâ eam rem aut suae magnopere virtutibus tribueret aut ipsos desperaret; se ita a patribus majoribusque 20 suis didicisse, ut magis virtute, quam dolo contenterent aut insidias niterentur. Quare ne committeret, ut is locus, ubi constitissent, ex calamitate populi Români et internecione exercitus nomen caperet aut memoriam proderet.

XIV. His Caesar ita respondit: Æo sibi minus dubita-25 tionis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, memoria teneret; atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Români accidisset; qui si aliequas injuriae sibi conscius fuissest, non fuisse difficile cævere; sed eo deceptum, quod nequë commissum a se intelligeret, quare 30 timeret, neque sine causa timendum putaret. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod, eo invitó, iter per provinciam per vim tentassent, quod Aedunos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent, memoriam deponere posse? Quod sua victoria tam insolenter gloriarerit, quodque tam diu se impune injrias tulisse admirarentur, eodem pertinere. Consuessa enim deos immortales, quo gravius homines ex commuta-
tione rerum doleant, quos pro seclere eorum ulcisci velit, his secundiores interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsides ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea, quae polliceantur, facturos intelligat, et si Aeduis de injuryis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum iis pacem esse facturum. Divico respondit: Ita Helvetios a majoribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, non dare, consue- rint; ejus rei populum Romanum esse testem. Hoc re-

10 sponso dato discessit. —

XV. Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitatumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mil- lium, quem ex omni provinciâ et Aeduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, praemittit, qui videant, quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen insecutis, alieno loco cum equitatis Helvetiorum proelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo proelio sublati Helvetii, quod quingentes equitus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audacias subsistere, nonnunquam ex novissimo agmine proelio nostros lacessisse coeperunt. Caesar suos a proelio continebat ac satis habebat in praesentia hostem rapinis, pabulationibus, populationibusque prohibere. Ita dies circiter quindecim iter fecerunt, uti inter novis- simum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius

25 quinis aut senis millibus passuum interesset.

XVI. Interim quotidian Caesar Aedusos frumentum, quod essent publice polliciti, flagitare; nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septemtrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli

30 quidem satis magna copia suppettebat, eo autem frumento, quod flumine Arae navibus subverterat, propter sua uti minus poterat, quod iter ab Arære Helvetii averterant, a quibus discendere nolebat. Diem ex die ducere Aedui; conferri, comportari, adesse dicere. Ubi se diutius duci intellexit

35 et diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri oporteret, convocatis eorum principibus, quorum magnam copi- am in castris habebat, in his Divitiaco et Lisco, qui summo magistratui praerat (quem Vergobrētum appellant Aedui,
LIBER PRIMUS.

qui creatur annuus, et vitae necisque in suos habet potestatem, graviter eos accusat, quod, cum neque ex agris sumi possit, tam necessario tempore, tam propinquus hostibus, ab iis non sublatetur; praesertim cum magnā ex parte eorum precibus adductus bellum suscepit, multō etiam gravius, quod sit destitutus, queritur. 5

XVII. Tum demum Liscus oratione Caesaris adductus, quod ante taetaret, proponit: Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, qui privatim plus possint, quam ipsi magistratus. Hos seditiones atque improbā oratione multitūdinem deterre, ne frumentum conuerant, quod praestare debeant. Si jam principatum Galliae obtinere non possint, Gallōrum quam Romanōrum imperia praefecer, neque dubitare debere, quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romāni, una cum reliquā Galliā Aeduis 15 libertatem sint erepturi. Ab iisdem nostra consilia, quaeque in castris gerantur, hostibus enuntiari; hos a se coercéri non posse. Quin etiam, quod necessario rem coactus Caesaris enuntiārit, intelligere sese, quanto id cum periculo fecerit, et ob eam causam, quam din potuerit, tacuisse. 20

XVIII. Caesar hoc oratione Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiāci fratem, designari sentiebat; sed, quod pluribus praeuentibus eas res jaçtari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet; quaevis ex solo ea, quae in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacia. Eadem secreto ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vera: Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, samma audacia, magnā apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratiā, cupidum rerum novarum: complures annos portoria reliquaque omnia Aedornorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere, propter eam, illo licente, contra liceri audeat nemo. His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse; magnum numerum equitatus sua sumptu semper alere et circum se habere; neque solum domi, sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse, atque hujus potentialiae causā matrem in Biturigibus homini illi nobilissimo ac potentissimo collo- 25 casse; ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorem habere, sororem ex matre et propinquas suas nuptum in alias civitates collo-
casse. Favere et cupere Helvetiis propter eam affinitatem, odisse etiam suo nomine Cæsârem et Românos, quod eorum adventu potentia ejus deminuta, et Divitiâcus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus. Si quid accidat Românis, summam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinendi venire; imperio populi Români non modo de regno, sed etiam de ea, quam habeat, gratiâ desperare. Reperiebat etiam in quaeerendo Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus esset factum, initium ejus fugae factum a Dumnonige atque ejus equitibus (nam equitatu, quem auxilio Cæsâri Aedui miserant, Dumnôrix praerat); eorum fugâ reliquum esse equitatum perterruit.

XIX. Quibus rebus cognitis, cum ad has suspiciones certissimae res accederent, quod per fines Sequanôrum Helvetios transduxisset, quod obsides inter eos dandoscurrisset, quod ea omnia, non modo injussu suo et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis, fecisset, quod a magistratu Aeduôrum accusaretur, satis esse causae arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere juberet. His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiâci fratris summam in populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat; nam, ne ejus supplicio Divitiâci animum offendaret, verebatur. Itaque priusquam quidquam conaretur, Divitiâcum ad se vocari jubet et, quotidianis interpretibus remotis, per Gàium Valerium Procilium, principem Galliâe provinciae, familarem suum, cui summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo colloquitur; simul commonefacit, quae ipso praesente in concilio Gallorum de Dumnonige sint dicta, et ostendit, quae separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit. Petìt atque hortatur, ut sine ejus offensione animi vel ipse de eo, causâ cognitâ, statut vel civitatem statuere jubeat.

XX. Divitiâcus multis cum lacrimis Cæsârem complexus obscere coepit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret: Scire se illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse gratiâ plurimum domi atque in reliquâ Galliâ, ille minimum propter adolescentem.
centiam possit, per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur; sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoverit. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenebat, neminem existimaturum, non sua voluntate factum; quâ ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averteretur. Haec cum pluribus verbis flens a Caesare peteret, Caesar ejus dextram prenedit; consolatus rogat, finem ordinat; tanti ejus apud se gratiam esse ostendit, ut et rei publicae injuriam et suum dolorem ejus voluntati ac precibus condonet. Dumnorigem ad se vocat, fratrem adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intelligat, quae civitas queratur, proponit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones vitet; praeterita se Divitiaco fratri condonare dicit. Dumnorigi custodes ponit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquatur, scire possit.

XXI. Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes sub monte consedisset millia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, quâlis esset natura montis et quâlis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscerent, misit. Renuntiatum est, facilem esse. De tertia vigilia Titum Labiênum, legatum pro praetore, cum duabus legionibus et iis ducibus, qui iter cognoverant, summum jugum montis ascendere jubesit; quid qui consilii sit, ostendit. Ipse de quartâ vigilia eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. Publius Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur et in exercitu Lucii Sullae et postea in Marci Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

XXII. Primâ luce, cum summus mons a Tito Labiêno teneretur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiêni cognitus esset, Considius equo admissus ad eum accurrit, dicit, montem quem a Labiêno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri; id se a Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse. Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labiênu, ut erat ei praecipitum a Caesare, ne proelium com-
DE BELLO GALLICO

mitteret, nisi ipsius copiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fietet, monte occupato nostros exspectabat proelioque abstinebat. Multo denique die per exploratores Caesar cognovit, et montem a suis teneri, et Helvetios castra movisse, et Con-сидium timore perterritus, quod non vidisset, pro viso sibi renuntiasse. Æo die, quo consuerat intervallo, hostes sequi- tur, et millia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit: 

XXIII. Postridie ejus diei, quod omnino biduum super- rerat, cum exercitui frumentum metiri oporteret, et quod a Bibracte, oppido Aeduorum longe maximo et copiosissi- mo, non amplius millibus passuum octodecim aberat, rei frumentariae prospicientium existimavit, iter ab Helvetiiis avertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea res per fugitivos Lucii Aemilius, decurionis equitum Gallorum, hostibus nuntiatur. Helvetii, seu quod timorem perterritorum Romanos discedere a se existimarent, eo magis, quod pridie, superi- oribus locis occupatis, proelium non commississent, sive eo, quod re frumentarius intercludi posse confiderent, commu- 

XXIV. Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Caes- sar in proximum collem subducit, equitatumque, qui sus- tineret hostium impetum, misit. Ipse interim in colle medio triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor vetera- narum sed in summo jugo duas legiones, quas in Galliī citeriore proxime conscripsaret, et omnia auxilia colocari, ac totum montem hominibus compleri et interea sarcinas in unum locum conferri, et eum ab his, qui in superiore acie constiterant, muniri jussit. Helvetii cum omnibus suis carris secuti impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt; ipsi confertissimā acie, rejecto nostro equitatu, phalange factā, sub primam nostram aciem successerunt. 

Gallis magno ad pugnam erat impedimento, quod pluribus eorum scutis uno ictu pilorum transfixis et colligatis, cum ferrum se inflexisset, neque evellere neque, sinistrâ impedi-ta, satís commode pugnare poterant; multi ut, diu jactato brachio, praepotrent scutum manu emittere et nudo cor-5 pore pugnare. Tandem vulneribus defessi et pedem referre et, quod mons suberat circiter mille passuum, eo se recipere coeperunt. Capto monte et succedentibus nostris, Boii et Tulingi, qui hominum millibus circiter quindecim agmen hostium clauidebant et novissimis praesidio erant, 10 ex itinere nostris latere aperto aggressi circumvenere; et id conspicati Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant, rursus instare et proelium redintegrare coeperunt. Români conversa signa bipartito intulerunt: prima ac secunda acies, ut victis ac submotis resisteret; tertia, ut venientes 15 exciperet.

XXVI. Ita ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est. Diutius cum nostrorum impetus sustinere non possent, alteri se, ut coeperant, in montem receperunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt. Nam hoc toto proelio, cum ab horâ septimâ ad vesperum pug나-tum sit, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea quod pro vallo carros objecerant, et e loco superiore in nostros venientes tela conjiciabant et nonnulli inter carros rotasque mataras ac tragulas subjiciabant nostrosque vul-nerabant. Diu cum esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est. Ex eo proelio circiter millia hominum centum et triginta superfuerunt eâque totâ nocte conti-nenter ierunt, nullam partem noctis itinere intermisso in fines Lingônium die quarto pervenerunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepulturam occisorum, nostri triduum morati eos sequi non potuissent. Caesar ad Lin-gônas litteras nuntiosque misit, ne eos frumento neve alii re juvarent; quî si juvissent, se codem loco, quo Helve-tios, habiturum. Ipse triduo intermisso cum omnibus copiis eos sequi coepit.
XXVII. Helvetii, omnium rerum inopiā adducti, legatos de deditione ad eum miserunt. Qui cum eum in itinere convenissent seque ad pedes projicissent suppleranter locuti flentes pacem petissent, atque eos in eo loco, quo tum essent, suum adventum exspectare, jussisset, paruerunt. Eo postquam Caesar pervenit, obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquiritur et conferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum millia sex ejus pagi, qui Verbīgnus appellatur, sive timore per territi, ne armis traditis supplicio affecerentur, sive spe salutis inducti, quod in tantā multitudine dediticiorum suam fugam aut occultari aut omnino ignorari posse existimarent, primā nocte ex castris Helvetiorum egressi ad Rhenum finesque Germanōrum contenderunt.

XXVIII. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quorum per fines iterant, his, uti conquererent et reduceterent, si sibi purgati esse vellent, imperavit; reductos in hostium numero habuit; reliquos omnes, obsidibus, armis, perfugis traditis, in deditionem accept. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latovicos in fines suos, unde erant prefexi, reverti jussit, et quod, omnibus fructibus amissis, domi nihil erat, quo famem tolerarent, Allobrogiībus imperavit, ut iis frumenti copiam facerent; ipsos oppida vicosque, quos incenderant, restituerre jussit. Id eā maxime ratione fecit, quod noluit eum locum, unde Helvetii discesserant, vacare, ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germānī, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiorum fines transirent et finitimī Galliae provinciae Allobrogiībusque essent. Boios potentibus Aeduis, quod egregiā virtute erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent, concessit; quibus illi agros dederunt, quosque postea in parem juris libertatisque conditionem, atque ipsi erant, receperunt.

XXIX. In castris Helvetiorum tabulæ repertae sunt litteris Graeciis confectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis nominatim ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset eorum, qui arma ferre possent, et item separatim pueri, senes mulieresque. Quarum omnium rerum summa erat capitum Helvetiorum millia ducenta et sexaginta tria,
Tulingorum millia triginta sex, Latovicorum quattuordecim, Rauricorum viginti tria, Boiorum triginta duo; ex his, qui arma ferre possent, ad millia nonaginta duo. Summa omnium fuerunt ad millia trecenta et sexaginta octo. Eorum, qui domum redierunt, eensi habitu, ut Caesar imperaverat, repertus est numerus millium centum et decem.

XXX. Bello Helvetiorum confecto, totius fere Galliae legati, principes civitatum, ad Caesarem gratulatum convenuerunt: Intelligere sese, tametsi, pro veteribus Helvetiorum injuriis populi Romani, ab his poenas bello repetisset, tamen eam rem non minus ex usu terrae Galliae quam populi Romani accidisse, propterea quod eo consilio, florentissimis rebus, domos suas Helvetii reliquissent, uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent imperioque potirentur locumque domicilio ex magnâ copiâ deligerent, quem ex omni Galliâ opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum judicassent, reliquaque civitates stipendia cardesin sit hancet. Petierunt, uti sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certum indicere, idque Caesâris voluntate facere, liceret; sese habere quasdam re, quas ex communi consensu ab eo petere vellent. Eâ re permissâ, diem concilio constituerunt, et jure jurando, ne quis enuntiaret, nisi quibus communì consilio mandatum esset, inter se sanxerunt.

XXXI. Eo concilio dimissò, iisdem principes civitatum, qui ante fuerant ad Caesarem, reverterunt petièruntque, uti sibi secreto in occulto de sua omniumque salute cum eo agere liceret. Eâ re imperatra, sese omnes flentes Caesàri ad pedes projecerunt: Non minus se id contendere et laborare, ne ea, quae dixissent, enuntiarentur, quam uti ea, quae vellent, impetrarent, propterea quod, si enuntiato tum esset, summum in cruciatum se venturos viderent. Locutus est pro his Divitiacus Aeduus: Galliae totius factiones esse duas; harum alterius principatum tenere Aeduos, alterius Arvernos. Hi cum tanto pere de potentiâ inter se multos annos contenderent, factum esse uti ab Arvernâis Sequanisque Germanâi mercede arcesserent. Horum primo circiter millia quindecim Rhenum transisse; posteaquam agros et cultum et copias Gallorum.
hominis fori ac barbariadamassent, transductosplures;
nunc esse in Gallia ad centum et vigintimillium num-
rum. Cum his Aeduos eorumque clientese mel atque
iterum armis contendisse; magnum calamitatem pulsos
accepisse, omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum, omnem
equitatum amisisse. Quibus proeliis calamitatusque frac-
tos, qui et suavirtute et populi Romani hospitio atque
amicitia plurimum ante in Gallia potuisse, coactos esse
Sequani obsides dare, nobilissimos civitatis, et jurejurando
civitate obstringere, sese neque obsides repetituros, ne-
que auxilium a populorum Romano imploraturos, neque recu-
saturos, quo minus perpetuo sub illorum ditione atque impe-
riio essent. Unum se esse ex omni civitate Aeduorum, qui
adduci non potuerit, ut juraret aut liberos suos obsides
daret. Ob eam rem se ex civitate profagisse et Roman
ad senatum venisse auxilium postulatum, quod solus neque
jurejurando neque obsidibus teneretur. Sed pejus victori-
bus Sequani quam Aeduis victis accidisse, propertia quod
Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, in eorum finibus consedisset,
tertiamque partem agri Sequani, qui esset optimus totius
Galliae, occupavisset, et nunc de altera parte tertia Sequa-
nos decedere juberet, propertia quod paucis mensibus ante
Harudum millia hominum vigiti quattuor ad eum venis-
issent, quibus locus ac sedes pararentur. Futurum esse
paucis annis, uti omnes ex Galliae finibus pellerentur,
atque omnes Germani Rhenum transirent; neque enim
conferendum esse Gallicum cum Germanorum agro, neque,
hanc consuetudinem victus cum illa comparandam. Ari-
ovistum autem, ut semel Gallorum copias proelio vicerit,
quod proelium factum sit Adugetobrigae, superbe et cru-
deliter imperare, obsides nobilissimi cujusque liberossos-
cere, et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edere, si quae
res non ad nutum aut ad voluntatem ejus facta sit. Homin-
nem esse barbarum, iracundum, temerarium; non posse
ejus imperia diutius sustinere. Nisi quid in Caesar
populoque Romano sit auxilli, omnibus Gallis idem esse
faciendum, quod Helvetii fecerint, ut domo emigrent,
alliud domicilium, alias sedes remotas a Germanis petant,
fortunamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec si
enuntiata Ariovisto sint, non dubitare, quin de omnibus ob-
sidibus, qui apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sumat.
Caesærem vel auctoritate suâ atque exercitus, vel recenti
victoria, vel nomine populi Românîi deterrere posse, ne 5
major multitudo Germanòrum Rheorum transducatur, Gal-
liamque omnem ab Ariovisti injuriâ posse defendere.

XXXII. Hac oratione ab Divitiâco habitâ, omnes, qui
aderant, magno fletu auxilium a Caesâre petere coeperunt.
Animadvertit Caesar unus ex omnibus Sequânos nihil earum 10
rerum facere, quas ceteri facerent, sed tristes, capite demisso,
terram intueri. Ejus rei causa quae esset, miratus, ex ipsis
quaesit. Nihil Sequàni respondere, sed in eâdem tristitìa
taciti permanere. Cum ab his saepius quaereret, neque
ullam omnino vocem exprimere posset, idem Divitiàcus Ae-
duus respondit: Hoc esse miserìorem gravioresque fortu-
nam Sequanòrum quam reliquorum, quod soli ne in occulto
quidem queri neque auxilium implorare auderent, absen-
tisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velit si coram adesset, horre-
rent, propter quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas daretur, 20
Sequànis vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent,
quorum oppida omnia in potestate ejus essent, omnes cru-
ciatus essent perferendi.

XXXIII. His rebus cognitis, Caesar Gallorum animos
verbis confirmavit pollicitusque est, sibi eam rem curae 25
futuram; magnam se habere sper, et beneficio suo et
auctoritate adductum Ariovistum finem injurìis facturum.
Hac oratione habitâ, concilium dimisit. Et secundum ea
multae res eum hortabantur, quare sibi eam cogitá-
dam et suscipiendam putaret; imprimis quod Aeduos, sc
fratres consanguineosque saepenumero ab senatu appellata-
mos, in servitute atque in diitio videbat Germanòrum
teneri, eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequà-
nos intelligebat; quod in tanto imperio populi Românìi
Turpisimum sibi et rei publicae esse arbitrabatur. Paula 35
tim autem Germânos consuescere Rhenum transire et in
Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem veni, populo Ro-
mâno periculorum videbat, neque sibi homines feros ac
barbaros temperatos existimabat, quin, cum omnem Galliam occupavissent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonique fecissent, in provinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam contendere, praesertim cum Sequanos a provinciâ nostra Rhodânus divideret. Quibus rebus quam maturime occurrendum putabat. Ipsa autem Arioistus tantos sibi spiritus, tantam arrogantiam sumpserat, ut ferendus non videretur.

XXXIV. Quamobrem placuit ei, ut ad Arioistum legatos mitteret, qui ab eo postularent, uti aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquio diceret: velle sese de re publica et summis utriusque rebus cum eo agere. Illi legationi Arioistus respondit: Si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturumuisse; si quid ille se velit, illum ad se venire oportere. Praeterea se neque sine exercitu in eas partes Galliae venire audere, quas Caesar possideret, neque exercitum sine magno commentu atque molimento in unum locum contrahere posse; sibi autem mirum videri, quid in sua Gallia, quam bello vicisset, aut Caesar aut omnino populo Romano negotii esset.

XXXV. His responsis ad Caesarem relatis, iterum ad eum Caesar legatos cum his mandatis mittit: Quoniam tanto suo populique Români beneficio affectus, cum in consulatu suo rex atque amicus a senatu appellatus esset, hanc sibi populoque Româno gratiam referret, ut in colloquium venire invitatus gravaretur, neque de communi re dicendum sibi et cognoscendum putaret, haec esse, quae ab eo postularet primum, ne quam multitudinem hominum amplius trans Rhenum in Galliam transduceret; deinde obsides, quos haberet ab Aeduis, redderet Sequánisque permitteret, ut, quos illi haberent, voluntate ejus reddere illis liceret; neve Aeduos injuriâ lacesseret, neve his sociisve eorum bellum inferret. Si id ita fecisset, sibi populoque Româno perpetuam gratiam atque amicitiam cum eo futuram; si non impetraret, sese, quoniam Marco Messala, Marco Pisone consulibus, senatus censuisset, uti, quicumque Galliam provinciam obtineret, quod commodo rei publicae facere posset, Aedus ceterosque amicos populi
Români defenderet, se Aeduorum injurias non neglecturum.

XXXVI. Ad haec Arioivistus respondit: Jus esse belli, ut, qui vicissent, iis, quos vicissent, quemadmodum vellent, imperarent: item populum Românum victis non ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperare consesse. Si ipse populo Româno non praescriberet, quemadmodum suo jure uteretur, non oportere sese a populo Româno in suo jure impediri. Aeduos sibi, quoniam belli fortunam tassent et armis congressi ac superati essent, stipendiarios esse factos. Magnam Caesarem injuriam facere, qui suo adventu vectigalia sibi deteriora faceret. Aeduis se obsides redditurum non esse, neque iis neque eorum sociis injuriâ bellum illaturum, si in eo manerent, quod convenisset, stipendiumque quotannis penderent: si id non fecissent, longe iis fraternum nomen populi Români abfuturum. Quod sibi Caesar denuntiaret se Aeduorum injurias non neglecturum, neminem secum sine suâ pernicie contendisse. Cum vellet, congregaretur; intellecturum, quid invicti Germâni, exercitatissimi in armis, qui inter annos quattuordecim tectum non subissent, virtute posset.

XXXVII. Haece eodem tempore Caesari mandata referebantur et legati ab Aeduis et a Treviris veniebant; Aedui questum, quod Harüdes, qui nuper in Galliam transportati essent, fines eorum popularentur; sese ne obsidibus quidem datis pacem Arioivistì redimère potuisset; Treviri autem, pagos centum Sueborum ad ripas Rheni concedisse, qui Rhenum transire conarentur; iis praesesse Nasum et Cimmerium fratres. Quibus rebus Caesar vehementer commotus matutandum sibi existimavit, ne, si nova manus Suebō- rum cum veteribus copiis Arioivistì sese conjunxisset, minus facile resisti posset. Itaque re frumentariâ quam celerrime potuit comparatâ, magnis itineribus ad Arioivistum contendit.

XXXVIII. Cum tridui viam processisset, nuntiatum est ei, Arioivistum cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanorum, contendere, triduique viam a suis finibus profecisse. Id ne
accideret, magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existima-
bat. Namque omnium rerum, quae ad bellum usui erant,
summa erat in eo oppido facultas, ique naturâ loci sic
muniebatur, ut magnam ad ducendum bellum daret facul-
tatem, propterea quod flumen Dubis, ut circino circum-
ductum, paene totum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium,
quod est non amplius pedum sexcentorum, qua flumen
intermittit, mons continet magnâ altitudine, ita ut radices
montis ex utrâque parte ripae fluminis contingant. Hunc
murus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppido conjungit.
Huc Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus conten-
dit, occupatoque oppido ibi praesidium collocat.
XXXIX. Dum paucos dies ad Vesontiœnem rei frumen-
tariae comneatusque causâ moratur, ex percontatione nos-
trorum vocibusque Gallorum ac mercatorum, qui ingenti
magnitudine corporum Germânos, incredibili virtute atque
exercitazione in armis esse praedicabant, saepenumbero sese
cum his congressos ne vultum quidem atque aciem ocularum
ferre potuisse, tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occu-
pavit, ut non mediocrer omnium mentes animoque per
turbaret. Hic primum ortus est a tribunis militum, praefec-
tis reliquisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae causâ Caesârem secuti
non magnum in re militari usum habeant; quorum alius,
aliâ causâ illâta, quam sibi ad proficiscendum neceseariam
esse diceret, petebat, ut ejus voluntate discernere liceret;
nonnulli pudore adducti, ut timoris suspicionem vitarent,
remanebant. Hi neque vultum fingere neque interdum
lacrimas tenere poterant: abditi in tabernaculis aut suum
fatum querebantur, aut cum familiaribus suis commune
periculum miserabantur. Vulgo totis castris testamenta
obsignabantur. Horum vocibus ac timore paulatim etiam
ii, qui magnum in castris usum habeant, milites centurio-
nesque, quique equitatu praeerant, perturbabantur. Qui se
ex his minus timidos existimari volebant, non se hostem
vereri, sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvarum,
quae inter eos atque Ariovistum interederent, aut rem
frumentarium, ut satis commodè supportari posset, timere
dicebant. Nonnulli etiam Caesâri renuntiabant, cum castra
moveri ac signa ferri jussisset, non fore dicto audientes milites neque propter timorem signa latus.

XL. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocato consilio omniumque ordinum ad id consilium adhibitis centurionibus, vehementer eos incusavit: Primum, quod, aut quam in partem aut quo consilio ducerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cogitandum putarent. Ariovistum, se consule, cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam appetisse; cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discursurum judicaret? Sibi quidem persuaderi, cognitis suis postulatis atque aequitate conditionum perspecta, eum neque suam neque populi Romani gratiam repudialis. Quod si furere atque amentia impulsion bellum intulisset, quid tandem vererentur? aut cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent? Factum ejus hostis pericum patrum nostrorum memoria, cum, Cimbri et Teutois a Gaio Mario pulsis, non minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperator meritus videbatur: factum etiam nuper in Italia, servili tumultu, quos tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina, quam a nobis acceperissem, sublevarent. Ex quo judicari posse, quantum haberet in se boni constantia; propterea quod, quos aliquamdiu inernos sine causâ timuissent, hos postea armatos ac victores superasset. Denique hos esse eosdem, quibus cum saepenumero Helvetii congressi non solum in suis, sed etiam in illorum finibus, plerumque superarint, qui tamen pares esse nostro exercitu non potuerint. Si quos adversum proelium et fugâ Gallorum commoveret, hos, si quiserent, reperire posse, diuturnitate belli defatigatis Gallis, Ariovistum cum multis menses castris se ac paludibus tennisset, neque sui potestatem fecisset, desperantes jam de pugnâ et dispersos subito adortum, magis ratione et consilio quam virtute visisse. Cui rationi contra homines barbaros atque imperitos locus fuisset, haec ne ipsum quidem sperare nostros exercitus capi posse. Qui suum timorem in rei frumentariae simulationem angustiasque itinerum conferrent, facere aut arroganter, cum aut de officio imperatoris desperare aut praescribere viderentur. Haec sibi esse curae; frumentum Sequanos, Leucos, Lingonias subministrare, jamque esse in
agrís frumenta matura; de itinere ipsos brevi tempore judiciaturos. Quod non fore dicto audientes neque signa laturi dicantur, nihil se ea re commoveri; scire enim, quibuscumque exercitus dicto audiens non fuerit, aut male re gestã 5 fortunam defuisse, aut aliquo facinore comperto avaritiam esse convictam: suam innocentiam perpetuã vitã, felicitatem Helvetiorum bello, esse perspectam. Itaque se, quod in longiore diem collaturos fuisset, repraesentaturum et proximã nocte de quartã vigiliã castra moturum, ut quam 10 primum intelligere posset, utrum apud eos pudor atque officium, an timor valeret. Quod si praeterea nemo sequatur, tamen se cum sola decima legione iterum, de qua non dubitaret; sibique eam praetoriam cohortem futuram. Huic legioni Caesar et indulserat praecipue et propter virtutem confidebat maxime. 

XLI. Hac oratione habîta, mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentes, summaque alacritas et cupiditas bellí gerendi innata est, princepsque decima legio per tribunos militum ei gratias egit, quod de se optimum judicium fecissent, sequentes esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimum confirmavit. Deinde reliquae legiones cum tribunis militum et primorum ordinum centurionibus egerunt, atì Caesãri satisfacerent; se nec unquam dubitasse neque timuisse, neque de summã bellí suum judicium, sed imperatoris esse, existississe. Eorum satisfactione acceptã, et itinere exquisito per Divitiãcum, quod ex aliis eì maximam fidem habebat, ut millium amplius quinquaginta circuitu locis apertis exercitum duceret, de quartã vigiliã, ut dixerat, prosectus est. Septimo die, cum iter non intermitteret, ab expul- 

XLII. Cognito Caesãris adventu, Ariovistus legatos ad eum mittit: Quod antea de colloquio postulasset, id per se fieri licere, quoniam propius accessisset; seque id sine periculo facere posse existimare. Non respuit conditionem Caesar, jamque eum ad sanitatem reverti arbitrabatur, cum id, quod antea petenti denegasset, ultero polliceretur; magnamque in spem veniebat, pro suis tantis populi-
Romāni in eum beneficiis, cognitis suis postulatis, fore, uti pertinacia desisteret. Dies colloquio dictus est, ex eo die quintus. Interim saepe ultro citroque cum legati inter eos mitterentur, Arioquistus postulavit, ne quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar adduceret: Vereri se, ne per insidias ab eo circumveniretur; uterque cum equitatu veniret; alia ratione se non esse venturum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interposita causa tolli volebat, neque salutem suam Gallōrum equitatum committere audebat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equis Gallis equitibus detractis, eo 10 legionarios milites legionis decimae, cui quam maxime confidebat, imponere, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, si quid opus facto esset, haberet. Quod cum fieret, non irrindicule quidam ex militibus decimae legionis dixit: Plus, quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem ei facere; pollicitum, se in 15 cohortis praetoriae loco decimam legionem habiturum, ad equum rescribere.

XLIII. Planitieis erat magna et in eā tumulus terrenus satis grandis. Hie locus aequo fere spatio ab castris Arioquisti et Caesāris aberat. Eo, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium 20 urm venerunt. Legionem Caesar, quam equis devexerat, passibus ducentis ab eo tumulo constituit. Item equites Arioquisti pari intervallo constiterunt. Arioquistus, ex equis ut colloquerentur et præter se denos ut ad colloquium adducerent, postulavit. Ubi eo ventum est, Caesar initio 25 orationis sua senatusque in eum beneficia commemoravit, quod rex appellatus esset a senatu, quod amicus, quod munera amplissime missa; quam rem et paucis contingisse, et pro magnis hominum officiis consuessa tribui docebat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandi justam 30 haberet, beneficio ac liberalitate suā ac senatus ea praemia consecutum. Docebat etiam, quam veteres quamque justae causae necessitudinis ipsis cum Aeduis intercederent, quae senatus consulta, quoties, quamque honorifica in eos facta essent; ut omni tempore totius Galliae principatum Aedui tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam appetisset. Populi Romāni hanc esse consuetudinem, ut socios atque amicos non modo sui nihil deperdere, sed gratia,
dignitate, honore auctiores velit esse: quod vero ad amicitiam populi Romani attulissent, id ipsis eripi, quis pati posset? Postulavit deinde eadem, quae legatis in mandatis dederat, ne aut Aeduis aut eorum sociis bellum inferret; obsides redderet; si nullam partem Germanorum domum remittere posset, at ne quos amplius Rhenum transire pateretur.

XLIV. Ariovistus ad postulata Caesarii paucis respondit; de suis virtutibus multa praedicavit: Transisse Rhenum sese non sua sponte, sed rogatum et arcessitum a Gallis; non sine magnae spe magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquisse; sedes habere in Galliis ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendium capere jure belli, quod victores victis imponere consuerint. Non sese Gallis, sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse; omnes Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venisse, ac contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias a se uno proelio fusas ac superatas esse. Si iterum experiri velit, se iterum pastum esse decertare; si pace uti velit, iniquum esse de stipendio recusare, quod sua voluntate ad id tempus perpetuerint. Amicitiam populi Romani sibi ornamento et praeidio, non detrimento, esse oportere, idque se eae spe petisse. Si per populum Romanae stipendium remittatur, et dediticii subtrahantur, non minus libenter sese recusaturum populi Romani amicitiam quam appetierint. Quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam transducat, id se sui muniendi, non Galliae impugnandae causae facere; ejus rei testimonium esse, quod nisi rogatus non venerit, et quod bellum non intulerit, sed defenderit. Se prius in Galliam venisse, quam populum Romanum. Nunquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populi Romani Galliae provinciae fines egressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cur in suas possessiones veniret? Provinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi concedi non oporteret, si in nostros fines impetum faceret, sic item nos esse iniquos, qui in suo jure se interpellaremus. Quod fratres a senatu Aeduos appellatos dicereat, non se tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rerum, ut non sciret, neque bello Allobrogum proximo Aeduos Romanos auxilium tulisse, neque
ipsos in his contentionibus, quas Aedui secum et cum Sequānis habuissent, auxilio populi Romāni usos esse. Debere se suspicari, simulātā Caesārem amicitia, quod exercitum in Galliā habeat, sui opprimendi causā habere. Qui nisi decedat atque exercitum deducat ex his regionibus, sese illum non pro amico, sed pro hoste habiturum. Quod si eum interfecerit, multis sese nobilibus principibusque populi Romāni gratum esse facturum; id se ab ipsis per eorum nuntios compertum habere, quorum omnium gratiam atque amicitiam ejus morte redimere posset. 10 Quod si decessisset ac liberam possessionem Galliae sibi tradidisset, magno se illum praemio remuneraturum, et quae cumque bella geri vellet, sine ullo ejus labore et periculo confecturum.

XLV. Multa ab Caesāre in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quare negotio desistere non posset, et neque suam neque populi Romāni consuetudinem pati, uti optime meritos socios desereret; neque se judicare Galliam potius esse Ariovisti, quam populi Romāni. Bello superatos esse Arvernōs et Rutēnos ab Quinto Fabio Maximo, quibus populus Romānus ignovisset, neque in provinciam redegisset, neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectari oporteret, populi Romāni justissimum esse in Galliā imperium: si judicium senatus observari oporteret, liberam debere esse Galliam, quam bello 25 victam suis legibus uti voluisset.

XLVI. Dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesāri nuntiatum est equites Ariovisti propius tumulum accedere et ad nostros adequitare, lapides telaque in nostros conjicere. Caesar loquendi finem facit seque ad suos recipit, suisque 30 imperavit, ne quod omnino telum in hostes rejicerent. Nam etsi sine ullo periculo legionis delectae cum equitatu prōelium fore videbat, tamen committendum non putabat, ut pulsis hostibus dici posset, eos ab se per fidem in colloquio circumventos. Posteaquam in vulgus militum ela 35 tum est, quā arrogantia in colloquio Ariovistus usus omni Galliā Romānis interdixisset, impetumque in nostros ejus equites fecissent, eaque res colloquium ut diremisset, multo
major alacritas studiumque pugnandi majus exercitui injectum est.

XLVII. Biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos mittit: Velle se de his rebus, quae inter eos agi coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eo: uti aut iterum colloquio diem constitueret, aut, si id minus vellet, e suis legatis aliquem ad se mitteret. Colloquendi Caesari causa visa non est, et eo magis, quod pridie ejus diei Germani retineri non poterant, quin in nostros tela conjicerent.

Legatum e suis sese magno cum periculo ad eum misserum et hominibus feris objecturum existimabat. Commo-dissimum visum est Gaium Valerium Procillum, Gaii Valerii Caburii filium, summam virtute et humanitate adolescentem (cujuus pater a Gaio Valerio Flacco civitate donatus erat), et propter fidem et propter linguam Gallicae scientiam, quâ multâ jam Ariovistus longinquâ consuetudine utebatur, et quod in eo peccandi Germanis causa non esset, ad eum mittère, et Marcum Mettium, qui hospicio Ariovisti utebatur. |/His mandavit, ut, quae diceret Ariovistus, cognoscerent et ad se referrent. Quos cum apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset, exercitu suo præsente, conclamavit: Quid ad se venirent? An speculandi causâ? Conantès dicere prohibit et in catenas conjecit.

XLVIII. Eodem die castra promovit et millibus passu-um sex a Caesâris castris sub monte consedit. Postridie ejus diei praeter castra Caesâris suas copias transduxit et millibus passuum duobus ultra eum castra fecit, eo cônîlio, uti frumento commeatuque, qui ex Sequânis et Aeduis supportaretur, Caesârem intercluderet. Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proelio contendere, ei potestas non deisset. Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitum castris continuit; equestri proelio quotidie contendit. Genus hoc erat pugnae, quo se Germani exercuerant. Equitum millia erant sex, totidem numero pedites velocissimi ac fortissimi, quos ex omni copiâ singuli singulos suae salutis causâ delegaverant. Cum his in proeliiis versabantur, ad hos se equites récipiebant:
EXPLANATION.

1. Caesar's large camp.
2. Caesar's small camp.
a. First camp of Ariovistus.
b. Hill on which Caesar and Ariovistus met.
c. Second camp of Ariovistus.

Romans. Germans.

SCALE OF MILES
LIBER PRIMUS.

hi, si quid erat durius, concurrebant; si qui, graviore vulnere accepto, equo deciderat, circumstiebant; si quo erat longius prodeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat horum exercitacione celeritas, ut jubes equorum sublevati cursum adequarent.

XLIX. Ubi eum castris se tenere Caesar intellexit, ne diutius conmeatu prohiberetur, ultra eum locum, quo in loco Germani consederant, circiter passus sexcentos ab ipsis castris idoneum locum delegit, acieque tripli instructa, ad eum locum venit. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse, tertiam castra munire jussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus sexcentos, ut dictum est, aberat. Eo circiter hominum numero sedecim millia expedita cum omni equitatu Ariovistus misit, quae copiae nostros perterrent et munitione prohiberent. Nihilo secius Caesar, ut ante constituerat, duas acies hostem propulsare, tertiam opus perficere jussit. Munitis castris, duas iibi legiones reliquit et partem auxiliarum, quattuor reliquas in castra majora reduxit.


LI. Postridie ejus diei Caesar praesidio utrisque castris, quod satis esse visum est, reliquit; omnes alarios in conspectu hostium pro castris minoribus constituit, quod minus multitutidine militum legionariorum pro hostium
numero valebat, ut ad speciem alariis uteretur. Ipse trip-
lici instructā acie usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum
demum necessario Germāni suas copias castris eduxerunt,
generatimque constituerunt paribuque intervallis Harūdes,
5 Marcomannos, Triboccos, Vangiones, Nemētes, Sedusios,
Suēbos, omnemque aciem suam rhedis et carris circumde-
derunt, ne qua spes in fugā relinqueretur. Eo mulieres
imposuerunt, quae in proelium proficiscentes passis mani-
bus flentes implorabant, ne se in servitutem Romānis tra-
10 derent.

LIII. Caesar singulis legionibus singulos legatos et quaes-
torem praefecit, uti eos testes suae quisque virtutis haberet.
Ipse a dextro cornu, quod cam partem minime firmam hos-
tium esse animadvertēratur, proelium commisit. Ita nostri
15 acririer in hostes signo dato impetum fecerunt, itaque hostes
repente celeriterque procrurrerunt, ut spatium pila in hostes
conjiciendi non daretur. Rejectis pilis, comminus gladiis
pugnatum est. At Germāni, celeriter ex consuetudine sua
phalangē factā, impetus gladiorum excepérunt. Reperti
20 sunt complures nostri milites, qui in phalangēs insilirent et
scuta manibus revellerent et desuper vulnerarent. Cum
hostium acies a sinistro cornu pulsa atque in fugam con-
versa esset, a dextro cornu vehementer multitudine suorum
nostram aciem premebant. Id cum animadvertisset Pub-
lius Crassus adolescens, qui equitatum praeerat, quod expe-
ditioner erat quam hi qui inter aciem versabantur, tertiam
aciem laborantibus nostris subsidio misit.

LIII. Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnes hostes
terga verterunt, neque prius fugere destiterunt, quam ad
30 flumen Rhenum millia passuum ex eo loco circiter quinquaginta
pervenerunt. Ibi perpauci aut viribus confusi tran-
nare contenderunt, aut lintribus inventis sibi salutem reper-
erunt. In his fuit Ariovistus, qui naviculam deliberatam ad
ripam nactus, eā profugit: reliquos omnes equitatu conse-
cuti nostri interfecerunt. Duae fuerunt Ariovisti uxores,
una Suēba natione, quam domo secum duxerat, altera No-
rica, regis Vōctiōnis soror, quam in Gallia duxerat, a fratre
missam: utraeque in eā fugā perierunt. Duae filiae harum,
altera occisa, altera capta est. Gaius Valerius Procillus, cum a custodibus in fugā trinis catenis vincitus traheretur, in ipsum Caesārem, hostes equitatu persequentem, incidit. Quae quidem res Caesāri non minorem quam ipsa victoria voluptatem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum provinciae Galliae, suum familiarem et hospitem, ereptum e manibus hostium, sibi restitutum videbat, neque ejus calamitatem de tantā voluptate et gratulatione quidquam fortuna deminuerat. Is, se praesente, de se ter sortibus consultum dicebat, utrum igni statim necaretur, an in aliud tempus reservaret: sortium beneficio se esse incolorem. Item Marcus Mettius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

LIV. Hoc proelio trans Rhenum nuntiato, Suēbi, qui ad ripas Rheni venerant, domum reverti coeperunt; quos Ubii, qui proximi Rhenum incolunt, perterritos insecuti, magnum ex his numerum occiderunt. Caesar, unā aestate quōbus maximis bellis confectis, maturius paulo, quam tempus anni postulabat, in hiberna in Sequānos exercitum deduxit; hibernis Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventus agendos prefectus est.
LIBER II.

I. Cum esset Caesar in ceteriore Galliā in hibernis, ita uti supra demonstravinus, crebri ad eum rumores afferbantur litterisque item Labiēni certior siebat, omnes Belgas, quam tertiām esse Galliae partem dixeramus, contra populum Romānum conjurare obsidesque inter se dare: conjurandi has esse causas: primum, quod vererentur, ne, omni pacatā Galliā, ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur; deinde, quod ab nonnullis Gallis sollicitarentur, partim qui, ut Germānos diūtius in Galliā versari noluerant, īta populi Romāni exercitum hiemare atque inveterascere in Galliā moleste ferebant, partim qui mobilitate et levitate animi novis imperiis studebant; ab nonnullis etiam, quod in Galliā a potentioribus atque his, qui ad conducendos homines facultates habebant, vulgo regna occupabantur, qui minus facile eam rem imperio nostro consequi poterant.

II. His nuntiis litterisque commotus Caesar duas legiones in ceteriore Galliā novas conscripsit, et inita aestate, in interiorem Galliam qui deduceret, Quintum Pedium legatum misit. Ipse, cum primum pabuli copia esse incipe-ret, ad exercitum venit; dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis, qui finitimi Belgis erant, uti ea, quae apud eos gerantur, cognoscant seque de his rebus certiorem faciant. Hi constanter omnes nuntiaverunt, manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum conducit. Tum vero dubitandum non existimavit, quin ad eos proficisceretur. Re frumentaria comparata castra movet diebusque circiter quindecim ad fines Belgārum pervenit.

III. Eo cum de improviso celeriusque omni opinione venisset, Remi, qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum legatos Iecium et Andocumborium, primos civitatis,
miserunt, qui dicerent, se suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Români permittere; neque se cum Belgis reliquis consensisse, neque contra populum Românum conjurasse, paratosque esse et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus juvare; 5 reliquis omnes Belgas in armis esse, Germanosque, qui cis Rhenum incolant, sese cum his conjunxisse, tantumque esse eorum omnium furorem, ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque suos, qui eodem jure et eisdem legibus utantur, unum imperium unumque magistratum cumipsis 10 habeant, deterrerre potuerint, quin cum his consentirent.

IV. Cum ab his quacereret, quae civitates quantaeque in armis essent et quid in bello possent, sic reperiebat: Plerisque Belgas esseertos ab Germânis, Rhenumque antiquitus transductos propert loci fertilitatem ibi conse- 15 disse, Gallosque, qui ea loca inolerent, expulisse, solosque esse, qui patrum nostrorum memoria, omni Galliâ vexata, Teutônos Cimbrosque intra fines suos ingredi prohibuerint. Quâ ex re fieri, uti eurum rerum memoriamagnum sibi auctoritatem magnosque spiritus in re militari suumter. 20 De numero eorum omnia se habere explorata Remi dice- bant, propter ea quod propinquatibus affinitatibusque conjuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem in communî Belgâ- rum concilio ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cognoverint. Plu- rimum inter eos Bellovacos et virtute et auctoritate et 25 hominium numero valere; hos posse conficere armata millia centum; pollicitos ex eo numero electa millia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulare. Suessiones suos esse finitimos; latissimos feracissimosque agros possidere.

Apud eos fuisset regem nostrâ etiam memoriam Divitiácum, 30 totius Galliae potentissimum, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum, tum etiam Britanniae, imperium obtinu- erit: nunc esse regem Galbam: ad hunc propter justitiam prudentiamque suam totius belli summam omnium volun- tate deferri; oppida habeere numero duodecim, pollicerí 35 millia armata quinquaginta; totidem Nervios, qui maxime serî inter ipsos habeantur longissimeque absint; quindecim millia Atrebates, Ambiános decem millia, Morínos viginti
DE BELLO GALLICO

quinque millia, Menapios septem millia, Calētos decem millia, Velocasses et Veromanduos totidem, Aduatūcos decem et novem millia; Condрусos, Eburōnes, Caeresos, Paemānos, qui uno nomine Germāni appellantur, arbitrari
ad quadraginta millia.

V. Caesar Remos cohortatus liberaliterque emancipatione prosecutus, omnem senatum ad se venire principum
que liberos obsides ad se adduci jussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Divitiācum Αedū-
um magnopere cohortatus docet, quanto oppere rei publicae communisque salutis intersit manus hostium distineri,
ne cum tantā multitudine uno tempore configendum sit. Id fieri posse, si suas copias Αedūi in fines Bellovacorum
introducerint et eorum agros populari coeperint. His mandatis eum ab se, dimitit. Postquam omnes Belgā-
rum copias in unum locum coactas ad se venire vidit, neque jam longe abesse ab his, quos miserat, exploratoribus
et ab Remis cognovit, flumen Axōnam, quod est in extremis Remōrum finibus, exercitum transducere matura-
vit, atque ibi castra posuit. Quae res et latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniebat et post eum quae essent
tuta ab hostibus reddebat, et, commenatus ab Remis reli-
quisque civitatisbus ut sine periculo ad eum portari possent, efficiebat. In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi praesidium ponit
et in altera parte fluminis Quintum Titurium Sabīnum
legatum cum sex cohortibus reliquit: castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vallo, fossāque duodevīnti pedum,
munire jubes.

VI. Ab his castris oppidum Remōrum nomine Bibrax
aberat millia passuum octo. Id ex itinere magno impetu
Belgae oppugnare coeperunt. Aegre eo die sustentatum
est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnatio est haec. Ubi circumjactā multitudine hominum totis moeni-
bus undique in murum lapides jaci coepit sunt murusque
defensoribus nudatus est, testudine facta, portas succedunt
murumque subruunt. Quod tum facile siebat. Nam
cum tanta multitudine lapides ac tela conjicerent, in muro
consistenti potestas erat nulli. Cum finem oppugnandi
nox fecisset, Icicius Remus, summā nobilitate et gratiā inter suos, qui tum oppido praeferat, unus ex his qui legati de pace ad Caesārem venerant, nuntium ad eum mittit: Nisi subsidiūm sibi submittatur, sese diutius sustiner e non posse.

VII. Eō de mediā nocte Caesar iisdem ducibus usus qui nuntii ab Iccio venerant, Numidas et Cretas sagittarios, et funditores Baleares, subsidiō oppidanīs mittit; quorum adventu et Remis cum spe defensionis studium propagandī accessit, et hostibus eādem de causā spes potius di oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morati agros Remōrum depopulati, omnibus vicis aedificīisque, quos adire poterant, incensis, ad castra Caesāris omnibus copiis contenderunt et ab millibus passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt; quae castra, ut fumo atque ignibus significabatur, amplius millibus passuum octo in latitudinem patebant.

VIII. Caesar primo et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opinionem virtutis, proelio superse- dere statuit; quotidie tamen equestribus proelii, quid hostis virtute posset et quid nostri auderent, periclitabatur. Ubi nostros non esse inferiores intellexit, loco pro castris ad aciem instrueram naturā opportune atque idoneo (quoqu is collis, ubi castra positā erant, paululum ex planicie editūs, tantum adversus in latitudinem patebat, quantum loci acies instructa occupare poterat, atque ex utraque parte lateris dejectus habebat, et in fronte leniter fastigatus paulatim ad planitiem redibat), ab utroque latere ejus collis transversam fossam obduxit circiter passuum quadrātingentorum; et ad extremas fossas castella constituit ibique tormenta collocavit, ne, cum aciem instruxisset, hostes, quod tantum multitudine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantes suos circumvenire possent. Hoc facto, duabus legionibus, quas proxime conscripsérat, in castris relictis, ut, si quo opus esset, subsidiō duci possent, reliquas sex legiones pro castris in acie constituit. Hostes item suas copias ex castris eductas instruxerant.

IX. Palus erat non magna inter nostrum atque hostium
exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent, hostes exspectabant; nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditos aggrederentur, parati in armis erant. Interim proelio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur. Ubi neuerunt, Caesar suas in castra reduxit. Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axônam contenderunt, quod esse post nostra castra demonstratum est. Ibi vades repertis partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt, eo consilio, ut, si possent, castellum, cui praeeerat Quintus Tituriis legatus, expugnarent, pontemque interscinderent; si minus putuissent, agros Remorum popularentur, qui magno nobis usu ad bellum gerendum erant, commutauque nostros prohiberent. 

15 X. Caesar ex eiusmod factus ab Titurio, omnem equitatum et levis armaturae Numidias, funditores sagittariosque pontem transducit atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. Hostes impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi magnam eorum numerum occiderunt. Per eorum cor pora reliquis audacissime transire conantem multitudine telorum repulerunt; primos, qui transierant, equitatu circumventos interfecerunt. Hostes ubi et de expugnando oppido et de flumine transeundo spem se fessillosse intellexerunt, neque nostros in locum iniquiorem progredi pugnabat causā viderunt, atque ipsos res frumentariae deficere coepit, concilio convocato, constituerunt optimum esse, domum suam quemque reverti, et quorum in fines primum Romani exercitum introduxissent, ad eos defendendos unde convenirent, ut potius in suis quam in alienis finibus decertarent et domesticis copiis rei frumentariae uterentur. Ad eam sententiam, cum reliquis causis, haeque quoque ratio eos deduxit, quod Divitiacum atque Aedusus finibus Bellocacorum appropinquare cognoverant. His persuaderi, ut diutius morarentur neque suis auxilium ferrent, non poterat.

30 XI. Ea re constituut, secundā vigiliā magno cum strepitu ac tumultu castris egressi, nullo certo ordine neque imperio, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt, ut consimilis fugae
This battlefield on the Axona, the modern Axon, was near the site of the modern town of Berry-au-Bac, about ten miles west of Neufchatel.

C. R. Castellum Romana.
A. A. Place of the cavalry skirmish.
B. B. Points at which the Belgae attempted to ford the river.
C. Castellum, redoubt at the bridge held by Titurius.
a, b. Ancient bed of the River.

Scale of Miles

---

EXPLANATION.

---
profectio videretur. Hac re statim Caesar per speculato-
res cognitā, insidias veritus, quod, quā de causā disceder-
ent, nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris
continuit. Primā luce, confirmatā re ab exploratoribus,
onnem equitatum, qui novissimum agmen moraretur, praec-
misit. His Quintum Pedium et Lucium Aurunculēium
Cottam legatos praefecit. Titum Labiēnum legatum cum
legionibus tribus subsequi jussit. Hi novissimos adorti et
multa millia passum prosecuti magnam multitūdinem
eorum fugientium conciderunt, cum ab extre mo agmine,10
ad quos ventum erat, considerent fortiterque impetum
nostrorum militum sustinerent, piores (quod abesse a
periculo viderentur, neque ullā necessitate neque imperio
continenterunt), exaudito clamore, perturbatis ordinibus,
onnes in fugā sibi praesidium ponerent. Ita sine ullo 15
periculo tantam eorum multitūdinem nostri interfecerunt,
quantum fuit diei spatium, sub occasumque solis destite-
runt sequ in castra, ut erat imperatum, receperunt.

XII. Posttride ejus dies Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex
terrore ac fugā recuperent, in fines Suessiōnum, qui proximi 20
mi Remis erant, exercitum duxit et magno itinere confecto
ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppug
nare conatus, quod vacuum ab defendentibus esse audiebat,
propert latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem, paucis
defendentibus, expugnare non potuit.21 Castris munitis, 25
vinea agere, quaeque ad oppugnandum usui erant, compa-
rare coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitudo
in oppidum proximā nocte convenit. Celeriter vineis ad
oppidum actis, aggere jacto, turribusque constitutis, mag-
nitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque 30
audierant, et celeritate Romanōrum permoti, legatos ad
Caesārem de deditione mittunt, et petentibus Remis ut
conservarentur impetrant. ×

XIII. Caesar, obsidibus acceptis, primis civitatis atque
ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex 35
oppido tradītis, in deditionem Suessiōnes acceptī exerci-
tumque in Bellovācos ducit. Qui cum se suaque omnia
in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eo oppido
Caesar cum exercitu circiter millia passuum quinque abesset, omnes maiores natu ex oppido egressi manus ad Caesarem tendere et voce significare coeperunt, sese in ejus fidem ac potestatem venire, neque contra populum Romanum armis contendere. Item cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi poneret, peperi mulieresque ex muro passis manus suo more pacem ab Romanis petierunt.

XIV. Pro his Divitiaci (nam post discessum Belgarum, dimissis Aeduorum copiis, ad eum reverterat), facta erant Bellovacos omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Aeduæ fuisse: impulsos a suis principibus, qui dicerent Aeduos a Caesare in servitute redactos omnes indignitatis contumeliasque perferre, et ab Aeduis desceisse et populo Romanó bellum intulisse. Qui ejus consilii principes fuisse, quod intelligerent quantum calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petere non solum Bellovacos, sed etiam pro his Aeduos, ut sua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utatur. Quod si fecerit, Aeduorum auctoritate apud omnes Belgas amplificaretur; quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consuerint.

XV. Caesar honoris Divitiaci atque Aeduorum causa sese eos in fidem recepturum et conservaturum dixit: quod erat civitas magna inter Belgas auctoritate atque hominum multitudine praestabat, sexcentos obsides poposcit. Histaditis omnibusque armis ex oppido collatis, ab eo loco in fines Ambianorum pervenit, qui se suaque omnia sine morâ dediderunt. Eorum fines Nervii attingebant; quorum de naturâ moribusque Caesar cum quaerent, sic reperiebat: Nullum aditum esse ad eos mercatoribus: nihil pati vini reliquarumque rerum ad luxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod iiis rebus relungeescere animos et remitti virtutem existimarent: esse homines feros magnaeque virtutis: increpitare atque incusare reliquis Belgas, qui se populo Romanò dedidissent patriamque virtutem projecissent: confirmare sese neque legatos missuros neque ullam conditionem pacis accepturos.

XVI. Cum per eorum fines triduum iter fecisset, inveni...
niebat ex captivis Sabim flumen ab castris suis non amplius millia passuum decem abesse: trans id flumen omnes Nervios consedisse adventumque ibi Romanorum expectare una cum Atrebatis et Veromanduis, finitimis suis (nam his utrisque persuaserant, uti eandem belli fortunam expерirentur): espectari etiam ab his Aduatocorum copias atque esse in itinere: mulieres, quique per aetatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur, in eum locum conjecisse, quo propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset.

XVII. His rebus cognitis, exploratores centurionesque praemittit, qui locum idoneum castris deligant. Cum ex dediteciis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures Caesarem securi una iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est, eorum dierum consuetudine itineris nostri exercitus perspectä, noote ad Nervios pervenerunt atque his demonstrarunt: inter singulas legiones impedimentorum magnum numerum intercedere, neque esse quidquam negotii, cum prima legio in castra venisset reliquaeque legiones magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sacrinis adoriri: quä pulsä impedimentisque direptis, futurum, ut reliqua contra consistere non auderent. Adjuvatet etiam eorum consilium qui rem deferebant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitatu nihil posset (neque enim ad hoc tempus ei rei student, sed, quidquid possunt, pedestribus valent copiis), quo facilitus finitimorum equitatum, si praedandi causa ad eos venisset, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis crebris in latitudinem ramis enatis et rubis sentibusque interjectis effecerant, ut instar muri hae seps munimentum praebent; quo non modo intrari, sed ne perspici quidem posset. His rebus cum iter agminis nostri impediretur, non ommendum sibi consilium Nervii existimaverunt.

XVIII. Locii natura erat haec, quem locum nostri castris delegerant. Collis ab summo aequaliter declivis ad flumen Sabim, quod supra nominavimus, vergebat. Ab eo flumine pari acclivitate collis nascebatur adversus huic et contrarius, passus circiter ducentos infimus apertus, ab superiore parte silvestris, ut non facile introrsus perspici
posset. Intra eas silvas hostes in occulto sese continebant: in aperto loco secundum flumen paucae stationes equitum videbantur. Fluminis erat altitudo pedum circiter trium.

XIX. Caesar equitatu praemisso subsequebatur omnibus copiis; sed ratio ordoque agminis alter se habebat, ac Belgae ad Nervios detulerant. Nam quod ad hostes appropinquabat, consuetudine sua Caesar sex legiones expeditas ducebat: post eas totius exercitus impedimenta collocarent: inde duae legiones, quae proxime conscriptae erant, totum agmen claudebant praesidioque impedimentis erant. Equites nostri cum funditribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi cum hostium equitatu proelium commiserunt. Cum se illi identiderim in silvas ad suos recipiunt ac rursus ex silvis in nostros impetum faserent, neque nostri longius, quam quem ad finem correcta loca aperta pertinebant, cedentes insequi auderent; interim legiones sex, quae primae venerant, opere dimenso castra munire coeperunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitus ab his, qui in silvis additi latebant, visa sunt (quod tempus inter eos committendi proelii convenerat), ita, ut intra silvas aciem ordinesque constituerant atque ipsi sese confirmaverant, subito omnibus copiis provolaverunt impetumque in nostros equites fecerunt. His facile pulsis ac proturbatis, incredibili celeritate ad flumen decucurrerunt, ut paene uno tempore et ad silvas et in flumine et jam in manibus nostris hostes viderentur. Eadem autem celeritate adverso colle ad nostra castra atque eos, qui in opere occupati erant, contenderunt.

XX. Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda: vexillum proponendum, quod erat insigne, cum ad arma concurret oportet; signum tuba dandum; ab opere revocandi milites; qui paulo longius aggeris petendi causae processerant, arcessendi; acies instruenda, milites cohortandi, signum dandum. Quarum rerum magnam partem temporis brevitas et successus hostium impediебat. His difficultatibus duae res erant subsidio, scientia atque usus militum, quod superioribus proeliiis exercitati, quid fieri oportet, non minus commodè ipsi sibi praescribere, quam ab aliis
LIBER SECUNDUS.

doceri poterant, et quod ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Caesar discedere, nisi munitis castris, vetuerat. Hi propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium, nihil jam Caesaris imperium exspectabant, sed per se, quae videbantur, administrabant. XXI. Caesar necessariis rebus imperatis, ad cohortandos milites, quam in partem fors obtulit, decurrit, et ad legionem decimam devenit. Milites non longiore oratione cohortatur, quam uti sua pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent nee perturbarentur animó hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent, quod non longius hostes aberant, quam quo telum adjici posset, proelii committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causâ profectus pugnantibus occurrît. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas hostiumque tam paras ad dimicandium animus, ut non modo ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeas induendas scutisque tegmenta detrudenda tempus defuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem casu devenit, quaeque prima signa conspexit, ad haec constitit, ne in quaerendis suis pugnandi tempus dimitteret.

XXII. Instructo exercitu, magis ut loci natura dejectusque collis et necessitas temporis, quam ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulabat, cum, diversis legionibus, aliae aliá in parte, hostibus resisterent, sepibusque densissimis, ut ante démonstravimus, interjectis, prospectus impediretur, neque certa subsidia collocari, neque quid in quaque parte opus, esset provideri, neque ab uno omnia imperia administrari poterant. Itaque in tantâ rerum iniquitate fortunaque quoque eventus vârii sequébantur.

XXIII. Légionis nonae et decimae milites, ut in sinistrâ parte acie constiterant, pilis emissis cursu ac lassitudine, examinatos vulneribusque confectos Atrebates (nam his ea pars obvenerat) celeriter ex loco superiore in flumen compulerunt, et transire conantes insecuti gladiis magnam partem eorum impeditam interfecerunt. Ipsi transire flumen non dubitaverunt, et in locum iniquum progressi rursus resistentes hostes, redintegrato proelio, in fugam conjecerunt. Item aliá in parte diversae duae legiones, undecima
et octava, profugatis Veromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex loco superiore in ipsis fluminis ripis proeliabantur. At totis fere a fronte et ab sinistra parte nudatis castris, cum in dextro cornu legio duodecima et non 5 magno ab ea intervallo septima constitisset, omnes Nervii, confertissimo agmine, duce Bodognato, qui summam imperii tenebat, ad eum locum contenderunt: quorum pars aperto latere legiones circumvenire, pars summum castro- rum locum petere coepit.

XXIV. Eodem tempore equites nostri levisque armaturae pedites, qui cum iis una fuerant, quos primo hostium impetu pulso dixeram, cum se in castra recipierent, adversis hostibus occurrebant ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petebant; et calones, qui ab decumanâ portâ ac 15 summo jugo collis nostris victores flumen transisse con- spexerant, praedandi causa egressi, cum respexissent et hostes in nostris castris versari vidissent, praecipites fugae sese mandabant. Simul eorum, qui cum impedimentis veniebant, clamor fremitusque oriebatur, aliique aliam in partem perterriti ferebantur. Quibus omnibus rebus permoti equites Treviri, quorum inter Gallos virtutis opinio est singularis, qui auxilii causa ab civitate ad Caesârem missi venerant, cum multitudine hostium castra nostra comple- peri, nostras legiones premi et paene circumventas teneri, 25 calones, equites, funditores, Numidas, diversos dissipatosque in omnes partes fugere vidissent, desperatis nostris rebus, domum contenderunt: Românos pulso superatosque, castris impedimentisque eorum hostes potitos civitati renun- tiaverunt.

XXV. Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dext- trum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum 30 locum collatis duodecimae legionis conferto militis sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit, quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis signiferque interfecto, signo amisso, reliquarum cohortium omnibus fere centurionibus aut vulneratis aut occisis, in his primipilo Publio Sextio Baculo, fortissimo viro, multis gravibusque vulneribus confecto, ut jam se sustinere non posset, reliquis esse tar-
diores et nonnullos ab novissimis deserto proelio excedere ac tela vitare, hostes neque a fronte ex inferiore loco sub- euntes intermittere et ab utroque latere instare, et rem esse in angusto vidit, neque ullaem esse subsidium, quod submitti posset, scuto ab novissimis uni militi detracto, quod ipse eo sine scuto venerat, in primam aciem processit centurionibusque nominatim appellatis, reliquis cohortatus milites, signa inferre et manipulos laxare jussit, quo facilius gladiis uti possent. Cujus adventu spe illata militibus ac redintegrato animo, cum pro se quisque in conspectu imperatoris etiam in extremis suis rebus operam navare cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardatus est.

XXVI. Caesar cum septimam legionem, quae juxta constiterat, item urgeri ab hoste vidisset, tribunos militum monuit, ut paulatim sese legiones conjungerent et conversa signa in hostes inferrent. Quo facto, cum alius alii subsidium ferrent, neque tamerent ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, audacios resistere ac fortius pugnare coeperunt. Interim milites legionum duarum, quae in novissimo agmine praesidio impedimentis fuerant, proelio nuntiato, cursu incitato, in summo colle ab hostibus conspiciebantur; et Titus Labienus castris hostium potitus et ex loco superiore, quae res in nostris castris gerentur, conspicatus, decimam legionem subsidio nostris misit. Quo cum equitum et calonum fugâ, quo in loco res esset, quantoque in periculo et castra et legiones et imperator versaretur, cognovissent, nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt.

XXVII. Horum adventu tanta rerum commutatio est facta, ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus confecti procubuis- sent, sentis innixi proelium redintegrarent; tum calones, perterritos hostes conspiciati, etiam inermes armatis occurrerent; equites vero, ut turpitudinem fugae virtute dele- rent, omnibus in locis pugnæ se legionariis militibus praferrent. At hostes etiam in extremâ spe salutis tantam virtutem praestiterunt, ut cum primi eorum cecidissent, proximi jacentibus insisterent atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent; his dejectis et coacervatis cadaveribus, qui superesserunt, uti ex tumulo, tela in nostros conjicerent et
pila intercepta remitterent: ut non nequidquam tantae virtutis homines judicari deberet ausos esse transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas ripas, subire iniquissimum locum: quae facilia ex difficillimis animi magnitudo redegerat.

XXVIII. Hoc proelio facto et prope ad interneccionem gente ac nomine Nerviorum redacto,majores natu, quos una cum pueros mulieribusque in aestuaria ac paludes collectos dixeramus, hac pugnā nuntiatā, cum victoribus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tutum arbitrarentur, omnium, qui supererant, consensu legatos ad Caesarem miserunt seque ei dediderant; et in commemorandā civitatis calamitate, ex sexcentis ad tres senatores, ex hominum millibus sexaginta vix ad quingentos, qui arma ferre possent, sese redactos esse dixerunt. Quos Caesar, ut in miseros ac supplices usus misericordiā videretur, diligentissime conservavit suisque finibus atque oppidis uti jussit et finitimis imperavit, ut ab injuriā et maleficio se suoque prohiberent.

XXIX. Aduatūci, de quibus supra scripsimus, cum omnibus copiis auxilio Nerviis venirent, hac pugnā nuntiātā ex itinere domum revertemur; cunctis oppidis castellisque desertis sua omnia in unum oppidum egregie naturā munimentum contulerunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitu partibus altissimae rupes despectasque habetur, unā ex parte leniter acclivis aditus in latitudinem non amplius ducentorum pedum relinquebatur; quem locum duplici altissimo muro munierant, tum magni ponderis saxa et praecutas trabes in muro collocarant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prognati; qui, cum iter in provinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, iis impedimentis, quae secum agere ac portare non poterant, citra flumen Rhenum depositis custodiam ex suis ac præsidium sex millia hominum una reliquerunt. Hi post eorum obitum multos annos a finitimis exagitati, cum alias bellum inferrent, alias illatum defendentur, consensu eorum omnium pacē factā, hunc sibi domicilio locus delegerunt.

XXX. Ac primo adventu exercitus nostri crebras ex
EXPLANATION.

This stronghold of the Aduatuci occupied the hill, on the right bank of the Sambre, which now forms the citadel of Namur.

A. Roman Agger.
T. Turris ambulatoria.
C, C. Roman contravallation with numerous redoubts.
C, R. Castra Romana.
D. Double wall before the city.
LIBER SECUNDUS.

oppido excursiones faciebant parvulisque proeliis cum nostriis contendebant: postea vallo pedum duodecim, in circuitu quindecim millium, crebrisque castellis circummuniti oppido sese continebant. Ubi vineis actis, aggere exstructo, turrim procul constitui viderunt, primum irridere ex muro atque incerpitare vocibus, quod tanta machinatio ab tanto spatio instrueretur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus, praesertim homines tantulae staturae (nam plerunque omnibus Gallis prae magnitudine corporum suorum, brevitas nostra contemptui est), tanti oneris turrim in muros sese collocare confiderent?

XXXI. Ubi vero moveri et appropinquare moenibus viderunt, novâ atque inusitata specie commotis legatos ad Caesarem de pace miserunt, qui ad hunc modum locuti: Non existimare Romanos sine ope divinâ bellum gerère, qui tantae altitudinis machinationes tantâ celeritate promove re possent; se suaque omnia eorum potestati permittere, dixerunt. Unum petere ac deprecarî: si forte pro sua clementia ac mansuetudine, quam ipsi ab alis audirent, statuisset, Aduatucos esse conservandos, ne se armis de spoliât. Sibi omnes fere finitimos esse inimicos ac suae virtutis invidere, a quibus se defendere, traditis armis, non possent. Sibi praestare, si in eum casum deducerentur, quamvis fortunam a populo Româno pati, quam ab his per cruciatum interfici, inter quos dominari consuessent.

XXXII. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Se magis consuetudine suâ quam merito eorum civitatem conservaturum, si prius, quam murum aries attigisset, se dedissent; sed deditio nis nullam esse conditionem, nisi armis traditis. Se id, quod in Nervis fecisset, facturum finitimisque imperaturo rum, ne quam dediticiis populi Români injuriam inferrent. Re nuntiatâ ad suos, quae imperarentur, facere dixerunt. Armorum magnâ multitudine de muro in fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, jactâ, sic ut prope summam muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armorum adaequarent, et tamen circiter parte tertiiâ, ut postea perspectum est, celatâ atque in oppido retentâ, portis patefactis, eo die pace sunt usi.

XXXIII. Sub vesperum Caesar portas claudi militesque
ex oppido exire jussit, ne quam noctu oppidani ab militibus injuriam acciperent. Illi ante inito, ut intellectum est, consilio, quod deditione facta nostros præsidia deducturos aut denique indigentius servaturos crediderant, partim cum his, quae retinuerant et celaverant, armis, partim sub-tis ex cortice factis aut viminibus intextis, quae subito, ut temporis exiguitas postulabat, bellibus induxerant, tertii vigiliâ, qua minime arduus ad nostras munitiones ascensus videbatur, omnibus copiis repentino ex oppido eruptionem fecerunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperarat, ignibus significacione facta, ex proximis castellis eo concursum est pugnatumque ab hostibus ita acriter est, ut a viris fortibus in extremâ spe salutis iniquo loco contra eos, qui ex vallo turribusque tela jacerent, pugnari debuit, omn in una virtute omnis spes salutis consisteret. Occisis ad hominum millibus quattuor, reliqui in oppidum rejecti sunt. Postridie eis diei refractis portis, cum jam defenderet nemo, atque intromissis militibus nostris, sectionem ejus oppidi universam Caesar vendidit. Ab his, qui emerant, capitum numerus ad eum relatus est millium quinquaginta trium.

XXXIV. Eodem tempore a Publio Crasso, quem cum legione una miserat ad Venetos, Venellos, Osismos, Curioso-
litas, Esubios, Aulercos, Redones, quae sunt maritimae civitates Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnes eas civitates in ditionem potestatemque populi Romani esse redactas.

XXXV. His rebus gestis, omni Gallia pacata, tanta hujus belli ad barbaros opinio perlata est, uti ab his natio-
onibus, quae trans Rhenum incoherent, mitterentur legati ad Caesarem, qui se obsides daturns, imperata facturas, pol-
licentur. Quas legationes Caesar, quod in Italiano Illyri-
cumque properabant, inita proxima aestate ad se reverti jussit. Ipse in Carnutes, Andes Turonesque, quae civita-
tes propinquae his locis erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legio-
nibus in hibernacula deductis, in Italian prefectus est; ob easque res ex litteris Caesâris dies quindecem supplicatio decreta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.
LIBER TERTIUS.

LIBER III.

I. Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legione duodecimâ et parte equitatus in Nantuâtes, Verâgrōs Sedūnosque misit, qui ab finibus Allobrôgum et lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodāno ad summas Alpes pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit, quod iter per 5 Alpes, quo magno cum periculō magnisque cum portoriis mercatores ire consuerant, patefieri volebant. Huic permisi, si opus esse arbitaretur, uti in his locis legionem hiemandī causā collocaret. Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis castellisque compluribus eorum expugnatis, missis 10 ad eum undique legatis obsidibusque datis et pace factā, constituit cohortes duas in Nantuātibus collocare et ipse cum reliquis ejus legionis cohortibus in vico Veragrōrum, qui appellatur Octodūrus, hiemare; qui vicus positus in valle, non magna adjectā planītī, altissimīs montibus 15 undique continetur. Cum hic in duas partes flumīnī dividīretur, alteram partem ejus vici Gallis ad hiemandum concessit, alteram vacuam ab illīs reliectam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vallo fossāque munivit.√

II. Cum dies hibernorum complures transissent, fru-20 mentumque eo comportari jussisset, subito per exploratores certior factus est, ex eā parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes noctu discussisse, montesque, qui impendērent, a maximā multitudine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum teneri. Id aliquot de causis accidentar, ut subito Galli belli 25 renovāndi legionisque opprimendae consilium caperent: primum, quod legionem, neque eam plenissimam, detractus cohortibus duabus et compluribus singillatim, qui commeatūs petendi causā missī erant, absentibus, propter paucitatem despiciebant; tum etiam, quod propter iniquitatem 30
loci, cum ipsi ex montibus in vallem decurrerent et tela conjicerent, ne primum quidem posse impetum suum sustineri existimabant. Accedebat, quod suos ab se libcrum abstractos obsidium nomine dolebant, et Românos, non solum Itinerum causâ, sed etiam perpetuæ possessionis, culmina Alpium occupare conari, et ea loca finitimaæ provinciae adjungere, sibi persuasum habebant.

III. His nuntiis acceptis, Galba, cum neque opus hibernorum munitionesque plene essent perfectae, neque de frumento reliquoque commenatu satis esset provisum, quod, deditione facta obsidibusque acceptis, nihil de bello timendum existimaverat, consilio celeriter convocato, sententias exquirere coepit. Quo in consilio, cum tandem repentini periculi praeter opinionem accidisset, ac jam omnia fere superiore loca multitudine armatorum completa conspicerentur, neque subsidio veniri neque commenatus supportari, interclisis Itineribus, possent, prope jam desperata salute, nonnullæ hujusmodi sententiae dicebantur, ut impedimentis relictis, eruptione factâ, iisdem Itineribus, quibus eo per venissent, ad salutem contenderent. Majori tamen parti placuit, hoc reservato ad extremum consilio, interim rei eventum experiri et castra defendere.

IV. Brevi spatio interjecto, vix ut his rebus, quas constituisserunt, collocandis atque administrandis tempus daretur, hostes ex omnibus partibus signo dato decurrere, lapides gaesaque in vallum conjicerent. Nostri primo integris viribus fortiter repugnare, neque ullum frustra telum ex loco superiore mittere; ut quaeque pars castrorum nudata defensoribus premi videbatur, eo occurreret et auxilium ferre, sed hoc superari, quod diuturnitate pugnae hostes defessi proelio excedebant, alii integris viribus succedebant: quorum rerum a nostris propter paucitatem fieri nihil poterat, ac non modo defesso ex pugna excedendi, sed ne saucio quidem ejus loci, ubi constiterat, relinquenti ac sui recipiendi facultas dabatur.

V. Cum jam amplius horis sex continentem pugnaretur ac non solum vires, sed etiam tela nostros deficierent, atque hostes acrius instarent languidioribusque nostri
vallum scindere et fossas completere coepissent, resque esset jam ad extremum perducta casum, Publius Sextius Baculus, primi pili centurio, quem Nervico proelio compluribus confectum vulneribus diximus, et item Gauus Volusenus, tribunus militum, vir et consili magni et virtutis, ad Gallam accurrunt atque unam esse spem salutis docent, si eruptione facta extremum auxilium experientur. Itaque convocatis centurionibus celeriter milites certiores facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tela missa exciperent seque ex labore reficerent, post dato signo ex 10 castris erumperent atque omnem spem salutis in virtute ponerent.

VI. Quod jussi sunt, faciunt; ac subito omnibus portis eruptione facta, neque cognoscendi, quid fieret, neque sui colligendi hostibus facultatem relinquunt. Ita commutatae fortunae, eos, qui in spem potiundorum castrorum venerant, undique circumventos interficiunt et ex hominum millibus amplius triginta, quem numerum barbarorum ad castra venisse constatabat, plus tertia parte interfecta reliquis perterritos in fugam conjiciunt, ac ne in locis quidem superiores ribus consistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium copiis fusis armisque exutis, se in castra munitionesque suas recipient. Quo proelio facto, quod saepius fortunam tentare Galba nolebat, atque alio se in hiberna consilio venisse meminerat, aliis occurrisse rebus viderat, maxime frumenti commenatusque inopia permutus, postero die omnibus ejus vici aedificiis incensis, in provinciam reverti contendit; ac nullo hoste prohibente aut iter demorante, incolum legi- onem in Nantuates, inde in Allobroges perduxit ibique hiemavit.

VII. His rebus gestis, cum omnibus de causis Caesar pacatam Galliam existimaret, superatis Belgis, expulsis Germanis, victis in Alpibus Sedunis, atque ita inita hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eas quoque nationes adire et regiones cognoscere volebat, subitum bellum in Gallia coortum est. Ejus belli haec fuit causa. Publius Crassus adolescens cum legione septima proximus mare Oceænum in Andibus hiemarat. Is, quod in his locis
inopia frumenti erat, praefectos tribunosque militem compleures in finitimas civitates frumenti commeatusque petendi causā dimisit, quo in numero erat Titus Terrasidius, missus in Esubios, Marcus Trebius Gallus in Curiosolitas, Quintus Velanius cum Tito Silio in Venētos.

VIII. Hujus est civitatis longe amplissima auctoritas omnis orae maritimae regionum earum, quod et naves habēnt Venēti plurimas, quibus in Britanniam navigare consuerunt, et scientiā atque usu nauticarum rerum reliquisque antecedunt, et in magno impetu maris atque aperto, paucis portibus interiectis, quos tenent ipsi, omnes fere, qui eo mari uti consuerunt, habent vectigales. Ab his fit initium retinendi Siliī atque Velanī, quod per eos suos se obsides, quos Crasso dedissent, recuperaturos existimabant. Horum auctoritate finitimi adducti (ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentina consilia), eādem de causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missis legatis per suos principes inter se conjurant, nihil nisi communi consilio acturos eundemque omnis fortunae exitum esse laturos; reliquaque civitates sollicitant, ut in eā libertate, quam a majoribus accēperant, permanere quam Romanorum servitutem perferre malent. Omniaōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā, communem legationem ad Publīum Crassum mittunt; si velit suos recipere, obsides sibi remittat.

IX. Quibus de rebus Caesar ab Crasso certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, naves interim longas aedificari in flumine Ligēre, quod influit in Oceanum, remiges ex provinciā instituit, nautas gubernatoresque comparari jubet. His rebus celeriter administrātis ipse, cum primum per anni tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Venēti reliquaeque item civitates, cognito Caesāris adventu, simul quod, quantum in se facinus admississent, intelligebant (legatos, quod nomen ad omnes nationes sanctum inviolatumque semper fuisset, retentos a se et in vincula conjetos), pro magnitudine periculi bellum parare et maxime ea, quae ad usum navium pertinent, providere instituunt; hoc majore spe, quod multum naturā loci confidebant.
EXPLANATION.

1. The dotted red line represents the course of Caesar's fleet from the mouth of the Liger, Loire, to Point St. Jaques, off which it defeated the fleet of the Veneti.

2. The small plan at the left represents the manner in which Caesar took several towns of the Veneti; the red line R, A, the Roman agger. O, a town of the Veneti.
Pedestria esse itinera concisa aestuariis, navigationem impeditam pröpter inscientiamlocorum paucitatemque portuum sciebant, neque nostros exercitus propter frumenti inopiam diütius apud se morari posse confidebant; ac jam ut omnia contra opinionem acciderent, tamen se plurimum navibus posse; Romänos neque uulam facultatem habere navium, neque eorum locorum, ubi bellum gesturi essent, vada, portus, insulas novisse; ac longe aliam esse navigatem in concluso mari atque in vastissimo atque apertissimo Oceänö perspiciebant. His inits consiliis oppida munient, frumenta ex agris in oppida comportant, naves in Venetiam, ubi Caesären primum esse bellum gesturum constabat, quam plurimas possunt, cogunt. Socios sibi ad id bellum Osismos, Lexovios, Nannetos, Ambiliätos, Moriños, Diablointes, Menapios adsciscunt: auxilia ex Britaniä, quae contra eas regiones posita est, arcessunt.

X. Erant hae difficultates belli gerendi, quas supra ostendimus, sed multa Caesären tamen ad id bellum incitabant: injuriae retentorum equitum Romanorum, rebellio facta post deditionem, defectio datis obsidibus, tot civitatem conjuratio, imprinis, ne, hac parte neglecta, reliqua nationes sibi idem licere arbitrarentur. Itaque cum intelligeret omnes fere Gallos novis rebus studere et ad bellum mobiliter celeriterque excitari, omnes autem homines natura libertati studere et conditionem servitutis odisse, priusquam plures civitates conspirarent, partendum sibi at latius distribuendum exercitum putavit.

XI. Itaque Titum Labiënnum legatum in Treviros, qui proximi flumini Rheno sunt, cum equitatu mittit. Huic mandat, Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat atque in officio continent, Germänōsque, qui auxilio a Belgis arcessiti dicebantur, si per vim navibus flumen transire conentur, prohibeat. Publīum Crassum cum cohortibus legionariis duodecim, et magno numero equitatus in Aquitaniam proficienti jubet, ne ex his nationibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nationes conjungantur. \textit{Quintum Titurium Sabinum legatum cum legionibus tribus in Venellos, Curi- osolitas Lexoviosque mittit, qui eam manum distinct}
curet. Decimum Brutum adolescentem classi Gallícisque
navibus, quas ex Pictonibus et Santónis reliquisque pacatis
regionibus convenire jussert, praeficit, et cum primum
possit, in Venetos proficisci jubes. Ipse eo pedestribus
5 copiis contendit.

XII. Erant ejusmodi fere situs oppidorum, ut posita in
extremis lingulis promontoriisque, neque pedibus aditum
haberent, cum ex alto se aestus incitavisset, quod bis
accidit semper horarum viginti quattuor spatio, neque
10 navibus, quod rursus minuente aëstu naves in vadis afflic-
tarentur. Ita utrâque re oppidorum oppugnatio impedie-
batur; ac si quando magnitudine operis forte superati,
extruso mari aggere ac molibus atque his oppidi moenibus
adaequatis, suis fortunis desperare coeperant, magnno nume-
15 ro ñavium appulso, cujus rei summam facultatem habebant,
sua deportabant omnia seque in proxima oppida recipie-
bant. Ibi se rursus iisdem opportunitatibus loci defende-
bant. Haec eo facilius magnam partem aëstatis faciebant,
quod nostrae naves tempestatibus detinebantur, summa-
20 que erat vasto atque aperto mari, magnis aëstibus, rarí ac
prope nullis portibus, difficultas navigandi.

XIII. Namque ipsorum naves ad hunc modum factae
armataeque erant, Carinæ aliquanto planiores quam nos-
trarum navium, quò facilius vada ac decessum aëstus exci-
pere possent; ñorae admodum erectae, atque item puppes
ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestatumque accommoda-
tae; naves totae factae ex robore, ad quamvis vim et
contumeliam perseverand; transtra pedalibus in altitudi-
nem trabibus confixa clavis ferreis digiti pollicis crassitu-
dine; ancorae pro ñavibus ferreis catenis revinctae; pelles
pro velis alutaque tenuiter confectae, haec sive propter
lini inopiam atque ejus usus inscientiam, sive eo, quod est
magis verisimile, quod tantas tempestatibus Òceâni tantos-
que impetus ventorum sustineri ac tanta onera navium
25 regi velis non satis commodo posse arbitrabantur. Cum
his navibus nostrae classi ejusmodi congressus erat, ut una
celeritate et pulsu remorum praestaret, reliqua pro loci
naturâ, pro vi tempestatum illis essent aptiora et accommo-
LIBER TERTIUS.

datiorum. Neque enim his nostræ rostro nocere poterant (tanta in iis erat firmitudo), neque propter altitudinem facile telum adjiciebatur, et eædem de causâ minus comode copulis continentabantur. Accedebat ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et se vento dedissent, et tempestatem 5 ferrent facilius et in vadis considerent tutiis et ab aëstu relictæ nihil saxa et cautes timerent; quarum rerum om- nium nostris navibus casus erant extimescendi.

XIV. Compluribus expugnatis oppidis, Caesar, ubi in- tellexit frustra tantum laborem sumi, neque hostium fugam 10 captis oppidis reprimi neque his noci posse, statuit ex- spectandam classem. Quæ ubi convenit ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter ducentae et viginti naves eorum paratissimæ atque omni genere armorum ornatissimæ, profectæ ex portu, nostris adversae consisterunt; neque 15 satis Bruto, qui classi praeerat, vel tribunis militum cen- turionibusque, quibus singulae naves erant attributæ, constabat, quid agerent aut quam rationem pugnae in- sisterent. Rostro enim noci non posse cognoverant; turribus autem excitatis, tamen has altitudo puppium ex 20 barbaris navibus superabat, ut neque ex inferiori loco satis commode tela adjici possent, et missa ab Gallis gravius acciderent. Una erat magno usui res præparata a nostris, falces praecutæae, insertæ affixaæque longuriis, non absimili formâ muralium falcium. His cum funes, qui antennae 25 ad malos destinabant, comprehensi adductique erant, navi- gio remis incitato praerumpabantur. Quibus abscessis, antennæ necessario concidebant, ut, cum omnis Galliciæ navibus spes in velis armamentisque consideret, his ereptis omnis usus navium uno tempore eriperetur. Reliquum 30 erat certamen positum in virtute, quæ nostri milites facile superabant, atque eo magis, quod in conspectu Caesāris atque omnis exercitus res gerebatur, ut nullo paulo for- tius factum latere posset; omnes enim colles ae loca supe- riora, unde erat propinquus despectus in mare, ab exercitu 33 tenebantur.

XV. Dejectis, ut diximus, antennis, cum singulas binæ ae ternae naves circumsteterant, milites summâ vi
transcendere in hostium naves contendebant. Quod postquam barbari fieri animadverterunt, expugnatis compluribus navibus, cum ei rei nullum reperire tur auxilium, fugā salutem petere contenderunt; ac jam conversis in eam 5 partem navibus, quo ventus ferebat, tanta subito malacia ac tranquillitas exstitit, ut se ex loco movere non possent. Quae quidem res ad negotium conficiendum maxime fuit opportuna; nam singulae nostri consectati expugnaverunt, ut perpaucae ex omni numero noctis interventu ad terram 10 pervenerint, cum ab hora fere quartā usque ad solis occasum pugnaretur.

XVI. Quo proelio bellum Venetōrum totiusque orae maritimae confectum est. Nam cum omnīs juventus, omnes etiam gravioris aetatis, in quibus aliquid consili aut 15 dignitatis fuit, eo convenerant, tum navium quod ubique fuerat, unum in locum coēgerant; quibus amissis, reliqui neque quo se reciperent neque quemadmodum oppida defenderent, habeabant. Itaque se suaque omnia Caesāri dediderunt. In quos eo gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quo diligentius in reliquum tempus a barbaris jus legatorum conservaretur. Itaque, omni senatu necato, reliquis sub coronā vendidit.

XVII. Dum haec in Venētis geruntur, Quintus Titurius Sabinus cum iis copiis, quas a Caesāre acceperat, in fines 25 Venellōrum pervenit. His praerat Viridōvix ac summam imperii tenebat earum omnium civitatum, quae defecerant, ex quibus exercitum magnasque copias coēgerat; atque his paucis diebus Aulerici Eburōvices Lexoviique, senatu suo interfecto, quod auctores belli esse nolebant, portas clause. 30 runt seque cum Viridovice conjunxerunt; magnaque praeterea multitudo undique ex Galliā perditorum hominum latronumque conveni erant, quos spes praedandi studiumque bellandi ab agricultūrā et quotidiano labore revocabat Sabinus idoneo omnibus rebus loco castris sese tenebat, cum Viridōvix contra eum duum millium spatio consedisset, quotidiique productis copiis pugnandi potestatem faceret, ut jam non solum hostibus in contemplionem Sabī- 35 nus veniret, sed etiam nostrorum militum vocibus nonnihil
carperetur; tantamque opinionem timoris praebuit, ut jam
ad vallum castrorum hostes accedere auderent. Id ea
de causâ faciebat, quod cum tantâ multitudine hostium,
praesertim eo absenta, qui sūmmam imperii teneret, nisi
aequo loco aut opportunitate aliquă datâ, tegato dimicant-
dum non existimabat.

XVIII. Hac confirmatâ opinione timoris, idoneum quen-
dam hominem et callidum delegit, Gallum, ex his, quos
auxiliī causâ secum habebat. Huic magnis praemiis polli-
citationibusque persuadet, uti ad hostes transeat, et, quid 10
fieri velit, edocet. Qui ubi pro perfugâ ad eos venit,
timorem Romanorum proponit, quibus angustiis ipse Ca-
esar a Venetiis prematur, docet, neque longius abesse, quin
proximâ nocte Sabinus clam ex castris exercitum educat et
ad Caesârem auxiliī ferendi causâ proficiscatur. Quod ubi 15
auditum est, conclamant omnes occasionem negotii bene
gerendi amittendam non esse, ad castra iri oportere. Mul-
tae rés ad hoc consilium Gallos hortabantur; superiorum
dierum Sabini cunctatio, perfugiae confirmatio, inopia ciba-
riorum, cui rei parum diligenter ab iis erat providum, 20
spes Venetici belli et quod fere libenter homines id, quod
volunt, credunt. His rebus adducti non prius Viridovićem
reliquosque duces ex concilio dimittunt, quam ab his sit
concessum, arma uti capiant et ad castra contendant. Quâ
re concessâ laeti, ut explorât victorîa, armentis virgultis 25
que collectis, quibus fossâs Romanorum compleant, ad ca-
stra pergunt.

XIX. Locus erat castrorum editus et paulatim ab imo
acclivis circiter passus nille. Huc magno cursu contener-
dunt, ut quam minimum spatii ad se colligendos arman 30
dosque Românis daretur, exanimatique pervenerunt. Sa-
binus suos hortatus cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis
hostibus propter ea, quae ferebant, onera, subito duabus
portis eruptionem fieri jubet. Factum est opportunitate
loci, hostium inscientiā ac defatigatione, virtute militum, 35
et superiorum pugnarum exercitazione, ut ne unum qui-
dem nostrorum impetu ferrent ac statim terga verterent.
Quos impeditos integris viribus milites nostri consecuti
magnum numerum eorum occiderunt; reliquos equites consecati, paucos, qui ex fugā evaserant, reliquerunt. Sīc uno tempore et de navali pugnā Sabinus et de Sabini victoriā Caesar est certior factus, civitatesque omnes se statim Titurio dediderunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallorum alacer ac promptus est animus, sic mollis ac minime resistens ad calamitates perferendas mens eorum est.

XX. Eodem fere tempore Publius Crassus, cum in Aquitaniam pervenisset, quae pars, ut ante dictum est, et regionum latitudine et multitūdine hominum ex tertīa parte Galliae est aestimanda, cum intelligeret in his locis sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucis ante annis Lucius Valerius Praecōminus legatus exercitum pulso interfectus esset, atque unde Lucius Mallius proconsul impedimentis amissis profugisset, non mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhibendam intelligebat. Itaque, re frumentaria provisa, auxiliis equitatuque comparato, multis praeterea viris fortibus Tolosā et Narbōne, quae sunt civitates Galliae provinciae finiti-

mae his regionibus, nominatim evocatis, in Sontiātum fines exercitum introduxit. Cujus adventu cognito, Sontiātes magnis copiis coactis equitatuque, quo plurimum valebant, in itinere agmen nostrum adorti primum equestre proelium commiserunt; deinde, equitatu suo pulso atque insequen-
tibus nostris, subito pedestres copias, quas in convalle in insidiis collocavant, ostenderunt. Hi nostros disjectos adorti proelium renovarunt.

XXI. Pugnatum est diu atque acriter, cum Sontiātes superioribus victoriis fretī in sua virtute totius Aquitaniae saltem positam putarent, nostri autem, quid sine imperatore et sine reliquis legionibus, adolescentulo dūce, efficere possent, perspicī cuperent: tandem confēctī vulneribus hostes terga vertēre. Quorum magnō numero interfecto, Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sontiātum oppugnare coepit.

Quibus fortiter resistentibus vineas turresque egit. Illi alias eruptione tentātā, alias cuniculis ad aggerem vineasque actis (cujus rei sunt longe peritissimi Aquitāni, prop-terea quod multis locis apud eos aerariae secturae sunt),
ubi diligentiā nostrorum nihil his rebus profici posse intellexerunt, legatos ad Crassum misserunt sequem in editionem ut recipiat petunt. Quā re impetrāta arma tradere jussi faciunt.

XXII. Atque in eā re omnium nostrorum intentis animis, alīā ex parte oppidi Adcantuannus, qui summan imperii tenebat, cum sexcentis devotis, quos illī soldurios appellant (quorum haec est conditio, uti omnibus in vita commodis una cum his fruantur, quorum se amicitiae dediderint; si quid his per vim accidat, aut eundem casum una ferant aut sibi mortem consciscant; neque adhuc hominum memoriam repertus est quisquam, qui eo interfecet cujus se amicitiae devovisset, mortem recusaret), cum his Adcantuannus eruptionem facere conatus, clamore ab ea parte munitionis sublato, cum ad arma milites concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnatum esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen uti eadem editionis conditioe uteetur, ab Crasso impetravit.

XXIII. Armis obsidibusque acceptis Crassus in fines Vocatium et Tarusatium praefectus est. Tum vero bar-bari commoti, quod oppidum, et naturā locī et manu mutinitum, paucis diebus, quibus eo ventum erat, expugnatum cognoverant, legatos quoquoversum dimittere, conjurarre, obsides inter se dare, copias parare coeperunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eas civitates legati, quae sunt citerioris Hispaniae finitimae Aquitaniae; inde auxilia ducesque accessuntur. Quorum adventu magnā cum auctoritate et magnā cum hominum multitudine bellum gerere conantur. Ducès vero ii deliguntur, qui una cum Quinto Sertorio omnēs annos fuerant summanque scientiam rei militaris habere so existimabantur. Hi consuetudine populi Romanī loca capere, castra munire, commeatibus nostrōs intercludere instituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, suas copias propter exiguitatem non facile diduci, hostem et vagari et viās obsidere et castris satis praestidii relinquare, ob eam causam minus coīnmode frumentum comemantique sibi supportari, in dies hostium numerum augeri, non cunctandum existimavit, quin pugnā decertaret. Hac re ad
DE BELLO GALLICO

consilium delata, ubi omnes idem sentire intellexit, post-
rum diem pugnae constituit.

XXIV. Prima luce, productis omnibus copiis, duplici
acie instituta, auxiliis in medium aciem conjectis, quid
hostes consilii ciperent expectabat. Illi, etsi propter
multitudinem et veterem bellii gloriam paucitatemque nos-
trorum se tuto dimicaturos existimabant, tamen tutius
esse arbitrabantur, obsessis viis, commenatu intercluso, sine
ullo vulnere victoria potiri: et, si propter inopiam rei fru-
mentariae Romani sese recipere coepissent, impeditos in
agmine et sub sarcinis infirmiore animo adoriri cogitabat.
Hoc consilio probato ab ducibus, productis Romanorum
copiis, sese castris tenebant. Hac re spectata, Crassus,
cum sua cunctatione atque opinione timoris hostes nos-
tros milites alacriores ad pugnandum esserissent, atque
omnum voces audiretur, expectari diuitis non oportere,
quim ad castra iretur, cohortatus suos, omnibus cupientibus,
ad hostium castra contendit.

XXV. Ibi, cum aliis fossas compleverent, aliis multis telis
conjectis defensores vallo munitionibusque depellerent,
auxiliareque, quibus ad pugnam non multum Crassus
confidebat, lapidibus telisque subministrandis et ad agge-
rem cespitibus comportandis speciem atque opinionem
pugnantium praebent, cum item ab hostibus constan-
ter ac non timide pugnaretur telaque ex loco superiore
missa non frustra acciderent, equites, circumitis hostium
castris, Crasso renuntiaverunt, non eadem esse diligentia
ab decumanā portā castra munita facilemque aditum ha-
bere.

XXVI. Crassus equitum praefectos cohortatus, ut mag-
nis praemiis pollicipationibusque suos excitaret, quid fieri
velit, ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperatum, duxerunt quattuor
cohortibus, quae, praesidio castris reliectae, intritas ab la-
bore erant, et longiore itinere circumductis, ne ex hostium
castris conspici possent, omnium oculis mentibusque ad
pugnam intentis, celeriter ad eas, quas diximus, munitio-
nes pervenerunt, atque his prortus prius in hostium castris
constiterunt, quam plane ab his videri, aut, quid rei gere-
retur, cognoscit posset. Tum vero, clamore ab ea parte audito, nostri redintegrati viribus, quod plerumque in spe victoriae accidere consuevit, acrius impugnare coeperunt. Hostes undique circumventi, desperatis omnibus rebus, se per munitiones dejicere et fugā salutem petere et intenderunt. Quos equitatus apertissimis campis consecutatur, ex millium quinquaginta numero, quae ex Aquitania Cantābrisque convenisse constabat, vix quartà parte relictā, multā nocte se in castra receptī.

XXVII. Hac auditā pugnā, maxima pars Aquitanae sese Crasso dedidit obsidesque ultro misit; quo in numero fuerunt Tarbelli, Bigerriūōnes, Ptiāni, Vocātes, Tarusātes, Elusātes, Gates, Ausci, Garumni, Sibuzātes, Cocosātes. Paucae ultimae nationes annis tempore confissent, quod hiems suberat, hoc facere neglexerunt.

XXVIII. Eodem fere tempore Caesar, essi propē exacta jam aetas erat, tamen, quod, omni Galliā pacata, Morīni Manapīque supererant, qui in armīs essent neque ad eum unquam legatos de pace misissent, arbitratus id bellum celeriter confici posse, eo exercitūm adduxit; qui, longe aliā ratione ac reliqui Galli, bellum gerere coeperunt. Nam quod intelligebant maximas nationes, quae proelio contendissent, pulsas superatasque esse, continentēsque silvas ac paludes habebant, eo se suaque omnia contulerunt. Ad quorum initium silvarum cum Caesar pervenisset castra, que munire instituisset, neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere nostris, subito ex omnibus partibus silvae evolaverunt et in nostros impetum fecerunt. Nostri celeriter arma cepserunt eosque in silvas repulerunt, et, compluribus interfecit, longius impeditioribus locis secuti paucos ex suis desperiderunt.

XXIX. Reliquis deinceps diebus Caesar silvas caedere instituit, et ne quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam materiam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem collocabant et pro vallo ad utrumque latus exstruebant. Incredibili celeritate magnō spatio paucī diebus confecto, cum jam pecus atque extrema impedimenta ab nostris tenerentur, ipsi densiores
altra pateram et invicem sunt tempora consecutae, uti opus necessario intermitteretur et completione imbrum divum sub pestibus minas exerceri sole posset. Itaque, vastas funebres corum agis, vici seculisque incensis, Caesar exercitum reliquit et in Anteuros Lexovisque, religios jure civitatis, qua proxime bellum fecerant, in hibernis occultavit.
LIBER QUARTUS.

LIBER IV.

I. Ex, quae secuta est, hieme, qui fuit annus Gnaeo Pompéo, Marco Crasso consulibus, Uspētes Germāni et item Tectāri magnā cum multitudine hominum flumen Rhenum transierunt, non longe a mari, quo Rhenus infulit. Causa transeundi fuit, quod ab Suebis complures annos 5 exagitati bello premebantur et agricultūra prohibebantur. Sueborum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germānorum omnium. His centum pagos habere dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula millia armatorum bellandi causā ex finibus educunt. Reliqui, qui domi manserunt, se atque 10 illos alunt. Hi rursus in vicem anno post in armis sunt, illi domi remanent. Sic neque agricultūra nec ratio atque usus belli intermittit. Sed privati ac separati agri apud eos nihil est, neque longius anno remanere uno in loco incolendi causā licet. Neque multum frumento, sed 15 maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in venationibus; quae res et cibi gerere et quotidianā exercitacione et libertate vitae (quod, quæ pueros nullo officio aut disciplīna assuefacti, nihil omnino contra voluntatem faciant), et vires alit et immanis corporum magnitudine homines efficit. Atque in eam se consuetūdinem adduxerunt, ut locis frigidissimis neque vestitus praeter pelles habeant quidquid (quarum prōpter exiguītatem magna est corporis pars aperta), et laventur in fluminibus.

II. Mercateribus est ad eos aditus magis eo, ut, quae 25 bello ceperint, quibus vendant, habeant, quam quo ullam rem ad se importari desiderent. Quin etiam jumentis, quibus maxime Galli delectantur, quaeque impenso parant pretio, Germāni importātīs non utuntur, sed quae sunt spud eos nata, parva atque deformia, haec quotidīnā 30
exercitatione summi ut sint laboris, efficiunt. Equestribus proeliiis saepe ex equis desiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equosque eodem remanere vestigio asseuecerunt, ad quos se referiter, cum usus est, recipiunt; necne eorum moribus turpius quidquam aut inertiis habetur, quam ephippiis uti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ehippiatorum equitum, quamvis pauci, adire audent. Vinum ad se omnino importari non sinunt, quod eae re ad laborem ferendum remollescere homines atque effeminari arbitrantur.

III. Publice maximam putant esse laudem, quam latis-sime a suis finibus vacare agros; hac re significari magnum numerum civitatium suam vim sustinere non posse. Itaque una ex parte a Suebis circiter millia passuum sexcenta agri vacare diciuntur. Ad alteram partem succedunt Ubii, quorum fuit civitas ampla atque florens, ut est captus Germanorum, et paulo sunt ejudem generis ceteris humaniores, propter ea quod Rhenum attingunt, multumque ad eos mercatores ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitatem Gallicos sunt moribus assuefacti. Hos cum Suebi multis saepe bellis experti, propter amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis, finibus expellere non potuissent, tamen vectigales sibi fecerunt ac multo humiliores infirmioresque redegerunt.

IV. In eadem causae fuerunt Uispetes et Tencteri, quos supra diximus, qui complures annos Sueborum vim sustinerunt; ad extremum tamen agris expulsi et multis locis Germaniae triennium vagati ad Rhenum pervenerunt, quas regiones Menapii incoblebant et ad utramque ripam fluminis agros, aedificia, vicosaque habebant; sed tanta multitudinis aditu perterriti, ex his aedificiis, quae trans flumen habuerant, demigraverunt, et, cia Rhenum dispositis prae-sidiis, Germanus transire prohibebant. Iill omnia experti, cum neque vi contendere propter inopiam navium neque clam transire propter custodias Menapiorum possent, re- verti se in suas sedes regionesque simulaverunt; et tridui viam progressi rursus reverterunt, atque omni hoc inimere una nocte equitatu confecto insciios inopinantesque Menapios oppresserunt, qui de Germanorum discessu per explo-
ratores certiores facti, sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigraverant. His interficitis navibusque eorum occupatis, priusquam ea pars Menapiorum, quae citra Rhenum quieta in suis sedibus erat, certior fieret, flumen transierunt, atque, omnibus eorum aedificiis occupatis, reli- quam partem hiemis se eorum copiis aluerunt.

V. His de rebus Caesar certior factus et infirmitatem Gallorum veritus, quod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles et novis plerunque rebus student, nihil his committendum existimavit. Est autem hoc Gallicae consuetudinis, uti et 10 viatorem, etiam invitatos, consistere cogant, et, quid quique eorum de quaque re audierit aut cognoverit, quærant et mercatores in oppidis vulgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regionibus veniant, quasque ibi res cognoverint, pronuntiare cogant. His rebus atque auditionibus permoti de sum- 15 mis saepè rebus consilia ineunt, quorum eos e vestigio ponitere necesse est, cum incertis rumoribus serviant, et plerique ad voluntatem eorum ficta respondeant.

VI. Qua consuetudine cognitā, Caesar, ne graviori bello occurreret, maturius quam consuerat ad exercitum profici- 20 citur. Eo cum venisset, ea quae fore suspicatus erat, facta cognovit; missas legationes ab nonnullis civitatibus ad Germanos, invitatosque eos, uti ab Rheno discederent, omniamque quae postulassent, ab se fore parata. Qua spe adducti Germani latius vagabantur et in fines Eburōnum 25 et Condusorum, qui sunt Trevirorum clientes, pervenerant. Principibus Galliae evocatis, Caesar ea, quae cognoverat, dissimulanda sibi existimavit, eorumque animis permullis et confirmatis equitatuque imperato, bellum cum Germanis gerere constituit.

VII. Re frumentariā comparata equitibusque delectis, iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germanos audiebat. A quibus cum paucorum dierum iter abesset, legati ab his venerunt, quorum haec fuit oratio: Germanios neque priores populo Romano bellum inferre neque tamen 35 recusare, si laessantur, quin ārmīs contendant; quod Germanorum consuetudo haec sit a majoribus tradita, qui-cumque bellum inferant, resistere neque deprecari. Haeo
tamen dicere: Venisse invitos, ejectos domo; si suam gra-
tiam Romāni velint, posse iis utiles esse amicos; vel sibi
agros attribuānt, vel patiantur eos tenere quos armis posse-
derint; sese unis Suēbis concedere, quibus ne dii quidem
immortales pares esse possint; reliquum quidem in terris
esse neminem, quem non superare possint.

VIII. Ad haec Caesar, quae visum est, respondit; sed
exitus fuit orationis: Sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse
posse, si in Galliā remanerent; neque verum esse, qui suos
10 fines tueri non potuerint, alienos occupare; neque ullos in
Gallīā vacare agros, qui dari, tantae praesertim multitudini,
sine injuriā possint. Sed licere, si velint, in Ubiōrum fini-
bus considere, quorum sint legati apud se et de Suebōrum
injurīis queruntur et a se auxilium petant; hoc se Ubiis
15 imperaturum.

IX. Legati haec se ad suos relatus dixerunt, et, re
deliberātā, post diem tertium ad Caesārem reversuros:
interea ne propius se castra moverent, petierunt. Ne id
quidem Caesar ab se impetrari posse dixit. Cognoverat
20 enim, magnam partem equitatus ab iis aliquot diebus ante
praedandi frumentandiique causā ad Ambivāritos trans Mo-
sam missam. Hos exspectari equites atque ejus rei causā
moram interponi arbitrabatur.

X. Mosa profuit ex monte Vosēgo, qui est in finibus
25 Lingōnum, et parte quādam ex Rheno receptā, quae appel-
latur Vahālis, insulam efficit Batavōrum, neque longius ab
Rhenō millibus passuum octoginta in Oceānum influit.
Rhenus autem oritur ex Lēpontiis, qui Alpes incolunt, et
longo spatio per fines Nantuatium, Helvetiōrum, Sequanō-
30 rum, Mediomatricum, Triboccōrum, Trevirōrum citatus fer-
tur, et ubi Oceāno appropinquavit, in plures defuit partes,
multis-ingenibusque insulis effectis (quarum pars magna a
fēris barbarisque nationibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt, qui
piscibus atque ovis avium vivere existimantur), multisque
35 capitibus in Oceānum influit.

XI. Caesar cum ab hoste non amplius passuum du-
decim millibus abset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legati
revertuntur; qui in itinere congressi magnopere ne longius
progrederetur orabant. Cum id non impetrassent, petebant, uti ad eos equites, qui agmen antecessissent, praemitteret, eoque pugnā prohiberet, sibique uti potestatem faceret in Ubios legatos mittendi; quorum si principes ao senatus sibi jurejurando fidem fecissent, eā conditio, quae a Caesāre ferretur, se usuros ostendebant; ad hās res conficiendas sibi tridui spatium daret. Hae omnia Caesar eodem illo pertinere arbitrabatur, ut, tridui morā interpositā, equites eorum, qui abessent, reverterentur; tamen sese non longius millibus passuum quattuor aquationis causā processurum eo die dixit; huc postero die quam frequentissimi conveniunt, ut de eorum postulatis cognosceret. Interim ad praefectos, qui cum omni equitatu antecesserant, mittit, qui nuntiarent, nē hostes proelio laecesserent, et si ipsi laecesserentur, sustinerent, quoad ipse cum exercitu propius accessisset.

XII. At hostes ubi primum nostros equites conspexerunt, quorum erat quinque millium numerus, cum ipsi non amplius octingentos equites haberent, quod ii, qui frumentandi causa ierant trans Mosam, nondum redierant, nihil timentibus nostris, quod legati eorum paulo ante a Caesāre diesserant atque is dies induciis erat ab his petitus, impetu facto celeriter nostros perturaverunt. Rursus resistentibus, consuetudine sua ad pedes desiluerunt, suffossis equis compluribusque nostris dejectis, reliquis in fugam conjecerunt atque ita perterritos egerunt, ut non prius fugā desisterent, quam in conspectum agminis nostri venissent. In eo proelio ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur quattuor et septuaginta, in his vir fortissimus, Piso Aquitanus, amplissimo genere natus, cujus avus in civitate sua regnum obtinuerat, amicus ab senatu nostro appellatus. Hic cum fratris intercluso ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculo eripuit; ipse equo vulnerato dejectus, quoad potuit, fortissime restitit. Cum circumventus multis vulneribus acceptis ceccidisset, atque id frater, qui jam proelio excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitato equo, se hostibus obtulit atque interfundit est.

XIII. Hoc facto proelio, Caesar nēque jam sibi legatos
audiendos neque conditiones accipiendas arbitrabatur ab iis, qui per dolum atque insidias, petitâ pace, utro bellum intulissent; exspectare vero, dum hostium copiae augerentur equitatusque reverteretur, summæ dementiae esse judicabat, et cognitâ Gallorum infirmitate, quantum jam apud eos hostes uno proelio auctoritatis essent consecuti, sentiebat; quibus ad consilia cantienda nihil spatii dandum existimabat. His constituitus rebus et consilio cum legatis et quae estore communicato, ne quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportunissima res accidit, quod postridie ejus diei mane eadem et perfidia et simulatione usi Germani frequentes, omnibus principibus majoribusque hâtu adhibitis, ad eum in castra venerunt, simul, ut dicebatur, sui purgandi causa, quod contra atque esset dictum et ipsi petissent, proelium pridie commississent, simul ut, si quid posseint, de induciis fallendo preciparet. Quos sibi Caesar oblatos gavisus, illos retineri jussit; ipse omnes copias castris eduxit, equitatumque, quod recenti proelio perterritum esse existimabat, agmen subsequi jussit.

XIV. Acie tripli institutâ et celeriter octo millium itinere confecto, prius ad hostium castra pervenit, quam, quid ageretur, Germani sentire possent. Qui omnibus rebus subito perterriti, et celeritate adventus nostri et discessu suorum, neque consilii habendi neque arma cantiendi spatio dato perturbantur, copiasne adversus hostem edescere, an castra defendere, an fugâ salutem petere, praestaet. Quorum timor cum fremitu et concursu significaretur, milites nostri pristini diei perfidia incitati in castra irruperunt. Quo loco qui celeriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper nostri restiterunt atque inter carros impedimentaque proelium commiserunt; at reliqua multitudo puerorum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant Rhenumque transierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quos consistandos Caesar equitatum misit.

XV. Germani, post tegrum clamore audito, cum suos interfici viderent, armis abjectis signisque militaribus reliquis, se ex castris ejecerunt; et cum ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni pervenissent, reliqua fugâ desperatâ, magno
numero interfecto, reliqui se in flumen praecipitaverunt atque ibi timore, lassitudine, vi fluminis oppressi perierunt. Nostri ad unum omnes incolunt, perpaucis vulneratis, extanti belli timore, cum hostium numeros capitum quadringentorum et triginta millium fuisset, se in castra receperunt. Caesar his, quos in castris retinuerat, discendendi potestatem fecit. Illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallorum veriti, quorum agros vexaverant, remanere se apud eum velle dicerunt. His Caesar libertatem concessit.

XVI. Germanico bello confecto, multis de causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhenum esse transeundum; quarum illa fuit justissima, quod, cum videret Germānos tam facile impelli, ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rebus eos timere voluit, cum intelligerent et posse et audere populi Romāni exercitum Rhenum transire. Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitatus Usipētum et Tenctorīrum, quam supra commemoravi præedandi frumentandique causā Mosam transisse neque proelio interfuisse, post fugam suorum se trans Rhenum in fines Sigambrōrum receperat seque cum iis conjunxerat. Ad quos cum Caesar nuntios mississet, qui postularent, eos, qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dederent, respondērant: Populi Romāni imperium Rhenum finire; si, se invito, Germānos in Galliam transire non aequum existimaret, cur cui quidquam esse imperii aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularet? Ubii autem, qui uni ex Transrhenānis ad Caesarem legatos miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dederant, magnopere obabant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Sēribis premerrentur; vel, si id facere occupationibus rei publicae prohiberetur, exercitum modo Rhenum transportaret; id sibi ad auxiliium spemque reliqui temporis satis futurum. Tantum esse nomen atque opinionem ejus exercitus, Ariovistō pulso et hoc novissimo proelio facto, etiam ad ultimas Germanorum nationes, uti opinione et amicitia populi Romāni tuti esse possint. Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur.

XVII. Caesar his de causis, quas commemoravi, Rhenum transire decreverat, sed navibus transire neque satis
tutum esse arbitrabatur, neque suae neque populi Români
dignitatis esse statuebat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultas
faciendi pontis proponebatur propter latitudinem, rapidita-
tem altitudinemque fluminis, tamen id sibi contendendum
aut alter non transcendendum exercitum existimabat. Rationem pontis hanc instituit; Tigna bina sesquipedalia, paulum
ab imo praecuta, dimensa ad altitudinem fluminis, intervallo pedum duorum inter se jungetat. Haec cum
machinationibus immissa in flumen defixerat fistuciisque
adegerat, non subicae modo directe ad perpendiculum, sed
prone ac fastigate, ut secundum naturam fluminis procumberent; his item contraria duo ad eundem modum juncta
intervallo pedum quadragenum ab inferiore parte, contra
vimi atque impetum fluminis conversa statuebat. Haec
utraque insuper bipedalibus trabibus immisssis, quantum
eorum tignorum juctura distabat, binis utrimque fihulis
ab extremâ parte distinebantur; quibus disclusis atque in
contrariam partem revinentis, tanta erat operis firmitudo
atque ea rerum natura, ut quo major vis aquae se incita-
visset, hoc artius illigata teneruntur. Haec directâ materiâ
injectâ contexebantur et longuriis cratibusque consterne-
bantur. Ac nihil secius subicae et ad inferiorem partem
fluminis oblique agebantur, quae pro ariete subjectae et
cum omni opere conjunctae, vim fluminis exciperent, et aliae
item supra pontem mediocri spatio, ut arborum trunci
sive naves dejiciendi operis essent a barbaris missae, his de-
sensoribus earum rerum vis minueretur, neu ponti nocerent.

XVIII. Diēbus decem, quibus materia coepta erat com-
portari, omni opere effecto, exercitus transducitur. Caesar
ad utramque partem pontis firmo praesidio relictâ, in fines
Sigambrorum contendit. Interim a compluribus civitati-
bus ad eum legati veniunt, quibus pacem atque amicitiam
petentibus liberaliter respondit obsidesque ad se adduci
jubet. At Sigambri, ex eo tempore quo pons instituit
coeptus est, fugâ comparâtâ, hortantibus is quoque ex Tenc-
tēris atque Usipetibus apud se habebant, finibus suis ex-
cesserant suaque omnia exportaverant seque in solitudi-
nem ac silvas abdiderant.
Liber Quartus.

XIX. Caesar paucos dies in eorum finibus moratus, omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis frumentisque succisis, se in fines Ubiorum recepit, atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suebis premerentur, haec ab iis cognovit: Suebos, posteaquam per exploratores pontem fieri comprehendissent, more suo concilio habito, nuntios in omnes partes dimisisse, uti de oppidis demigrarent, liberos, uxores, suaque omnia in silvis deponerent, atque omnes qui arma fere possent unum in locum convenirent; hunc esse dialectum medium fere regionum earum quas Suebi obtinere; hic Romanorum adventum expectare atque ibi decertare constituisse. Quod ubi Caesar cœperit, omnibus his rebus confectis, quorum rerum causa transducere exercitum constituerat, ut Germanis metum injiceret, ut Sigambros ulcisceretur, ut Ubios obsidione liberaret, diebus 15 omnino decem et octo trans Rhenum consumptis, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum arbitratus, se in Galliam recepit pontemque rescidit.

XX. Exiguæ parte aestatis reliqua, Caesar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septemtriones vergit, maturæ sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus fere Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intelligebat; et si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen magnos sibi usui fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adisset et genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portus, aditus cognovisset; quae omnia fere Galliae erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercatores illo adit quisquam, neque his ipsis quidquam, praeter quam maritimam atque eas regiones quae sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque vocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quantae nationes incoherent, neque quam usum bellii haberent aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui essent ad majorum navium multitudinem idonei portus, reperire poterant.

XXI. Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idoneum esse arbitratus Gallum Volusium cum navi longâ praemittit. Huic mandat, uti exploratis omnibus
rebus ad se quam primum revertatur. Ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trajectus. Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus et, quām superiore aestate ad Venetīcum bellum effecerat, classem jubet convenire. Interim consilio ejus cognito et per mercatores perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus insulae civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui pollicentur obsides dare atque imperio populi Romānī obtinerēre. Quibus auditis, liberaliter pollicitus, hortatusque ut in ea sententiā permanerent, eos domum remittit et cum iis una Commium, quem ipse, Atrebatībus superatis, regem ibi constituerat, cujus et virtutem et consilium probabat, et quem sibi fidelem arbitrabatur, cujusque auctoritas in his regionibus magni habebatur, mittit. Huic imperat, quas possit, adeat civitates, horteturque ut populi Romānī fidem sequantur, seque celeriter eo venturum nuntiet. Voluēmus, perspectis regionibus omnibus, quantum ei facultatis dari potuit, qui navi egredi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, quinto die ad Caesōrem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspexisset renuntiat.

XXII. Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causā moratur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum legati venerunt, qui se de superioris temporis consilio excusarent, quod homines barbāri et nostrae consuetudinis imperīti bellum populo Romānō fecissent, seque ea, quae imperasset, facturos pollicerentur. Hoc sibi satis opportune Caesar accidisse arbitratūs, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat, neque belli gerendi propter anni temporum facultatem habebat, neque has tantularum rerum occupations sibi Britanniae anteponendas judicabat, magnum iis obsidium numerum imperat. Quibus adductis eos in fidem recepit. Navibus circiter octoginta onerariis coactis contractisque, quot satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quod praeterea navium longarum habebat, quae onerariis distribuit. Huc accedebant octodecim onerariae naves, quae ex eo loco ab millibus passuum octo vente tenebantur, quo minus in eundem portum pervenire possent; has equitibus distribuit.
Reliquum exercitum Quinto Titurio Sabino et Lucio Aurunculeio Cotta, legatis, in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legati non venerant, ducentum cedit. Publìum Sulpìciurn Rufum legaturn, cum eo praesidio quod satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere iussit.

XXIII. His constituitis rebus, nactus idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem, tertiâ fere vigilia solvit, equitesque in ulteriorem portum progredivit et naves conscendere et se sequi iussit. A quibus cum paulo tardius esset adminis- tratum, ipse horâ diei circiter quartâ cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium copias armatas conspexit. Cujus loci haec erat natura, atque ita montibus angustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in litus telum adigi posset. Hunc ad egrediendum nequaquam idoneum locum arbitratus, dum reliquae naves eo convenirent, ad horam nonam in ancoris exspectavit. Interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis, et quae ex Volusiano cognosset, et quae fieri vellet, ostendit, monuitque (ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut mari- timae res postularent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem motum haberent) ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His dimissis, et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo et sublatis ancoris, circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

XXIV. At barbari, consilio Romanorum cognito, prae- misso equitatu et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in proeliiis uti consuerunt, reliquis copiis subsecuti, nostros navibus egredi prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summae difficultas, quod naves propter magnitudinem, nisi in alto, constuiti non poterant; militibus autem, ignotis locis, im- peditis manibus, magno et gravi armorum onere oppressis, simul et de navibus desiliendum et in fluctibus consisten- dum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum; cum illi aut ex arido, aut paululum in aquam progressi, omnibus membris expediti, potissimis locis, audacter tela coniicerent et equos insuefactos incitarent. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti atque
hujus omnino generis pugnae imperiti, non eadem alacritate ac studio, quo in pedestribus uti proeliis consueverant, nitebantur.

XXV. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, naves longas, quorum et species erat barbaris insituationem motus ad usum expeditionis, paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus et remis incitari et ad latus apertum hostium constitutum, atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis, hostes propelli ac submo- veri jussit: quae res magno usui nostris fuit. Nam et navium figuræ et remorum motu et insitato genere tormentorum permoti barbari constiterunt ac paulum modo pedem retulerunt. Atque nostris milites in cunctationibus, maxime propter altitudinem maris, qui decimæ legionis aquilam ferebat, contestatus deos, ut eâ res legioni felici- ter eveniret: "Desilite," inquit, "commilitones, nisi multus aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certe meum rei publicae atque imperatoris officium praestitero." Hoc cum magnum voce dixisset, se ex navi proiectit atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri cohortati inter se, ne tantum dedecus admitteretur, universi ex navi desilterunt. Hos item ex proximis navibus cum conspexissent, subsecuti hostibus appropinquarunt.

XXVI. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. Nostri ta- men, quod neque ordinem servare neque firmiter insistere neque signa subseque poterant, atque alius aliæ ex navi, qui-buscumque signis occurrerat, se aggregabat, magnopere perturbabantur. Hostes vero, notis omnibus vados, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis, impeditos adoriebantur; plurés paucos cir- cumcistebant; alii ab latere aperto in universos tela con- ciebant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus compleri jussit, et quos laborantes conspexerat, his subsidia submit- tebat. Nostri simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus consecutis, in hostes impetum fecerunt atque eos in fugam dederunt, neque longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit.
XXVII. Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fugā receperunt, statim ad Caesārem legatos de pace miserunt, obsides daturos, quaeque imperasset facturos sese, polliciti sunt. Una cum his-legatis Commius Atrébas venit, quem supra demonstraveramus a Caesāre in Britanniam prae-5 missum. Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos oratoris modo Caesāris mandata deferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula conjecerant; tum proelio facto remiserunt et in petendā pace ejus rei culpam in multitūdinem contulerunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignosceretur petiverunt. Caesār questus, quod, cum ultro in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causā intelissent, ignoscere imprudentiæ dixit obsidesque imperavit; quorum illi partem statim dederunt, partem ex longinquoribus locis accessitam paucis diebus sese daturos dixerunt. Interea 15 suos remigrare in agros jusserunt, principesque undique convenire et se civitatenquā suas Caesāri commodare coeperunt.

XXVIII. His rebus pace confirmāta, post diem quartum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves octodecim, de qui-20 bus supra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. Quae cum appro-pinquarent Britanniae et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla earum currum tenere posset, sed aliae eodem, unde erant profectae, referrentur; 25 aliae ad inferiorem partem insulae, quae est proprius solis occasum, magno suī cum periculo deciderentur; quae tamen, ancoris jactis, cum fluctibus complementur, necessario adversā nocte in altum proiectae continentem petierunt.

XXIX. Eadem nocte accidit, ut esset luna plena, qui 30 dies maritimos aestus maximos in Oceāno efficere consuevit; nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curaverat quasque in aridum subduxerat, aestus complebat, et onerrarias, quae ad ancoras erant deligatae, tempestas 35 afflictabat; neque ulla nostris facultas aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabatur. Compluribus navibus fractis, reliquae cum essent, funibus, ancoris, reliquisque armamentis
amissis, ad navigandum inutiles, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, totius exercitus perturbationis facta est. Neque enim naves erant aliae, quibus reportari possent, et omnia deerrant, quae ad reficiendas naves erant usui, et, quod omnibus constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

XXX. Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britanniae, qui post proelium ad Caesarem convenerant, inter se collocuti, cum equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse inteligerent et pancratem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent, quae hoc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat, optimum factum esse duxerunt, rebellione facta, frumento commetueque nostros prohibere et rem in hiemem producere, quod, his superatis aut reditu interclusis, neminem postea belli inferendī causa in Britanniam transitum confidebant. Itaque rursus conjuratione facta, paulatim ex castris discedere ac suos clam ex agris deducere cœperunt.

XXXI. At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex eventu navium suarum, et ex eo, quod obsides dare interniserant, fore id, quod acedit, suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat. Nam et frumentum ex agris quotidie in castra conferebat, et quae gravissime afflictae erant naves, earum materia atque aere ad reliquias reficiendas utebatur, et quae ad eas res erant usui, ex continenti comportari jubebat. Itaque, cum summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodecim navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commode posset, effecit.

XXXII. Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una frumentatum missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque ullā ad id tempus bellī suspicione interpositā, cum pars hominum in agris remaneret, para etiam in castra ventitaret, ii, qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesāri nuntiaverunt pulverem majorem, quam consuetudo ferret, in eā parte videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consilii, cohortes, quae in stationibus erant, secum
in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquis duas in stationem cohortes succedere, reliquas armari et confestim sese subsequi jussit. Cum Paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi atque aegre sustinere et conferta legione ex omnibus partibus tela conjici, animadvertit. Nam quod, omni ex reliquis partibus depresso frumento, pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes huc nostros esse venturos noctu in silvis delituerant tum dispersos, depositis armis, in metendo occupatos subito adorti, paucis interfectis, reliquis incerti ordinebus perturbaverant; simul 10 equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

XXXIII. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae: primo per omnes partes perequitand et tela conjiciunt, atque ipso terrore equorum et strepitu rotarum ordines plerumque perturbant, et cum se inter equitum turmas insinuavere, ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus proeliarunt. Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt atque ita currus collocant ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in proeliis praestant, ac tantum usu quotidiano et exercitazione efficiunt, uti in declivi ac praecipiti loco incitatos equos sustinere, et brevi moderari ac flectere, et per temonem percurrere, et in jugo insistere et se inde in currus citissime recipere consuerint.

XXXIV. Quibus rebus perturbatis nostris novitato in pugnae, tempore opportunissimo Caesar auxilium tulit; namque ejus adventu hostes constiterunt, nostri se ex timore receperunt. Quo facto ad lacessemissum et ad committendum proelium alienum esse tempus arbitratus, suo se loco continuat et brevi tempore intermisso in castra legiones reduxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupatis, qui erant in agris, reliqui discesserunt. Secutae sunt continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros in castris continerent et hostem a pugnā prohiberent. Interim barbari nuntios in omnes partes dimiserunt, paucitatemque nostrorum militum suis praedicaverunt, et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum sui liberandi facultas daretur, si Romānos castris expulissent, demonstraverunt. His
rebus celeriter magnā multitudine peditatus equitatusque coactā ad castra venerunt. 

-XXXV. Caesar, etsi idem, quod superioribus diebus acciderat, fore videbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate sā periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equites circiter triginta, quos Commius Atrēbas, de quo ante dictum est, secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro castris constituit. Commissio proelio diūtius nostrorum militum imperium hostes ferre non potuerunt ac terga verterunt. Quos 10 tanto spatio securi, quantum cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt, complures ex iis occiderunt; deinde omnibus longe lāteque aedificiis incensis se in castra recéperunt.

XXXVI. Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi ad Caesārem de pace venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidium, 15 quem antea imperaverat, duplicavit easque in continentem adducē jussit, quod propinquā die aequinoctīi infirmis navibus hiemi navigationem subjiciendam non existimabat. Ipse idoneam tempestatem nactus paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit, quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex iis onerariae duae eosdem, quos reliquae, portus capere non potuerunt et paulo infra delatae sunt.

XXXVII. Quibus ex navibus cum essent expositi militēs circiter trecenti atque in castra contenderent, Mo- 25 rini, quos Caesar in Britanniam proficiscens pacatos reliquerat, spe praedae adducti primo non ita magno suorum numero circumstetērunt, ac si sese interfici nollet, arma ponere jussērunt. Cum ills, orbe facto, sese-defenderent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter millia sex conve- 30 nerunt. Quā re nuntiatā, Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim nostri militēs imperium hostium sustinuerunt atque amplius horis quattuor fortissimē pugnāverunt, et paucis vulneribus acceptis complures ex his occiderunt. Postea vero quam equitatus noster 35 in conspectum venit, hostes, objectis armis, terga verterunt magnusque eorum numerus est occisis.

XXXVIII. Caesar postero die Titum Labiēnum legatum cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia réduxerat, in
Mortinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui cum propter siccitates paludum, quo se reciperent, non haberent, quo perfugio superiore anno erant usi, omnes fere in potestatem Labiêni venerunt. At Quintus Titurius et Lucius Cotta legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abiderant, se ad Caesarem receperunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eo duae omnino civitates ex Britannia obsides miserunt, reliquae neglexe-10 runt. His rebus gestis, ex litteris Caesâris dierum viginti supplicatio a senatu decreta est.
LIBER V.

I. Lucio Domitio, Appio Claudio consulibus, discedens ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consuevat, legatis imperat, quos legionibus praefecerat, uti quam plurimas possent hieme naves aedificandas veteresque reficiendas curarent. Earum modum formamque demonstrat. Ad celeritatem onerandi subductionesque paulo facit humiliores, quam quibus in nostro mari uti consuevimus, atque id eo magis, quod propter crebras commutationes aestuum minus magnos ibi fluctus fieri cognoverat; ad onera ac multitudinem jumentorum transportandam paulo latiores, quam quibus in reliquis utimur maribus. Has omnes actuarias imperat fieri, quam ad rem humilitas multum adjuvat. Ea, quae sunt usui ad armandas naves, ex Hispaniā apportari jubet. Ipse, conventibus Galliae citerioris peractis, in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a Pirusstis finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus vastari audiebat. Eo cum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat certumque in locum convenire jubet. Quā re nuntiātā, Pirusiae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui doceant nihil earum rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrant omnibus rationibus de injuriis satisfacere. Perceptā oratione eorum, Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certam diem adduci jubet; nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecuturum demonstrat. His ad diem adductis, ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat, qui litem aetiment poenamque constituant.

II. His confectis rebus conventibusque peractis, in citeriori Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, circumitis omnibus hibernis, singulari militum studio in summā omnium rerum inopiam
circiter sexcentas ejus generis, cujus supra demonstravimus, naves et longas viginti octo invenit instructas, neque multum abesse ab eo, quin paucis diebus deduci possent. Collaudatis militia sitque iis qui negotio praefuerant, quid fieri velit ostendit, atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire jubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam trajectum esse cognoverat, circiter millium passuum triginta a continenti. Huic rei quod satis esse visum est militia, reliquit; ipse cum legionibus expeditis quattuor et equitibus octingentis in fines Trevirorum proficiscitur, 10 quod hi neque ad concilia veniebant neque imperio parebant, Germanosque Transrhenanos sollicitare dicebantur.

III. Haec civitas longe plurimum totius Galliae equitatu valet, magnasque habet copias peditum, Rhenumque, ut supra demonstravimus, tangit. In ea civitate duo de principatu inter se contendebant, Indutiamarus et Cingetorix: ex quibus alter, simul atque de Caesari legionumque adventu cognitum est, ad eum venit; se suosque omnes in officio futuros, neque ab amicitia populi Romani defecturos confirmavit, quaeque in Treviris gerentur 20 ostendit. At Indutiamarbus equitatumque cogere, iisque, qui per actatem in armis esse non poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Trevirorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet, bellum parare instituit. Sed posteaquam 25 nonnulli principes ex ea cicitate et familiaritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitus perterriti ad Caesarem venerunt, et de suis privatim rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consulere non possent, Indutiamarbus veritus ne ab omnibus desereretur, legatos ad 30 Caesarem mittit: Sese idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quo facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis discersu plebs propter imprudentiam laboretur. Itaque esse civitatem in sua potestate, seque, si Caesar permetteret, ad eum in castra venturum, 35 suas civitatisque fortunas ejus fidei permissurum.

IV. Caesar, etsi intelligebat, quae de causse ea dicerentur, quaeque eum res ab instituto consilio deterreret, tamen, ne
aestatem in Treviriis consumere cogeretur, omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indiutiorum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venire jussit. His adductis, in iis filio propinquisque ejus omnibus, quos nominantim evos caverat, consolatus Indiutiorum hortaturque est, uti in officio permaneret; nihil tamen secius principibus Treviriis ad se convocatis, hos singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit: quod cum merito ejus ab se fieri intelligebat, tum magni interesse arbitrabatur, ejus auctoritatem inter suos 10 quam plurimum valere, cujus tam egregiam in se voluntatem perspexisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indiutiorum, suam gratiam inter suos minui; et, qui jam ante nimico in nos animo fuisset, multo gravius hoc dolore exsarsit.

V. His rebus constitutis, Caesar ad portum Itium cum 15 legionibus pervenit. Ibi cognoscit quadraginta naves, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestate rejectas cursum tenere non potuisse atque eodem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquas paratas ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus instructas inventit. Eodem equitatus totius Galliae 20 convenit numero millium quattuor, principesque omnibus ex civitatibus; ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquire in Gallia, reliquos obsidum loco secum ducere decreverat; quod, cum ipse abesset, motum Galliae verebat.

VI. Erat una cum ceteris Dumnorix Aeduus, de quo ante ab nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habere imprimis constituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis cognoverat. Accedebat huc, quod jam in concilio Aeduorum Dumnorix 30 dixerat, sibi a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri; quod dixit Aedui graviter faebant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causâ legatos ad Caesarem mittere audebant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognoverat. Ille omnibus primo precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliâ relinqueretur, 35 partim, quod insuetus navigandi mare timerebat, partim, quod religionibus impediri sese diceret. Posteaquam id obstinate sibi negari vidit, omni spe impetrandi ademptâ, principes Galliae sollicitare, sevocare singulos hortarique
coepit, uti in continentì remanerent; metu territare, non sine causà fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate spoliaretur: id esse consilium Caesāris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliae interficere vereretur, hos omnes in Britanniam transductos necaret: fidem reliquis interponere, jusjurandum poscere, ut, quod 5 esse ex usu Galliae intellexissent, communi consilio admi- nISTRARENT. Haec a compluribus ad Caesārem deferebantur.

VII. Qua re cognitā, Caesar, quod tantum civitati Ae- duae dignitatis tribuerat, coèrcendum atque detersandum, quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnonigem statuebat; quod 10 longius ejus amentiam progreì videbat, prospiciendum, ne quid sibi ac rei publicae nocere posset. Itaque dies circiter viginti quinque in eo loco commoratus, quod Corus ventus navigationem impediebat, qui magnam partem om- nis temporis in his locis flaire consuevit, dabat operam, ut in 15 officio Dumnonigem contineret, nihil tamen secius omnia ejus consilia cognosceret; tandem idoneam nactus tempes- tatem militēs equitesque conscendere naves jubet. At omnium impeditis animis, Dumnonix cum equitibus Aedu- òrum a castris, insciēnte Caesāre, domum discedere coepit. 20 Qua re nuntiātā, Caesar, intermissā profectione atque om- nibus rebus postpositis, magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat: si vim faciat neque pareat, interfici jubet, nihil hunc, se absente, pro sano factu- rum arbitratur, qui praesentis imperium neglexisset. Ille 25 enim revocatus resistere ac se manu defendere suorumque fidem implorare coepit, saepe clamitans, liberum se liberae- que esse civitatis. Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumstistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equites Aedui ad Caesā- rem omnes revertuntur.

VIII. His rebus gestis, Labīēno in continentε cum tri- bus legionibus et equitum millibus duobus relicito, ut portus tueretur et rei frumentariae provideret, quaeque in Galliā gerentur cognosceret, consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ipse cum quinque legionibus et pari 35 numero equitum quem in continentī reliquerat, ad solis occasum naves solvit et leni Afrīco provectus, mediā circi- ter nocte vento intermissō, cursum non tenuit, et longius
delatus aeste orta luce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus aeste commutationem secutus remis contendit ut eam partem insulae caperet, qua optimum esse egressum superiore aestate cognoverat. Quā in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoris gravibusque navigii, non intermisso remigandi labore, longarum navium currum adaequarunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano fere tempore; neque in eo loco hostis est visus, sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivis cognovit, cum magnae manus eo convenissent, multitudine navium perterritae (quae cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi fecerat, amplius octingentae uno erant visae tempore), a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

15 IX. Caesar, exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium copiae consedissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus trecentis, qui praesidio navibus essent, de tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit, eo minus veritus navibus, quod in litore mollis atque aperto delicatas ad ancoram relinqueret; et praesidio navibus Quintum Atrium praefecit. Ipsi noctu progressus millia passuum ciricter duodecim hostium copias conspicatus est. Illi equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi ex loco superiore nostros prohibere et proelium committere coeperunt. Repulsi ab equitatu se in silvas abdiderunt, locum nactus egregie et naturae et opere munitum, quem domestici bellii, ut videbatur, causā jam ante praeparaverant; nam crebris arboribus sucessionis omnes introitus erant praeclosi. Ipsī ex silvis rari propugnabant nostrosque intra munitiones ingredi prohibebant. At milites legionis septimae, testudine factā et aggere ad munitiones adjecto, locum ceperunt esque ex silvis expulerunt, pauciss vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longius Caesar prosequi vetuit, et quod loci naturam ignorabat, et quod, magnā parte diei consumptā, munitioni castrorum tempus relinquui volebat.

X. Postridie ejus diei mane tripartito milites equitesque in expeditionem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, perseque-
rentur. His aliquantum itineris progressis, cum jam extremi essent in prospectu, equites a Quinto Atrio ad Ceasarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent, superiore nocte, maxima coortae tempestate, prope omnes naves afflictas atque in litore ejectas esse; quod neque ancorae funesque sub 3 sisterent, neque nautae gubernatoresque vim tempestatis pati possent; itaque ex eo concursu navium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

XI. His rebus cognitis, Caesar legiones equitatumque revocari atque in itinere resistere jubet, ipse ad naves revertitur; eadem fere, quae ex nuntiis litterisque cognoverat, coram perspicit, sic ut amissis circiter quadraginta navibus, relique tamen refici posse magno negotio vide-retur. Itaque ex legionibus fabros deligit et ex continenti alios arcessi jubet; Labierno scribit, ut, quam plurimas possit, iis legionibus quae sunt apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi res erat multae operae ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnes naves subduci et cum castris una munitione conjungi. In his rebus circiter dies decem consumit, ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborrem militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castraisque egregie munitis, eadem copias, quas ante, praesidio navibus reliquit; ipse eodem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, maiores jam undique in eum locum copiae Britannorum convenerant, summam imperii bellique admi- 25 nistrandi communi consilio permissa Cassivellauno, cujus fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamesis, a mari circiter millia passuum octoginta. Huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostro adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.

XII. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos in insula ipsi memoria proditum dicitur; maritima pars ab iis, qui praedae ac belli inferendi causae ex Belgis transiere- rant; qui omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eo pervenerunt, et, bello illato, ibi permanserunt atque agros colere coeperunt. Hominum est infinita multitudo creberrimaque aedificia fere 7
Galliceis consimilia; pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut aere aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinatis pro nummo. Nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed ejus exigua est copia; aere utuntur importato. Materia cujusque generis, ut in Galliā, est, praeter fagum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare fas non putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causā. Loca sunt temperamentiora quam in Galliā, remissioribus frigoribus.

10 XIII. Insula naturā triqueta, cujus unum latus est contra Galliām. Hujus lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quo fere omnes ex Galliā naves appelluntur, ad orientem solem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc pertinet circiter millia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solam, quā ex parte est Hibernia, dimidio minor, ut aestimatur, quam Britanniam, sed pari spatio transmissus atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula, quae appellatur Mona; complures praeterea minores objectae insulae existimantur; de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt, dies continuos triginta sub brumā esse noctem. Nos nihil de eo perorationibus reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aquā mensuris breviore, esse quam in continentē noctes videbamus. Hujus est longitudū lateris, ut fert illorum opinio, septingentorum millium. Tertium est contra septemtriones, cui partī nulla est objecta terra; sed ejus angulus lateris maxime ad Germaniam spectat; hoc millia passuum oetingenta in longitudinem esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circitu vicīs centum millium passuum.

20 XIV. Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi, qui Cantium incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis, neque multum a Galliā differunt consuetudine. Interiores pleriique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes vero in Britanniā in vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hoc horridiore sunt in pugnā aspectū; capilloque sunt promisso atque omni parte corporis rasā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxores habent deni duodenique inter se communes, et
maxime fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum liberis; sed qui sunt ex his nati, eorum habentur liberi, quo primum virgo quaeque deducta est.

XV. Equites hostium essedariique acriter proelio cum equitatu nostro in itinere conlixerunt, ita tamen ut nostri 5 omnibus partibus superiores fuerint atque eos in silvis collesque compulerint; sed, compluribus interfectis, cupidius insecuti nonnullus ex suis aniserunt. At illi, intermisso spatio, imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitione castrorum, subito se ex silvis ejecerunt, impe- 10 tuque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collo- cati, acriter pugnaverunt; duabusque nisiis subsidio cohortibus a Caesäre atque iis primis legionum duarum, cum hae, perexiguo intermisso spatio inter se, constitissent, novo genere pugnae perterritis nostris, per medios audacissime 15 perruperunt seque inde incolumes receperunt. Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus, tribunus militum, interficitur. Illi pluribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

XVI. Toto hoc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis om- nium ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est nostros 20 propter gravitatem armorum, quod neque insequi cedentes possent neque ab signis discedere auderent, minus aptos esse ad hujus generis hostem, equites autem magno cum periculo proelio dimicare, propterea quod illi etiam con- sulto plerumque cederent, et cum paulum ab legionibus 25 nostros removissent, ex essedis desilirent et pedibus dis- pari proelio contenderent. Equestris autem proelii ratio et cedentibus et inequentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat. Accedebat huc, ut nunquam conferti, sed rari magnisque intervallis proeliarentur, stationesque dispositas 30 haberent, atque alios alií deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentes defatigatis succederent.

XVII. Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus constiterunt, rarique se ostendere et lenius, quam pridie, nostros equites proelio laccersse coeperunt. Sed meridie, 35 cum Caesar pabulandi causā tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Gaio Trebonio legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, sio uti ab
signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri, acriter in
eos impetu facto, repulerunt, neque finem sequendi fecerunt,
quoad subsidio confisi equites, cum post se legiones
viderent, praepitores hostes egerunt, magnopere eorum
numero interfecit, neque sui colligendi neque consistendi
aut ex essedia desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac
fugiæ protinus, quae undique convenerant, auxilia discesserun
t, neque post id tempus unquam summis nobiscum
copis hostes contenderunt.

XVIII. Caesar, cognito consilio eorum, ad flumen Ta-
mēsim in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit, quod flumen
uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest.
Eo cum venisset, animum advertit ad alteram fluminis
riam magnas esse copias hostium instructas; ripa autem
erat acutis sudibus praefixis munita, ejusdemque generis
sub aquā defixa sudes flumine tegabantur. His rebus
cognitis a captivis per fugisque, Caesar, praemisso equitatu,
confestim legiones subsequi jussit. Sed eā celeritate atque
eo impetu milites ierunt, cum capite solo ex aquā exstau
rent, ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere
non possent ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

XIX. Cassivellaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni
deposītā spe contentionis, dimissis amplioribus copiis, mil
libus circiter quattuor essedariorum reliictis, itinera nostra
servabat, paulumque ex via excudebat locisque impeditis
ac silvestribus sese occultabat, atque iis regionibus, quibus
nos iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris
in silvas compellebat; et cum equitatus noster liberius
praedandi vastandique causā se in agros ejecerat, omnibus
viis semitisque essedariis ex silvis emittebat et magno
cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis conflagrebat, atque
hoc metu latius vagari prohibebat. Relinquebatur, ut
neque longius ab agmine legionum discendi Caesar pate-
retur, et tantum in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis
hostibus noceretur, quantum labore atque itinere legionarii
milites efficere poterant.

XX. Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima earum regi-
nonum civitas, ex quā Mandubratius adolescens Caesāris
fidem secutus ad eum in continentem Galliam venerat, cujus pater Imanuentius in ea civitate regnum obnueperat interfectusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fugā mortem vitaverat, legatos ad Caesārem mittunt pollicenturque, sese ei dedicatos atque imperata facturos; petunt, ut Mandubratium ab injuriā Cassivellauni defendat atque in civitatem mittat, qui praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsides quadraginta frumentumque exercitui, Mandubratiaumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum frumentumque miserunt.

XXI. Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum injuriā prohibitis, Cenimagnī, Segontiaci, Ancaletes, Bibrac, Cassi, legationibus missis, sese Caesāri dedunt. Ab iis cognoscit non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse silvis paludibusque munitum, quo satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus conveniret. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant, cum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossā munierunt, quo incursionis hostium vitandae causā convenire consuerunt. Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus; locum reperit egregie naturā atque opere munitum; tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit. Hostes paulisper morati militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt seseque alīa ex parte oppidi ejecerunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fugā sunt comprehensi atque interfeci.

XXII. Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus quattuor reges praerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segōnax, nuntios mittit atque his imperat, uti coactis omnibus copiis castra navalia de improviso adoriantur atque oppugnent. Ii cum ad castra venissent, nostri, eruptione factā, multis eorum interfecis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorīge, suos incolumes reducerunt. Cassivellaunus, hoc proelio nuntiato, tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, maxime etiam permutus defectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebātem Cunniun de deditione ad Caessārem mittit. Caesar, cum constituisset hiemare in continenti propter repentinus Galliae motus,
neque multum accestit superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intelligeret, obides imperat et quid in annos singulos vectigalis populo Romano Britannia penderet constituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubratio nem Trinobantibus noceat.

XXIII. Obsidibus acceptis, exercitum reduct ad mare, naves invenit refectas. His deductis, quod et captivorum magnum numerum habebat, et nonnullae tempestate deperierant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium, tot navigationibus, neque hoc neque superiore anno ulla omnino navis, quae milites portaret, desideraretur; at ex iis, quae inanes ex continent ad eum remitterentur, et prioris commeatus expositis militibus, et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero sexaginta, perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae fere omnes rejicerentur. Quas cum alium ad Caesar frustra expectasset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessario augustius milites collocavit, ac summâ tranquillitate consecutâ, secundâ initâ cum solvisset vigiliâ, primâ luce terram attigit omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.

XXIV. Subductis navibus concilioque Gallôrum Sama-robrivae peracto, quod eo anno frumentum in Galliâ propter siccitates angustius provenerat, coactus est aliter ac superioribus annis exercitum in hibernis collocare, legionesque in plures civitates distribuere: ex quibus unus in Môrinos ducendam Gàio Fabio legato dedit; alteram in Nervios Quinto Cicerôni; tertiam in Esubios Lucio Roscio; quartam in Remis cum Tito Labiêno in confinio Trevirorum hiemare jussit; tres in Belgis collocavit: his Marcum Crassum quaestorem et Lucium Munatium Plancum et Gàium Trebonium legatos praefecit. Unam legionem, quam proxime trans Padum conscripserat, et cohortes quinque in Eburônes, quorum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhenum, qui sub imperio Ambiorígis et Catuvolci erant, misit. His militibus Quintum Titurium Sabînum et Lucium Aurunculeîum Cottam legatos praeesse jussit. Ad hunc modum distributis legionibus, facillime.
inopiae frumentariae sese mederi posse existimavit: atque
harum tamen omnium legionum hiberna, praeter eam,
quam Lucio Roscio in pacatissimam et quietissimam par-
tem ducendam dederat, millibus passuum centum contine-
bantur. Ipse interea, quoad legiones collocatas munitaque 5
hiberna cognovisset, in Galliā morari constituit.

XXV. Erat in Carnutibus summo loco natus Tasgetius,
cujus majores in suā civitate regnum obtinuerant. Huic
Caesar pro ejus virtute atque in se benevolentiā, quod in
omnibus bellis singulari ejus operā fuerat usus, majorum 10
locum restituerat. Tertium jam hunc annum regnan-
tem inimici palam, multis etiam ex civitate auctoribus,
eum interfecerunt. Desertur ea res ad Caesārem. Ille
veritus, quod ad plures pertinebat, ne civitas eorum im-
pulsu deficeret, Lucium Plancum cum legione ex Belgio 15
celeriter in Carnītes proficiēti jubet ibique hiemare; quo-
rumque operā cognoverit Tasgetium interfectum, hos com-
prehensos ad se mittere. Interim ab omnibus legatis
quaestoribusque, quibus legiones tradiderat, certior factus
est in hiberna perventum locumque hibernis esse μη-20
nitum.

XXVI. Diebus cīrciter quīndecim, quibus in hiberna
ventum est, initium repentini tumultus ac defectionis or-
tum est ab Ambiorīge et Catuvolco; qui cum ad fines
regnī sui Sabīno Cottaequē praesto fuissent, frumentumque 25
in hiberna comportavisserant, Indutiomāri Trevīri nuntiās
impius suos concitaverunt, subitoque oppressīs lignatorī-
bus magnā manu ad castra oppugnatum venerunt. Cum
celēritē nostri arma cepissent vallumque ascendissent,
atque, unā ex parte Hispanis equībus emissis, equēstribus 30
proelio superiores fuissent, desperātā re, hostes suos ab
oppugnatione reduxerunt. Tum suo more conclamatione
venerunt, uti alīqui ex nostrīs ad colloquium prodiret; habere
sese, quae de re communi dicere vellent, quibus rebus con-
troversias minui posse sperarent.

XXVII. Mittitur ad eos colloquendi causā Gāius Arpi-
neīus, equēs Romānus, familiaris Quintī Titurī, et Quintus
Junīus ex Hispaniā quidam, qui jam ante missu Caesāris
ad Ambiorigem ventitare consueverat; apud quos Ambiorix ad hunc modum loctus est: Sese pro Caesāris in se beneficiis plurimum ei conferiri debere, quod ejus operā stipendio liberatus esset, quod Aduatucis finitimis suis pen-dere consuesset; quoque ei et filius et fratris filius ab Caesāre remissi essent, quos Aduatucī obсидum numero missos apud se in servitute et catenis tenuissent; neque id, quod fecerit de oppugnatione castrorum, aut judicio aut voluntate suā fecisse, sed coactu civitatis; suaque esse ejusmodi imperia, ut non minus haberet juris in se multitudo, quam ipse in multitudinem. Civitati porro hancuisse bellī causam, quod repentinae Gallōrum conjurationi resistere non potuerit; id se facile ex humilitate suā probare posse, quod non adeo sit imperitus rerum, ut suis copiis populum Romānum se superare posse confidat; sed esse Galliae commune consiliwm; omnibus hibernis Caesāris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, ne qua legio alterae legioni subsidio venire posset: non facile Gallos Gallis negare potuisse, praesertim cum de recupe-randā communi libertate consilio initum videretur. Quibus quoniam pro pietate satisfecerit, habere nunc se rationem officii pro beneficiis Caesāris; monere, orare Titurium pro hospitio, ut suae ac militum saluti consulat; magnam manum Germanōrum conductam Rhenum transisse; hanc affore biduo. Ipsorum esse consiliwm, velintne prius, quam finitimi sentiant, eductos ex hibernis milites aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum deducere, quorum alter millia passuum circiter quinquaginta, alter paulo amplius ab iis absit. Illud se policeri et jurejurando confirmare, tumult iter per fines suos datum; quod cum faciat, et civitati sese consulere, quod hibernis levetur, et Caesāri pro ejus meritis gratiam referre. Hac oratione habita discedit Ambiorix.

XXVIII. Arpinēius et Junius quae audierunt ad legatos deferunt. Illi repentinā re perturbati, etsi ab hoste ea dicebantur, non tamen negligenda existimabant; maximeque hac re permovebantur, quod civitatem ignobilem atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populo Romāno bellum
facere ausam vix erat credendum. Itaque ad consilium rem referunt magnaque inter eos existit controversia. Lucius Aurunculeius compluresque tribuni militum et primorum ordinum centuriones nihil temere agendum, neque ex hibernis injussu Caesāris discendendum, existimabant. Quantasvis copias etiam Germanorum sustineri posse munitis hibernis docebat: rem esse testimonio, quod primum hostium impetum, multis ultro vulneribus illatis, fortissime sustinuerint; re frumentaria non premi; interea et ex proximis hibernis et a Caesāre conventura subsidia; pos-tremo, quid esse levius aut turpius, quam, autore hoste, de summis rebus capere consilium?

XXIX. Contra ea Titurius sero facturos clamitabat, cum maiores manus hostium adjunctis Germānūs convenissent, aut cum aliquid calamitatis in proximis hibernis esset acceptum; brevem consulendi esse occasionem. Caesārem arbitrami proiectum in Italiam; neque aliter Carnātes interficiendi Cæsarii consilium fuisse capturōs, neque Eburōnes, si ille adesset, tantā contemptione nostrī ad castra venturos esse; non hostem auctorem, sed rem spectare; subesse Rhenum; magno esse Germānīs dolori Ariovisti mortem et superiores nostras victorias; ardere Galliam tot contumeliis acceptis sub populi Romāni imperium redactum, superiore glorīa rei militaris extinctā. Postremo quis hoc sibi persuaderet, sine certā re Ambiorīgem ad eum ējusmodī consilium descendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tutam: si nihil esset durium, nullo cum periculo ad proximam legionem perventuros; si Gallia omnīs cum Germānīs consentiēret, unam esse in celeritate positam salutem. Cottae quidem atque eorum, qui dissen- tient, consilium quem haberet exitum? In quo si non praezens periculum, at certe longinquā obsidione fames esset pertimescēnda.

XXX. Hac in utramque partem disputatione habitā, cum a Cottā primisque ordinibus acriter resistéretur, "Vincite," inquit, "si ita vultis," Sabinus, et id clariore voce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret: "neque is sum," inquit, "qui gravissime ex vobis mortis periculo terrear:
hi sapient, et si gravius quid acciderit, abs te rationem reposcent; qui, si per te liceat, perendino die cum proximis hibernis conjuncti communem cum reliquis belli casum sustineant, non rejecti et relegati longe ab ceteris aut ferro aut fame intereat.”

XXXI. Consurgitur ex consilio; comprehendunt utrumque et orant, ne sua dissensione et pertinaciā rem in summum periculum deducant: facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficiscantur, si modo unum omnes sentiant ac pro-bent; contra in dissensione nullam se salutem perspicere.

Res disputatione ad medium noctem perducitur. Tandem dat Cotta permutus manus; superat sententia Sabini. Pronuntiatur primā luce ituros; consumitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque miles circumspiceret, quid secum portare posset, quid ex instrumento hibernorum relinquere cogeretur. Omnia excogitantur, quare nec sine periculo manum et languore militum et vigiliis periculum augeatur. Primā luce sic ex castris proficiscuntur, ut quibus esset persuasum non ab hoste, sed ab homine amicissimo Ambiorīge consilium datum, longissimo agrine maximisque impedimentis.

XXXII. At hostes, posteaquam ex nocturno fremitu vigiliisque de profectione eorum senserunt, collocatis insidiis bipartito in silvis opportuno atque occulto loco a milibus passuum circiter duobus, Romanōrum adventum spectabant; et cum se major pars agminis in magnam convallam demisisset, ex utrāque parte ejus vallis subito se ostenderunt, novissimosque premere et primos prohibere ascensu atque iniquissimo nostris loco proelium committente coeperunt.

XXXIII. Tum demum Titurius, qui nihil ante providisset, trepidare et concursare cohortesque disponere; haec tamen ipsa timide atque ut eum omnia deficere videarentur; quod plerumque iis accidere consuevit, qui in ipso negotio consilium capere coguntur. At Cotta, qui cogitasse haec posse in itinere accidere atque ob eam causam profectionis auctor non fuisset, nullā in re communi saluti deerat et in appellandis cohortandisque militibus impera-
Liber Quintus.

...toris, et in pugnā militis officia praestabat. Cum propter longitudinem agminis minus facile omnia per se obire, et quid quoque loco faciendum esset, providere possent, jussereunt pronuntiare, ut impedimenta relinquuerent atque in orbem consisterent. Quod consilium etsi in ejusmodi casu 5 reprehendendum non est, tamen incommode accidit; nam et nostris militibus spem minuit et hostes ad pugnam alacriores efficit, quod non sine summo timore et desperatione id factum videbatur. Praeterea accidit, quod fieri nescesse erat, ut vulgo milites ab signis discederent, quae quisque 10 eorum carissima haberet, ab impedimentis petere atque arripere properaret, clamore et fletu omnia compleverunt.

XXXIV. At barbaris consilium non defuit; nam duces eorum tota acie pronuntiarent jussurunt, ne quis ab loco discederet; illo 15 res esse praedam atque illis reservari, quaemiumque Romāni reliquissent; prōinde omnia in victoriā posita existimarent. Erant et virtute et numero pugnando pares nostri. Tametsi ab duce et a fortunā deserebantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtute ponebant, et quoties quaque cohors procurreret, ab ea parte magnus hostium 20 numerus cadebat. Quā re animadversā, Ambiurix pronuntiari jubet, ut procul tela conjiciant, neu propius accedant, et quam in partem Romāni impetum fecerint, cedant (levitatem armorum et quotidiam exercitatione nihil iis noceri posse), rursus se ad signa recipientes sequantur.

XXXV. Quo praeccepto ab iis diligentissime observato, cum quaepiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fecerat, hostes velocissime refugiebant. Interim eam partem nudari necesse erat et ab latere aperto tela recipi. Rursus, cum in eum locum, unde erant egressi, reverti 30 coeperant, et ab iis, qui cesserant, et ab iis, qui proximi steterant, circumveniebantur; sin autem locum tenere vellent, nec virtuti locus relinquebatur, neque ab tantā multitudine conjecta tela conferti vitare poterant. Tam et tot inconmodis conflictati, multis vulneribus accep- 35 tis, resistebant et magnā parte diei consumptā, cum a primā luce ad horam octavam pugnaretur, nihil, quod ipsis esset indignum, committebant. Tum Tito Balventio, qui
superiore anno primum pilum duxerat, viro forti et magnae auctoritatis, utrumque femur tragula transjicitur. Quintus Lucanius, ejusdem ordinis, fortissime pugnans, dum circumvento filio subvenit, interficitur; Lucius Cotta legatus omnes cohortes ordinesque adhortans in adversum os funda vulneratur.

XXXVI. His rebus permotus Quintus Titurius, cum procul Ambiorigem suos cohortantem conspexisset, interpretis suum Gnaeum Pompeium ad eum mittit rogatum, ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellatus respondit: Si velit secum colloqui, licere; sperare, a multitudine impertrati posse, quod ad militum salutem pertineat; ipsi vero nihil nocitum iri, inque eam rem suam fidem interponere. Ille cum Cotta saucio communicat, si videatur, pugna ut excedant et cum Ambiorige una colloquantur; sperare ab eo de suâ ac militum salute impertrare posse. Cotta se ad armatum hostem iturum negat atque in eo perseverat.

XXXVII. Sabinus quos in praesentiâ tribunos militum circum se habebat et primorum ordinum centuriones se sequi jubes, et cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset, iussus arma abjicere, imperatum facit suisque, ut idem faciant, imperat. Interim, dum de conditionibus inter se agunt longiorque consulto ab Ambiorige instituitur sermo, paulatim circumventus interficitur. Tum vero suo more victoriam conclamant atque ululatum tollunt, impetuque in nostros facto ordines perturbant. Ibi Lucius Cotta pugnans interficitur cum maximâ parte militum; reliqui se in castra recipiunt, unde erant egressi: ex quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magna multitudine hostium premeretur, aquilam intra vallum proiectit, ipse pro castris fortissime pugnans occiditur. Illi aegrre ad noctem oppugnationem sustinent; noctu ad unum omnes, desperatâ salute, se ipsi interficiunt. Pauci ex proelio elapsi incertis itineribus per silvas ad Titum Labiènum legatum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum de rebus gestis certiorem faciunt.

XXXVIII. Haec victoria sublatus Ambiorix statim cum
Liber Quintus.

equitatu in Aduatūcos, qui erant ejus regno finitimī, proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditatumque subsequī jubet. Re demonstrātā, Aduatūcisque concitātās, postero die in Nervios pervenit hortaturque, ne sui in perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendi Romānos pro iis, quas acceperint, injuriis, occasiōnem dīmittant: interfectoros esse legatos duos magnamque partem exercitus interisse demonstrat; nihil esse negotiī subito oppressam legiōnem, quae cum Cicerōne hiemēt, interfici; se ad eam rem proficetur adjutōrem. Facile hac oratione Nerviis persuādet.

XXXIX. Itaque confestim dimissis nuntiis ad Ceutriōnes, Grudios, Levācos, Pleumoxios, Geidūnos, qui omnes sub eorum imperio sunt, quam maximas manus possessunt, cogunt et de improviso ad Cicerōnis hiberna advolant, nondum ad eum famā de Titurī morte perlatā. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nonnulli milites, qui insignis munitionisque causā in silvās discessissent, repentinō equītum adventu interciperentur. His circumventis, magnā manu Eburōnes, Nervī, Aduatūci atque horum omnium sociī et clientes legiōnem oppugnare incipiant: nostri celebrē riter ad arma concurrunt, vallum conscendunt. Aegre is dies sustentatur, quod omnem spem hostes in celeritate ponebant atque hanc adepti victoriam in perpetuum se fore victores confidebant.

XL. Mittuntur ad Caesārem confestim ab Cicerōne litterae, magnis propositis praemiis si pertulissent. Obsessis omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur. Noctu ex materiā, quam munitionis causā comportaverant, turres admodum centum et vigintī excitantur incredibili celeritate: quae desse operi videbantur, perficiuntur. Hostes postero die multo majoribus coactī copiis castra oppugnānt, fossam complent. Eādem ratione, quā pridicē, ab nostrīs resistitur; hoc idem deinceps reliquis fit diebus. Nulla pars nocturnī temporīs ad laborēm intermittitur: non aegris, non vulneratis facultas quietis datur: quaecumque ad proximī diei oppugnationem opus sunt, noctu comparantur: multae praeustae sudēs, magnus muralium pilorum numerus instituitur; turres contabulantur, pinnae loricaeque ex cratibus
attexuntur. Ipse Cioèro, cum tenuissimâ valetudine esset, ne nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quietem relinquebat, ut ulter militum concursu ac vocibus sibi par cere cogeretur.

5 XLII. Tunc duces principesque Nerviorum, qui aliquem sermonis aditus causamque amicitiae cum Cicerone habebant, colloqui sese velle dicunt. Factâ potestate, eadem, quae Ambiorix cum Titurio egerat, commemorant: Omnen esse in armis Galliam, Germânos Rhenum transisse, Caa- 10 ris reliquorumque hiberna oppugnari. Addunt etiam de Sabini morte. Ambiorïgem ostentant fidei faciendae causâ. Errare eos dicunt, si quidquam ab his praeidii sperent, qui suis rebus diffidant; sese tamen hoc esse in Cicerónum populumque Românum animo, ut nihil nisi hiberna recusent atque hanc inveterascere consuetudinem nolint: licere illis incolimbus per se ex hibernis discedere, et quascumque in partes velint, sine metu profisci. Cioèro ad haec unum modo respondit: Non esse consuetudinem populi Români accipere ab hoste armato conditionem: si 15 ab armis discedere velint, se adjutore utantur legatosque ad Caaàrem mittant: sperare pro ejus justitia, quae petiere, impetratos.

XLII. Ab hac spe repulsì Nervii vallo pedum novem et fossâ pedum quindecim hiberna cingunt. Haec et supe- 20 riorum annorum consuetudine a nostris cognoverant, et quosdam de exercitu nacti captivos, ab his docebantur; sed nullâ ferramentorum copia, quae esset ad hunc usum idonea, gladiis cespites circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire cogebantur. Quâ quidem ex re homi- 25 num multitudo cognosci potuit; nam minus horis tribus millium passuum quindecim in circuitu munitionem perfe- cerunt; reliquisque diebus turres ad altitudinem valli, falces testudinesque, quas iadem captivi docuerant, parare ac facere coeperunt.

XLIII. Septimo oppugnationis die, maximo coorto vento, ferventes fusili ex argilla glandes fundis et fervetfacta jacea in casas, quae more Gallico stramentis erant tectae, jacere coeperunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehenderunt et venti
magnitudine in omnem castrorum locum distulerunt. Hostes maximo clamore, sicuti partā jam atque explorā
tōriā, turres testudinesque āgere et scalis vallum ascen-
dere coeperunt. At tanta militum virtus atque ea praes-
äsentia animī fuit, ut cum undique flammā torrerentur 5
maximāque telorum multitudine premerentur, suaque om-
nia impedimenta atque omnes fortunas conflagrare in-
telligerent, non modo demigrandi causā de vallo decedere
nemō, sed paene ne respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum
omnes acerrime fortissimeque pugnarent. Hīc dies nostrīs 10
longē gravissīmus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit eventum,
ūt eo die maximīs hostium numeros vulneraretur atque
interfereretur, ūt se sub ipso vallo constipaverant recess-
sumque primis ultīmī non dabant. Paulum quīdem inter-
missā flammā et quōdam loco turri adactā et contingente 15
vallum, tertiāe cohortis centuriones ex eo, quō stabant,
loco recessurī suosque omnes removerunt; nutu vocī-
busque hostes, si introire vellent, vocare coeperunt, quo-
rum progrēdi ausus est nemo. Tum ex omni parte lapi-
dibus coniectis deturbati turrisque succensā est.

XLIV. Erant in ēa legione fortissimi viri centuriones,
qui jam primis ordinibus appropinquarent, Titus Pulšio
et Lucius Vorēnus. Hi perpetuas iter se controversias
habebant, quinam antefertur, omnibusque annis de loco
summis simulatibus contendebant. Ex his Pulīo, cum 25
acerrime ad munitiones pugnaretur, “Quid dubitas,” in-
quīt, “Vorēnē? aut quem locum probandae virtūs tuae
exspectās? Hic dies de nostrīs controversiis judicabit.”
Hāec cum dixissent, procedit extra munitiones, quaeque
pars hostium confertissima est visa, in ēam irrupiit. Ne 30
Vorēnus quīdem tum sese vallo continet, sēd omnium veri-
tus existimationem subsequitur. Mediocrī spatio relictō,
Pulīo pilum in hostes immittit atque unum ex multitudine
procurrentem transiēcit; quo parcus eo et examināte,
hunc scūtis protegunt, in hostem tela universi conjiciunt 35
neque dant regrediēndi facultatem. Transfigiūt scūtum
Pulsiōnī et verūtum in balteo desīgitur. Avertīt hic casus
vaginam et gladium educere conanti dextrām moratur
manum; impeditum hostes circumsistunt. Succurrat in-
imicus illi Vorëns et laboranti subvenit. Ad hunc se
confestim a Pulßone omnis multitudo convertit; illum
veruto arbitrantur occision. Occursat oeci gladio com-
minusque rem gerit Vorëns atque, uno interfecit, reli-
quos paulum propellit: dum cupidius instat, in locum
dejectus inferiorem concidit. Huic rursus circumvento
fert subsidium Pulßio, atque ambo incolulmes, compluribus
interfectis, summâ cum laude sese intra munitiones recipi-
unt. Sic fortuna in contentione et certamine utrumque
versavit, ut alter alteri inimicus auxilio salutique esset,
neque ditudicari posset, uter utri virutae anteferendus
videretur.

XLV. Quanto erat in dies gravior atque asperior op-
pugnatio, et maxime quod, magna parte militum confecta
vulneribus, res ad paucitatem defensorum pervenerat, tanto
crebriores litterae nuntiique ad Caesarem mittebantur;
quorum pars deprehensa in conspecto nostrorum militum
cum cruciato necabantur. Erat unus intus Nervius, nomi-
ne Vertico, loco natus honesto, qui a primâ obсидione ad
Cicerônem perforgerat stamque ei fidem praetiterat. Hic
servo spe libertatis magnisque persuadet praemiis, ut litte-
ras ad Caesarem deserat. Has ille in jaculo illigatas effert,
et Gallus inter Gállos sine illâ suspicione versatus ad Ca-
sàrem pervenit. Ab eo de periculis Cicerônis legionisque
cognoscitur.

XLVI. Caesar, acceptis litteris, horà circiter undecimâ
die, statim nuntium in Bellovácos ad Marcum Crassum
quaestorem mittit; cujus hiberna aberat ab eo millia
passuum viginti quinque. Jubet mediâ nocte legionem
proficisci celeriterque ad se venire. Exit cum nuntio
Crassus. Alterum ad Gáium Fabium legatum mittit, ut in
Atrebatium fines legionem adducat, qua sibi iter faciendum
sciebat. Sribit Labiêno, si rei publicae commodo facere
posset, cum legione ad fines Nerviôrum veniat: reliquam
partem exercitus, quod paulo aberat longius, non putat
expectandum; equites circiter quadringentes ex proximis
hibernis colligit.
XLVII. Horā circiter tertīā ab antecursoribus de Crassi adventu certior factus, eo die millia passuum viginti procedit. Crassum Samarobrīvae praefecerit legionemque ei attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitus, obsides civitatum, litteras publicas, frumentumque omne, quod eo tolerandae hiemi causā devexerat, relinquebat. Fabius, ut imperatum erat, non ita multum moratus in itinere cum legione occurrit. Labienus interitu Sabini et caede cohortium cognitā, cum omnes ad eum Trevirorum copiae venissent, veritus ne, si ex hibernis fugae similem profectioinem fecisset, hostium impetum sustinere non posset, praeertim quos recenti victoriā efferri sciret, litteras Caesāri remittit, quanto cum periculo legiōnem ex hibernis educturus esset; rem gestam in Eburonibus perscrībit; docet, omnes equitatus peditatusque copias Trevirorum tria millia passuum longe ab suis castris consedisse.

XLVIII. Caesar, consilio ejus probato, etsi opinione trium legiōnum dejectus, ad duas redierat, tamen unum communis salutis auxilium in celeritate ponebat. Venit magnis itineribus in Nerviōrum fines. Ibi ex captivis cognoscit, quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur, quantaque in periculo res sit. Tum cuidam ex equībus Gallis magnis praemissis persuadet, uti ad Cicerōnem epistolam deferat. Hanc Graecis conscriptam litteris mittit, ne intercepta epistolā nostra ab hostibus consilia cognoscantur. Si adire non posset, monet, ut tragulam cum epistolā ad amentum deligatā intra munitiones castrorum abjiciat. In litteris scribit se cum legionibus profectum celeriter affore; hortatur, ut pristinam virtutem retineat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praecoptum, tragulam mittit. Hac casu ad turrim adhaesit, neque ab nostris biduo anim adversa, tertio die a quodam militi conspicitur; dempta ad Cicerōnem defertur. Ille perlectam in conventum militum recitat maximāque omnes laetitia affect. Tum fumi incendiōrum procul videbantur, quae res omnem dubitationem adventus legiōnem expulit.

XLIX. Gallī re cognitā per exploratores obsidionem relinquant, ad Caesārem omnibus copiis contendunt; hae
erant armata circiter millia sexaginta. Cicero, datā facultate, Gallum ab eodem Verticène, quem supra demonstravīmus, repetit, qui litteras ad Caesarem dēserat; hunc admonet, iter caute diligenterque faciat: perscrībit in litterās hostes ab se discessisse omnemque ad eum multitūdinem convertisse. Quibus litteris circiter mediā nocte Caesar allatis suos facit certiores, eosque ad dimicandum animo confirmat; postero die luce primā movet castra, et circiter millia passuum quattuor progressus trans vallem et rivum multitūdinem hostium conspicatur. Erat magni periculi res cum tantis copiis iniquo loco dimicare. Tum, quoniam obsidione liberatum Cicerōnem scribat, aequo animo remittendum de celeritate existimabat. Consēdit, et quam aequissimo loco potest, castra communit; atque haec, etsi erant exigua per se, vix hominum millium septem, præsertim nullīs cum impedimentis, tamen angustiis viarum quam maxime potest, contrahit, eo consilio, ut in summam contemponem hostibus veniat. Interim speculatoribus in omnes partes dimissi, explorat, quo commissim dissimē itinere vallem transīre possit.

L. Eō die parvulus equestribus proeliis ad aquam factis, utrique sese suo loco continent; Galli, quod ampliores copias, quae nondum conveneant, exspectabant; Caesar, si forte timoris simulatione hostes in suum locum elicere posset, ut citra vallem pro castris proelio contenderet; si id efficere non posset, ut exploratos itineribus minore cum periculo vallem rivumque transiret. Prīmā luce hostium equitatus ad castra accedit proeliumque cum nostris equitiibus committit. Caesar consulito equites cedere seque in castra recipere jubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiore vallo muniri portasque obturāt, atque in his administrandis rebus quam maxime concursari et cum simulatione timoris agi jubet.

LI. Quibus omnibus rebus hostes invitati copias transducunt aciemque iniquo loco constituant; nostris vero etiam de vallo deductis, propius accedunt et tela intra munitionem ex omnibus partibus coṣjiciunt; praecoonibusque circummissis pronuntiari jubent, seu quis Gallus
seu Romānus velit ante horam tertiam ad se transire, sine periculo licere; post id tempus non fore potestatem; ac sic nostros contemplāris, ut obstructis in speciem portīs singulis ordinibus cespitum, quod ea non posse introrum-pere videbatur, aliī vallum manu scindere, aliī fossas comp- plere inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portis eruptione factā equitatuque emisso celeriter hostes in fugam dat, sic uti omnino pugnandi causā resisteret nemo; magnunque ex iis numerum occidit atque omnes armis exuit.

LII. Longius prosequi veritus, quod silvae paludescque intercedebant, neque etiam parvulo detrimento illorum locum relinquī videbat, omnibus suis incolumibus copiis, eodem die ad Cicerōnem pervenit. Institutas turres, testu-dines munitionesque hostium admiratur: legione productā cognoscit non decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere. Ex his omnibus judicat rebus, quanto cum periculo et quantā cum virtute res sint administra-tae: Cicerōnem pro ejus merito legiōnemque collaudat: centuriones singillatim tribunosque militum appellat, quo- rum egregiam fuisse virtutem testimōnio Cicerōnis cog- noverat. De casu Sabini et Cotta certius ex captivis cognoscit. Postero die, concione habiā, rem gestam pro- ponit, militēs consolatur et confiim: quod detrimentum culpā et temeritate legati sit acceptum, hoc aequare animo serendum docet, quod beneficiō deorum immortalium et virtute eorum expiato incommodo, neque hostibus diutina laetatio neque ipsius longior dolor relinquitur.

LIII. Interim ad Labiēnum per Remos incredibili celeri-tate de victorīā Caesāris fama perfertur, ut, cum ab hiber-nis Cicerōnis millia passuum absēt circiter sexaginta, eoque post horam nonam diei Caesar pervenisset, ante medium noctem ad portas castrorum clamor orietur, quo clamore significatio victoriae gratulatioque ab Remis Labiē-nō fieret. Hae famā ad Trevīros perlatā, Indutionārus, qui postero die castra Labiēni oppugnare decreverat, noctu 35 profugit copiasque omnes in Trevīros reduct. Caesar Fa-bium cum suā legione remittit in hiberna, ipse cum tribus legionibus circum Samarobrīvam trīnis hibernis hiemare.
constituit; et quod tanti motus Galliae exstiterant, totam
hiemem ipse ad exercitum manere decrevit. Nam illo
in commodo de Sabini morte perlati, omnes fere Galliae
civitates de bello consultabant, nuntios legationesque in
omnes partes dimittebant, et quid reliqui consilii caperent
atque unde initium belli fieret explorabant, nocturnaque
in locis desertis concilia habebant. Neque ullum fere
totius hiemis tempus sine sollicitudine Caesaris intercessit,
quin aliquem de consiliis ac motu Gallorum nuntium acci-
peret. In his ab Lucio Roscio, quem legioni decime ter-
tiae praefecerat, certior factus est, magnas Gallorum copias
earum civitatum, quae Armoricae appellantur, oppugnandi
sui causâ convenisse, neque longius millia passuum octo ab
hibernis suis abfuisset, sed nuntio allato de victoria Caesâ-
ris discessisse, adeo ut fugae similis discessus videretur.

LIV. At Caesar principibus cujusque civitatis ad se
evocatis, alias territando, cum se scire, quae fierent, de-
nuntiaret, alias cohortando, magnam partem Galliae in
officio tenuit. Tamen Senones, quae est civitas imprimis
firma et magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis, Cavarinum,
quem Caesar apud eos regem constituerat, cujus frater
Moritagus adventu in Galliam Caesare cujusque majore-
res regnum obtinerat, interficere publico concilio conati,
cum ille praezensisset ac profugisset, usque ad fines insc-
cuti, regno domoque expulerunt; et missis ad Caesarem
satisfaciendi causâ legatis, cum is omnem ad se senatum
venire jussisset, dicto audientes non fuerunt. Tantum
apud homines barbaros valuit, esse aliquos repertos prin-
cipes belli inferendi, tantamque omnibus voluntatem com-
mutationem attulit, ut praeter Aeduos et Remos, quos
praecepue semper honoré Caesar habuit, alteros pro vetere
ac perpetuâ erga populum Românum fide, alteros pro
recentibus Gallicis belli officiis, nulla fere civitas fuerit non
suspecta nobis. Idque adeo hau ad se mirandumne sit,
cum compluribus aliis de causis, tum maxime, quod ii
qui virtute belli omnibus gentibus praeferebantur, tantum
se ejus opinionis deperdidisse, ut a populo Românó impe-
ria perferrent, gravissime dolebant.
LV. Treviri vero atque Indutiomarus totius hiemis nullum tempus intermisserunt, quin trans Rhenum legatos mitterent, civitates sollicitarent, pecunias pollicerentur, magna parte exercitus nostri interfecta, multo minorem superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen ulle civitati Germanorum persuaderi potuit, ut Rhenum transiret, cum se bis expertos dicerent, Ariovisti bello et Teneterorum transitu: non esse amplius fortunam tentaturos. Hac spe lapsus Indutiomarus nihil minus copias cogere, exercere, a finitimis equos parare, exsules damnatosque tota Gallia magnis praemiis ad se allicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi jam his rebus in Gallia auctoritatem comparaverat, ut undique ad eum legationes concurrerent, gratiam atque amicitiam publice privatimque peterent.

LVI. Ubi intellexit ultero ad se veniri, altera ex parte Senones Carnutesque conscientia facinoris instigari, altera Nervios Aduatlicosque bellum Romannis parare, neque sibi voluntarium copias deforse, si ex finibus suis progregi coepisset, armatum concilium indicit. Hoc more Gallorum est initium belli, quo legecommuni omnes puberes armati convenire conuerunt; qui ex iis novissimus venit, in conspectu multitudinis omnibus cruciatibus affectus necatur. In eo concilio Cingetorigem, alterius principem factionis, generum suum (quem supra demonstravimus, Caesaris secatum fidem, ab eo non discessisse) hostem judicat bonaque ejus publicat. His rebus confectis in concilio pronuntiavit accepit se a Senonisbus et Carnutibus aliisque compluribus Galliae civitatibus, hoc iter facturum per fines Remorum eorumque agros populaturum, ac priusquam id faciat, castra Labieni oppugnaturum; quae fieri velit, praepicit.

LVII. Labienus, cum et loci naturae et manu munitissimis castris sese teneret, de suo ac legionis periculo nihil timebat; ne quam occasione rei bene gerendae dimitteret, cogitabat. Itaque a Cingetorige atque ejus propinquis oratione Indutiomari cognita, quam in concilio habuerat, nuntios mittit ad finitimas civitates equitesque undique evocat; his certum diem conveniendi dicit. Interim prope
quotidie cum omni equitatu Indutiomārus sub castris ejus vagabatur, alias ut situm castrorum cognosceret, alias colloquendi territandi causā; equites plerumque omnes tela intra vallum conjiciebant. Labienus suas intra munitiones continebat timorisque opinionem, quibuscumque poterat rebus, augebat.

LVIII. Cum majore in dies contemptione Indutiomārus ad castra accederet, nocte unā intromissis equitibus omnium finitimarum civitatum, quos arcessendos curaverat, tantā diligentia omnes suas custodiis intra castra continuit, ut nullā ratione ea res enuntiari aut ad Treviros perferri posset. Interim ex consuetudine quotidianā Indutiomārus ad castra accedit atque ibi magnam partem diei consumit; equites tela conjiciunt et magnā cum contumeliā verbo rum nostrōs ad pugnam evocant. Nullo ab nostris dato responso, ubi visum est, sub vespem dispersi ac dissipati discendunt. Subito Labienus duabus portis omnem equitatum emittit; praecipit atque interdicit, proterritis hostibus atque in fugam conjectis (quod fore, sicut accidit, videbat), unum omnes peterent Indutiomārum; neu quis quem prius vulneret, quam illum interfectum viderit, quod morā reliquorum spatium nactum illum effugere nolebat: magna proponit iis, qui occiderint, praemia: submittit cohortes equitibus subsidio. Comprobāt hominis consilium fortuna; et cum unum omnes peterent, in ipso fluminis vado deprehensus Indutiomārus interficitur caputque ejus refertur in castra; redeuntes equites, quos possunt, consecutantur atque occidunt. Hac re cognitā, omnes Ēburōnum et Nerviōrum, quae convenerant, copiae discendunt; pauloque ha-30 buit post id factum Caesar quietiorem Galliam.
LIBER SEXTUS.

LIBER VI.

I. Multis de causis Caesar majorem Galliae motum exspectans, per Marcum Silanum, Gaium Antistium Regium, Titum Sextium legatos, delectum habere instituit: simul ab Gnaeo Pompeio proconsule petit, quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperio rei publicae causâ remaneret, quos ex 5 Cisalpinâ Galliâ consulis sacramento rogavisset, ad signa convenire et ad se proficiere jubet; magni interesse ctiam in reliquum tempus ad opinionem Galliae existimans, tantas videri Italiae facultates, ut, si quid esset in bello detrimenti acceptum, non modo id brevi tempore resarciri, sed etiam majoribus augeri copiis posset. Quod cum Pompeiis et rei publicae et amicitiae tribuisset, celeriter confecto per suos delectu, tribus ante exactam hieem et constitutis et adductis legionibus duplicatoque eum cohortium numero, quas cum Quinto Titurio amiserat, et 15 celeritate et copiis docuit, quid populi Români disciplina atque opes possent.

II. Interfecto Indutiomâro, ut docuimus, ad ejus proprio quos a Treviris imperium defertur. Illi finitimos Germanos sollicitare et pecuniam polliceri non desistunt; cum 20 ab proximis impetrare non possent, ulteriores tentant. Inventis nonnullis civitatibus jurejurando inter se confirmant, obsidibusque de pecunia carent: Ambiorîgem sibi societate et foedere adjungunt. Quibus rebus cognitis, Caesar, cum undique bellum parari videret, Nervios, 25 Aduatûcos, ac Menapios, adjunctis Cisrhenânis omnibus Germanis, esse in armis, Senônes ad imperatum non venire et cum Carnutibus finitimisque civitatibus consilia communicare, a Treviris Germanos crebris legationibus sollicitari; maturius sibi de bello cogitandum putavit.
III. Itaque nondum hieme confectā, proximis quattuor coactis legionibus de improviso in fines Nerviorum contendit, et priusquam illi aut convenire aut profugere possent, magno pecoris atque hominum numero capto atque 5 ea praedā militibus concessā vastatisque agris, in dediti-onem venire atque obsides sibi dare coēgit. Eo celeriter confecto negotio, rursus in hiberna legiones reduxit. Consilio Galliae primo vere, uti instituerat, indicto, cum reliqui praeter Senōnes, Carnūtes Trevīrosque venissent, 10 initium belli ac defectionis hoc esse arbitratus, ut omnia postponere videtur, concilium Lutetiam Parisiorum transfert. Confines erant hi Senoniibus civitatemque patrum memoria inconjuxerant; sed ab hoc consilio abfuisse existimabantur. Hac re pro suggestu pronuntiātā, eodem die 15 cum legionibus in Senōnes proficiscitur magnisque itineri-bus eo pervenit.

IV. Cognito ejus adventu, Acco, qui princeps ejus consiliī fuerat, jubet in oppida multitūdinem convenire; conantibus, priusquam id effici posset, adesse Romānos 20 nuntiatur; necessario sententiā desistunt legatosque deprecandi causā ad Caesarem mittunt; adeunt per Aedusos, quorum antiquitus erat in fide civitas. Libenter Caesar potentibus Aeduis dat veniam excusationemque accipit, quod aestivum tempus instantis belli, non quaestionis, esse 25 arbitrabatur. Obsidibus imperatis centum, hos Aeduis custodiendos tradit. Eodem Carnūtes legatos obsidesque mittunt, usi deprecatoribus Remis, quorum erant in clientelā; eadem ferunt responsa. Peragit concilium Caesar equitesque imperat civitatibus.

V. Hac parte Galliae pacatā, totus et mente et animo in bellum Trevirōrum et Ambiorīgis insistit. Cavarīnum cum equitatu Senōnum secum proficiisci jubet, ne quis aut ex hujus iracundiā, aut ex eo, quod meruerat, odio civitatis, motus existat. His rebus constitutis, quod pro explorato 35 habebat, Ambiorīgem proelio non esse concertaturum, reliqua ejus consilia animo circumspiciebat. Erat Menapīi propinqui Eburōnum finibus, perpetuis paludibus silvisque muniti, qui uni ex Galliā de pace ad Caesārem legatos
 LIBER SEXTUS. 105

nunquam miserant. Cum his esse hospitium Ambiorigis sciebat; item per Trevisos venisse Germānis in amicitiam cognoverat. Haece prius illi detrahenda auxilia existimabat, quam ipsum bellō laceraret; ne desperatā salute aut se in Menapios abderet, aut cum Transrhenānis congregi cogeretur. Hoc initio consilio, totius exercitus impedimenta ad Labiēnum in Trevisos mittit duasque legiones ad eum proficiscui jubet: ipse cum legionibus expeditis quinque in Menapios proficiscitur. Illī, nullā coactā manu, loci præsidio freti in silvas paludesque confugiunt suae 10 eodem conferunt.

VI. Caesar partitis copiis cum Gaiō Fabio legato et Marco Crasso quaestore celeriterque effectis pontibus, adit tripartito, aedificia vicosque incendit, magno pecoris atque hominum numero potitur. Quibus rebus coacti Menapii 15 legatos ad eum pacis petendae causā mittunt. Ille obsidibus acceptis hostium se habiturum numero confirmat, si aut Ambiorigem aut ejus legatos finibus suis recepissent. His confirmatis rebus, Commiōnem Atrebātem cum equitatu custoditis loco in Menapiis relinquit; ipse in Trevisos proficiscitur. 20

VII. Dum haec a Caesāre geruntur, Treverī magnis coactīs peditatus equitatusque copiis, Labiēnum cum una legione, quae in eorum finibus hiemaverat, adoriri parabant, jamque ab eo non longius bidui viā aberant, cum duas venisse legiones missu Caesāris cognoscunt. Positis 25 castris a millibus passuum quindecim, auxilia Germanorum espectare constituunt. Labiēnus, hostium cognito consilio, sperans, temeritate eorum fore aliquam dimicandi facultatem, præsidio quinque cohortibus magnōque equitatu contra hostem proficiscitur et mille passuum intermisso spatio castra communit. Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem diffici transittu flumen ripisque praeruptis; hoc neque ipse transire habebat in animo neque hostes transituros existimabant. Augebatur auxiliōrum quotidie spes. Lo 35 quitur in consilio palam, quoniam Germāni appropinquare dicuntur, sese suas exercitusque fortunas in dubium non devastatur et postero die primā luce castra moturum.
Celeriter haec ad hostes deferuntur, ut ex magno Gallo-
rum equitum numero nonnulllos Gallicis rebus favere natu-
ra cogebat. Labienus noctu, tribunis militiae primumque
ordinibus convocatis, quid sui sit consilii, proponit, et quo
facilibus hostibus timoris det suspicione, majore strepitu
et tumultu, quam populi Romani fert consuetudo, castra
moveri jubet. Hic rebus fugae similem profectionem efficit.
Haec quoque per exploratores ante lucem in tantâ propin-
quitate castrorum ad hostes deferuntur.

VIII. Vix agmen novissimum extra munitiones proce-
serat, cum Galli cohortati inter se, ne speratam praedam
ex manibus dimitterent, longum esse perterritis Romanis
Germanorum auxiliu exspectare, neque suam pati digni-
tatem, ut tantis copis tam exiguum manum, praesertim
fugientem atque impeditam, adoriri non audeant, flumen
transire et iniquo loco proelium committere non dubitant.
Quae fore suspicatus Labienus, ut omnes cita flumen elici-
ret, eadem usus simulatione itineris, placide progrediebat-
tur. Tum praemissis paulum impeditem atque in tu-
mulo quodam collocatis, “Habetis,” inquit, “milites, quam
petistis, facultatem: hostem impedito atque iniquo loco
tenetis: praestate eandem nobis ducibus virtutem, quam
saepenumber imperatori praestitistis: atque illum adesse
et haec coram cernere existimavit.” Simul signa ad hos-
tem converti aciemque dirigi jubet, et paucis turnis praec-
sidio ad impedimenta dimissis, reliquos equites ad latera
disponit. Celeriter nostri clamore sublato pilae in hostes
immittunt. Illi, ubi praeter spem quos fugere credebant
infestis signis ad se ire viderunt, impetum modo ferre non
potuerunt ac primo concursu in fugam conjecit proximas
silvas petierunt: quos Labienus equitatu consectatus, mag-
num numero interfecto, compluribus captis, paucis post die-
bus civitatem recepti; nam Germani, qui auxilio venie-
bant, percepta Trevirorum fugae, sese domum receperunt.

Cum his propinquii Inditionarii, qui defectionis auctores
fuerant, comitati eos ex civitate exserrerunt. Cingetorigi,
quem ab initio permansisse in officio demonstravimus, prin-
cipatus atque imperium est traditum.
LIBER SEXTUS.

IX. Caesar, postquam ex Menapiis in Treviri venit, duabus de causis Rhenum transire constituit: quorum una erat, quod auxilia contra se Treviri miserant; altera, ne ad eos Ambiorix receptum haberet. His constitutis rebus, paulum supra eum locum, quo ante exercitum transduxerat, facere pontem instituit. Nota atque institutâ ratione, magno militum studio paucis diebus opus efficitur. Firmo in Treviri ad pontem praesidio relictum, ne quis ab his subito motus oriretur, reliquas copias equitatumque transducit. Ubii, qui ante obsides dederant atque in deditionem venerant, purgandi sui causâ ad eum legatos mittunt, qui doceant neque auxilia ex sua civitate in Treviro missa, neque ab se fidem laesam: petunt atque orant, ut sibi parcat, ne communio odio Germanorum innocentes pro nocentibus poenas pendant: si amplius obsidum velit, dare polliti centur. Cognitâ Caesar causâ reperit ab Suebis auxilia missa esse; Ubiòrum satisfactionem accipit, aditus viasque in Suëbos perquirit.

X. Interim paucis post diebus fit ab Ubii certior, Suëbos omnes in unum locum copias cogere, atque iis nationibus, quae sub eorum sint imperio, denuntiaret, ut auxilia peditatus equitatusque mittant. His cognitis rebus, rem frumentaria providet, castris idoneum locum deligit. Ubii imperat, ut pecora deducant suaque omnia ex agris in oppida conferant, sperans barbaros atque imperitos homines inopiã cibariorum adductos ad iniquam pugnandi conditionem posse deduci: mandat, ut crebros exploratores in Suëbos mittant quaeque apud eos gerantur cognoscant. Illi imperata faciunt et, paucis diebus intermissis, referunt, Suëbos omnes, posteaquam certiores nuntii de exercitu Romanorum venerint, cum omnibus suis sociorumque copiis, quas coëgisserunt, penitus ad extremos fines se recepisse: silvam esse ibi infinitâ magnitudine, quae appellatur Baecnis; hanc longe introitus pertinere et pro nativo muro objectam Cheruscose ab Suëbis Suëbosque ab Cheruscis injurii insurrectionibusque prohibere: ad ejus initium silvae Suëbos adventum Romanorum exspectare constituisse.
XI. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, non alie-
num esse videtur de Galliae Germaniaeque moribus, et
quo differant eae nationes inter sese, proponere. In Galliis
non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus pagis
partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus, factio-
nes sunt; earumque factionum principes sunt, qui sum-
mam auctoritatem eorum judicio habere existimantur,
quorum ad arbitrium judiciumque summam omnium rerum
consiliorumque redate. Idque ejus rei causâ antiquitus
institutum videtur, ne quis ex plebe contra potentiores
auxilia egeret: suos enim quisque opprimi et circumveniri
non patitur, neque, aliter si faciat, ullam inter suos habet
auctoritatem. Haece eadem ratio est in summâ totius Gal-
liae; namque omnes civitates in partes disivae sunt duas.

XII. Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis
principes erant Aedui, alterius Sequâni. Hi cum per se
minus valerent, quod summam auctoritas antiquitus erat
in Aeduis magnaeque eorum erant clientes, Germanos
atque Arovistum sibi adjunxerant, eosque ad se magnis
jacturis polluitationibusque perduxerant. Proelii vero
compluribus factis secundis atque omni nobilitate Aedu-
rum interfectâ, tantum potentiâ antecesserant, ut magnam
partem clientium ab Aeduis ad se transducerent obsi-
desque ab iis principum filios acciperent, et publice jurare

cogerent nihil se contra Sequânos consilii inituros; et
partem finitimi agri per vim occupatam possiderent, Galli-
aeque totius principatum obtinerent. Qua necessitate ad-
ductus Divitiâcus auxiliis petendi causa Romanum ad sena-
tum profectus imperfectâ re redierat. Adventu Caesâria
factâ commutatione rerum, obsidibus Aeduis redditis, ve-
teribus clientelis restitutis, novis per Caesârem comparatis,
quo hi, qui se ad eorum amicitiam aggregaverant, meliore
conditione atque aequiore imperio se uti videbant, reli-
quis rebus eorum gratia dignitatem amplificât, Sequâni
principatum dimiserant. In eorum locum Remi successe-
rant; quos quod adaequare apud Caesarem gratia intelli-
gebatur, ii, qui propter veteres inimicitias nullo modo cum
Aeduis conjungi poterant, se Remis in clientelam dicabant.
Hos illi diligenter tuebantur. Ita et novam et repente collectam auctoritatem tenebant. Eo tum statu res erat, ut longe principes haberunt Aurei, secundum locum dignitatis Remi obtinerent.

XIII. In omni Galliæ eorum hominum, qui aliquo sunt numero atque honore, genera sunt duo; nam plebes paene servorum habetur loco, quae nihil audet per se, nullo adhibetur consilio. Plerique, cum aut aere alieno aut magnitudine tributorum aut injuriâ potentiorum premuntur, sese in servitutem dicant nobilibus: in hos eadem omnia sunt jura, quæ dominis in servos. Sed de his duobus generibus alterum est Druidum, alterum equitum. Ili rebus divinis intersunt, sacrificia publica ac privata procurant, religiones interpretantur. Ad hos magnus adolescens tium numeros disciplinae causâ concurrît, magnoque hi sunt apud eos honore. Nam fere de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituitur; et si quod est admissum facinus, si caedes facta, si de hereditate, de finibus controversia est, idem decernunt; praemia poenasque constituunt. Si qui aut privatus aut populus eorum decreto non stetit, sacrificis interdicunt. Hae poena apud eos est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hi numero impiorum ac æcleratorum habentur; his omnes decedunt. aditum eorum sermonemque defugient, ne quid ex contagione incommodi accipiant; neque his petentibus jus redit neque honos ullus communicatur. His autem omnibus Druidibus praest unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. Hoc mortuo, aut, si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit; aut, si sunt plures pares, suffragio Druidum, nonnumquam etiam armis de principatu contundunt. 

Hi certo anni tempore in finibus Carnūtum, quæ regio totius Galliae media habetur, considunt in loco consecrado. Huc omnes undique, qui controversias habent, conveniunt eorumque decretis judicisisque parent. Disciplina in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam translata esse eis timatur; et nunc, qui diligentius eam rem cognoscere volunt, plerumque illo descendì causâ profisciscuntur.

XIV. Druides a bello abesse consuerunt neque tributa
una cum reliquis pendant; militiae vacationem omnium-que rerum habent immunitatem. Tantis excitati praemiis et suā sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum 5 versuum ediscere dicuntur: itaque annos nonnulli vicenos in disciplinā permanent. Neque fas esse existimant ea litteris mandare, cum in reliquis fere rebus, publicis privatīisque rationibus, Graecis litteris utantur. Id mihi duabus de causis instituisse videntur; quod neque in vulgum 10 disciplinam efferri velint, neque eos, qui discunt, litteris confisos minus memoriae studere; quod fere plerisque accidit, ut præsidio litterarum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam remittant. Imprimis hoc volunt persuadere, non interire animas, sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad 15 alios, atque hoc maxime ad virtutem excitari putant, metu mortis neglecto. Multa praeterea de sideribus atque eorum motu, de mundi ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum naturā, de deorum immortalium vi ac potestate disputant et juvenutī tradunt.

XXV. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cum est usus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod fere ante Caesāris adventum quotannis accidere solebat, uti aut ipsi injurias inferrent aut illatas propulsarent), omnes in bello versantur; atque eorum ut quiaque est genere copisque amplissimis, ita plurimos circum se ambactos clientesque habent. Hanc unam gratiam potentiamque noverunt.

XXVI. Natio est omnis Gallōrum admodum dedita religionibus atque ob eam causam, qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis quique in proeliiis periculisque versantur, aut pro victinis homines immolant aut se immolaturos vovent, administrisque ad ea sacrificia Druidībus utuntur, quod, pro vitā hominis nisi hominis vita reddatur, non posse deorum immortalium numer placari arbitrantur, publiceque ejusdem generis habent instituta sacrificia. Alii 35 immani magnitudine simulacra habent, quorum contexta viminibus membra vivis hominibus complent, quibus successis, circumventi flammā examinantur homines. Suppli- cia eorum, qui in furto aut in latrocinio aut aliqua noxiā
sint comprehensi, gratiora diis immortalibus esse arbitrantur, sed, cum ejus generis copia deficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia descendunt.

XVII. Deum maxime Mercurium colunt. Hujus sunt plurima simulacra, hunc omnium inventorem artium ferunt, hunc viarum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestus pecuniae mercaturasque habere vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Martem et Jovem et Minervam: de his eandem fere, quam reliquae gentes, habent opinionem; Apollinem morbos depellere, Minervam operum atque artificiorum initia tradere, Jovem imperium coelestem tenere, Martem bella regere. Huic, cum proelio dimicare constituerunt, ea, quae bello cepint, plerumque devovent. Cum superaverunt, animalia capta immolant, reliquas res in unum locum conferunt. Multis in civitatibus harum rerum exstructos tumulos locis consecratis conspicari licet; neque saepe accidit, ut, neglecta quisquam religione, aut capta apud se occultare aut posita tollere auderet; gravissimunque ei rei supplicium cum cruciato constitutum est.

XVIII. Galli se omnes ab Dite patre prognatos praedicant, idque ab Druidibus proditum dicunt. Ob eam causam spatiis omnis temporis non numero dierum, sed noctium finiunt; dies natales et mensium et annorum initia sic observant, ut noctem dies subsequatur. In reliquis vitae institutis hoc fere ab reliquis differunt, quod suos liberos, nisi cum adoleverunt, ut munus militiae sustinere possint, palam ad se adire non patiuntur, filiumque puerili aetate in publico in conspectu patris adsistere turpe ducunt.

XIX. Viri, quantas pecunias ab uxoribus dotis nomine acceperunt, tantas ex suis bonis, aestimatione facta, cum dotibus communicant. Hujus omnis pecuniae conjunctim ratio habetur fructusque servatur: uter eorum vitæ superarit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiorum temporum pervenit. Viri in uxores, sicuti in liberos, vitae necisque habent potestatem; et cum pater familiae illustriore loco natusecessit, ejus propinqu qui conveniunt, et
DE BELLO GALLICO

de morte si res in suspicionem venit, de uxoribus in servi-
lem modum questionem habent, et si compertum est, igni
atque omnibus tormentis excruciatas interficiunt. Funera
sunt pro cultu Gallorum magnifica et sumptuosa; omnia-
5 que, quae vivis cordi fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem inferunt,
etiam animalia; ac paulo supra hanc memoriam servi et
clientes, quos ab iis dilectos esse constabat, justis funeri-
bus confectis una cremabantur.

XX. Quae civitates commodius suam rem publicam
10 administrare existimantur, habent legibus sanctum, si quis
quid de re publica a finitimis rumore aut fama acceperit,
uti ad magistratum deferat, neve cum quo alio communi-
cet: quod saepe homines temerarios atque imperitos falsis
rumoribus terreri et ad facinus impelli et de summis rebus
15 consilium capere cognitum est. Magistratus quae visa
sunt occultant; quaeque esse ex usu judicaverunt, multi-
tudini produnt. De re publica nisi per concilium loqui non
conceditur.

XXI. Germani multum ab hac consuetudine differunt;
20 nam neque Druides habent, qui rebus divinis praesint, ne-
que sacrificiis studet. Deorum numero eos solos ducunt,
quos cernunt et quorum aperte opibus juvantur, Solem et
Vulcanum et Lunam: reliquos ne fama quidem accepe-
runt. Vita omnis in venationibus atque in studiis rei
25 militaris consistit: ab parvulis labori ac duritiae student.
Qui diutissime impuberes permanerunt, maximam inter
suos ferunt laudem: hoc ali staturam, ali hoc vires nervos-
que confirmari putant. Intra annum vero viciousum femi-
nae notitiam habuisse in turpissimis habent rebus: cujus
20 rei nulla est occultatio, quod et promiscue in fluminibus
perluuntur, et pellibus aut parvis renonum tegimentis
utuntur, magna corporis parte nudā.

XXII. Agriculturae non student; majorque pars eorum
victus in lacte, caseo, carne consistit: neque quisquam
35 agri modum certum aut fines habet proprios, sed magistra-
tus ac principes in annos singulos gentibus cognitionibus-
que hominum, qui una coierunt, quantum et quo loco
visum est agri attribuunt atque anno post alio transire
sogunt. Eius rei multas afferunt causas; ne assiduā consuetudine capti studium belli gerendi agricultūrā commutent; ne latos fines parare studeant potentioresque humiliores possessionibus expellant; ne accuratius ad frigora atque aestus vitandos aedificant; ne qua oriatur pecuniae cupiditas, quā ex re factiones dissensionesque nascentur; ut animi aqueitate plebem continant, cum suas quisque opes cum potentissimis aequari videat.

XXIII. Civitatibus maxima laus est quam latissimas circum se vastatis finibus solitudines habere. Hoc proprium virtutis existimant, expulsos agris finitimatos cedere, neque quemquam prope audere consistere: simul hoc se fore tutores arbitrantur, repentinae incursionis timore sublato. Cum bellum civitatis aut illatum defendit aut infert, magistratus, qui ei bello praesint, ut vitae necisque habeant potestatem, deliguntur. In pace nullus est communis magistratus, sed principes regionum atque pagorum inter suos jus dicunt controversiasque minuunt. Latrocinia nullam habent infamiam, quae extra fines cujusque civitatis fiunt; atque ea juventutis exercendae ac desideriae minuendae causā fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex principibus in concilio dixit, se ducem fore, qui sequi velit, profiteantur; consurgunt ii, qui et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ab multitudine collaudantur: qui ex his secuti non sunt, in desertorum ac proditorum numero ducuntur omniumque his rerum postea fides derogatur. Hospitem violare, fas non putant; qui quācumque de causā ad eos venerunt, ab injuriā prohibent, sanctos habent, hisque omnium domus patent victusque communicatur.

XXIV. Ac fuit ante tempus, cum Germanōs Galli virtute superarent, ultro bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agrique inopiam trans Rhenum colonias mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima Germaniae sunt, loca circum Hercyniam silvam (quam Eratosthēni et quibusdam Graecis famā notam esse video, quam illī Orcyniam appellant), Volcae Tectosāges occupaverunt atque ibi consederunt. Quae gens ad hoc tempus his sedibus sese
DE BELLO GALLICO

continet summamque habet justitiae et bellicae laudis opinionem: nunc quoque in eadem inopiæ, egestate, patiendi, quà Germaniæ, permanent, eodem victu et cultu corporis utuntur. Gallis autem provinciarum propinquitas et transmarinarum rerum notitia multa ad copiam atque usus largitur: paulatim assuefacti superari multisque victi proelii ne se quidem ipsi cum illis virtute comparant.

XXV. Hujus Hercyniae silvae, quae supra demonstrata est, latitudo novem dierum iter expedito patet: non enim alter finiri potest, neque mensuras itinerum noverunt. Oritur ab Helvetiorum et Nemetum et Rauricorum finibus, rectaque fluminis Danuviæ regione pertinet ad fines Daoricæm et Antartium; hinc se flectit sinistrorsus diversis ab flumine regionibus, multarumque gentium fines propter magnitudinem attingit; neque quisquam est hujus Germaniæ, qui se aut adisse ad initium ejus silvae dicat, cum dierum iter sexaginta processerit, aut quo ex loco oritur, acceperit; multaque in ea generam ferarum nasci constat, quae reliquis in locis visa non sint; ex quibus quae maxime differt ab ceteris et memoriae prodenda videantur, haec sunt.

XXVI. Est bos cervi figuræ, cujus a mediæ fronte inter aures unum cornu existit excelsius magisque directum his, quæ nobis nota sunt, cornibus. Ab ejus summo sicut palmæ ramique late diffunduntur. Eadem est feminae marisque naturæ, eadem forma magnitudine quoerum.

XXVII. Sunt item, quæ appellantur, alces. Harum est consimilis capreis figura et varietas pellium; sed magnitudine paulo antecedunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crura sine nodis articulisque habent; neque quietis causa procumbunt, neque, si quo afflictae casu conciderunt, egerere sese aut sublevare possunt. His sunt arbores pro cubilibus; ad eas se applicat atque ita paulum modo reclinatae quietem capiunt; quarum ex vestigiis cum est animadversum a venatoriibus, quo se recipere consuerint, omnes eo loco aut a radicibus subruunt, aut accidunt arbores tantum, ut summa species earum stantium relinquatur. Huc cum se consuetudine reclinaverunt, infirmas arbores pondere affligunt atque una ipsae concidunt.
LIBER SEXTUS.


XXIX. Caesar, postquam per Ubios exploratores comperit Suebos sese in silvas recepisse, inopiam frumenti 15 veritum, quod, ut supra demonstravimus, minime omnes Germâni agriculturae student, constituit non progradì longius; sed ne omnino metum redditus sui barbaris tolleret atque ut eorum auxilia tardaret, reucto exercitu, partem ultimam pontis, quae ripas Ubiörum contingebat, in longi 20 tudinem pedum ducentorum rescindit; atque in extremo ponte turrin tabulatorum quattuor constituit praedisimumque cohortium duodécim pontis tuendi causâ ponit magnoseque cum locum munitionibus firmat. Ei loco præsidioque Gâium Volcatium Tullum adolescentem praefecit. 25 Ipse, cum maturescere frumenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorigis provincus per Arduennam silvam, quae est totius Galliae maxima atque ab ripis Rheni finibusque Trevirörum ad Nervios pertinet, millibusque amplius quingentis in longitudinem patet, Lucium Minucium Basilum 30 cum omni equitatu praemittit, si quid celeritate itineris atque opportunitate temporis proficere possit; monet, ut ignes in castris fieri prohibeat, ne qua ejus adventus procul significatio fiat: sese confestim subsequi dicit.

XXX. Basilus ut imperatum est facit. Celeriter con- 35 traque omnium opinionem confecto itinere, multos in agris inopinantes comprehendit; eorum indicio ad ipsum Ambiorigem contendit, quo in loco cum paucis equitibus esse
dicebatur. Multum cum in omnibus rebus, tum in re militari potest fortuna. Nam sicut magno accidit casu, ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imparatum incideret, priusque ejus adventus ab hominibus videretur, quam fama aut nuntius afferretur; sic magnae fuit fortunae omni militari instrumento, quod circum se habebat, erepto, rhedis equisque comprehensis, ipsum effugere mortem. Sed hoc factum est, quod aedificio circumdata silvā (ut sunt fere domicilia Gallōrum, qui vitandi aestus causā plerumque silvarum ac fluminum petunt propinquitates), comites familiaresque ejus angusto in loco paulisper equitum nostrorum vim sustinuerunt. His pugnantibus illum in equum quidam ex suis intulit: fugientem silvae tesserunt. Sic et ad subeundum periculum et ad vitandum multum fortuna valuit.

XXXI. Ambiorīx copias suas judicione non conduxerit, quod proelio dimicandum non existimarit, an tempore exclusus et repentino equitum adventu prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsecui crederet, dubium est; sed certe dimissis per agros nuntii sibi quemque consulere jussit: quorum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentem paludes profugit; qui proximi Oceānum fuerunt, hi insulis sese occultaverunt, quas aestus efficere consuerunt: multi ex suis finibus egressi se suaque omnia alienissimis crediderunt. Catuvolceus, rex dimidiae partis Eburōnum, qui una cum Ambiorīge consilium inierat, aetate jam conspectus, cum laborem belli aut fugae fere non posset, omnibus precibus detestatus Ambiorīgem, qui ejus consilii auctor fuissest, taxo, cujus magna in Galliā Germaniāque copia est, se examinavit.

XXXII. Segni Condrūisque, ex gente et numero Germanōrum, qui sunt inter Eburōnes Trevirosque, legatos ad Caesārem miserunt, oratum, ne se in hostium numero duceret neve omnium Germanōrum, qui essent citra Rhēnum, unam esse causam judicaret; nihil se de bello cogitasse, nulla Ambiorīgi auxilia misisse. Caesar exploratā re quaestione captivorum, si qui ad eos Eburōnes ex fugā convenissent, ad se ut reducarentur imperavit; si ita
fecissent, fines eorum se violaturum negavit. Tum copiis
in tres partes distributis, impedimenta omnium legionum
Aduatūcīam contulit. Íd castelli nomen est. Hoc fere est
in mediis Eburōnum finibus, ubi Titurius atque Auruncu-
leius hiemandi causa consederant. Hunc cum reliquis 5
rebus locum probabat, tum quod superioris anni munitiones
integrae maneabant, ut militum laborem sublevaret. Praes-
sidio impedimentis legionem quartam decimam reliquit,
unam ex his tribus, quas proxime conscriptas ex Italia
transduxerat. Ei legioni castrisque Quintum Tullium 10
Cicerōnem praeficit ducentosque equites attribuit.

XXXIII. Partito exercitu, Titum Labiēnum cum legi-
donibus tribus ad Oceānum versus in eas partes, quae Menap-
sios attingunt, profiscisci jubet; Gālum Trebonium cum
pari legionum numero ad eam regionem, quae Aduatūcis 15
adjacet, depopulandam mittit; ipse cum reliquis tribus ad
flumen Scaldem, quod influit in Mosam, extremasque Ar-
duennae partes ire constituit, quō cum paucis equitibus
profectum Ambiorīgēm audiebat. Discedens post diem
septimum sese reversurum confirmat; quam ad diem ei 20
legioni, quae in praesidio relinquebatur, frumentum deberi
sciebat. Labiēnum Treboniumque hortatur, si rei publicae
commodo facere possint, ad eam diem revertantur; ut
rursus communicato consilio exploratisque hostium ratio-
nibus, aliud bellī initium capere possent. 25

XXXIV. Erat, ut supra demonstravimus, manus certa
 nulla, non oppidum, non praesidium, quod se armis de-
deferet, sed omnes in partes dispersa multitudo. Ubi cuique
aut vallis abdita aut locus silvestris aut palus impedita
spem praesidii aut salutis aliquam offerebat, consederat. 30
Haec loca vicinitatibus erant nota, magnamque res dili-
geniam requirebat, non in summā exercitus tuendā (nul-
lum enim poterat universis ab perterritis ac dispersis
periculum accidere), sed in singulis militibus conservandis;
quae tamen ex parte res ad salutem exercitus pertinebat. 35
Nam et praedae cupiditas multos longius evocabat, et silvae
incertis occultisque itineribus confertos adire prohibebant.
Si negotium confici stirpemque hominum sceleratorum
interfici vellet, dimittendae plures manus diducendique erant milites: si continere ad signa manipulos vellet, ut instituta ratio et consuetudo exercitum Romāni postulabat, locus ipse erat praesidio barbaris, neque ex occulto insidiandi et dispersos circumveniendi singulis deerr audacia. At in ejusmodi difficultatibus, quantum diligentia provideri poterat, providebatur, ut potius in nocendo aliquid praetermitteretur, etsi omnium animi ad uliscendum ardebant, quam cum aliquo militum detrimento nrocessetur. Caesar ad finitimas civitates nuntios dimittit, omnes ad se evocat spe praedae ad diripiendo Eburōnes, ut potius in silvis Gallōrum vita quam legionarius miles periclitetur; simul ut, magnā multitudine circumfusā, pro tali facinore stirps ac nomen civitatis tolleretur. Magnus undique numeros celeriter convenit.

XXXV. Haec in omnibus Eburōnum partibus gerebatur, diesque appetebat septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedimenta legionemque reverti constituerat. Hic quantum in bello fortuna possit et quantos afferat casus, cognosci potuit. Dissipatis ac perterritis hostibus, ut demonstravimus, manus erat nulla, quae parvam modo causam timoris afferret. Trans Rhenum ad Germānos pervenit fama, diripi Eburōnes atque ultro omnes ad praedam evocari. Cogunt equitum duo millia Sigambri, qui sunt proximi Rheno, a quibus receptos ex fugā Tenctēros atque Usipētes supra docuimus: transeunt Rhenum navibus ratibusque triginta millibus passuum infra eum locum, ubi pons erat perfectus praesidiumque ab Caesāre relictum: prīncis Eburōnum fines adeunt, multos ex fugā dispersos excipiunt, magnō pecoris numero, cujus sunt cupidissimi barbari, potiuntur. Invitati praedā longius procedunt: non hos palus in bello latrociniisque natos, non silvae morantur: quibus in locis sit Caesar, ex captīvis quærunt; professum longius reperiunt omnemque exercitum discessisse cognoscunt. Atque unus ex captīvis, "Quid vos," inquit, "hanc miseram ac tenuem sectamini praedam, quibus licet jam esse fortunatissimis? Tribus horis Aduatūcam venire potestis: huc omnes suas fortunas exercitus
Liber Sextus.

Romanorum contulit; praesidii tantum est, ut ne murus quidem cingi possit, neque quisquam egredi extra munitiones audeat." Oblata spe, Germāni, quam nacti erant praeda, in occulto relinquent; ipsi Ąduatūcam contendunt, usi eodem duce, cujus haec indicio cognoverant. 5

XXXVI. Cicerō, qui per omnes superiores dies praechoptis Caesāris cum summā diligentia milites in castris continuisset ac ne calonem quidem quemquam extra munitiones egredi passus esset, septimo die diffidens de numero dierum Caesārem fidem servaturum, quod longius progressum audiebat, neque ulna de reeditu ejus fama afferebatur; simul eorum permotus vocibus, qui illius patientiam paene obsessionem appellabant, si quidem ex castris egredi non liceret; nullum ejusmodi casum exspectans, quo novem oppositis legionibus maximoque equitatu, dispersis ac paene deletis hostibus, in millibus passuum tribus offendi posset; quinque cohortes frumentatum in proximas segetes mittit, quas inter et castra unus omnino collis intererat. Complures erant in castris ex legionibus aegri relictī; ex quibus qui hoc spatio dierum convaluerant, circiter trecentī sub vexillo una mittuntur: magna praeterea multitudo calonum, magna vis jumentorum, quae in castris subsede-rat, factā potestate, sequitur.

XXXVII. Hoc ipso tempore et casu Germāni equites interviunt protinusque eodem illo, quo venerant, cursu ab decumanā portā in castra irrupere conantur; nec prius sunt visi objectis ab ea parte silvis, quam castris appropinquarent, usque eo, ut qui sub vallo tenderent mercatores, recipiendi sui facultatem non haberent. Inopinantes nostri re novā perturbantur ac vix primum im-petum cohors in statione sustinet. Circumfunduntur ex reliquis hostes partibus, si quem aditum reperire possent. Aegre portas nostri tuentur, reliquos aditus locus ipse per se munitioque defendit. Totis trepidatur castris, atque alius ex alio causam tumultus quaeit; neque quo signa serantur, neque quam in partem quisque conveniat, prōvident. Alius jam castra capta pronuntiāt; alius deleto exercitu atque imperatore victores barbaros venisse
contendit: plerique novas sibi ex loco religiones fingunt, Cottaque et Titurii calamitatem, qui in eodem occiderint castello, ante oculos ponunt. Tali timore omnibus perterritis confirmatur opinio barbaris, ut ex captivo audierant, nullum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere nituntur sequi ipsi adhortantur, ne tantam fortunam ex manibus dimittant.


XL. Calones in proximum tumulum procurrent: hinc celeriter dejecti se in signa manipulosque conjiciunt: eo magis timidos perterrent milites. Alii, cuneo facto ut celeriter perrumpant, censent, quoniam tam propinqua sint castra; et si pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquis servari posse confidunt: alii, ut in jugo consistant atque eundem omnes ferant casum. Hoc veteres non probant
milites, quos sub vexillo una prefectos docuimus. Itaque inter se cohortati, duce Gaiō Trebonio, equite Romāno, qui eis erat praepositus, per medios hostes perrumpunt. Incolumesque ad unum omnes in castra perveniunt. Hos subsecuti calones equitesque eodem impetu militum virtute servatur. At ii, qui in jugo constiterant, nullo etiam nunc usu rei militaris percepto, neque in eo, quod probaverant, consilio permanere, ut se loco superiore defendent, neque eam, quam prodesse alius vim celeritatemque viderant, imitari potuerunt; sed se in castra recipere conati iniquum in locum demiserunt. Centuriones, quorum nonnulli ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquarum legionum virtutis causā in superiores erant ordines hujus legionis transducti, ne ante partam rei militaris laudem amitterent, fortissime pugnantes conciderunt. Militum pars, horum virtute submotis hostibus, praeter spem incolumis in castra pervenit; pars a barbaris circumventa perīt.

XL. Germāni, desperatā expugnatione castrorum, quod nostros jam constitisse in munitionibus videbant, cum ea praeda, quam in silvis deposuerant, trans Rhenum sese receperunt. Ac tantus fuit etiam post discersum hostium terror, ut eā nocte, quum Gāius Volusēnus missus cum equitatu ad castra venisset, fidem non faceret adesse cum incolumi Caesārem exercitu. Sic omnium animos timor praecoccupaverat, ut paene alienatā mente, deletis omniibus copiis, equitatum se ex fugā recepisse dicerent, neque incolumi exercitu Germānos castra oppugnaturos fuisse contenderent. Quem timorem Caesāris adventus sustulit.

XLII. Reversus ille, eventus belli non ignorans, unum, quod cohortes ex statione et praesidio essent emissae, 30 questus, ne minimo quidem casu locum reliquī debuisse, multum fortunam in repentino hostium adventu potuisse judicavit; multō etiam amplius, quod paene ab ipso vallo portisque castrorum barbaros avertisset. Quarum omnium rerum maxime admirandum videbatur, quod Germāni, 55 qui eo consilio Rhenum transierant, ut Ambiorīgis fines depopularentur, ad castra Romanōrum delati optatissimum Ambiorīgi beneficium obtulerant.
XLIII. Caesar rursus ad vexandos hostes profectus, magno caotco numero ex finitimis civitatibus, in omnes partes dimitit. Omnes vici atque omnia aedificia, quae quisque conspexerat, incendeabantur; præda ex omnibus locis agebatur; frumenta non solum a tantâ multitudine jumentorum atque hominum consumebantur, sed etiam anni tempore atque imribus procubuerant; ut, si qui etiam in praesentia se occultassent, tamen his, deducto exercitu, rerum omnium inopiae Pereundum videretur. Ac saepe in eum locum ventum est, tanto in omnes partes diviso equitatu, ut modo visum ab se Ambiorigem in fugâ circumspicerent captivi, nec plane etiam abisse ex conspectu contenderent, ut spe consequendi illa atque infinito labore suscepto, qui se summam ab Caesare gratiam inituros putarent, paene naturam studio vincerent, semperque paulum ad summam felicitatem defuisse videretur, atque ille latebris ac silvis aut saltibus se eriperet et noctu occultatus alias regiones partesque peteret, non majore equitum praesidio quam quattuor, quibus solis vitam suam committere auderet.

XLIV. Tali modo vastatis regionibus, exercitum Caesar durarum cohortium damno Durocortorum Remorum reducit, concilioque in eum locum Galliae indicto, de conjuratione Senonum et Carnutum quaestionem habere instituit; et de Accone, qui princeps ejus consili fuerat, graviore sententiâ pronuntiata, more majorum supplicium sumpsit. Nonnulli judicium veriti profugerunt; quibus cum aqua atque igni interdixisset, duas legiones ad fines Treverorum, duas in Lignonibus, sex reliquias in Senonum finibus Ageu dinci in hibernis collocavit, frumentoque exercitui proviso, ut instituerat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos profectus est.
LIBER VII.

I. QUIETĀ Galliā Caesar, ut constituerat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos profisciscit. Ibi cognoscit de Clodii caede; de senatusque consulto certior factus, ut omnes juniores Italiae conjurarent, delectum totā provinciā habe-re instituit. Eae res in Galliam Transalpinam celeriter 5 perferuntur. Addunt ipsi et affingunt rumoribus Galli, quod res poscere videbatur, retineri urbano motu Caesārem neque in tantis dissensionibus ad exercitum venire posse. Hac impulsi occasione, qui jam ante se populi Romāni imperio subjectos dolerent, liberius atque audacius de bello 10 consilia inire incipiunt. Indictis inter se principes Galliae conciliis silvestribus ac remotis locis queruntur de Accōnis morte; posse hunc casum ad ipsos recidere demonstrant; miserantur communem Galliae fortunam; omnibus pollicitationibus ac praemīs deposcunt, qui bellī initiūm 15 faciant et sui capitis periculo Galliam in libertatem vindicent. Imprimis rationem esse habendam dicunt, priusquam eorum clandestina consilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitu intercludatur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiones audeant, absente imperatore, ex hibernis egredi, neque 20 imperator sine praesidio ad legiones pervenire possit: postremo in acie praestare interfici, quam non veterem belli gloriam libertatemque, quam a majoribus acceperint, recuperare.

II. His rebus agitatis, profinetur Carnūtes se nullum 25 periculum communis salutis causā recusare, principesque ex omnibus bellum facturos pollicitur; et quoniam in praeuentiā obsidibus cavere inter se non possint, ne res efferatur, ut jurejurando ac fide sanctiatur, petunt, collatis militariībus signis, quo more eorum gravissima caerimonia 30
CONTINETUR, NE FACTO INITIO BELLi AB RELIQUIS DESERANTUR. TUM COLLAUDATIS CARNUTIBUS, DATO JUREJURANDO AB OMNIBUS QUI ADERANT, TEMPORE EJUS REI CONSTITUTO, AB CONCILIO DISCEDITUR.

III. UBI EA DIES VENIT, CARNUTES, COTUATO ET CONETODUNO DUCIBUS, DESPERATIS HOMINIBUS, GENABUM SIGNO DATO CONCURRUNT, CIVESQUE ROMANOS, QUI NEGOTIANDI CAUSA IBI CONSTITERANT, IN HIS GAIOUM FUSIUM CITAM, HONESTUM EQUITEM ROMANUM, QUI REI FRUMENTARIAE JUSSU CAESARIIS PRAEERAT, INTERFICIUNT BONAQUE EORUM DIRIPIUNT. CELERITER AD OMNES GALLIÆ CIVITATES FAMA PERFERTUR; NAM UBIQUEMQUE MAIOR ATQUE ILLUSTRIOR INCIDIT RES, CLAMORE PER AGROS REGIONESQUE SIGNIFICAT; HUC ALII DEINECEPS EXCIPIUNT ET PROXIMIS TRADUNT, UT TUM ACCIDIT. NAM QUAE GENABI ORIENTE SOLE GESTA ESSENT, ANTE PRIMAM CONFACTAM VIGILIAM IN FINIBUS AVRERNORUM AUDITA SUNT; QUOD SPATIUM EST MILLIUM CIRCITER CENTUM ET SEXAGINTA.

IV. SIMILI RATIONE IBI VERCINGETORIX, CELTIILLI FILIUS, AVRERNUS, SUMMAE POTENTIAE ADOLESCENS, CUIUS PATER PRINCIPATUM 20 GALLIÆ TOTIUS OBTINUIERAT ET OB EAM CAUSAM, QUOD REGNUM APPETEBAT, AB CIVITATE ERAT INTERFECTUS, CONVOCATIS SUISS CLIENTIBUS FACILE INCENDIT. CONGNO ETIUS CONSENSIO AD ARMA CONCURRITUR. PROHIBETUR AB GOBANNITIONE, PATRUESUO, RELIQUISQUE PRINCIPIBUS, QUI HANC TENTANDAM FORTUNAM NON 25 EXISTIMABANT, EXPELLITUR EX OPPIDO GEROVIA; NON DESITIT TAMEN ATQUE IN AGROS HABET DELECTUM EGENTIUM AC PERDITORUM. HAC COACTA MANU, QUAEOMQUE ADIT EX CIVITATE, AD SUAM SENTENTIAM PERDUCIT; HORTATUR, UT COMMUNIS LIBERTAS CAUSA ARMA CAPIANT; MAGNISQUE COACTIS COPIS, ADVERSARIOS SUOS, A QUIBUS PAULO ANTE ERAT EJECTUS, EXPELLIT EX CIVITATE. REX AB SUIS APPELLATUR; DIMITTIT QUOQUEVERS LEGATIONES; OBTESTATUR, UT IN FIDE MANEANT. CELERITER SIBI SENONES, PARISIOS, PICTONES, CADUROCOS, TURONES, AULERCOES, LEMOVICOS, ANDES RELIQUOQUE OMNES, QUI OCEANUM ATTIN-30 GUNT, ADJUNGIT; OMNIMI CONSENSU AD EUM DEFERTUR IMPERIUM. QUÀ OBLATAE POSTESTATE, OMNIBUS HIS CIVITATIBUS OBSIDES IMPERAT, CERTUM NUMERUM MILITUM AD SE CELERITER ADDUCI JUBET, ARMORUM QUANTUM QUAEQUE CIVITAS DOMI QUODQUE
ANTE TEMPUS EFFICIAT, CONSTITUIT: IMPRIMIS EQUITATUI STUDET. SUMMAE DILIGENTIAE SUMMAM IMPERII SEVERITATEM ADDIT; MAGNITUDINE SUPPLICII DUBITANTES COGIT; NAM, MAJORE COMMISSO DELIOTO, IGI NI ATQUE OMNIBUS TORMENTIS NECAT; LEVIORE DE CAUSA AURIBUS DESECTIS AUT SINGULIS EFFOSSIS OCULIS DOMUM 5 REMITTIT, UT SINT RELIQUIS DOCUMENTO ET MAGNITUDINE POENAE PERTERRENT ALIOS.

V. HIS SUPPLICII CELERITER COACTO EXERCITO, LUCETERIUM CADURCUM, SUMMAE HOMINEM AUDACIAE, CUM PARTE COPIAM IN RUTENOSMITTIT; IPSAE IN BITURIGES PROFISCITUR. 10 EJUS AVENTA BITURIGES AD AEDUOS, QUORUM ERANT IN FIDE, LEGATOS MITTUNT SUBSIDIUM ROGATUM, QUO FACILIUS HOSTIAM COPIAS SUSTINERE POSSINT. AEDUI DE CONSILIO LEGATORUM, QUOS CAESAR AD EXERCITUM RELICERAT, COPIAS EQUITATUS PEDITATUQUE SUBSIDIO BITURIGIBUS MITTUNT. QUI CUM AD 15 FLUMEN LIGERIM VENISSENT, QUOD BITURIGES AB AEDUIS DIVDIT, PAUCOS DIE IBI MORATI NEQUE FLUMEN TRANSIRE AUSI DOMUM REVERTUNTUR, LEGATISQUE NOSTRIS RENUNTIANTE SE BITURI-RIGUM PERFIDIAM VERITOS REVERTITSE, QUIBUS ID CONSILII FUISSE COGNOVERINT, UT, SI FLUMEN TRANSISSENT, UNA EX PARTE IPSI, 20 ALTERA ARVERNIS SE CIRCUMSISTERENT. ID CÆNE DE CAUSA, QUAM LEGATIS PRONUNTIAVIT, AN PERFIDIA ADDUCTI FECERINT, QUOD Nihil Nobis Constaret, Non Videtur Pro Certo Esse Ponendum. BITURI- GES EORUM DISCENSU STATUM CUM ARVERNIS JUNGUNTUR.

VI. HIS REBUS IN ITALIAM CAESARI NUNITIATUS, CUM JAM 25 ILLA URBANAS RES VIRTUTE GNAEI POMPEII COMMODOREM IN STATUM PERVERSIS INTELLIGERAT, IN TRANSAPIGINAM GALLIAM PROPECTUS EST. EODIUM VENISSIT, MAGNA DIFFICULTATE AFFICEBATUR, QUÆ RATIONE AD EXERCITUM PERVERSIRE POSSET. NAM SI LEGIONES IN PROVINCIAM ARCESSERAT, SE ABSENTIS, IN ITINERE 30 PROELIO DIMICaturas INTELLIGEBAT; SI IPSO AD EXERCITUM CONTENDERAT, NE IIS QUIDEM EO TEMPORE, QUI QUIETI VIDERENTUR, SUAM SALUTEM RECTE COMMITTI VIDEBAT.

VII. INTERIM LUCETERIUS CADURCUM IN RUTENOS MISSUS EAM CIVITATEM ARVERNIS CONCILIAT. PROGRESSUS IN NITIOBRI- 35 GES ET GABALOS AB UTRIQUE OBSIDES ACCIPIT, ET MAGNA COACTA MANU IN PROVINCIAM, NARBÖNUM VERSUS, ERUPTIONEM FACERE CONTENDIT. QUÆ RE NUNITATÄ, CAESAR OMNIBUS CONSILIIS
126 DE BELLO GALLICO

anteventendum existimavit, ut Narbōnem proficisceretur. Eo cum venisset, timentes confirmat, praesidia in Rutēnis provincialibus, Volcis Arecōmīcis, Tolosātibus, circumque Narbōnem, quae loca hostibus erant finitimae, constituit; partem copiarum ex provinciā supplementumque, quod ex Italīā adduxerat, in Helviōs, qui fines Arvernōrum contingunt, convenire jubes.

VIII. His rebus comparatis, represso jam Lucterio et remoto, quod intrare intra praesidia periculosum putabant, in Helviōs proficiscitur. Etsi mons Cevenna, qui Arvernos ab Helviis discludit, durissimo tempore anni altissimae nive iter impediebat, tamen discussā nive sex in altitudinem pedum atque ita viis patefactis, summo millītum labore ad fines Arvernōrum pervenit. Quibus oppressis inopinantibus, quod se Cevennā ut muro munitos existimabat, ac ne singulari quidem unquam homini eo tempore anni semitaes patuerant, equitibus imperat, ut quam latissime possint vagentur et quam maximum hostibus terrorem inferant. Celeriter haec fāma ac nuntiis ad Vercingetorīgem perferuntur; quem perterriti omnes Arverni circumsistunt atque obsessant, ut suis fortunis consulant, ne se ab hostibus diripi patiatur, praesertim cum videant omne ad se bellum translatum. Quorum ille precibus permutos castra ex Biturigibus movet in Arvernōs versus.

IX. At Caesar biduum in his locis moratus, quod haec de Vercingetorīge usu ventura opinione praeceperat, per causam supplementi equitatusque cogendi ab exercitu discedit; Brutum adolescentem his copiis praeficit; hunc monet, ut in omnes partes equites quam latissime pervagatur: datūrum se operam, ne longius trīduo ab castris absit. His constitutis rebus, suis inopinantibus, quam maximis potest itineribus Viennam pervenit. Ibi nactus recentem equitatum, quem multis ante diebus eo praemiserat, neque diurno neque nocturno itinere intermissus per fines Aeduō- rum in Lingōnes contendit, ubi duae legiones hiemabant, ut, si quid etiam de sua salute ab Aeduis iniretur consiliī, celeritate præcurrencet. Eo cum pervenisset, ad reliquas legiones mittit priusque omnes in unum locum cogit, quam
de ejus adventu Arvernis nuntiari posset. Hac re cognitā, Vercingetōrīx rursus in Biturīges exercitum redūcit, atque inde prefectus Gergoviam, Boīorum oppidum, quos ibi Helvēticō proelio victos Caesār collocaverat Aeduisque attribuerat, oppugnare instituit.  

X. Magnam haec res Caesāri difficultatem ad consilium capiendum afferēbat; si reliquam partem hiemis uno in loco legiones contineret, ne, stipendiariis Aeduōrum expugnatis, cuncta Gallia deficeret, quod nullum amīcis in eo præsidium videret position esse; sin maturius ex hīber- nīs educeret, ne ab re frumentariā duris subjectionibus laboraret. Praestare visum est tamen omnes difficultates perpeti, quam, tantā contumeliā acceptā, omnium suorum voluntates alienare. Itaque cohor tum Aeduōs de supportando commeatu praemittit ad Boios, qui de suo adventu doceant horteturque, ut in fide maneant atque hostium impetum magno animo sustineant. Duabus Aedēnci legionibus atque impedimentis totius exercitus relictis ad Boios proficiscitur.  

XI. Altero die cum ad oppidum Senōnum Vellauno- dūnum venisset, ne quem post se hostem relinquere, quo expeditore re frumentariā uteretur, oppugnare instituit idque biduo circumvallavit; tertia die missis ex oppido legatis de deditione, arma conferri, jumenta produci, sexcentos obsides dari jubet. Ea qui conficeret, Gāium Trebonium legatum relinquuit; ipse ut quam primum iter faceret, Genābūm Carnūtum proficiscitur, qui, tum primum allato nutio de oppugnatione Vellaunodūni, cum longius eam rem ductum iri existimarent, praesidium Genābi tuendi causā, quod eo mitterent, comparabant. Huc biduo pervenit. Castris ante oppidum positis, diei tempore exclusus in posterum oppugnationem differt, quaeque ad eam rem usui sint, militibus imperat; et quod oppidum Genābūm pons fluminis Līgōris continebat, veritūs, ne noctu ex oppido profugerent, duas legiones in armis excubare jubet. Genābenses paulo ante medium noctem silentio ex oppido egressi flumen transire coeperunt. Quā re per exploratores nuntiātā, Caesār legiones, quas expeditas esse jussērat,
portis incensis, intromittit atque oppido potitur, perpanceis ex hostium numero Déideratis, quin cuncti caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitadinis fugam intercluserant. Oppidum diripit atque incendit, praedam 5 militibus donat, exercitum Ligërim transducit atque in Biturigum fines pervenit.

XII. Vercingetòrix, ubi de Caesàris adventu cognovit, oppugnatione destitit atque obviam Caesári proficiscitur. Ille oppidum Biturigum positum in vià Noviodùnum opp. 10 pugnare instituerat. Quo ex oppido cum legati ad eum venissent oratum, ut sibi ignosceret suaque vitae consule- ret, ut celeritate reliquas res conficeret, quâ pleraque erat consecutus, arma conferri, equos produci, obsides dari jubet. Parte jam obsidum traditâ, cum reliqua administrarentur, 15 centurionibus et paucis militibus intromissis, qui arma jumentaque conquerirent, equitatus hostium procul visus est, qui agmen Vercingetorígis antecesserat. Quem simul atque oppidani conspexerunt atque in spem auxiliïi vene- runt, clamore sublato, arma capere, portas claudere, mu- 20 rum complere coeperunt. Centuriones in oppido, cum ex significatione Gallòrum novi aliquid ab iis iniri consiliî intellexissent, gladiis dextrae, portas occupaverunt suos- que omnes incolumes receperunt.

XIII. Caesar ex castris equitatum educi jubet proelium- 25 que equestre committit; laborantibus jam suis Germànos equites circiter quadringentos submissit, quos ab initio secum habere instituerat. Eorum impetum Galli susti- nere non potuerunt, atque in fugam conjecti, multis amissis, se ad agmen receperunt: quibus profligatis, rursus 30 oppidani perterriti comprehensos eos, quorum operà ple- bem concitatae existimabant, ad Caesàrem perduxerunt seseque ei dediderunt. Quibus rebus confectis, Caesar ad oppidum Avarìcum, quod erat maximum munitissimumque in finibus Biturigum atque agri fertiliissimâ regione, profec- tus est; quod, eo oppido recepto, civitatem Biturigum se in potestatem redacturum confidebat.

XIV. Vercingetòrix, tot continuis incommodis Vellaunodùni, Genæ, Noviodùni acceptis, suos ad concilium
LIBER SEPTIMUS.

129

convocat. Docet longe aliā ratione esse bellum gerendum, atque ante sit gestum: omnibus modis huic rei studendum, ut pabulatione et commetatu Romāni prohibeantur. Id esse facile, quod equitatu ipsi abundant et quod anni tempore subleventur; pabulum secari non posse; necessa-rio dispersos hostes ex aedificiis petere; hos omnes quotidie ab equitibus deleri posse. Praeterea salutis causā rei familiaris commoda negligenda; vicos atque aedifica incendi oportere hoc spatio quoquo versus, quo pabulandi causā adire posse videantur. Harum ipsis rerum copiam suppe-tere, quod, quorum in finibus bellum geratur, eorum opibus subleventur; Romānos aut inopiam non laturos aut magno cum periculo longius ab castris progressuros; neque interesse, ipso interdicto impedimentisne exuam, quibus amissis, bellum geri non possit. Praeterea oppida incendi oportere, quae non munitione et loci naturā ab omni sint periculo tuta, neu suis sint ad detractandam militiam receptacula, neu Romānis proposita ad copiam commeatus praedamque tollendam. Haec si gravia aut acerba videantur, multo illa gravius aestimare debere, liberos, conjuges in servitutem abstrahi, ipsos interfici; quae sit necesse accidere victis.

XVI. Vercingetorix minoribus Caesarem itineribus subsequitur et locum castris deligit paludibus silvisque munitum, ab Avarico longe millia passuum sexdecim. Ibi per certos exploratores in singula diei tempora, quae ad Avaricum agerentur, cognoscebat, et quid fieri vellet, imperabat; omnes nostras pabulationes frumentationesque observabat, dispersosque, cum longius necessario procederent, adoribatur magnocque incommodo afficiebat; etsi, quantum ratione provideri poterat, ab nostris occurrebatur, ut incerti temporibus diversisque itineribus iretur.

XVII. Castris ad eam partem oppidi positis, Caesar, quae intermissa a flumine et a palude aditum, ut supra diximus, angustum habebat, aggerem apparare, vinas agere, turres duas constitueere coepit; nam circumvallare loci natura prohibebat. De re frumentariā Boios atque Aeduos adhortari non destitit; quorum alteri, quod nullo studio agebant, non multum adjuvabant; alteri non magnis facultatibus, quod civitas erat exigua et infirma, celeriter, quod haberunt, consumpserunt. Summā difficultate rei frumentariae affecto exercitu tenuitate Boiōrum, indiligentia Aeduōrum, incidendiis adificiorum, usque eo ut complures dies milites frumento caruerint et pecore ex longinquoribus vicis adacto, extremam famem sustentarent, nulla tamen vox est ab iis auditā populi Romāni majestate et superioribus victoriis indigna. Quin etiam Caesar cum in opere singulas legiones appellaret, et si acerbius inopiam ferrent, se dimissurum oppugnationem diceret, universi ab eo, ne id faceret, petebant: sic se complures annos illo imperante meruisse, ut ullam ignominiam acciperent, nunquam infectā re discenderent: hoo se ignominiae latus loco, si inceptam oppugnationem reliquissent: praestare omnes perferre acerbitates, quam non civibus Romānis, qui Genābi perfidia Gallōrum interissent, parentaret. Haec eadem centurionibus tribunisque militem manda- bant, ut per eos ad Caesārem deferrentur.

XVIII. Cum jam muro turres appropinquassent, ex captivis Caesar cognovit, Vercingetorīgem, consumpto pa- bulo, castra movisse propius Avaricum atque ipsum cum
EXPLANATION.

Avaricum occupied the site of the modern city of Bourges.

1. Represents the Roman agger before the city.
2. Vertical section of the agger.
3. Roman Towers.
a. The first position of Vercingetorix.
b. The second position of Vercingetorix.
c. Wall of Avaricum surrounded with towers.
equitatu expeditisque, qui inter equites proelii consues-
sest, insidiarum causā eo profectum, quo nostros postero
die tabulum venturos arbitaretur. Quibus rebus cogni-
tis, mediā nocte silentio profectus ad hostium castra mane
pervenit. Illi celeriter, per exploratores adventu Caesāris 5
cognito, carros impedimentaque sua in artiores silvas ab-
diderunt, copias omnes in loco edito atque aperto instrux-
erunt. Quā re nuntiāta, Caesar celeriter sarcinas conferri,
arma expediri jussit.

XIX. Collis erat leniter ab infimo acclivis: hunc ex 10
omnibus fere partibus palus difficilis atque impedita cinge-
bant non latior pedibus quinquaginta. Hoc se colle, inter-
ruptis pontibus, Galli fiducia loci continebant, generatim-
que distributi in civitates omnia vada a saltus ejus paludis
certis custodiis obtinebant, sio animo parati, ut, si eam 15
paludem Romāni perrumpere conarentur, haesitantes pre-
merent ex loco superiore; ut, qui propinquatatem loci
videret, paratos prope aqueo Marte ad dimicandum exis-
timaret; qui iniquitatem conditionis perspiceret, inani
simulatione sese ostentare cognosceret. Indignantes mili-
tes Caesar, quod conspectum suum hostes perferre possent,
tantulo spatio interiecto, et signum proelii exposcentes
edocet, quanto detrimento et quot virorum fortium morte
necesse sit constare victoriam; quos cum sic animo para-
tos videat, ut nullum pro sua laude periculum recusent, 25
summae se iniquitatis condemnari debere, nisi eorum
vitam sua salute habeat cariorem. Sic milites consolatus
eodem die reducit in castra, reliquaque, quae ad oppugna-
tionem oppidi pertinebant, administrare instituit.

XX. Vercingetōrix, cum ad suos redisset, proditionis 30
insimulatus, quod castra propius Romānos movisset, quod
cum omni equitatu discessisset, quod sine imperio tantas
copias reliquisset, quod ejus discessu Romāni tantā oppor-
tunitate et celeritate venissent; non haec omnia fortuito
aut sine consilio accidere potuisset; regnum illum Galliae 35
malle Caesāris concessu quam ipsorum habere beneficio:
tali modo accusatus ad haec respondit: Quod castra mo-
visset, factum inopia pabuli etiam ipsis hortantibus: quod
propius Romānos accessisset, persuasum loci opportunitate, qui se ipse munitione defendaret: equitum vero operam neque in loco palustri desiderari debuisse, et illic fuisset utilem, quo sint profecti: summam imperii se consulto nulli discedentem tradidisse, ne is multitūdinis studio ad dimicandum impelleretur; cui rei propter animi mollitiem studere omnes videret, quod diutius laborem ferre non possent. Romāni si casu intervenerint, fortunae, si alicujus indicio vocati, huic habendam gratiam, quod et paucitatem eorum ex loco superiore cognoscere, et virtutem despiciere potuerint, qui dimicare non ausi, turpiter se in castra receperint. Imperium se ab Caesāre per prōditionem nullum desiderare, quod habere victoriā posset, quae jam esset sibi atque omnibus Gallis explorata: quin etiam ipsīs remittere, si sibi magis honorem tribuere, quam ab se salutem accipere videantur. “Haec ut intelligātis,” inquit, “a me sincere pronuntiari, audite Romānos milites.” Producit servos, quos in pabulatione paucis ante diebus exceperat et fame vinculisque exerciāverat. Hi jam ante edoci, quae interrogati pronuntiarent, milites se esse legionarios dicunt: fame et inopia adductos clam ex castris exisse, si quid frumenti aut pecoris in agris reperire possent: simili omnem exercitum inopia premi, nec jam vires sufficiere cujudquam, nec ferre operis laborem posse: itaque statuisset imperatorem, si nihil in oppugnatione oppidi profecissent, triduo exercitum deducere. “Haec,” inquit, “a me,” Vercingetōrīx, “beneficia habetis, quem prōditionis insimulatis, cujud operā sine vestro sanguine tantum exercitum victorem famē consumptum videtis; quem turpiter se ex fugā recipiuntem ne qua civitas suis finibus recipiat, a me provisum est.”

XXI. Conclamat omnis multitudo et suo more armis concrepat, quod façere in eo consuerunt, cujud orationem approbat: Summum esse Vercingetorīgēm ducem, nec de ejus fide dubitandum, nec majore ratione bellum administrari posse. Statuunt, ut decem millia hominum delecta ex omnibus copiis in oppidum submittantur, nec solis Bitarribus communem salutem committendam censent, quod
penes eos, si id oppidum retinuissent, summam victoriae constare intelligebant.

XXII. Singulari militum nostrorum virtuti consilia cujusque modi Gallorum occurrebant, ut est summamae genus solertiae atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda, quae ab 5 quoque traduntur, aptissimum. Nam et laqueis falces avertiabant, quas cum destinaverant, tormentis introrsus reducebant; et aggerem cuniculis subtrahebant, eo scien- tius, quod apud eos magnae sunt ferrariae atque omnue genus cuniculorum notum atque usitatum est. Totum autem murum ex omni parte turribus contabulaverant atque has coriis intexerant. Tum crebris diurnis nocturnisque eruptionibus aut aggeri ignem inferebant aut milites occupatos in opere adoriebant; et nostrarum turrium altitudinem, quantum has quotidianus agger ex- 15 presserat, commissis suarum turrium malis adaequabant; et apertos cuniculos praestā et praeacutā materiā et pice fervefactā et maximī ponderis saxis morabantur moenibusque approquinquare prohibebant.

XXIII. Muri autem omnes Gallici hac fere formā sunt. 20 Trabes directae perpetuae in longitudinēm paribus intervallis distantes inter se binos pedes, in solo collocantur: haec revinctur introrsus et melto aggerre vestiuntur. Ea autem, quae diximus, intervalla grandibus in fronte saxis efficiuntur. His collocatis et coagentatis alius insuper 25 ordo additur, ut idem illud intervallum servetur, neque inter se contingant trabes, sed paribus intermissae spatiis, singulae, singulis saxis interjectis, arte continantur. Sic deinceps omne opus contextur, dum justa muri altitudo expleatur. Hoc cum in speciem variatatemque opus 30 deforme non est, alternis. trabibus ac saxis, quae rectis lineis suoi ordines servant; tum ad utilitatem et defensionem urbium summam habet opportunityatem; quod et ab incendio lapis et ab ariete materia defendit, quae perpetuis trabibus pedes quadragenos plerunque introrsus revincit 35 neque perrumpi neque distrahi potest.

XXIV. His tot rebus impeditā oppugnatione, milites cum toto tempore frigore et assiduis imbribus tardarentur,
tamen continenti labore omnia haec supersaverunt, et diebus viginti quinque aggerem latum pedes trecentos et triginta, altum pedes octoginta exstruxerunt. Cum is murum hostium paene contingeret, et Caesar ad opus con-
suetudine excubaret militesque hortaretur, ne quod omnino tempus ab opere intermitteretur, paulo ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum fumare aggerem, quem cuniculo hostes succenderant; codemque tempore toto muro clamore sublato, duabus portis ab utroque latere turrium eruptio fiebat. Alii facies atque aridam materiem de muro in aggerem eminus jaciebant, picem reliquasque res, quibus ignis excitari potest, fundebant, ut, quo primum occurre-
retur aut cui rei feretur auxilium, vix ratio iniri posset. Tamen, quod instituto Caesari semper duae legiones pro castris excubabant pluresque partitis temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est, ut ali i eruptionibus resisterent, alii turres reducere nt aggeremque interscinderent, omnis vero ex castris multitudo ad restinguendum concurreret.

XXV. Cum in omnibus locis consumpta jam reliqu
parte noctis pugnaretur, semperque hostibus spes victoriae redintegraretur, eo magis, quod deustos plateos turrium videbant nec facile adire apertos ad auxiliandum animad-
vertebant, semperque ipsi recentes defessis succederent omnemque Galliae salutem in illo vestigio temporis posi-
tam arbitrantur, accidit insensatibus nobis quod dignum memoria visum praetereundum non existimavimus. Quidam ante portam oppidi Gallus, qui per manus sevi ac picis traditas glebas in ignem e regione turris projiciebat, scorpione ab latere dextra transjectus examinatusque con-
cidit. Hunc ex proximis unus jacentem transgressus
codem illo munere fungebatur: eadem ratione ictu scorpioniis examinato altero, successit tertius, et tertio quartus; nec prius ille est a propagatoribus vacuus relictus locus, quam restincto aggere atque omni parte submotis hostibus
finis est pugnandi factus.

XXVI. Omnia experti Galli, quod res nulla successerat, postero die consilium ceperunt ex oppido profugere, hortante et jubente Vercingetorige. Id silentio noctis conati
LIBER SEPTIMUS.

non magnā jactūrā suorum sese effecturos sperabant, prop-
terea quod neque longe ab oppido castra Vercingetorigis
aberant, et palus, quae perpetua intercedebat, Romānos ad
insequendum tardabant. Jamque hoc facere noctu appara-
bant, cum matres familiae repente in publicum procurre-
runt fientesque projectae ad pedes suorum omnibus pre-
cibus petierunt, ne se et communes liberos hostibus ad
supplicium dederent, quos ad capiendum fugam naturae et
virium infirmitas impeditet. Ubi eos in sententia perstare
viderunt, quod plerumque in summo periculo timor miser-
cordiam non recipit, concludere et significare de fugā
Romānis coeperunt. Quo timore perterrī Galli, ne ab
equitatu Romanōrum viae praecoccuparentur, consilio des-
titerunt.

XXVII. Postero die Caesar, promotā turris directisque 15
operibus, quae facere instituerat, magno coorto imbre, non
inutilem hanc ad capiendum consilium tempestatem arbi-
tratus, quod paulo incautius custodias in muro dispositas
videbat, suos quoque languidius in opere versari jussit, et
quid fieri vellet ostendit. Legiones intra vīneas in occulto 20
expeditas cohortārūr, ut aliquando pro tantis laboribus
fructum victoriae perciperent; iis, qui primi murum ascen-
dissent, praemia proposuit militibusque signum dedit. Illi
subito ex omnibus partibus evolaverunt murumque celeri-
ter compleverunt.

XXVIII. Hostes re novā perterriti, muro turribusque
degjecti, in foro ac locis patentioribus cuneātīm constite-
runt, hoc animo, ut, si quā ex parte obviam contra veni-
retur, acie instructā depugnarent. Ubi neminem in
aequum locum sese demittere, sed toto undique muro cir-
30 cumfundī viderunt, veritī, ne omnino spes fugae tolleretur,
abjectīs armīs, ultimas oppidi partes continentī impetu
petiverunt; parsque ibi, cum angusto exitu portarum se
ipsi premerent, a militibus, pars jam egressā portis ab
equitibus est interfecta: nec fuit quisquam, qui praedae 35
studeret. Sic et Genābi caede et labore operis incitati
non aetate confectis, non mulieribus, non infantibus pe-
percerunt. Denique ex omni numero, qui fuit circiter
quadragesimam millium, vix octingenti, qui primo clamore audito se ex oppido ejecerant, incolumes ad Vercingetorigem pervenerunt. Quos ille multa jam nocte silentio ex fugā exceptit, veritus, ne qua in castris ex eorum concursu et misericordiā vulgi seditio oriretur, ut procul in via dispositis familiaribus suis principibusque civitatum, disparandos deducendoque ad suos curaret, quae cuique civitati pars castrorum ab initio obvenerat.

XXIX. Postero die concilio convocato, consolatus co-hortatusque est, ne se admodum animo demitterent, ne perturbarentur incommodo: Non virtute neque in acie viciisse Romānos, sed artificio quodam et scientiā oppugnationis, cujus rei fuerint ipsi imperiti; errare, si qui in bello omnes secundos rerum proventus expectent; sibi num quam placuisse, Avaricum defendi, cujus rei testes ipsos haberet; sed factum imprudentiā Biturīgum et piniā obsequentiā reliquorum, uti hoc incommodum acciperetur: id tamen se celeriter majoribus commodis sanaturum. Nam quae ab reliquis Gallis civitates dissentirent, has suā dili-gentiā adjuncturum atque unum consilium totius Galliae effecturum, cujus consensu ne orbis quidem terrarum possit obsistere; idque se prope jam effectum habere. Interea æquum esse, ab iis communis salutis causā impetrari, ut castra munire instituerent, quo facilius repentinos hostium impetus sustinerent.

XXX. Fuit haec oratio non ingrata Gallis, et maxime, quod ipse animo non defecerat, tanto accepto incommodo, neque se in occultum abdiderat et conspectum multitūdinis fugerat; plusque animo providere et praesentire existimabatur, quod re integrā primo incendendum Avaricum, post deserendum censuerat. Itaque ut reliquorum imperatorum res adversae auctoritatem minuunt, sic hujus ex contrario dignitas, incommodo accepto, in dies augebatur; simul in spem veniebant ejus affirmatione de reliquis ad-jungendis civitatibus, primumque eo tempore Galli castra munire instituerunt, et sic sunt animo consternati, homines insueti laboris, ut omnia, quae imperarentur, sibi patienda et perferenda existimarent.
XXXI. Nec minus, quam est pollicitus, Vercingetörix animo laborabat, ut reliquas civitates adjungeret, atque earum principes donis pollicitationibusque alliciebat: Huic rei idoneos homines deligebat, quorum quisque aut oratione subdolā aut amicitā facillīme capi posset. Qui Ava-ricō expugnato refugerant, armandos vestiendosque curat. Simul ut deminutae copiae redintegrarentur, imperat certum numerum militum civitatibus, quam et quam ante diem in castra adduci velit; sagittariosque omnes, quorum erat magnus numerus in Galliā, conquiri et ad se mitti jubet. His rebus celeriter id, quod Avarīci deperierat, expletur. Interim Teutomātus, Ollovicōnis filius, rex Nitiobrigum, cujus pater ab senatu nostro amicus erat appellatus, cum magno equitum suorum numero et quos ex Aquitanīa conducerat ad eum pervenit.

XXXII. Caesar Avarīci complures dies commoratus summanque ibi copiam frumenti et reliqui comatus nactus, exercitum ex labore atque inopia refecit. Jam prope hieme confectā, cum ipso anni tempore ad gerendum bellum vocaretur et ad hostem proficiisci constituisset, sive eum ex paludibus silvisque elicere, sive obsidione premere posset, legati ad eum principes Aeduōrum veniunt oratum, ut maxime necessario tempore civitati subveniat: Summo esse in periculo rem, quod, cum singuli magistratus antiquitus creari atque regiam potestatem annum obtinere consuissent, duo magistratum gerant et se uterque eorum legibus creatum esse dicat. Horum esse alterum Convictolitāvem, florentem et illustrēm adolescentem; alterum Cotum, antiquissimā familiā natum atque ipsum hominem summae potentiae et magnae cognitionis, cujus frater Valetiācus proximo anno eundem magistratum gesserit: civitatem esse omnem in armis, divisum senatum, divisum populum, suas cujusque eorum clientelas. Quod si diutius alatur controversia, fore, uti pars cum parte civitatis configat; id ne accidat, positum in ejus diligentia atque auctoritate.

XXXIII. Caesar, etsi a bello atque hoste discedere detrimentosum esse existimabat, tamen non ignorans,
quanta ex dissensionibus incommoda oriri consuissent, ne tanta et tam conjuncta populo Romano civitas, quam ipse semper aluisset omnibusque rebus ornasset, ad vim atque ad arma descendere, atque ea pars, quae minus sibi con-
5 siderat, auxilia a Veringetorige acceperet, huic rei prae-
vertendum existimavit; et quod legibus Aeduorum iis, qui summum magistratum obtinerent, excedere ex finibus non liceret, ne quid de jure aut de legibus eorum demini-
isse videretur, ipse in Aeduos proficisci statut senatum-
10 que omnem et quos inter controversia esset, ad se Dece-
tiam evocavit. Cum prope omnis civitas eo convenisset, docereturque, paucis clam convocatis alio loco, alio temp-
pore, atque oportuerit, fratrem a fratre renuntiatum, cum leges duo ex una familia, vivo utroque, non solum magis-
15 tratus creari vetarent, sed etiam in senatu esse prohibe-
rent, Cotum imperium deponere coegit; Convictolitavem, qui per sacerdotes more civitatis, intermissis magistratibus, esset creatus, potestatem obtinere jussit.

XXXIV. Hoc decreto interposito, cohortatus Aeduos
20 ut controversiarum ac dissensionum obliviscerentur, atque omnibus ommissis rebus huic bello servirent, eaque, quae meruissent, praemia ab se, devictâ Gallia, expectaret, equitatumque omnem et peditum millia decem sibi celeri-
ter mitterent, quae in praesidiis rei frumentariae causâ
25 disponenter, exercitum in duas partes divisit; quattuor
legiones in Senones Parisiosque Labiêno ducendas dedit:
sex ipse in Arvernos ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum
flumen Elâver duxit: equitatus partem illi attribuit, par-
tem sibi reliquit. Quâ re cognitâ, Vercingetórix, omnibus
30 interruptis ejus fluminis pontibus, ab alterâ Elavéris parte
iter facere coepit.

XXXV. Cum uterque utrique esset exercitus in con-
spectu, fereque e regione castris castra poneret, disposit-
tis exploratoribus, necubi effecto ponte Români copias
35 transducerent, erat in magnis Caesâris difficultatibus res, ne majorem aestatis partem flumine impediretur, quod non fere ante autumnum Elâver vado transiri solet. Itaque, ne id accideret, silvestri loco castris positis e regione unius
eorum pontium, quos Vercingetórix rescindendos curavérat, postero die cum duabus legionibus in occulto restitit; reliquas copias cum omnibus impedimentis, ut consuevérat, misit, captis quibusdam cohortibus, uti numerus legio- num constare videretur. His quam longissime possent 5 progredi jussis, cum jam ex diei tempore conjecturam caperet in castra perventum, isdem sublicis, quarum pars inferior integra remanebat, pontem reficere coepit. Cele- riter effecto opere legionibusque transductis et loco castris idoneo delecto, reliquas copias revocavit. Vercingetórix, 10 re cognitā, ne contra suam voluntatem dimicare cogeretur, magnis itinéribus antecessit.

XXXVI. Caesar ex eo loco quintis castris Gergoviam pervenit, equestrique eo die proelio levi facto, perspecto urbis situ, quae posita in altissimo monte omnes aditus 15 difficiles habebat, de expugnatione desperavit; de obses- sione non prius agendum constituit, quam rem frumenta- riam expediisset. At Vercingetórix, castris prope oppidum in monte positis, mediocribus circum se intervallis separa- tim singularum civitatum copias collocaverat; atque omni- bus ejus jugi collibus occupatis, qua despici poterat, horribilem speciem praebebat; príncipesque earum civitatum, quos sibi ad consilium capiendum delegerat, primā luce quotidie ad se convenire jubebat, seu quid communican- dum, seu quid administrandum videretur; neque ullum 25 fere diem intermittebat, quin equestri proelio, interjectis sagittariis, quid in quoque esset animi ac virtutis suorum, periclitaretur. Erat e regione oppidi collis sub ipsis radici-ibus montis, egregie munitus atque ex omni parte circum- ciusa, quem si tenerent nostri, et aquae magnā parte et 30 pabulatione liberā prohibuitur hostes videbantur; sed is locus præsidio ab his non nimis firmo tenebatur; tamen silentio noctis Caesar ex castris egressus, priusquam subsi- dio ex oppido veniri posset, dejecto præsidio, potitus loco, duas ibi legiones collocavit fossamque duplicem duodenum 35 pedum a majoribus castris ad minora perduxit, ut tuto ab repentino hostium incursu etiam singuli commere possent.
XXXVII. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitātis Aeduus, cui magistratum adjudicatum a Caesāre demonstravimus, solicitatus ab Arvernis pecuniā cum quibusdam adolescentibus colloquitur, quorum erat princeps Litaviicus atque ejus frater, amplissimā familiā nati adolescentes. Cum his praemium communicat hortaturque, ut se liberos et imperio natos meminerint: Unam esse Aeduōrum civitatem, quae certissimam Galliae victoriam distineat; ejus auctoritate reliquas contineri; quā transductā locum consistendi Romānīs in Galliā non fore: esse nonnullo se Caesāris beneficio affectum, sic tamen, ut justissimam apud eum causam obtinuerit; sed plus communi libertāti tribuere: cur enim potius Aedui de suo jure et de legibus ad Caesārem disceptatorem, quam Romāni ad Aeduos veniānt? Celeriter adolescentibus et oratione magistratus et praemio deductis, cum se vel principes ejus consilii fore profiterentur, ratio perficiendi quaebatur, quod civitatem temere ad suscipiendum bellum adduci posse non confidebant. Placuit, uti Litaviicus decem illis millibus, quae Caesāri ad bellum mitterentur, praefereret atque ea ducenda curaret, fratresque ejus ad Caesārem praecurrent. Reliqua quā ratione agi placeat, constituant.

sit nobis Gergoviam contendere et cum Arvernis nosmet
conjun gere. An dubitamus, quin nefario facinore admisso
Romāni jam ad nos interficiendos concurrant? Proinde,
si quid in nobis animi est, persequamur eorum mortem,
qui indignissime interierunt atque hos latrones intericia-
5mus." Ostendit cives Romānos, qui ejus praesidii fiduciā
una erant. Continuo magnum numerum frumenti
commatusque diripit, ipsos cruentiter ex cruciatus interficit:
nuntios totā civitate Aeduōrum dimittit, eodem mendacio
de caede equitum et principum permovet; hortatur, ut 10
simili ratione, atque ipse fecerit, suas injurias perse-
quentur.

XXXIX. Eporedōrix Aeduus, summo loco natus ado-
lescens et summae domi potentiae, et una Viridomārus,
pari aetate et gratiā, sed genere dispari, quem Caesar ab 15
Divitiāco sibi traditum ex humili loco ad summam digni-
tatem perduxerat, in equitum numero convenerant, nomi-
natim ab eo evocati. His erat inter se de principatu
contentio, et in illā magistratu controversiā alter pro
Conviclotāve, alter pro Coto, summis opibus pugnave-
20rant. Ex iis Eporedōrix, cognito Litavi consilio, mediā
fere nocte rem ad Caesārem defert; orat, ne patiatur civi-
tatem pravis adolescentium consiliis ab amicitia populi
Romāni deficere, quod futurum provideat, si se tot homi-
num millia cum hostibus conjunxerint, quorum salutem 25
neque propinquī negligere, neque cītās levi momento
aestimare posset.

XL. Magnā affectus sollicitudine hoc nuntio Caesar,
quod semper Aeduorum civitati praeципe indulserat,
nullā interpositā dubitatione, legiones expeditas quattuor 30
equītatumque omnis ex castris educit; nec fuit spatium
tali tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod res posita in
celeritate videbatur. Gāium Fabium legatum cum legio-
nibus duabus castris praesidio reliquit. Fratres Litavi-
cum comprehendi jussisset, paulo ante reperit ad hostes 35
profugisse. Adhortatus milites, ne necessario tempore
itineris labore permoveantur, cupidissimis omnibus pro-
gressus millia passuum viginti quinque, agmen Aeduōrum
conspicatus, immisso equitatu, iter eorum moratur atque impedit interdicitque omnibus, ne quemquam interficiant. Eporedorīgem et Viridomārum, quos illi interfeces existimabant, inter equites versari suoque appellare jubet. His cognitis et Litaviōi fraude perspectā, Aedui manus tendere, deditionem significare et, projectis armis, mortem deprecari incipient. Litavicus cum suis clientibus, quibus more Gallorum nefas est etiam in extremā fortūna deserere patronos, Gergoviam profugit.

XLI. Caesar, nuntis ad civitatem Aeduōrum missis, qui suo beneficio conservatos docerent, quos jure belli interficere potuisset, tribusque horis noctis exercitii ad quietem datis, castra ad Gergoviam movit. Medio fere itinere equites ab Fabio missi, quanto res in periculo fuerit, exponunt: summis copiis castra oppugnata demonstrant; cum crebro integri defessis succederent nostrosque asiduo labore defatigarent, quibus propter magnitudinem castrorum perpetuo esset iisdem in vallo permanendum; multitudine sagittarum atque omnis generis telorum multos vulneratos; ad haec sustinenda magnus usu fuisse tormenta; Fabium discessu eorum, duabus relictis portis, obstruere ceteras pluteosque vallo addere et se in postera diem similem ad casum parare. His rebus cognitis, Caesar summo studio militum ante orturn solis in castra pervenit.

XLII. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Aedui primis nuntiis ab Litaviōico acceptis nullum sibi ad cognoscendum spatium relinquent. Impellit alios avaritia, alios iracundia et temeritas, quae maxime illi hominum generi est innata, ut levis audientium habeant pro re compertā. Bona civium Romanōrum diripiunt, caedes faciunt, in servitute abstrahunt. Adjuvat rem proclinatam Convictolitāvis plebemque ad furorem impellit, ut facinore admisso ad sanitatem reverti pudeat. Marcum Aristium tribunum militum iter ad legionem facentem, fide data ex oppido Cabillōno educunt: idem facere cogunt eos, qui negotiandi causā ibi consitterant. Hos continuo in itinere adorti omnibus impedimentis exuunt; repugnantes diem noctemque
LIBER SEPTIMUS.

obsident; multis utrimque interfectis, majorem multitudo-
nem ad arma concitant.

XLIII. Interim nuntio allato, omnes eorum milites in
potestate Caesāris teneri, concurrent ad Aristium; nihil
publico factum consilio demonstrant; quaestionem de bonis 5
direptis decernunt; Litavīci fratrumque bona publicant;
legatos ad Caesārem sui purgandi gratiā mittunt. Haec
faciunt recuperandorum suorum causā: sed contaminati
facinore et captī compendio ex direptis bonis, quod ea res
ad multos pertinebat, et timore poenae extorriti, consilia 10
clam de bello inire incipient civitatesque reliquas legatio-
nibus sollicitant. Quae tametsi Caesar intelligebat, tamen
quam mitissime potest legatos appellat: nihil se propter
inscientiam levitatemque vulgi gravius de civitate judi-
care, neque de suā in Aeduos benevolentia deminuere. 15
Ipse, majorem Galliāe motum expectans, ne ab omnibus
civitatibus circumsisteretur, consilia inibat, quemadmo-
dum ab Gergoviā discederet ac rursus omnem exercitum
contraheret, ne profectio nata ab timore defectionis similis
fugae videretur.

XLIV. Haec cogitanti accidere visa est facultas bene
rei gerendae. Nam cum minora in castra operis perspi-
ciendi causā venisset, animadvertit collem, qui ab hostibus
tenebatur, nuditum hominibus, qui superioribus diebus vix
praec multitudine cerni poterat. Admiratus quae et ex 25
perfugis causam, quorum magnus ad eum quotidie nume-
rus confluebat. Constabat inter omnes, quod jam ipse
Caesar per exploratores cognoverat, dorsum esse ejus jugi
prope aestum, sed hunc silvestrem et angustum, qua esset
aditus ad alteram partem oppidi: vehementer huic illos 30
locō timere nec jam aliter sentire, uno colle ab Romānis
occupato, si alterum amisissent, quin paene circumvallati
atque omni exitu et pabulatione interclusi viderentur: ad
hunc muniendum omnes a Vercingetorige evocatos.

XLV. Hac re cognitā, Caesar mittit complures equitum 35
turmas eo de mediā nocte: iis imperat, ut paulo tumultu-
osius omnibus in locis vagarentur. Primā luce magnum
numerus impedimentorum ex castris mulorumque produci
deque his stramenta detrahi mulionesque cum cassidibus equitum specie ac simulatione collibus circumvehil jubet. His paucos addit equites, qui latius ostentationis causa vagarentur. Longo circuitu eadem omnes jubet 5 petere regiones. Haec procul ex oppido videbantur, ut erat a Gergoviā despectus in castra; neque tanto spatio, certi quid esset, explorari poterat. Legionem unus eodem jugo mittit et pannum progressam inferiori constituit loco silvisque occultat. Augetur Gallis suspicio atque 10 omnes illo ad munitionem copiae transducuntur. Vacua castra hostium Caesar conspicatus, tectis insignibus suorum occultatisque signis militaribus, raros milites, ne ex oppido animadvertentur, ex majoribus castris in minora transducit legatisque, quos singulis legionibus praefecerat, quid 15 fieri vellet, ostendit; imprimi monet, ut contingant milites, ne studio pugnandi aut spe praedae longius progrediantur; quid iniquitas loci habeat incommodi, proponit; hoc unā celeritate posse mutari; occasionis esse rem, non proelii. His rebus evertitur, signum dat et ab dextrā parte alio 20 ascensu eodem tempore Aeduos mittit.

XLVI. Oppidi murus ab planicie atque initio ascensus rectā regione, si nullus amfactus intercederet, mille et 25 ducentos passus aberat: quidquid huic circuitus ad mollīendum elivum accesserat, id spatiō itineris augebat. A medio fere colle in longitudinem, ut natura montis ferebat, ex grandibus saxis sex pedum murum, qui nostrorum impetu tardaret, praeduxerant Galli atque, inferiore omni spatio vacuo relictō, superiorem partem collis usque ad murum oppidi densissimis castris compleverant. Milites, 30 dato signo, celebrer ad munitionem perveniunt eamque transgressi trinis castris potiuntur. Ac tanta fuit in castris capiendis celeritas, ut Teutomātus, rex Nitiobrigum, subito in tabernaculo oppressus, ut meridie conquireverat, superiore corporis parte nudāta, vulnerato equo, vix se 35 manibus praedantium militum eriperet.

XLVII. Consecutus id, quod animo proposuerat, Caesar receptui cani jussit legionisque decimae, quācum erat, concionatus signa constituit. At reliquam milites legionum
non exaudito sono tubae, quod satis magna vallis intercedebat, tamen ab tribunis militum legatisque, ut erat a Caesare praeceptum, retinebantur: sed elati spe celeris victoriae et hostium fugae et superiorum temporum secundis proeliis, nihil adeo arduum sibi esse existimaverunt,5 quod non virtute consequi possent; neque prius finem sequendi fecerunt, quam muro oppidi portisque appropinquarunt. Tum vero ex omnibus urbis partibus orto clamore, qui longius aberant repentino tumultu perterriti, cum hostem intra portas esse existimarent, sese ex oppido 10 ececerunt. Matres familiae de muro vestem argentumque jactabant et pectore nudo prominentes passis manibus obtestabantur Romanos, ut sibi parcerent, neu, sicut Avarici fecissent, ne mulieribus quidem atque infantibus abstinerent. Nonnullae de muri per manus demissae sese 15 miliibus tradebant. Lucius Fabius, centurio legionis octavae, quem inter suos eo die dixisse constabat, excitari se Avaricenibus praemissi neque commissurum, ut prius quisquam murum ascenderet, tres suoi nactus manipulares atque ab iis sublevatus murum ascendit. Hos ipse rursus 20 singulos exceptans in murum extulit.

XLVIII. Interim ii, qui ad alteram partem oppidi, ut supra demonstravimus, munitionis causae convenerant, primo exaudito clamore, inde etiam crebris nuntiiis incitati, oppidum ab Românis teneri, praemissis equitibus, magno 25 concursu eo contendunt. Eorum ut quisque primus venerat, sub muro consistebat suorumque pugnantium numerum augebat. Quorum cum magna multitudo convenisset, matres familiae, quae paulo ante Românis de muro manus tendebant, suos obtestari et more Gallico 30 passum capillum ostentare liberosque in conspectum proferre coeperunt. Erat Românis nec loco nec numero aqua contentio: simul et cursu et spatio pugnae defatigati non facile recentes atque integros sustinebant.

XLIX. Caesar, cum inique loco pugnari hostiumque 35 augeri copias videret, praemetuens suis ad Titum Sextium legatum, quem minoribus castris praesidio reliquerat, misit, ut cohortes ex castris celeriter educeret et sub infimo colle
DE BELLO GALLICO

ab dextro latere hostium constitueret, ut, si nostros loco depulso vidiisset, quo minus libere hostes inseuerentur, terreret. Ipse paulum ex eo loco cum legione progressus, ubi constiterat, eventum pugnae expectabat.

5 L. Cum acerrime comminus pugnaretur, hostes loco et numero, nostri virtute confiderent, subito sunt Aedui visi ab latere nostris aperto, quos Caesar ab dextrâ parte alio ascensu manus distinctae causâ miserat. Hi similitudine armorum vehementer nostros perterrituerunt; ac tametsi dextris humeris excerptis animadvertebantur, quod insigne pacatum esse consuerat, tamen id ipsum sui fallendi causâ milites ab hostibus factum existimabant. Eodem tempore Lucius Fabius centurio quique una murum ascenderant, circumventi atque interfecti de muro praeceptitantur. Marcus Petronius, ejusdem legionis centurio, cum portas excidere conatus esset, a multitudine oppressus ac sibi desperans, multitis jam vulneribus acceptis, manipulribus suis, qui illum securi erant, "Quoniam," inquit, "mea una vobiscum servare non possum, vestrae quidem certe vitae prospeciam, quos cupiditate gloriae adductus in periculum deduxi. Vos datâ facultate vobis consulate." Simul in medios hostes irrupit, duobusque interfectis reliquis a portâ paulum submovit. Conantibus auxiliari suis, "Frustra," inquit, "meae vitae subvenire conamini, quem jam sanguis viresque deficiunt: proinde abite, dum est facultas, vosque ad legionem recipite." Ita pugnans post paulum concidit ac suis saluti fuit.

LI. Nostri cum undique premerentur, quadraginta sex centurionibus amissis, dejecti sunt loco; sed intolere ant Gallos insequentes legio decima tardavit, quae pro subsidio paulo aequiore loco constiterat. Hanc rursus decimae tertiae legionis cohortes excupperunt, quae ex castris minoribus eductae cum Tito Sextio legato ceperant locum superiorem. Legiones, ubi primum planiem attigerunt, infestis contra hostes signis constiterunt. Vercingetorix ab radicibus collis suis intra munitiones reduxit. Eo die milites sunt paulo minus septingenti desiderati.

LII. Postero die Caesar, concione advocata, temeritatem
Liber Septimus.

Cupiditatemque militum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsi judicavissent, quo procedendum aut quid agendum videretur, neque signo recipiendi dato constitissent, neque a tribunis militum legatisque retineri potuissent: exposit, quid iniquitas loci posset, quid ipse ad Avaricum sensisset, cum, sine duce et sine equitatu deprehensis hostibus, exploratam victoriam dimississet, ne parvum modo detrimentum in contentione propter iniquitatem loci accideret. Quanto opere eorum animi magnitudinem admiraretur, quos non castrorum munitiones, non altitudo montis, non murus oppidi tardare potuisset, tanto opere licentiam arrogantiamque reprehendere, quod plus se quam imperatorem de victoria atque exitu rerum sentire existimarent: nec minus se in milite modestiam et continentiam quam virtutem atque animi magnitudinem desiderare.

LIII. Hac habità concione et ad extremum oratione confirmatis militibus, ne ob hanc causam animo permoveantur, ne quod iniquitas loci attulisset, id virtuti hostium tribuerent, eadem de profectione cogitans, quae ante senserat, legiones ex castris eduxit aciemque idoneo loco constituit. Quum Vercingetorix nihil magis in aequum locum descendenter, levi facto equestri proelio atque eo secundo, in castra exercitum reduxit. Cum hoc idem postero die fecisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentationem minusdam militumque animos confirmandos factum existimans, in Aeduos movit castra. Ne tum quidem insecutis hostibus tertio die ad flumen Eläver pontes reficit atque exercitum transducit.

LIV. Ibi a Viridomaro atque Eper dorige Aeduis appellatus discit, cum omni equitatu Litavicum ad sollicitans dos Aeduos profectum: opus esse ipsos antecedere ad confirmandum civitatem. Etsi multis jam rebus perfidiam Aeduorum perspectam habebat atque horum discessu admaturari deflectionem civitatis existimabat, tamen eos retinendos non censuit, ne aut inferre injuriam videretur aut dare timoris aliquam suspicionem. Descendentibus his, breviter sua in Aeduos merita exposit: quos et quam humiles accepisset, compulsos in oppida, multatos agris,
omnibus ereptis copiis, imposito stipendio, obsidibus summā cum contumelīā extortis, et quam in fortunam quamque in amplitudinem deduxisset, ut non solum in pristinum statum redissent, sed omnium temporum dignitatem et 5 gratiam antecessisse viderentur. His datis mandatis, eos ab se dimisit.

LV. Noviodūnum erat oppidum Aeduōrum ad ripas Ligēris opportuno loco positum. Huc Caesar omnes obsides Galliae, frumentum, pecuniam publicam, suorum atque exercitus impedimentorum magnam partem contulerat; huc magnum numerum equorum hujus belli causā in Italia atque Hispaniā coēptum miserat. Eo cum Eporedōrix Viridomārusque venissent et de statu civitatis cognovissent, Litavicum Bibracte ab Aeduis receptum, quod est oppidum apud eos maxima auctoritatis, Convictolitāvem magistratum magnumque partem senatus ad eum convenisse, legatos ad Vercingetorīgem de pace et amicitia conciliāndā publice missos, non praetermittendum tantum commodum existimaverunt. Itaque interfectis Noviodūni 20 custodibus quique eo negotiandi causā convenerant, pecuniā atque equos inter se partiti sunt; obsides civitatem Bibracte ad magistratum deducendos curaverunt; oppidum, quod ab se teneri non posse judicabat, ne cui esset usui Romānis, incenderunt; frumenti quod subito potue- 25 runt, navibus avexerunt, reliquum flumine atque incendio corruerunt; ipsi ex finitimīs regionibus copias cogere, praesidia custodiasque ad ripas Ligēris disponere equita- tumque omnibus locis injiciendi timoris causā ostentare coeperunt, si ab re frumentariā Romānos excludere pos- 30 sent. Quam ad spem multum eos adjuvabat, quod Liger ex nivibus creverat, ut omnino vado non posse transiri videretur.

LVI. Quibus rebus cognitis, Caesar maturandum sibi censuit, si esset in perficiendis pontibus periclitandum, ut 35 prius, quam essent maiores eo coactae copiae, dimicaret. Nam ut, commutato consilio, iter in provinciam converte- ret, id ne tum quidem necessario faciendum existimabat: cum infamia atque indignitas rei et opposītus mons
Cevenna viarumque difficertas impediebat, tum maxime, quod abjuncto Labiēno atque iis legionibus, quas una miserat, vehementer timebat. Itaque admodum magnis diurnis nocturnisque itineribus confectis, contra omnium opinionem ad Ligērim venit, vadoque per equites invento pro rei necessitate opportuno, ut brachia modo atque humeri ad sustinenda arma liberi ab aqua esse possent, disposito equitatu, qui vim fluminis refringeret, atque hostibus primo aspectu perturbatis, incolumem exercitum transduxit; frumentumque in agris et pecoris copiam nactus, repleto his rebus exercitu, iter in Senōnes facere instituit.

LVII. Dum haec apud Caesārem geruntur Labiēnus, eo supplemento, quod nuper ex Italiā venerat, relictō Agedinci, ut esset impeditias praesidio, cum quattuor legioniibus Lutetiam proficiscitur. Id est oppidum Parisiōrum quod situm est in insula fluminis Sequānae: cujus ad ventum ab hostibus cognito, magna ex finitimis civitatisibus copiae convenerunt. Summa imperii traditur Camulodēnō Aulerco, qui, prope consecus acetate, tamen propter singularem scientiam rei militaris, ad eum est honorem evocatus. Is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse paludem, quae influeret in Sequānam atque illum omnem locum magnopere impediret, hic consedit nostrisque transitu prohibere instituit.

LVIII. Labiēnus primo vineas agere, cratibus atque agris paludem explere atque iter munire conabatur. Postquam id difficilis conferi animadvertit, silentio et castris tertia vigilia egressus, eodem quo venerat itinere Melodūnum pervenit. Id est oppidum Senōnum in insula Sequānae situm, ut paulo ante de Lutetiae diximus. Deprehensīs navibus circiter quinquaginta celeriterque conjunctis atque eo militibus impositis et rei novitate perterritis oppidānis, quorum magna pars erat ad bellum evocata, sine contentione oppido potitur. Refecto ponte, quem superorbis diebus hostes resciderant, exercitum transducit et secundo flumine ad Lutetiam iter facere coepit. Hostes, re cognitā ab iis, qui a Melodūno profugerant, Lutetiam incendi pontesque ejus oppidi rescindi jubes: ipsi profecti
a palude ad ripas Sequiæae e regione Lutetiae contra Labini castra considunt.

LIX. Jam Caesar a Gergoviâ discississe audiebatur; jam de Aeduorum defectione et secundo Galliæ motu rumores afferabantur, Gallique in colloquiis interclusum itinere et Ligéri Caesarëm inopiam frumenti coaetum in provinciam contendisse confirmabant. Bellovaci autem, defectione Aeduorum cognita, qui ante erant per se infideles, manus cogere atque aperte bellum parare coeperunt. Tum Labi-

ewnas tantæ rerum commutacione longe aliud sibi capiendum consilium, atque antea senserat, intelligebat; neque jam, ut aliud acquireret proelioque hostes laesseret, sed ut incolum exercitum Agedincum reduceret, cogitabat. Namque altera ex parte Bellovaci, quae civitas in Galliæ maximam habet opinionem virtutis, instabant; alteram Camulogënus parato atque instructo exercitu tenebat; tum legiones a praesidio atque impedimentis interclusas maximum flumen distinebat. Tantis subito difficultatibus objectis, ab animi virtute auxilium petendum videbat.

LX. Itaque sub vesperum consilio convocato, cohors tas, ut ea, quae imperasset, diligenter industriose adminis- trarent, naves, quas a Medoduno deduxerat, singulas equi- tibus Românis attribuit, et, primâ confectâ vigilia, quattuor millia passuum secundo flumine silentio progredivi ibique se exspectari jubet. Quinque cohortes, quas minime firmas ad dimicandum esse existimabant, castris praesidio relinquuit; quinque ejusdem legionis reliquas de mediâ nocte cum omnibus impedimentis adverso flumine magno tumultu proficiisci imperat. Conquirit etiam lintres; has magno sonitu remorum incitatas in eandem partem mittit. Ipsa post paulo, silentio egressus cum tribus legionibus eum locum petit, quo naves appellati iusserat.

LXI. Eo cum esset ventum, exploratores hostium, ut omni fluminis parte erant dispositi, inopinantes, quod magna subito erat coorta tempestas, ab nostris opprimuntur: exercitus equitatusque, equitibus Românis administrantibus, quos ei negotio praefecerat, celeriter transmit- tur. Uno fere tempore sub lucem hostibus nuntiatur in
EXPLANATION.
Lutetia, Paris; Melodunum, Melun; Agedincum, Sens; Sequana, The Seine; Matrona, The Marne; Castra Rom., Castra Romana; Castra Gall., Castra Gallica.
castris Romanorum praeter consuetudinem tumultuari et
magnum ire agmen adverso flumine, sonitumque remorum
in eadem parte exaudiri et paulo infra milites navibus
transportari. Quibus rebus auditis, quod existimabant
tribus locis transire legiones atque omnes perturbatos de-
fectione Aeduorum fugam parare, suas quoque copias in
tres partes distribuerunt. Nam praesidio e regione ca-
strorum relicito et parvae manu Melodum versus missa,
quae tantum progressur, quantum naves processissent,
reliquas copias contra Labienum duxerunt.

LXII. Primâ luce et nostri omnes erant transportati
et hostium acies cernebatur. Labienus milites cohorta-
tus, et suae pristinae virtutis et tot secundissimorum
preliorum memoriam retinerent atque ipsum Caesarem,
cujus ductu saepenumero hostes superassent, praesentem
adesse existimarent, dat signum proelii. Primo concursu
ab dextró cornu, ubi septima legio constiterat, hostes pel-
luntur atque in fugam conjiciuntur: ab sinistro, quem
locum duodecima legio tenebat, cum primi ordines hos-
tium transfixi pilis concidissent, tamen acerrime reliquii
resistebant, nec dabat suspicionem fugae quisquam.
Ipse dux hostium Camulogenus suis aderat atque eos cohorta-
batur. Incerto etiam nunc exitu victoriae, cum septimae
legionis tribunis esset nuntiatum, quae in sinistro cornu
gerentur, post tergum hostium legionem ostenderunt
signaque intulerunt. Ne eo quidem tempore quisquam
loco cessit, sed circumventi omnes interfactique sunt.
Eandem fortunam tuit Camulogenus. At ii, qui prae-
sidio contra castra Labieni erant reliciti, cum proelium
commissum audissent, subsidio suis ierunt colleque cepe-
runt neque nostrorum militum victorium impetum sustinere
potuerunt. Sic cum suis fugientibus permixti, quos non
silvae montesque texerunt, ab equitatu sunt interficti.
Hoc negotio confecto, Labienus revertitur Agedincum, ubi
impedimenta totius exercitus relieta erant; inde cum
omnibus copiis ad Caesarem pervenit.

LXIII. Defectione Aeduorum cognita bellum augetur.
Legationes in omnes partes circummittuntur; quantum
DE BELLO GALLICO

gratia, auctoritate, pecunia valent, ad sollicitandas civitates nituntur. Nacti obsides, quos Caesar apud eos depo-
suerat, horum supplicio dubitantes territant. Petunt a
Vercingetorige Aedui, ad se veniat rationesque belli ge-
rendi communicet. Re impetratam, contendunt ut ipsis
summa imperii tradatur; et, re in controversiam deducta,
totius Galliae concilium Bibracte indicitur. Conveniunt
undique frequentes. Multitudinis suffragiis res permittitur:
ad unum omnes Vercingetorigem probant imperatorem.
10 Ab hoc concilio Remi, Lingones, Treviri abfuerunt: illi,
quod amicitiam Romanorum sequabantur; Treviri, quod
aberon longius et ab Germânis premebantur; quae fuit
causa, quare toto abessent bello et neutris auxilia mitterent.
Magno dolore Aedui ferunt se dejectos principatu; querun-
tur fortunae commutacionem et Caesâris in se indulgentiam
requirunt; neque tamen, suscepto bello, suum consilium
ab reliquis separare audent. Invit summae spei adoles-
centes Eporedörix et Viridomarus Vercingetorigi parent.
15 LXIV. Ipse imperat reliquis civitatibus obsides diem-
que huic rei constituit: omnes equites, quindecim millia
numero, celeriter convenire jubet: peditatu, quem antea
habuerat, se fore contentum dicit, neque fortanam tenta-
turum aut in acie dimicaturum; sed, quoniam abundet
equitatu, perfacile esse factu frumentationibus pulationis-
busque Românos prohibere; aequo modo animo sua ipsi
frumenta corruptant aedificiaque incendant, quâ rei fami-
lariis jacturâ perpetuum imperium libertatemque se conse-
qui videant. His constitutis rebus, Aeduis Segusiavisque,
qui sunt finitimi provinciae, decem millia peditum imperat:
huc addit equites octingentes. His praeficit fratrem
Eporedögiss bellumque inferri Allobrogibus jubet. Alterâ ex
parte Gabalos proximosque pagos Arvenorum in Helvios,
item Rutênos Cadurocosque ad fines Volcârum Arecomi-
rum depopulandos mittit. Nihilo minus clandestinis nun-
tiis legationibusque Allobrogas sollicitat, quorum mentes
nondum ab superiore bello resedisse sperabat. Horum
principibus pecunias, civitati autem imperium totius pro-
vinciae pollicetur.
LXV. Ad hos omnes casus provisa erant praesidia cohorsium duarum et viginti, quae ex ipsa coacta provinciā ab Lucio Caesāre legato ad omnes partes opponebantur. Helvii suā sponte cum finitimis proelio congressi pelluntur, et Gāio Valerio Donnotauro, Cabūri filio, principe civitatis compluribusque aliis interfectis, intra oppida murosaque compelluntur. Allobroges, crebris ad Rhodānum dispositis praesidiis, magnā cum curā et diligentia suōs fines tuentur. Caesar quod hostes equitatu superiores esse intelligebat, et, interclusis omnibus itineribus, nullā re ex provinciā atque Italiā sublevari poterat, trans Rhenum in Germaniam mittit ad eas civitates, quas superioribus annis pacaverat, equitesque ab his arcessit et levis armaturae pedites, qui inter eos proeliari consueverant. Eorum adventu, quod minus idoneis equis utebantur, a tribunis militum reliquisque equitibus Romānis atque evocatis equos sumit Germānisque distribuit.

LXVI. Interea dum haec geruntur, hostium copiae ex Arvernis equitesque, qui toti Galliāe erant imperati, conveniunt. Magnō horum coacto numero, cum Caesār in Sequānos per extremos Lingōnum fines iter faceret, quo facilius subsidium provinciae ferri posset, circiter millia passuum decem ab Romānis trinis castris Vercingetōrīx consedit, convocatisque ad concilium praefectis equitum, venisse tempus victoriae demonstrat: fugere in provinciā Romānōs Gallīaque excedere; id sibi ad praeuentem obtinendum libertatem satis esse; ad reliquis temporis pacem atque otium parum profici; majoribus enim coactis copiis, reversuros neque finem bellandi facturos. Proinde in agmine impeditos adoriantur. Si pedites suis auxilio ferant atque in eo morentur, iter facere non posse; si (id quod magis futurum confidat), relictis impedimentis, suae saluti consultant, et usu rerum necessariarum et dignitate spoliatum iri. Nam de equitibus hostium, quin nemo eorum progredi modo extra agmen audeat, et ipsos quidem non debere dubitare. Id quo majore faciant animo, copias se omnes pro castris habiturum et terrori hostibus futurum. Conclamant equites, sanctissimo
jurejurando confirmari oportere, ne tecto recipiatur, ne ad
liberos, ne ad parentes, ne ad uxorem aditum habeat, qui
non bis per agmen hostium persequitasset.

LXVII. Probata re atque omnibus jurejurando adactis,
5 posteri die in tres partes distributo equitatu, duae se æcies
ab duobus lateribus ostendunt; una a primo agmine iter
impedire coepit. Quæ re nuntiata, Caesar suum quoque
equitatum tripartito divisum contra hostem ire jubet.
Pugnatur una omnibus in partibus; consistit agmen: im-
10 pedimenta inter legiones recipiuntur. Si quæ in parte
nostri laborare aut gravius premi videbantur, eo signa
inferri Caesar aciemque constituì jubebat: quae res et
hostes ad insequendum tardabant, et nostros spe auxiliä
confirmabant. Tandem Germãni ab dextro latere summum
15 jugum nacti hostes loco depellunt; fugientes usque ad
flumen, ubi Vercingétorix cum pedestribus copiis consedéra-
rat, persequuntur compluresque interficiunt. Quæ re ani-
madversa, reliqui, ne circumvenirentur, veritì se fugae
mandant. Omnibus locis fit caedes: tres nobilissimi Aedui
20 capti ad Caesarem perducuntur: Cotos praefectus equi-
tum, qui controversiam cum Convictolitāve proximis com-
itiis habuerat, et Cavarillus, qui post defectionem Litavīc
pedestribus copiis praefuerat, et Eperedorix, quo duce
ante adventum Caesāris Aedui cum Sequānis bello con-
25 tenderant.

LXVIII. Fugato omni equitatu, Vercingétorix copias
suas, ut procastris collocaverat, reduxit; protinusque Ale-
siam, quod est oppidum Mandubiorum, iter facere coepit,
celeriterque impedimenta ex castris eduici et se subseu
30 jussit. Caesar, impedimentis in proximum collem deduc-
tis, duabus legionibus præsidio relictis, secutus, quantum
diei tempus est passum, circiter tribus millibus hostium ex
novissimo agmine interfactus, altero die ad Alesiam castra
secit. Perspecto urbis situ perterritisque hostibus, quod
35 equitatu, quæ maxime parte exercitus confidebant, erant
pulsi, adhortatus ad laborem milites Alesiam circumvallare
instituit.

LXIX. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summno, admodum
EXPLANATION.

A, A. Roman column on the march.
B. Baggage of the Romans.
C. Roman camp the night before the battle.
D. Roman camp the night after the battle.
e. Caesar's cavalry in three divisions.
E. German cavalry in Caesar's service.
g. The enemy's cavalry.
G. The enemy's infantry in line of battle.
V. The three camps of Vercingetorix.
edito loco, ut nisi obsidione expugnari non posse videretur. Cujus collis radices duo duabus ex partibus flumina sublubebant. Ante id oppidum planities circiter millia passuum tria in longitudinem patebat: reliquis ex omnibus partibus colles, mediocri interjecto spatio, pari altitudinis fastigio, 5 oppidum cingebant. Sub muro, quae pars collis ad orientem solem spectabat, hunc omnem locum copiae Gallorum compleverant fossamque et maceriam sex in altitudinem pedum praeduxerant. Eius munitionis, quae ab Românis instituebatur, circuitus undecim millia passuum tenebat. 10 Castra opportunis locis erant posita ibique castella viginti tria facta; quibus in castellis interdii stationes ponebantur, ne qua subito eruptio fieret: haec eadem noctu excubitoribus ac firmis praesidiis tenebantur.


LXXI. Vercingetorix, priusquam munitiones ab Românis perficiantur, consilium capit, omnem ab se equitatum noctu dimittere. Discendentibus mandat, ut suam quisque 30 eorum civitatem adeat omnesque, qui per aetatem arma ferre possint, ad bellum cogant; sua in illos merita proponit obtestaturque, ut suae salutis rationem habeant, neu se
optime de communi libertate meritum hostibus in cruciaturum dedant. Quod si indiligentiores fuerint, millia hominum delecta octoginta una secum interitura demonstrat; ratione initia, frumentum se exiguum dierum triginta habere, sed paulo etiam longius tolerare posse parendo. His datis mandatis, qua opus erat intermissum, secundâ vigiliâ silentio equitatum mittit; frumentum omne ad se referri jubet; capitis poenam iis, qui non paruerint, constituit; pecus, cuius magna erat copia ab Mandubiiis compulsa, viritim distribuit; frumentum parce et paulatim metiri instituit; copias omnes, quas pro oppido collocaverat, in oppidum recit. His rationibus auxilia Galliae exspectare et bellum administrare parat.

LXXII. Quibus rebus cognitis ex perfugis et captivis, Caesar haec genera munitionis instituit. Fossam pedum viginti directis lateribus duxit, ut ejus fossae solum tantundem pateret, quantum summa labra distarent. Reliquas omnes munitiones ab eâ fossâ pedes quadringentes reduxit; id hoc consilio, quoniam tantum esset necessario spatium complexus, nec facile totum corpus coronâ militem cingeretur, ne de improviso aut noctu ad munitiones hostium multitudo advolaret, aut interiux tela in nostros operi destinatos conjicerent possent. Hoc intermisso spatio, duas fossas quindecim pedes latas eâdem altitudine pertinxuit; quarum interiorum, campestribus ac demissis locis, aqua ex flumine derivata complevit. Post eas aggerem ac vallum duodecim pedum estruxit; huic loricam pinnasque adjicit, grandibus cervis eminentibus ad commissuras pluteorum atque aggeris, qui ascensum hostium tardarent; et turres toto opere circumdedit, quae pedes octoginta inter se distarent.

LXXIII. Erat eodem tempore et materiari et frumentari et tantas munitiones fieri necesse deminutis nostris copiis, quae longius ab castris progradiebantur; ac non nuncquam opera nostra Galli tentare atque eruptionem ex oppido pluribus portis summâ vi facere conabantur. Quare ad haec rursus opera addendum Caesar putavit, quo minore numero militum munitiones defendi possent.
Itaque truncis arborum aut admodum firmis ramis abscisis atque horum delibratis ac praecautis cacuminibus, perpetuæ fossae quinque pedes altae duciebantur. Huc illi stipites demissi et ab infimo revincti, ne revelli possent, ab ramis eminebant. Quini erant ordines, conjuncti inter se atque implicati; quo qui intraverant, se ipsi aoutissimis vallis induebant. Hos cippos appellabant. Ante quos obliquis ordinibus in quincuncem dispositis scrobès trium in altitudinem pedum fodiebantur paulatim angustiore ad infimum fastigio. Huc teretes stipites feminis crassitudine ab summo praecutis et praestii demitiebantur, ita ut non amplius digitis quattuor ex terrā emīrent. simul confirmandi et stabiliendi causā singuli ab infimo solo pedes terrā exculcabantur: reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandas insidias viminibus ac virgultis integebatur. Hujus generis octoni ordines ducti ternos inter se pedes distabant. Id ex similitudine floris lilium appellabant. Ante haec taleae pedem longae ferreis hamis infixis totae in terram infodiebantur, medico ribusque intermissis spatiis omnibus locis disserebantur, quos stimulos nominabant.

LXXIV. His rebus perfectis, regiones secutus quam potuit aequissimas pro loci naturā quattuor decim millia passuum complexus, pares ejusdem generis munitiones, diversas ab his, contra exteriorem hostem perfecit, ut ne magnā quidem multitudine, si ita accidat, munitio num 25 praesidia circumfundi possent; nee cum periculo ex castris egredi cogatur, dierum triginta pabulum frumentumque habere omnes convectum jubet.

LXXV. Dum haec apud Alesiam geruntur, Galli, concilio principium inducto, non omnes eos, qui arma ferre possent, ut censuit Vercingetōrix, convocandos statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique civitati imperandum; ne, tantā multitudine confusā, nec moderari nec discernere suos nec frumentandi rationem habere possent. Imperant Adeuis atque eorum clientibus, Segusiāvis, Ambivarētis, Aulercis Brannovicibus, Brannoviis millia triginta quinque; parem numerum Arvernīs, adjunctis Eleutātis, Cadurcis, Gabālis, Vellavis, qui sub imperio Arvernōrum esse consuerunt;
Sequănĭs, Senonĭbus, Biturigĭbus, Santonĭs, Rutēnis, Carnutĭbus duodena millia; Bellovācĭs decem; totidem Lemovĭcĭbus; octona Pictonĭbus et Turōnis et Parisiis et Helvētiis; Ambiānis, Mediomātrīcis, Petrocorĭs, Nervīs, Morĭnis, Nitiobrigĭbus quina millia; Aulerĭcis Cenomānĭcis totidem; Atrebātis quattuor; Bellocassĭs, Lexovĭs et Aulerĭcis Eubrovinĭcĭbus terna; Raurācis et Boĭis bina; decem universĭs civitātĭbus, quae Oceānum attingunt, quaeque eorum consuetudine Armorĭcae appellantur, quo sunt in numero Curiosolĭtes, Redōnes, Ambibarĭi, Calētes, Osismi, Lemovĭces, Venēti, Venelli. Ex his Bellovāci suum numerum non compleverunt, quod se suo nomine atque arbitrio cum Romānis bellum gesturos dicenter, neque cujusquam imperio obtemperuros; rogāt tamen ab Com- mio pro ejus hospitio duo millia una miserunt.

LXXVI. Hujus operā Commīi, ita ut antea demonstravimus, fidelis atque utili superioribus annis erat usus in Britannia Caesar; quibus ille pro meritis civitatem ejus immunem esse jussērat, jura legesque reddiderat atque ipsi Morĭnos attribuerat. Tamen tanta universae Galliae consensio fuit libertatis vindicandae et pristinae belli laudis recuperandae, ut neque beneficiis neque amicitiae memorīa moverentur, omnesque et animo et opibus in id bellum incumberent, coactus equĭtum octo millibus et peditum circiter ducentis et quadraginta. Haec in Aedu- ōrum finibus recensebantur numeroque inibatur; prae- fecti constituebant; Commīo Atrebāti, Viridomāro et Ephorōrīgi Aeduis, Vercassivellauno Arverno, consobrino Vercingetorĭgis, summa imperīi traditur. His delectī ex civitātibus attribuuntur, quorum consilio bellum adinistra- retur. Omnes alacres et fiduciae pleni ad Alesiam pro- fisciscuntur; neque erat omnium quisquam, qui aspectum modo tantae multitudinis sustineri posse arbitraretur, praesertim ancipiti proelio, cum ex oppido eruptione pugnaretur, foris tantae copiae equitatus peditatusque cer- nerentur.

LXXVII. At ii, qui Alesiae obsidebantur, praeterită die, qua auxilia suorum exspectaverant, consumpto omni
frumento, insci, quid in Aeduis gereretur, concilio coacto, de exitu suarum fortunarum consultabant. Apud quos variis dictis sententiis, quorum pars deditionem, pars, dum vires suppeterent, eruptionem censebat, non praetereunda oratio Critognäti videtur propter ejus singularem ac nefariam crudelitatem. Hic summo in Arvernis ortus loco et magnae habitus auctoritatis, "Nihil," inquit, "de eorum sententiis dicturus sum, qui turpissimam servitutem deditionis nomine appellant; neque hos habendos civium loco neque ad concilium adhibendos censeo. Cum his mihi res sit, qui eruptionem probant, quorum in consilio omnium vestrum consensu pristinae residere virtutis memoria videtur. Animi est ista mollitites, non virtus, paulisper inopiam ferre non posse. Qui se ultro morti offerant, facilium reperiuntur, quam qui dolorem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probarem (tantum apud me dignitas potest), si nullam praeterquam vitae nostrae jacturam fieri viderem; sed in consilio capiendo omnem Galliam respiciamus, quam ad nostrum auxillium concitavimus. Quid hominem millibus octoginta uno loco interfectis, propinquus consanguineisque nostris animi fore existimatis, si paene in ipsis cadaveribus proelio deserta coguntur? Nolite hos vestro auxilio exspoliare, qui vestrae salutis causâ suum periculum neglexerunt, nec stultitia ac temeritate vestra aut animi imbecillitate omnem Galliam proster- nere et perpetuae servitutis subjicere. An, quod ad diem non venerunt, de eorum fide constantiâque dubitatis? Quid ergo? Romanos in illis ulterioribus munitionibus animine causâ quotidie exerceri putatis? Si illorum nuntiis confirmari non potestis omni aditu praesepto, his utimini testibus approsinquare eorum adventum, cujus rei timore exterriti diem noctemque in opere versantur. Quid ergo mei consilii est? Facere, quod nostri majores nequaquam pari bello Cimbrorum Teutonumque secerunt; qui in oppida compulsi ac similis inopia subacti, eorum cor poribus, qui aetate ad bellum inutiles videbantur, vitam toleraverunt neque se hostibus tradiderunt. Cujus rei si exemplo non haberemus, tamen libertatis causâ institui
et posteris prodi pulcherrimum judicarem. Nam quid illi simile bello fuit? Depopulatâ Galliâ Cimbrī magnâque illâ calamitate finibus quidem nostris aliquando excesserunt atque alias terras petierunt; jura, leges, agros, liber.

5 tatem nóbis reliquerunt: Români vero quid petunt aliud, aut quid volunt, nisi invidiâ adducti, quos famâ nobiles potentesque bello cognoverunt, horum in agris civitatibusque considere atque his aeternam injungere servitutem? Neque enim unquam aliâ conditione bella gesserunt.

10 Quod si ea, quae in longinquis nationibus geruntur, ignoratis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae in provinciam redacta, jure et legibus commutatis, securibus subjecta perpetuâ premitur servitute."

LXXVIII. Sententias dictis, constituunt, ut ii, qui vale-

tudine aut aetate inutiles sunt bello, oppido excedant, atque omnia prius experiantur, quam ad Critognăti sententiam descendant: illo tamen potius utendum consilio, si res cogat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut deditionis aut pacis subeundam conditionem. Mandubii, qui eos

20 oppido receperant, cum liberis atque uxoribus exire coguntur. Hi, cum ad munitiones Romanorum accessissent, flentes omnibus precibus orabant, ut se in servitutem receptos cibo juvarent. At Caesar, dispositis in vallo custodiis, recipi prohibebat.

LXXIX. Interea Commius et reliqui duces, quibus summa imperii permissa erat, cum omnibus copiis ad Alesiam perveniunt et colle exteriori occupato non longius mille passibus ab nostris munitionibus considunt. Postero die equitatu ex castris educto, omnem eam planitiem, quam in longitudinem tria millia passuum patere demonstravimus, complent pedestresque copias paulum ab eo loco abditas in locis superioribus constituunt. Erat ex oppido Alesiâ despectus in campum. Concurrunt his auxiliis visis: fit gratulatio inter eos atque omnium animi

30 ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque productis copiis ante oppidum considunt et proximam fossam cratibus integunt atque aggere explent seque ad eruptionem atque omnes casus comparant.
LXXX. Caesar omni exercitu ad utramque partem munitionum disposito, ut, si usus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et noverit, equitatum ex castris educi et proelium committi jubet. Erat ex omnibus castris, quae summum undique jugum tenebant, despectus, atque omnes milites intenti pugnae proventum exspectabant. Galli inter equites rarios sagittarios expeditosque levis armaturae interjecerant, qui suis cedentibus auxilio succurrerent et nostrorum equitum impetus sustinerent. Ab his complures de improviso vulnerati proelio excedebant. Cum suos pugnā superiores esse Galli confiderent et nostrās multitudine premi viderent, ex omnibus partibus et ii, qui munitionibus continebantur, et ii, qui ad auxilium conve nerant, clamore et ululatu suorum animos confirmabant. Quod in conspectu omnium res gerebatur neque recte ac turpiter factum celari poterat, utrosque et laudis cupiditas et timor ignominiae ad virtutem excitabant. Cum a meridie prope ad solis occasum dubiā victoria pugnaretur, Germāni unā in parte confertis turmis in hostes impetum fecerunt eosque propulerunt; quibus in fugam conjectis, sagittarii circumventi interfectique sunt. Item ex reliquis partibus nostri cedentes usque ad castra insecati sui colli gendi facultatem non dederunt. At ii, qui ab Alesiā processerant, moesti, prope victoriā desperatā, se in oppidum receperunt.

LXXXI. Uno die intermissō, Galli, atque hoc spatio magnō cratium, scalarum, harpagonum numero effecto, mediā nocte silentio ex castris egressi ad campestres munitiones accedunt. Subito clamore sublato, quā significatione qui in oppido obsidebantur de suo adventu cognoscere possent, cratēs projicere, fundias, sagittis, lapidibus nostros de vallo proturbare reliquaque, quae ad oppugnationem pertinent, parant administrare. Eodem tempore clamore exaudito dat tubā signum suis Vercingetōrīx atque ex oppido educit. Nostri, ut superioribus diebus suās cuique erat locus attributus, ad munitiones accedunt: fundias librilibus sudibusque, quas in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallos proterrent. Prospectu tenebris adempto,
multa utrimque vulnera accepiuntur; complura tormentis tela conjiciuntur. At Marcus Antonius et Gaius Trebonius legati, quibus hae partes ad defendendum obvenerant, quae ex parte nostros premi intellexerant, his auxilio ex ulterioribus castellis deductos submittebant.

LXXXII. Dum longius ab munitione aberant Galli, plus multitudine telorum proficiebant: posteaquam proprius successerunt, aut se ipsi stimuli inopinantes induebant, aut in scrobos delati transfodiebantur, aut ex vallo ac turribus transjecti pilis muralibus interibant. Multis undique vulneribus acceptis, nullâ munitione ruptâ, cum lux appeteret, veriti, ne ab latere aperto ex superioribus castris eruptione circumvenirentur, se ad suas receperunt. At interioribus, dum ea, quae a Vercingetorïge ad eruptionem praeparata erant, proferunt, priores fossas explent; diutius in his rebus administrandis morati, prius suas discessisse cognoverunt, quam munitionibus appropinquarent. Ita, re infectâ, in oppidum reverterunt.

LXXXIII. Bis magno cum detrimento repulsae Galli, quid agant, consulunt: locorum peritos adhibent: ex his superiorum castrorum situs munitionesque cognoscunt. Erat a septemtrionibus collis, quem propter magnitudinem circuitus opere circumplecti non potuerant nostri, necessarioque paene iniquo loco et leniter declivi castra fecerunt. Haec Gaius Antistius Reginus et Gaius Caninius Rebilus legati cum duabus legionibus obtinebant. Cognitis per exploratores regionibus, duces hostium sexaginta millia ex omni numero deligunt earum civitatum, quae maximam virtutis opinionem habebant; quid quoque pacto agi placeat, occulte inter se constitueunt; adeundi tempus defiunt, cum meridies esse videatur. His copiis Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, unum ex quattuor duibus, propinquum Vercingetorïgis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castris primâ vigiliâ egressus, prope confecto sub lucem itinere, post montem se occultavit militesque ex nocturno laboro sese reificere jussit. Cum jam meridies appropinquare videretur, ad ea castra, quae supra demonstravimus, contendit; eodemque tempore equitatus ad campestres
munitiones accedere et reliquae copiae pro castris sese ostendere coeperunt.

LXXXIV. Veringetōri ex arce Alesiae suos conspiciatus ex oppido egreditur; a castris longurios, musculos, falces reliquaque, quae eruptionis causā paraverat, profert. 5 Pugnatur uno tempore omnibus locis, atque omnia tentantur: quae minime visa pars firma est, hoc concurritur. Romanorum manus tantis munitionibus distinetur, nec facile pluribus locis occurrit. Multum ad terrendos nostros valet clamor, qui post tergum pugnantibus exstipit, 10 quod suum periculum in alienā vident virtute constare: omnia enim plerumque, quae absunt, vehementius hominum mentes perturbant.


LXXXVI. His rebus cognitis, Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus sex subsidio laborantibus mittit; imperat, si sustinere non possit, deductis cohortibus eruptione pugnae; id, nisi necessario, ne faciat. Ipse adit reliquos; cohortatur, ne labori succumbant; omnium superiorum dimicationum fructum in eo die atque hora docet consistere. Interiores desperatis campestribus locis propter magnitudinem munitionum loca praerupta ex ascensu tentant: 35 huc ea, quae paraverant, conferunt: multitudine telorum ex turribus propugnantes deturbant, aggere et cratibus fossas expleunt, falcibus vallum ac loricam rescidunt.
LXXXVII. Mittit primo Brutum adolescentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis Gāium Fabium legatum: postremo ipse, cum vehementius pugnaretur, integros subsidio adducit. Restituto proelio ac repulsis hostibus, eo, quo Labēnum miserat, contendit; cohortes quattuor ex proximo castello deducit; equitum partem se sequi, partem circumire exteriore munitiones et ab tergo hostes adoriri jubet. Labēnus, postquam neque aggeres neque fossae vim hostium sustinere poterant, coactis undequadraginta cohortibus, quas ex proximis praesidiis deductas fors obtulit, Caesarem per nuntios facit certiorum, quid facien dum existimet. Accelerat Caesar, ut proelio intersit.


LXXXIX. Postero die Vercingetōrix, concilio convo- cato, id bellum se suscipisse non suarum necessitatum, sed communis libertatis causā demonstrat; et quoniam sit fortunae cedendum, ad utramque rem se illis offere, seu morte sua Romānīs satisfacere, seu vivum tradere velint.
Liber Septimus.


REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS.

Numerals with "G." refer to the author's Latin Grammar; with "L. C." to his Introduction to Latin Composition; with "p." to pages in this work. Numeral letters and numeral figures used together refer to books and chapters in the Latin text. Other numerals refer to articles in the introduction on the Military System of the Romans.

The following abbreviations occur:—

acc. to, acc. to. freq. frequentative.
Celt. Celtic. lit. literally.
dep. deponent. opp. opposed.
dim. diminutive. prob. probably.
esp. especially. sc. scilicet, supply.
fig. figuratively. syn. synonyms.

(166)
NOTES.

Caesars Commentarii, Caesar's Commentaries. The term commentarii, as here used, is applicable to any simple and concise chronicle of events. Caesar, in his seven books of Commentaries on the Gallic War, has given a concise account of seven campaigns waged by himself in Gaul. Each book is a journal of one year.

BOOK FIRST.

CAMPAIGN OF THE YEAR 58 B.C., IN THE CONSULSHIP OF LUCIUS CALPURNIUS PISO AND AULUS GABINIUS.

I. WAR WITH THE HELVETII. I.-XXIX.
II. WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS. XXX.-LIV.

I. General Description of Gaul.

1. Gallia. Gallia, or Gallia Transalpina, properly designates that part of the continent of Europe which lies west of the Alps and the Rhine, and north of the Pyrenees; but, as here used, it does not include the Roman province (provincia) in the south-eastern portion of this district. In a still more restricted sense, Gallia is sometimes used to designate one of the three general divisions of this country, namely, that occupied by the Celtic or Galli. Gallia omnis distinguishes the country, as a whole, from this part.—Quârum; Partitive Genitive, depending upon unam, and agreeing with partes as its antecedent. G. 397; 445.

2. Aliam, another, less definite than alteram, which would mean the second. Aliam = aliam partem is the object of incolumi understood.—

3. Celtae, Galli; G. 362. The reader will observe that the term Galli, like Gallia, is used in two senses. It properly denotes the inhabitants of all Gaul (Gallia omnis), but it is also often used, as in this instance, to designate the inhabitants of the third division of the country, i. e., of Celtic Gaul. This distinction must be constantly borne in mind by the learner.—Nostra; supply lingua.—Lingua; G. 424.

4. Inter se, from one another; lit., among themselves.

5. Dividit. In the singular, because the two rivers form but one boundary. G. 463, 3.

6. Horum; G. 397. — Propter quod, because; lit., on account of this (the things) that. This introduces two reasons to account for the valor of the Belgae—their distance from the Roman province, and their nearness to the warlike Germans.—A cultu atque humanitate, from the civilization and refinement. Cultus here refers to external comforts and luxuries, humanitas to mental and moral culture.

7. Provinciae; i. e., of the Roman province in the south-eastern portion of Gaul.

8. Minime saepe, least frequently.

9. Ad effeminandos animos; G. 543; 542, III. — Proximique; supply propter quod, introducing the second reason for the valor of the Belgians.

10. Incolunt, dwell. This verb is sometimes transitive, inhabit, as in line 2, and sometimes intransitive, dwell, as in this passage.

11. Qua de causa Helvetii, i. e., because they, too, dwell near the Germans.


15. Eorum una pars, one portion of their country; lit., one part (of the country) of them. Eorum is a Possessive Genitive (of them = their), referring to hi omnes, line 3, and horum omnium, line 6. — Quam . . . dictum est, which, it has been said, the Gauls occupy. Gallos = Celtas, i. e., the Gauls in the restricted sense of that word.—See note on Celtae, Galli, line 3.—Dictum est. Give the subject. G. 538.

16. Continetur, is bounded.

17. Ab Sequanis, on the side of the Sequani; i. e., in their territory; lit., from the Sequani—a common Latin idiom, using a, ab, e, or ex, where our idiom requires at, in, on, on the side of, or some similar expression.

18. Vergit ad septemtriones, it extends towards the north, spoken
with reference to the Roman province in the south of Gaul; i. e., viewed from that province, the country of the Celtae extends from the Rhine towards the north.

19. Extremis, pertinent, spectant. These words suppose the reader to be in the Roman province. Thus, extremis finibus, the farthest confines, means the northern boundary, i. e., the one most remote from the province.

1. Ad, near, bordering upon.

II. Ambitious Designs of Orgetorix.

4. Messala . . . consulibus; G. 431. This was in the year 61 B.C., three years before Caesar arrived in Gaul.

5. Regni, of regal power, sovereignty. — Nobilitatis, civitati; the abstract for the concrete; nobility, for nobles, state, for citizens.


7. Exitent; G. 461; 498. — Perfacile esse . . . potiri. This is an instance of the Indirect Discourse, Oratio Obliqua, very common in Caesar. In the Direct Discourse it would stand thus: Perfacile est, quam virtute omnis praestetis, totius Galliae imperio potiri. The learner will observe that the Ind. est is changed to the Infin. esse, G. 523; that the Pres. praestetis is changed to the Imperf. praestarent, because dependent upon an historical tense, persuasit, G. 493, and that the second person, praestetis, is changed to the third, praestarent, G. 526. The Infin. esse depends upon a verb of saying, implied in persuasit; He persuaded them, etc., saying that it would be easy, G. 523. The subject of esse is the clause totius . . . potiri, with which perfacile agrees as a predicate adjective. G. 538, 2; 438, 3. The learner should now make himself perfectly familiar with the whole subject of the Indirect Discourse as presented in the Gram. 522–532.


8. Imperio potiri; G. 421, I. — Id hoc facilius els persuasit, he persuaded them to that course (id, i. e., ut exirent) the more easily on this account (hoc, i. e., quod . . . continentur). Id is the object of persuasit; lit., persuaded that to them. Hoc is Abl. of Means. G. 420.

9. Local natura, by natural boundaries, viz., the Rhine, the Rhone, Mount Jura, and Lake Lemnannus.— Continentur, are confined, hemmed in. — Una ex parte, on one side. See note on ab Sequanis, p. 1, line 17.

10. Latissimo, very broad. G. 444, 1.

12. Tertia; supply ex parte.

13. Province nostram, our province, i. e., the Roman province, corresponding to the south-eastern portion of France.

14. Ut vagarentur; G. 501, I. — Minus late, less extensively, i. e., than they wished.
16. *Hominis bellandi cupidī*, they, a people (men) fond of warfare. G. 363, 2; 542, I.

17. *Pro, in proportion to.*

19. *Quī.* The antecedent is *fīnes.* — *Millia...ducenta,* etc. *Miles passuum* is a little more than nine-tenths of an English mile, which makes the length about 220 miles, and the breadth about 160. Caesar's estimate is, however, somewhat too high, resting doubtless upon the exaggerated accounts of others. — *Millia;* G. 178; 379.

III. The Helvetii prepare to invade Gaul.

22. *Quae ad proficiscendum pertinere...side for their departure.* G. 503; 542, III.

23. *Quam maximum;* G. 444, 3.

24. *Ut suppeteret;* G. 497, II. — In itinere, on their march.

25. *Cum proximis civitatibus, with the adjacent (nearest) states;* i.e., of Gaul.


27. *In tertium annum...confirmant, by formal enactment they appoint their departure for the third year;* i.e., they appoint the third year as the time for their departure. G. 435, 1.

32. *Amicus.* To be called *friend* by the Roman Senate was a distinguished honor.

33. *Ut regnum occuparet.* The Imperfect is explained by its connection with the Historical Present *persuadet.* G. 495, II. The sovereign authority (*regnun*um) seems not to have been hereditary, but to have been conferred by the people.

35. *Quī* refers to *Dumnorīgi.* — *Tempore;* G. 429. — *Principatum obtinebat, held (was holding) the first place;* i.e., in power and influence. *Principatus* is a word of very general import, and its special application in any instance must be learned from the context. It does not, like *regnun*um, necessarily involve either official station or legal authority. Dumnorix may, however, have been at that time Vergobretus. See p. 8, line 38.


37. *Perfacile factu esse, etc., he shows them (to them) that it is very easy to accomplish their designs;* lit., *that to accomplish their designs is very easy to do (factu).* G. 547. See note on *perfacile esse,* p. 2, line 7.

38. *Quod ipse...obtenturus esset;* a subordinate clause in the Indirect Discourse. In the Direct Discourse it would read thus: *Quod ipse meae civitatis imperium obtenturus sum.* The learner will observe that the Ind. *sum* is changed to the Subj. *esse,* G. 524; that the Pres. 1st Pers. *sum* is changed to the Imperf. 3d Pers. *esse,* after the Hist. Pres.
BOOK I.

PAGE 2

probat, G. 496, II.; 526; and that the pronoun of the first person, mee, is changed to that of the third, sue, G. 526. — Sue civitatis; G. 449.

1. Imperium, supreme authority, the highest authority, the command, as of an army. — Obtenturus esset; a reason on the authority of Orgetorix. G. 516, II. — Quin totius Galliae, etc., that the Helvetii were the most powerful of all the Gauls. Totius Galliae = omnium Gallorum, and plurimum possent = potentissimi essent.

2. Galliae; Partitive Genitive with plurimum. G. 397. — Possent; G. 504, 3. — Se illis regna conciliaturum, that he would procure for them the sovereign power; i.e., in their respective states; hence, plural, regna.

4. Inter se dant, they (Casticus, Dumnorix, and Orgetorix) exchange; lit., give between (among) themselves. — Dant; Historical Present. G. 467, 1. — Regno occupato; G. 431, 2.

5. Per tres populos; G. 415, I. The Helvetii, Sequani, and Aedui are meant.


IV. Death of Orgetorix.

7. Ea res, this fact; i.e., the conspiracy of Orgetorix. — Per indicium = per indices, by informers, the abstract for the concrete. — Moribus; G. 416.

8. Ex vinculis causam dicere, to make his defence in chains. Ex vinculis; lit., out of chains. See note on ab Sequanis, p. 1, line 17. — Causam dicere; a forensic expression, to plead one's cause, to make one's defence.

9. Damnatum, if condemned. G. 549, 2. It agrees with eum, the omitted object of sequi. — Poenam sequi, etc. Poenam sequi is the subject of oportebat, and ut igni cremaretur is in apposition with poenam. G. 501, III. Among the Gauls this seems to have been the usual punishment of traitors.

10. Die constituta, on the appointed day. Abl. of Time, not Abl. Absol. G. 429. — Omnum suam famillam, his whole household, including all his slaves, clients and dependants.

11. Ad, about, towards, often used, in this sense, with numerals.

12. Clientes obaeratosque. The clientes were dependants, retainers; the obaerati, debtors held to service.

13. Ne diceret; G. 497, II.

14. Se eripuit, he rescued himself, though probably not by force, but by the fear which his retainers inspired.

15. Armis; Abl. of Means. G. 420.—Jus suum exsequi, to
NOTES.

3 maintain their authority; lit., to follow out their right.—Conaretur, cogerent; G. 521.

16. Magistratus; subject of cogerent.

17. Quin ipse sibi, etc., that he committed suicide; lit., but that he inflicted death upon himself.

18. Causulverit; G. 504; 492, 2.

V. The Helvetii continue their Preparations.


20. Ut . . . exsunt; in apposition with id. G. 363, 5; 501, III. Such explanatory clauses are common in Caesar.—Ubi jam, i. e., in the third year after the plan was adopted. See p. 2, line 27.

21. Oppida, cities, towns. Oppidum and urbs are both used by Caesar of the principal cities of Gaul, but the former is given by preference to those towns which are difficult of access or which are strongly fortified. See Syn. L. C. 473.


24. Ut . . . essent; Subj. of Purpose. G. 497; 495, II.—Domum reditio sine spe, the hope of a return home. Domum; Accus. of Limit. G. 380, II, 2, 1).

25. Spe; G. 481.—Sublata; from tollo.—Pericula subeunda; G. 543.

26. Trium mensium . . . cibaria, meal (or flour) for three months; i. e., supplies for three months, lit., of three months.

27. Domo; G. 426, 2.—Raurecis; G. 385.

28. Finitimis; G. 441. —Eodem usi consulio, having adopted the same plan; i. e., the same as the Helvetii had adopted. G. 421, I.—Oppidis . . . exustis; G. 431.

29. Cum illis. Secum, which might have been used, would give prominence to the purpose of the Helvetii, while cum illis implies that the clause is Caesar's statement of the result. G. 449, 1, 2).

30. Trans Rhenum; i. e., east of the Rhine.

31. Oppugnaram, had assaulted. This evidently refers to an unsuccessful attempt to reduce the place.—Receptos . . . adsciscunt, they receive and ally to themselves as confederates. G. 549, 5.

VI. The Helvetii prepare to march through the Province.

33. Quibus itineribus, by which, lit., by which ways. G. 445, 8; Syn. L. C. 156. The repetition of the antecedent adds emphasis.—Domus, from home; i. e., from their country. G. 426, 2.

34. Possent; G. 503.—Unum; in apposition with itinera. G. 364.
BOOK I.

35. Inter ... Juram ... Rhodanum. See note, with plan, on a lacu ... Juram, p. 4, line 34. — Singuli carrī. Observe the force of the distributive, wagones one by one, one at a time; i. e., a single wagon.

36. Ducerentur; G. 503, I., 2. — Altissimus, very high. — Ut possent; Subj. of Result, G. 600.

1. Allobrogum. This warlike people had been conquered by the Romans 121 B. C., but having revolted, they had recently (nuper) been again reduced to subjection, 61 B. C.

2. Is vado transitur, it is crossed by means of a ford — is fordable. G. 420. — Locis; G. 425, II., 1.

4. Ad Helvetios pertinent, leads over to the Helvetii.

5. Allobrogibus ... viderentur; vel vi ... paterentur; Indirect Discourse, dependent upon existimabant. The principal clauses are Allobrogibus ... persuasuros and vi coacturos; the subordinate clauses, quod ... viderentur and ut ... paterentur. Explain the Moods. G. 523, I.; 524. But observe that the Subjunctive in ut ... paterentur is to be referred to G. 498, II., as the Subjunctive would be required even in direct discourse. See also notes on perfacile esse, p. 2, line 7, and quod ... obtenturus esset, p. 2, line 38. — Allobrogibus; G. 385. — Persuasuros, coacturos. Observe the omission of esse. G. 534, note.

6. Bono animo, kindly disposed; lit., with (of) a good mind. G. 419, II.

7. Coacturos; from cogo. — Suos, eos. Suos refers to the subject of the clause, i. e., to the Allobroges, while eos refers to the subject of the principal clause, i. e., to the Helvetii. This clause might have been, ut se per ipsorum fines ire paterentur. G. 445, 1.

9. Qua die; G. 429; 445, 8. — Conveniant; G. 500.

10. Ante diem ... Aprilès = die quinto ante Kalendas Aprilès, on the fifth day before the Kalends of April; i. e., on the 28th of March. Ante must be construed with Kalendas, while diem (for die) is attracted into the Accus. by ante. G. 642, III., 3. — Luctio ... consulibus; G. 431, 2. This was in the year 58 B. C.

VII. Caesar opposes the Helvetii.

12. Cum nuntiatum esset; G. 495, II.; 521. — Eos ... conari; in apposition with id. G. 539, II.

13. Ab urbe, from the city; i. e., from Rome, where he received these tidings.

14. Quam ... itineribus, by as long marches as possible. G. 170, 2. According to Plutarch he reached the Rhone in eight days. — In Galliam ulteriorem, into Ulterior, or Farther, Gaul; i. e., Gaul beyond the Alps; also called Gallia Transalpina, or simply Gallia, as on p. 1.

15. Ad Genavam, into the vicinity of Geneva. G. 380, II., 1. — Pro-
vinctae toti imperat, he levies upon the whole province; i.e., upon Ulterior Gaul, which he had received as a province.

17. Legto una. This was the tenth legion, afterwards famous in the Gallic wars. The Roman legion contained originally 3000 infantry and 300 cavalry. For an account of the legion, of its organization and numerical strength, see 13 and 28. — Pontem; i.e., the bridge over the Rhone. — Ad Genavam, near Geneva.

18. Certiores facti sunt, were informed; lit., were made more certain.

21. Quis dicenter, to say; lit., who should say. G. 497. Qui refers to legatos as its antecedent. — Sibi esse in... facere liceat; Indirect Discourse. Direct Discourse thus: Nobis est in... facere, propter e... habemus nullum; rogamus ut tua voluntate id nobis facere liceat. Explain the changes of Mood, Tense, Person, etc. G. 523–532. See note on Allobrogibus... paterentur, p. 4, line 5. — Sibi esse in animo, that it was their intention; lit., was to them in mind. G. 387, 449, 1. Observe that esse and rogare are the leading verbs in the principal clauses, and that the subject of esse is the clause, sine ullo... facere. G. 523, I.; 538, 2. — Sine ullo maleficio, without doing any damage; lit., without any harm.

22. Quod... nullum. Observe the emphatic position of nullum. G. 561, II.

23. Haberent, had. G. 524. — Rogare, that they asked. The subject se is omitted. G. 523, I., foot-note. — Ut liceat; G. 498, I. Liceat has id facere as its subject, and sibi as its indirect object. G. 538; 384. — Ejus voluntate, with his (Caesar's) consent. G. 416.

24. Memoria tenebat, retained in (by means of) memory. — Memoria; Abl. of Means. — Lucrum Cassium. This defeat of the Roman army under Cassius occurred near the Lake of Geneva, 107 B.C., forty-nine years before the arrival of Caesar in Gaul.

25. Occisum; supply esse. So also with pulsum, missum, and concedendum. G. 534, note.

26. Sub jugum. The yoke was thus used as the symbol of submission and servitude. It consisted of a spear supported horizontally by two others placed in an upright position. — Concedendum; supply id, referring to the request of the Helvetii.

27. Inimico animo, with hostile feelings. G. 419, II. — Data faciatur, if the opportunity should be granted. G. 431, 2.


29. Spatium; here used of time.

30. Convenirent; G. 519, II., 2.

31. Diem, time, lit., a day. It is the object of sumpturum. — Si quid vellet... reverterentur. In the Direct Discourse, i.e., in the original words of Caesar, this would be a conditional sentence of the first form
VIII. The Helvetii attempt to force a Passage.

33. Legione, militibus; Abs. of Means, to be construed with percutit, he constructs. G. 415, I., 1.

34. Qui ... influit. Caesar speaks of the lake as flowing into the river, i.e., the river is the outlet of the lake. — A lacu ... ad Juram. These defences extended along the southern side of the Rhone, from the Lake of Geneva (Lemanus) to Mount Jura, and commanded all the fords of the Rhone by which the Helvetii could enter the Roman province. See the following plan.

A. Pass between Mount Jura and the Rhone.
B. Caesar's Intrenchments on the south side of the Rhone.
NOTES.

36. Milia ... decem novem, nineteen miles (Roman measure). G. 379. The Roman mile was about twenty-five rods less than the English statute mile.

37. Marum fossamque; see 70-73.

38. Castella, redoubts, probably of earth.

1. Quo possit; G. 497, 2.—Se invito, without his consent; lit., he being unwilling. G. 431.—Conarentur, possit. Here the Imperfect after the Historical Present, communit, corresponds to the actual time denoted by that verb, while the Present corresponds to its form. G. 495, II.

3. Negat se posse dare, he says that he cannot grant; lit., he denies that he is able to give.—More et exemplo, consistently with the usage and example. Mos denotes established usage, exemplum simply an example or precedent. For construction, see G. 416.

5. Vim facere, to use force; lit., to make force.—Conentur; G. 524. —Prohibiturum; i.e., se prohibiturum esse.

6. Ea spe defecti, disappointed in this hope; i.e., in the hope of being permitted peaceably to pass through the province. G. 414.—Navibus junctis, by bridges of boats and by numerous rafts; lit., by vessels joined together and numerous rafts made. G. 420.

7. Alli vadis. While the Helvetii, as a body, attempt to cross the Rhone by means of bridges of boats, etc., some (alii) try the fords of the river.

8. Si perrumpere, having attempted to force a passage; lit., having tried whether (if) they were able to break through.—Si ... possent; Indirect Question. G. 529, I.

9. Operis munitione; i.e., the wall, redoubts, etc., mentioned above.

IX. The Helvetii prepare to pass through the Country of the Sequani.

11. Una ... via; only the way through the Sequani; i.e., the narrow pass along the right bank of the Rhone, between the mountains and the river. See Syn. L. C. 156.

12. His; G. 385. —Sua sponte = peri se, of themselves; i.e., by their own unaided efforts.


14. Ut ... impetrarent, that they might obtain their request. G. 497. With this verb the object is often thus omitted. —Eo deprehenderit, by his intercession; lit., he being an intercessor. G. 431, 4.

15. Gratia et largitione, on account of his popularity and generosity. —Plurimum poterat, had very great influence; lit., was powerful (able) very much. G. 378, 2.

17. In matrimonium duxorat, had married.
BOOK I.

18. Novis rebus studebat, was eager for a revolution; lit., for new things. G. 384.


20. Rem suscipit, he undertakes the service; i.e., the negotiation in behalf of the Helvetii.

21. Uti inter. . . . perfect, causes them to exchange; lit., causes that they (the Helvetii and the Sequani) may give among themselves. — Dent; G. 498, II.

22. Sequani; the subject of dent, to be supplied from the preceding line. — Ne prohibeant, ut transeant; G. 497, II.

X. Caesar hastens to Italy for Re-enforcements.


25. Facere; G. 538, 2.

26. Quae civitas; Lat. idiom for civitatis quae, a state which; lit., which state. The antecedent, which would otherwise be civitatis, in opposition with Tolosaenum, is inserted as the subject of the relative clause. G. 445, 8. This is a common idiom. See L. C. 477, 2.

27. Id si fieret. Observe emphatic position of id. G. 569, III, 1.

28. Futurum; supply esse. The clause ut . . . haberet is the subject of futurum (esse), though it also denotes result. G. 501, I, 1.

29. Locis. . . . frumentaribus, to open and very fertile districts.

31. Titum Labienum; one of Caesar's ablest officers in the Gallic war. He, however, abandoned the cause of his master at the commencement of the Civil war. — Legatum; Predicate Acc. See also 34. — In Italiam, into Italy; i.e., into Cisalpine or Citerior Gaul, which was regarded as a part of Italy.

32. Magnis itineribus, by forced marches.

35. Quinque legionibus. These five legions, with the tenth which Caesar found in Gaul on his arrival, gave him in all six legions, besides the forces just raised in the province. These six legions were the 7th, 8th, 9th, 10th, 11th, and 12th.

36. Locis . . . occupatis; G. 431, 2.

37. Itinere; G. 443. — Compluribus his proelis pulsis, having routed these in several encounters; lit., these having been routed, etc. G. 431. Join compluribus with proelis, and pulsis with his.

38. Citerioris provinciae, ulterioris; i.e., Citerior Gaul and Ulterior Gaul, separated from each other by the Alps.

1. Extremum, the last town. — Die; G. 429.

4. Trans Rhodanum; i.e., west of the Rhone.
XI. The Aedui and others complain of the Helvetii.

5. Per angustias, through the narrow pass; i.e., the pass between the Jura and the Rhone. See p. 3, lines 34–38, and note on a lacus ... ad Juram, p. 4, line 34.

6. Pervenerant. This they had accomplished during the absence of Caesar in Italy.

7. Cum possent; G. 517. — Se suaque, themselves and their possessions. G. 441; 449.

9. Rogatum, to ask. G. 546. — Ita se, etc., that they had at all times deserved so well of the Roman people. — Omni tempore; i.e., since their alliance with the Romans, more than sixty years before. The address of the ambassadors is reported in the Oratio Obliqua, depending upon the idea of saying involved in rogatum. G. 523, I., note.

11. Agri vastari non debuerint, that their fields ought not to have been pillaged. G. 537, 1. — Liberorum = liberi sui; G. 449, 1, 1).

12. Debuerint; G. 495, VI.

13. Ambarr. See Dict. — Necessarii et consanguinei, friends and relatives. Necessarii is a more comprehensive term than amici, and includes not only those who are bound together by the ties of friendship, but also those who are connected in business or in official relations.

14. Non facile, with difficulty; lit., not easily.

17. Demonstrant, inform, a common meaning in Caesar; lit., demonstrate, show. — Praeter agrum solum, except the mere soil; lit., except the soil of the field.

18. Reliqui. This Genitive depends upon nihil, which is the subject of esse. G. 397, 1. — Quibus rebus, by these things. G. 453. — Non exspectandum sibi, that he ought not to wait. Supply esse. G. 388.

19. Dum ... pervenirent; G. 519, II., 2.

XII. Caesar conquers the Tigurini.

21. Flumen est Arar, there is a river (called) Arar, now the Sabine. — Quod has flumen as its antecedent.

23. In utram partem, in which direction; lit., part. — Fluat; G 529, I. — Posset; G. 500, II.

24. Lintribus, canoes, made from the trunks of trees. — Translabant. Observe the force of the Imperfect, were crossing.


27. Citra flumen, on this side of the river; i.e., on the east side. — De tertia vigilia, in the third watch; lit., from or out of. De implies that
the third watch had commenced, but not necessarily that much of it had passed. It began at midnight. For the divisions of the Roman day and night, see G. 645, 1 and 2.

28. Castra. He was then encamped in the country of the Segusiavi, between the Rhone and the Arar. See p. 6, line 3. Roman camps were always arranged with the utmost regularity, and fortified with the greatest care. They were rectangular and sometimes square; see 65. The gate nearest to the enemy was called porta praetoria, and the one opposite to it, porta decumana. The defences consisted of a trench, or fosse, usually nine feet wide and seven deep, or twelve feet wide and nine deep, and a rampart of earth thickly set with sharp stakes. For the form, arrangement, and fortification of a Roman camp, see 61 — 76.

31. In silvis, in the forests. The accusative is used because motion is implied, — they fled into the forests and had themselves.

33. Hic pagus unus, this one canton.

34. Patrum . . . memoria, within the memory of our fathers. G. 429.

35. Luculum Cassulum. See note, p. 4, line 24.


38. Princeps . . . persolvit, was the first to pay the penalty; lit., first paid. G. 442.

2. Ejus socii Lucilii Pisonis, of Lucius Piso, his (Caesar's) father-in-law. This is Lucius Piso the consul, mentioned on p. 4, line 10. Caesar had married his daughter Calpurnia.

3. Lucilium Pisonem . . . interfecerant, the Tigurini, in the same battle in which they had slain Cassius, had slain his lieutenant, Lucius Piso. Cassium depends upon interfecerant, to be supplied.

XIII. The Helvetii send Ambassadors to Caesar.

5. Ut possit; Purpose of faciendum curat. G. 497.

6. Pontem . . . curat, causes a bridge to be constructed over the Arar, probably a bridge of boats constructed from the vessels in which he conveyed his provisions up the river. See p. 8, line 31.

8. Cum id . . . intelligerent, when they perceived that he had done in one day what they themselves had with the greatest difficulty accomplished in twenty days (namely), the crossing of the river; lit., that they should cross the river. Ut flumen transirent is in apposition with id. G. 363, 5; 501, III.

11. Bello Cassiano, in their war with Cassius; lit., in the Cassian war. G. 429. This war, it will be remembered, was in the year 107 B.C.

12. Ita agit, he discourses as follows. The discourse itself is reported
7 in the Oratio Obliqua, and occupies the rest of the chapter. — Si pacem...
... Helvetiorum; Conditional sentence of the First Form; in Direct Discourse thus: Si pacem... fecerit... ibunt... erunt Helvetii... constitueris... volueris; sin... perseverabis, reminiscere, etc. Explain change of Moods and Tenses. G. 523–531.

13. Ibi futuros, would remain there. Supply esse.


15. Persequi; supply esus. — Perseveraret. The subject is Caesar.
— Reminisceretur; G. 523, III. In the Direct Discourse we should have the Imperative reminiscere.

16. Veteris incommodi, G. 406, II. This refers to the defeat of Cassius.

17. Adortus esset, transissent, possent; verbs in the subordinate clauses of the Oratio Obliqua. G. 524.

19. Ne tribueret, despiceret, didicisse; verbs in the principal clauses of the Oratio Obliqua. In the Direct Discourse, for ne tribueret, according to G. 489, we should have non with the Infinitive — noni tribuerre — which here becomes ne tribueret. G. 523, I. and III. — Ob exam rem, on this account; lit., on account of this thing; i.e., quod... adortus esset, because he had been surprised. — Ne susce... tribueret, he should not ascribe it particularly to his own valor.

21. Quam... niterentur, than to contend by means of stratagem, or to rely on ambuscades. — Dolo; Abl. of Means. — Insidias; G. 425, 1, 1), note.

22. Ne committeret... capseret, that he should not cause the place (lit., that the place) where they should take their stand, to receive (lit., should receive) a name from the overthrow of the Roman people, etc. For ne committeret, the Direct Discourse, according to G. 489, would have noni committere, do not cause; and instead of constituisse, the Fut. Perf. Indic. constiterimus, where we (the Helvetii) shall have taken our stand. For Mood and Tense, see G. 523, III.; 525, 2.

24. Memoriam proderet, transmit the remembrance; i.e., of the event.

XIV. Reply of Caesar.

25. His, to them; i.e., to the Helvetii. — Eo... dari, that less hesitation was allowed (lit., given) him on this account. Eo is an Abl. of Cause. The reason is given in quod... teneret. Observe that Caesar's reply, occupying most of the chapter, is in the Oratio Obliqua.

27. Eo gravius ferre, etc., that he was the more indignant at this, the less it had happened through any fault (lit., desert) of the Roman people; i.e., because it had not happened through any fault. Eo gravius ferre;
BOOK I.  

fit., to bear by so much (by this) more heavily = to be the more indignant. Eo and quo are Abls. of Measure of Difference, often best rendered by the. G. 423, and L. C. 400.

28. Merito; Abl. of Cause. G. 416. — Quir al... fuisset, if they (lit., who, referring to the Roman people) had been conscious to themselves of any act of injury; i.e., of having injured the Helvetians. Auctorius is here used instead of cuius, because it is emphatic,—any injury whatever. G. 455, 1. — Injuriae abl. For the Gen. and Dat. with conscius, see G. 399, I., 3, note 1.

29. Cavere; subject of fuisset, which in the Direct Discourse would be fuisset. — Eo decepturn; supply esse; also cum, referring to the Roman people. Eo; Abl. of Means, by this, viz. quod... intelligeret...putaret.

30. Commissum a se; supply esse; that any offence (thing) had been committed by them. The subject of the Infinitive is here omitted, partly because it is indefinite and partly because it can be readily supplied from quare, which is equivalent to propter quod. If propter quod had been used, the antecedent of quod would have been the subject of commissum esse.

31. Timet; G. 500, I. — Timendum; supply esse; that they ought to fear; lit., that it should be feared, or that there should be fear. It is impersonal. G. 301. — Quod al vellet, but if he were willing. G. 453, 6.

32. Veteris contumellae, their former insult; i.e., to the Roman people in the defeat of Cassius. — Num... posse. The learner will remember that Interrogative clauses in the Oration Obliqua generally take the Subjunctive. For the use of the Infinitive see G. 523, II., 2.

33. Injuriarum; join with memoriam below; the recollection of injuries. — Eo invitó, without his (Caesar’s) consent; lit., he unwilling. G. 431. Se might have been used. G. 449, I, 1).

35. Quod... gloriaruntur, the fact that they boasted. The clauses with quod are the subject of pertinere. G. 540, IV., note.

36. Impune... tuisses, lit., had carried their crimes with impunity; i.e., had not been punished for them. — Eodem pertinere, tended to the same result; viz., to arouse his indignation. — Consueisse; G. 297, I., 2.

38. Quo... doleant; Subj. of Purpose. G. 497, II., 2.

1. Eorum, their; lit., of them, referring to quos. — Vellint. The Subjunctive would be used even in the Direct Discourse. G. 503, I.

2. His is the antecedent of quos. — Secundiores res, greater prosperity; lit., more prosperous things. G. 440, note 4.

3. Cum... sint, that although these things were so. G. 515, III. — Sint; Hist. Present. — Tamen; join with esse... facturum.

4. Eae; object of facturos (esse) the subject of which is eae, referring to the Helvetii.
5. Aeduis; G. 384, II., 4, note 1. — Ipsis and eorum refer to Aeduis. Ipsis, themselves, in contrast with their allies.


9. Eius rei. . . testem, that the Roman people were witnesses of this, —alluding to the hostages given by the survivors after the defeat and death of Cassius. — Hoc . . . dato; G. 431.

XV. March of the two Armies.

11. Movent. The subject is Helvetii, to be supplied.

12. Equitatumque omnem. Caesar had no Roman cavalry in Gaul.

14. Coactum habebat, had collected — a combination similar to the English; lit., had (possessed), having been collected. G. 388, I, note. — Quil videant; construction according to sense. Equitatum is the antecedent of qui. G. 445, 5. — Videant; Subj. of Purpose. G. 497. — Quas . . . faciant; Indirect Question. G. 529, I.

15. Cupidius, too eagerly. G. 444, 1. — Novissimum agmen, the rear; lit., the newest line; i.e., the last. See 53, 54; also Syn. L. C. 178.

16. Alloco loco, in an unfavorable place; lit., in a place belonging to another. In the same way, suus, his, is used in the sense of favorable. For the construction of loco, see G. 425, II., 1.

17. Pauci de nostris, a few of our men. G. 397, 3, note 3; 441. — Quo proelio, by this battle. G. 453.

18. Quod . . . propulerant; Caesar's reason, as shown by the Indicative. G. 516, I.

21. Satis habebat, deemed it sufficient. The object of habebat is the clause hostem . . . prohibere. — In praesentia, for the present; lit., in the present.


23. Dies; G. 379. — Circiter; adverb.

24. Nostrum primum; supply agmen; our van; lit., our first line. — Amplius is the subject of interesset. G. 441, 2.

25. Quinis . . . millibus. The Distributive implies that the statement is true for each of the fifteen days. G. 174, 2.

XVI. The Aedui fail to furnish Supplies.

26. Quotidie. See Syn. L. C. 399. — Aeduos frumentum; G. 374. — Quod essent, etc., which they had promised. The Subjunctive may be explained by the fact that the antecedent is indefinite; whatever grain they had promised. G. 503, I. It may also involve the idea of cause. G 517.
27. Publice, in the name of the state; lit., publicly, — referring to the promise made by the chiefs. — Flagitare; Historical Infinitive. G. 536, 1. Flagitio means to demand with eagerness and importunity, and is especially appropriate in this passage. — Propter frigora, on account of the cold climate. The singular would refer more to coldness in the abstract. G. 130, 2.

28. Sub septemtrionibus, towards the north; lit., under the north.— Ut ante dictum est. See p. 1.

29. Matura non erant. This was probably in the month of April, according to our calendar. — Pabull; for position, see G. 569, III., 2.

30. Eo autem ... poterat, moreover he was not able (lit., less able) to use the grain which he had brought up the river Arar in vessels. Frumento depends upon uti. G. 421, I. Flumine and navibus are Abls. of Means. G. 420.

31. Propterea quod, because; lit., on account of these things, (viz.) because.

32. Iter ab Arare. Caesar, in pursuing the Helvetii, who had turned away from the river, had been obliged to leave his supplies.

33. Diem ... Aeduli, the Aedui put him off day after day. With ducere supply sum, referring to Caesar. Ducere and dicere are Historical Infinitives. — Diem; Accus. of Time. G. 379. — Conferri; supply id; that it (the grain) was collecting. Conferri, comportari, adesse, depend upon dicere. G. 535, I., 2.

34. Se diutius duct, that he was put off too long.

35. Quo die. Observe the repetition of the antecedent. G. 445, 8. — Metiri; supply subject sum. The object is frumentum. The clause frumentum ... metiri is the subject of oportet. The Roman soldiers received a stated allowance of grain, usually wheat or barley, from which they prepared their bread. See II foot-note.

37. Divitiaco, Lisco; in apposition with principibus. — Summo magistratul praeerat, was invested with the highest magistracy; lit., presided over. G. 386.

38. Quem ... Aedul, whom (i. e., the person invested with the chief magistracy) the Aedui called Vergobretus; i. e., Vergobretus was the title of their chief magistrate.

1. Qui ... annus, who is appointed for one year. Annuus agrees with qui. — In suos; observe Case; over or upon his countrymen, not among them.


4. Sublevetur ... sit destinatus. The Subjunctive implies that these reasons were assigned by the speaker. In other words, Caesar here quotes his own language in the Indirect Discourse. G. 522; 516, II.
NOTES.

9. *Magna ex parte, in a great measure; lit., from a large part.*—
Eorum preclibus, by their prayers; i.e., the prayers of the Aedui. See p. 6, lines 9–12. — Suscperit. Why in the Subjunctive? G. 517.

XVII. Speech of Liscus, Chief Magistrate of the Aedui.

8. Esse nonnullos, etc. Observe that the speech of Liscus, occupying the rest of this chapter, is in the Oration Obliqua. G. 523–531. — Quorum auctoritas, etc., whose influence is very great, etc.; lit., avails very much.


11. Ne conferant; Subj. of Purpose. G. 497, II. The plural is used because of the idea of plurality involved in multitudinem. G. 461, I.

12. Si jam ... erepturi. These are the arguments which the men, of whom Liscus speaks, use with the multitude.

13. Gallorum ... praefere ... debere; supply se; that they prefer the rule of the Gauls rather than that of the Romans, and that they ought not to doubt.


16. Sint erepturi; G. 504, 3. — Ab idem, by the same persons,—referring to nonnullos. — Quaeque ... gerantur, and whatever is done in the camp. G. 503, I. Quaeque = et ea quae, and those things which.

17. A se, by himself; i.e., in his capacity as chief magistrate.

18. Quin etiam, nay even, moreover.—Necessario coactus, compelled by necessity.

19. Intelligere sese. The subject is sese, and the object quanto ... fecerit, an Indirect Question. G. 529, I.

XVIII. Treachery of Dumnorix.

22. Sentiebat. See Syn. L. C. 576. — Pluribus ... jactari, that these things should be discussed in the presence of too many; lit., more being present. G. 431.

24. Ex solo, from him in private; i.e., from Liscus.

26. Reperit esse vera, he found them to be true. Vera agrees with eadem, which is explained by Ipsum esse, etc. — Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, that Dumnorix was the very person; i.e., the one whom Liscus meant.

27. Summa audacia, a man of the greatest boldness. Supply virum. G. 419, II.

29. Rerum novarum, of a new revolution; lit., of new things. G. 399; 441, 2, note 4. — Complures annos, for several years. G. 379. — Vext
galla . . . redempta habere, that he had purchased the revenues at a small price. See note on coactum habebat, p. 8, line 14. The revenues, in accordance with the Roman custom, were sold to the highest bidder, who collected them for himself. Dumnorix secured these at a low price, because no one dared to bid against him. Vestigalia are revenues in general; portoria, customs, port duties. Pretio; Abl. of Price. G. 422.

80. Illo licente, when he bid. G. 431.

81. Audeat; G. 524.—Nemo. Observe the emphatic position. G. 561, II.

32. Facultates . . . comparasse, that he had amassed large means for bribery. G. 235.

34. Domi, at home; i. e., in his own state. G. 428, 2.

35. Largiter posse, that he had great influence; lit., to be able greatly.

—Hujus potentiae causa, for the sake of maintaining this influence.

36. Biturigibus. The Bituriges were neighbors of the Aedui, from whom they were separated by the river Loire. —Collocasse; supply in matrimonium, or nuptam, used below; that he had given in marriage.

37. Ipsum . . . uxorem habere, that he had himself married a wife from the Helvetii. His wife was the daughter of Orgetorix. See p. 2, lines 34–37. — Sororem ex matre, his half sister; sister by the same mother.

38. Nuptam; construe with collocasse. G. 546. Nube is used of the marriage of women; duco, of that of men.

1. Cupere Helvetis, that he wished well to the Helvetii. G. 385.

2. Suo nomine, on his own account, on personal grounds; lit., in his own name; Abl. of Cause. G. 416.

3. Eorum adventu, by their coming. Eorum refers to the Romans, and adventus is the Abl. of Means: Eius refers to Dumnorix. — Domi

nata. Supply sit from the next line.

4. In antiquum, etc., to his former place of influence. He had formerly possessed great influence. See line 37, below.

5. Accidat. See Syn. L. C. 624.—Summam in spem venire, that he entertained the highest hopes; lit., came into the highest hope.

6. Regni obtinendi; G. 543. — Imperio, etc., under the rule of the Roman people; i. e., if the Romans should rule. The Ablative here involves cause.

8. Reperiebat. The object is the clause initium . . . factum (esse). — Quod . . . factum, in regard to the fact that an unsuccessful engagement of our cavalry had taken place, etc. G. 516, 2, note. Quod is here a conjunction.


10. Eius fugae, of that flight, referring to proelium adversum.

11. Equitatum; G. 386.—Auxilio Caesaris; G. 390.
XIX. Caesar's Interview with Divitiacus.

14. Certissimae res, most undoubted facts; referring to the facts mentioned in the subsequent clauses—quod per . . . quod obsides, etc. See p. 8, lines 20–23. — Quod . . . transduxisset. This clause is in opposition with res, but also involves a reason in the mind of Caesar at the time of the event. Hence the Subjunctive. G. 516, II. A reason assigned by Caesar as historian would require the Indicative. G. 516, I. Transduxisset, curasset, and fecisset are all in the same construction. The subject is Dumnorix.

15. Inter eos, between them; i.e., between the Helvetii and the Sequani. — Dandos. Supply esse.

16. Injusso suo et civitate, without his (Caesar's) orders and those of the state (i.e., of the Aedui).

17. Insanctibus ipsis, without their knowledge; lit., they themselves not knowing. Ipsi refers to Caesar and the Aedui,—the latter implied in civitate. — A magistratu Aedorum; i.e., by Liscus, the verger-bretus or chief magistrate.

18. Satis causa, a sufficient reason; lit., enough of cause. G. 397. — Quare animadvertenter, why he should either himself punish him; lit, by which he should either himself direct his attention to (against) him, i.e., proceed against him according to law. This is a relative-clause of Result, introduced by the relative particle quare;—a sufficient reason to induce him, etc.; i.e., to produce this result. G. 500, I.

20. His rebus, to these things; i.e., these reasons for punishing Dumnorix. G. 385. — Unum, one consideration, referring to quod . . . verebatur; i.e., though there were several reasons for punishing Dumnorix, there was yet one objection to this course.

21. Studium, voluntatem, loyalty, affection.

22. Ne offenderet; G. 498, III., note 1. — Ejus refers to Dumnorix.

24. Verebatur. Observe the force of the Imperfect; was fearing, was fearful.


27. Principem, a leading man. — Cui . . . fidem habebat, in whom he was wont to place the highest confidence on all subjects; lit., to whom he was having the highest confidence of all things. For the force of the genitive in rerum, see G. 393, note.

29. Simul; construe with et; he at once reminds him . . . and shows. — Ipse, i.e., Divitiacus. — Sine ejus, etc., without offence to his feelings, etc. Ejus refers to Divitiacus, ipse to Caesar, and civitate, to the Aedui.

32. Statuat, jubeat; G. 498, II.
XX. Caesar pardons Dumnonix.

35. Quid gravius, anything too severe; i.e., too severe a sentence.  
36. Scire se. Here the verb of saying, on which the Infinitive depends, is implied in obsecurae. G. 523, 1. — Nec quemquam, and that no one; lit., nor any one. G. 554, I., 2. — Ex eo, from him.
38. Domi, at home; i.e., among his own people. G. 426, 2. — Ille refers to Dumnonix. Supply et before ille.
1. Se refers to Divitiacus. — Quibus opibus ac nervis uteretur, and this (lit., which) influence and power he (Dumnonix) was using, referring to the influence and power implied in per se crevisset. G. 453. Nervis (lit., nerves) is used figuratively for strength, power.
3. Suam refers to Divitiacus. — Exstitimatione vulgi, by the opinion of the common people; i.e., by the fact that they would hold him responsible, as explained in the next sentence.
4. Quod si; G. 453, 6.
6. Eum locum . . . apud eum, such a place in his friendship; lit., that place of friendship with him; i.e., with Caesar. — Exstitaturum, factum. Supply esse. — Voluntate; Abl. of Cause.
7. Futurum uti averterentur; G. 501, I., 1; 537, 3.
10. Faciat; G. 499, 2. — Tanti; G. 404, note 1. — Ejus refers to Divitiacus, and se to Caesar.
11. Ref publicae injuriam, the injury to the state.
15. Omnes suspicaciones, all grounds for suspicion. — Divitiaco frastra, for the sake of his brother Divitiacus; lit., to, or for, his brother.
17. Agat, loquatatur; G. 529, I.

XXI. Caesar prepares to attack the Helvetii.

18. Certior factus, etc., having been informed (lit., made more certain) that the enemy had encamped. Certior isto, like doceor, admits an Infinitive. G. 535, 1., 3.
19. Millia passuum; G. 379.
20. Esset; G. 529, I. — Qualis in circuitu, etc., what the ascent by a circuitous route; lit., in a circuit.
21. Quil . . . misit, he sent men to ascertain; lit., who should ascertain.
Supply *eos* as the antecedent of *quis* and the object of *misit*. For the Mood in *cognoscerent*, see G. 497, I. The object is the clause *qualis . . . ascensus.* — Facilem esse. Supply *ascensus.*

22. *De tertia vigilia.* See note, p. 6, line 27.— *Legatum pro praetore,* his lieutenant with praetorian power. *Praetor* is here used in the sense of commander-in-chief. Caesar is the praetor. *Legatus pro praetore* is an honorary title applicable to the general or lieutenant who is second in command, and accordingly acts as commander-in-chief (*pro praetore*) in the absence of that officer.

23. *Cum ilis ducibus, with those persons as guides.* *Ducibus,* in opposition with *eis.*

24. *Quid sui consilii sit, what his plan is; lit., what is of his plan.* *Consilii* is a Predicate Genitive with *sit,* and not a Partitive Genitive depending upon *quid.* G. 491.

25. *Quo; Abl. of Means.*


28. *Sulla;* Lucius Cornelius Sulla, the famous Roman dictator, and rival of Marius.

29. *Crassii;* Marcus Licinius Crassus, the distinguished commander in the Servile War, who defeated and slew Spartacus, 71 B.C. For the omission of *exercitu* before *Marci Crassii,* see G. 398, 1, note 1.

**XXII. The Mistake of Considius defeats Caesar's Plan.**


31. *Ipse; i.e., Caesar.*

33. *Abesse, cognitus essest; construe with *quum.* G. 521, II. 2.

34. *Equo admisse, at full speed.* *Admittere,* in such expressions, means to give loose reins.— *Accurririt, dicit.* Observe the omission of the conjunction, implying haste. So, also, between *subdicit* and *instruit,* below,

35. *Voluerit;* G. 524. — *A Gallicis insignibus, from the Gallic standards.* See plate IV., also 9, 9, foot note.

37. *Subdicit, withdraws.* Here *sub* gives to the verb the idea of a quiet, noiseless movement.— *Acies.* See 28; also Syn. L. C. 178.

38. *Erat praecptum.* The object is the clause *ne . . . committeret,* which also expresses *purpose.* G. 499, 3.

1. *Ipsius copiae, his own (Caesar's) forces.* — *Visae essent.* In the Direct Discourse the Fut. Perfect would be used: hence, the Pluperf. Subj. here. G. 525, 2.

4. *Multo die, late in the day; though probably only relatively so,* im
BOOK I.

ploying that much time had been lost since daybreak (prima luce) when they might have surprised the enemy.

6. Quod ... remunTIaviSse, had reported to him what he had not seen, as if seen; lit., for seen. Supply id as the antecedent of quod, and as the object of remunTIaviSse.

7. Quo consuerat intervallo = intervallo quo consuerat, at the usual distance; i.e., from the enemy; lit., with the interval with which he was wont. The usual distance was about five miles. See p. 8, lines 23-25.

XXIII.-XXVII. Defeat of the Helvetii.

9. Diet; G. 398, 5. — Supererat cum oporteret, remained before it would be necessary; lit., when it would be necessary.

10. Metiri. See note p. 8, line 35.

12. Rel ... existimavít, he thought that he ought to provide supplies. With prospeciendum supply esse. G. 301; 386.

14. Avertít ac contendit. These two verbs, taken together, show what Caesar did, as the result of the opinion expressed in prospeciendum existimavit. This connection may be shown, in rendering, by supplying and accordingly. Thus: He thought that he ought, etc., and accordingly turned aside from the Helvetii. — Bibracte; G. 390, II. — Fugitivos, deserters; i.e., from the Gallic cavalry in Caesar's service.

It was formerly supposed that Bibracte occupied the site of the present city of Autun, but the prevailing opinion among scholars now is that the Aeduan capital was built on Mont Beuvray, an elevated plateau about 3000 feet high, eight or nine miles west of Autun. This opinion has found an able advocate in Napoleon III., who calls attention to the fact that the Gauls in general built their towns in places difficult of access, either on high and steep hills, as at Gergovia and Alesia (book VII., 36 and 69), or on grounds surrounded by marshes, as at Avaricum (VII., 19); that several ancient roads in a remarkable state of preservation lead to the summit of Mont Beuvray; and, finally, that recent excavations have brought to light the foundations of Gallic walls and towers.

15. Decuriones. The decurio was the commander of a decuria, a small force of cavalry, originally ten in number. The cavalry was divided into companies or alae, the alae into turmae, and these again into decuriae.

16. Seu quod ... existimarent ... alve eo quod ... confi-dent, either because they thought, etc., or because (lit., for this reason, because) they trusted. For the Subjunctive, see G. 516, II.

17. Eo magis quod, the more because; lit., more because of this, viz., that, or because; explained by the following clause, which gives a special reason for the opinion of the Helvetii. — Superioribus ... occupatis,
12 though they (the Romans) had taken possession of the higher grounds, referring to summus mons. See p. 11, line 30; also G. 431, 2.


20. Nostrae, our men. G. 441. — A novissimo agmine(on the rear; lit., from the newest (last) line. See note on ab Sequania. p. 1, line 17.

For the arrangement of an army on the march, see 46—49 and 53—57.

22. Id animum; G. 876. — Animun advertit. For the usual form animadverterit, see p. 28, line 14.

23. Sustineret; Subj. of Purpose. G. 497.

24. In colli medio, midway up the hill. G. 440, 2, note 1.

25. Triplicum aciem, a triple line of battle; i.e., the army was arranged in three lines, as seen in the figure under 28.

As the engagement with the Helvetii is the first regular battle described in the Commentaries, it may be interesting to the learner to trace the general course of the action. For two weeks Caesar had been following the Helvetii, with an interval of five miles between the head of his column and the rear-guard of the enemy. One favorable opportunity for giving battle had been lost, through the mistake of Considius, as described in chapter 22.

In the mean time, the army supplies were nearly exhausted; Caesar, therefore, reluctantly turned the head of his column toward Birbacte, the chief city of the Aedui, where he would be sure to find an abundance of provisions. The Helvetii at once retraced their steps, and began to harass the rear-guard of the Roman line. Thereupon Caesar withdrew his forces to a neighboring hill, and sent his cavalry to engage the enemy, while he placed his legions in battle array. It will be remembered that the Roman mode of attack required an elevated position from which the heavy javelins could be hurled into the ranks of the enemy with the greatest effect; see 77.

It will be observed that Caesar placed only his four veteran legions in line of battle, while the two legions recently enrolled in Cisalpine Gaul, and all the auxiliary infantry, were stationed in the rear.

In accordance with general custom, Caesar pitched his camp in the rear of his army, and proceeded at once to fortify it, although the battle was imminent (63, 70). The Helvetii had deposited their baggage at a convenient distance in the rear, and had placed their numerous wagons in a circle around it—a common defence for a Gallic or Helvetian camp.

The Helvetii, in dense masses, confortissima acie (83, foot note), advanced to the charge. The Roman legions were arranged in three lines, and each line consisted of separate cohorts, with intervals between them (28). The front line received the onset of the enemy with a salvo of javelins, and then with drawn swords rushed to the charge. After a few minutes, the second line of cohorts, advancing through the intervals of the
first line, rushed into the thickest of the fight (86). The enemy were driven back to a hill a mile in the rear; but while the Roman legions were pursuing the retreating Helvetii, the Boii and Tulingi, 15,000 strong, who formed the rear-guard of the enemy’s line of march, appearing on the scene, made an attack upon the right flank of the Roman line. The Helvetii, encouraged by this timely aid, turned upon their pursuers and renewed the battle. Caesar at once detached his third or rear line to receive the attack of the Boii and Tulingi, while with the other two lines he repulsed for the second time the whole force of the Helvetii.

26. In summo jugo, on the very summit. Jugum, in distinction from Mons, a mountain or hill, often denotes the summit of a hill, or the ridge of a range of hills.

27. Collocari, compleri; construe with jusit.

28. Phalanx facta. The Macedonian phalanx, so celebrated in ancient warfare, was doubtless unknown to the Gauls. The Helvetic phalanx, here referred to, probably consisted simply of a body of soldiers in close array, under the cover of their shields locked firmly together over their heads. This phalanx resembled the Roman testudo, as seen in plate V.

29. Primum aequam, first line; i.e., to an approaching enemy; hence, the lowest or front line of cohorts.

30. Suo. Supply equo remoto from remotis equis, in the next line. G. 431.—Omnium, of all; i.e., of all the officers and other persons of distinction, not, of course, of the cavalry.

31. Pilis, jascinis. For an account of this weapon, see 9, 9.

32. Ea refers to phalangem.—Gladites destructis, with drawn swords; Abl. of Means.—Eos refers to hostium.

1. Magna erat impedimento, it was a great hindrance; lit., for a great hindrance. G. 390. The subject of erat is the clause quod pluribus, etc.—Pluribus . . . colligatis. A single javelin, penetrating several shields which overlapped each other, sometimes fastened them together by the bending of the iron point. The scutum is a large, rectangular shield, four feet in length and two and one-half in width. See 9, 7.

3. Evellere. Supply ea, as the object, referring to pilorum.—Sinistra impedita. The buckler was fastened to the left arm.


5. Manu; G. 414, I.—Nudo corpore, with the body unprotected; i.e., without a shield.

7. Mons superat, etc., there was a mountain near by, about a mile off. —Eo, thither; i.e., to the mountain.

8. Capto monte, when the mountain had been gained; i.e., by the enemy.

9. Boii et Tulingi; see plate VII, in the text.
10. Novissimis præsidio erant, guarded the rear; lit., were for a defense to the rear, or the newest (last). G. 399.

11. Ex itinere, on the march.—Lateral aperto, on the exposed flank. G. 425, II., 1. This expression generally denotes the right side, because not protected with the shield, but is often used of either flank of the army when particularly exposed.

14. Conuersa... intulerunt, having changed their front, advanced in two divisions; lit., advanced their standards turned about. The words conuersa signa apply only to the third line (tertia acies), which faced about to meet the Boii and Tulingi, who had fallen upon the Roman flank. The first and second lines pressed forward against the Helvetii, who had been dialodged, but were attempting to renew the battle. See plate VII.

15. Actae; in apposition with Romani. G. 364.—Tertia; supply acies. —Victis refers to the Helvetii, and venientes to the Boii and the Tulingi.

17. Ancipiti proelio, in a double battle; so called because fought on two different fronts. Praelio; Abl. of Manner. G. 419, III.—Pugnatum est, they fought; lit., it was fought. G. 301.

19. Alteri—alteri, one party (i. e., the Helvetii), the other party (i. e., the Boii and the Tulingi).

21. Toto proelio; G. 429. —Cum pugnatum sit, though they fought. G. 510, III.—Hora septima, one o'clock; lit., the seventh hour. The Roman hours were numbered from sunrise. G. 645.

22. Aversum hostem, a retreating enemy; lit., an enemy turned away; i. e., in flight.—Ad multam noctem, far into the night. See note on multo die, p. 12, line 4.

23. Ad, near, towards.

24. In nostros venientes, against our men who were advancing; lit., ours advancing.

26. Mataras ac tragiculas, lances and javelins. The matura is a heavy pike or lance, while tragicula is a light javelin.

27. Cum... pugnatum; G. 321, II., 2.—Impedimentis; G. 421, I.

29. E filis; G. 397, 3, note 3.

31. Nullam partem; G. 379. This seems to imply that they fled day and night.

32. Cum potissim; Subj. of Cause. They escaped because the Romans could not pursue them.

33. Propert sepulturam, for the burial. The Romans were scrupulous in the observance of funeral rites, because they believed that the souls of the unburied dead were compelled to wander a hundred years on the banks of the Styx, before they could find rest. —Nostri, our men. G. 441.
34. Triduum; G. 379. — Lingonas; a Greek form. G. 68.

35. Qui si juvissent, if they should aid. G. 455; 525, 2. — Se habiturum; supply esse; that he would regard them as in the same situation as the Helvetii. Se habiturum depends upon the verb implied in utteras . . . missit. G. 523, 1. Supply eos as the object of habiturum. Helvetios is the object of haberset, to be supplied.

3. Ad pedes; at his feet, i. e., at the feet of Caesar.

4. Eos, them; i. e., the Helvetii.

5. Essent; G. 524. — Jussisset. The subject is Caesar.

6. Eo, thither, to that place; i. e., where the Helvetii were awaiting him.

7. Perfugissent; G. 503, 1. — Eas, these; lit. these things. The use of the neuter, referring to obises and servos, shows that they were here regarded as the spoils of victory, rather than as men.

8. Circiter; adverb, modifying sex.

9. Perterriti agrees with millia by a construction according to sense. G. 438, 6.


11. Quod . . . existimarent; G. 516, II.

12. Fugam; subject of posse. — Aut omnino ignorari, or be entirely unknown.

13. Prima nocte, in the early part of the night. G. 440, 2, note 1.

XXVIII. The Helvetii return to their own Country.

15. Rescxit; G. 471, 4. This word means to ascertain something which has been concealed or is unexpected. — Quorum refers to his for its antecedent. — His depends upon imperavit. G. 385, 1.

16. Si sibi . . . vellent, if they wished to be blameless in his sight; lit., to him. G. 389. In the Direct Discourse the Indicative would be used in the condition. G. 508, 4.

17. Reductos. Supply eos, referring to those who had fled. — In hostium . . . habuit, he treated them as enemies; lit., had them in the number of enemies. The punishment in such cases was usually slavery or death.


22. Ut copiam facerent, to furnish a supply; lit., that they should make an abundance. G. 498, II.

23. Ipsos, them, emphatic, in distinction from Allobrogibus, above. — Quos incenderant. The Indicative is used because Caesar has in mind the particular towns mentioned on p. 3, lines 20-23. The Subjunctive would make the expression general — any towns which they had burned.

24. Ea maxime ratione, principally for this reason, explained by quod nokuit, etc.
XXIX. Comparative Number of the Helvetii before and after the War.

33. Tabulae, tablets or lists. The tablets upon which the Romans wrote were generally of wood covered with wax.

34. Litteris Graecis connectae, written in Greek characters, though not necessarily in the Greek language. These characters were undoubtedly derived from the Greek colony at Marseilles, in Southern Gaul.

35. Ratio qui numerus, an account showing what number. Qui ... existet, etc., is in apposition with ratio. — Domo; G. 412, II., 1.

36. Posseunt; G. 529, I.

37. Pueri, etc. Supply perscripti erant; were enumerated. — Quarum ... summa, the sum of all these classes or items; lit., things.

38. Capitum Helvetiorum, of the Helvetii; lit., of heads of the Helvetii. The use of capita is common in the Roman census.

3. Qui refers to militia as its antecedent. G. 446, 5. — Ad has an adverbial force, about.

4. Fuerunt agrees with the Predicate noun militia. G. 462.

5. Censu habito, when an actual enumeration had been made; lit., had. Census is here used in this general sense. The same term, when applied to the Romans, often meant much more than this, including not only the numbering of the citizens, but also the valuation of property and a general review of the condition of the state. At Rome such a census was taken every five years.

XXX—XXXII. Complaints against Ariovistus.

7. Bello Helvetiorum, the war with the Helvetii; lit., of the Helvetii. — Galliae. Gallia is here used in its limited sense — Celtic Gaul. See p. 1.

9. Intelligere se se; G. 523, 1. — Helvetiorum injuriae, the wrongs done by the Helvetii to the Roman people. Helvetiorum is the Subjective Genitive, and populi the Objective. G. 396, II. and III.; 398, 2.

10. Ab his, from these; i.e., the Helvetii. — Poenas, satisfaction. — Repetisset. The subject is a pronoun referring to Caesar.

11. Ex usu, to the advantage of; lit., from use, very much like the English of use.

12. Ec consilio, with this design; viz., uti ... potirentur ... haberent. — Florentissimis rebus; Abl. Absol. G. 431.

13. Imperio; G. 421, 1.

15. Ex magna copia, from the great abundance; i.e., of places, which they would have in all Gaul. — Quem ... opportunissimum; G. 373, 1, note 2.


17. Sibi; construe with licet.

18. In diem certam, for a certain day.


20. Ex communi consensu, with the common consent; i.e., of their people; lit., from the common consent, implying that the action is to proceed from this, or grow out of it. In such cases the preposition may be rendered with, or in accordance with. — Vellent; G. 524.

21. Concilio; G. 384. — Jurejurando; supply in eo concilio; i.e., when the council met they bound themselves, etc. G. 125, 1. — Ne quis ... nisi quibus, etc., that no one except those to whom this duty should be intrusted by the common council, should communicate their doings; i.e., to Caesar. Supply ii as the antecedent of quibus.

26. Secreto in occulto, alone, in secret. Secreto means simply without witnesses, alone; but in occulto means much more, in a secret place, in secret, implying that the whole interview is to be a profound secret.

27. Caesari ad pedes, at the feet of Caesar; lit., to Caesar at the feet. Observe the difference of idiom. Caesari is the Indirect Object of projecerunt. G. 384, 4, note 2.

28. Se contendere; G. 523, 1. — Id, this, viz., ne ea ... enuntiarentur, which is in apposition with it and at the same time expresses Purpose. G. 499, 3. In this speech, as indeed in all Indirect Discourse, the pupil should observe the use of Moods — the Infinitive in Principal clauses unless Interrogative or Imperative, and the Subjunctive in Subordinate clauses. G. 523; 524. But he should remember that the Subjunctive in a Subordinate clause, which would require that Mood in the Direct Discourse, should not be referred to G. 524, but to the rule which would govern it in the Direct Discourse. Thus enuntiarentur and imperarent are both Subjunctives of Purpose, and must therefore be referred to G. 497, not 524.
32. Galliae totius. Celtic Gaul is meant.
33. Factiones duas, two parties.
34. Hi, these; i. e., the Aedui with their party on the one hand, and the Arverni with theirs on the other.—Cum... contenderent, while they were contending. Observe tense.
35. Factum esse, it came to pass. The subject is the clause, uti... arcesseruntur, which also expresses Result. G. 501, I, 1.
36. Mercedēs G. 422.
37. Horum, of these; i. e., of the Germans; Partitive Genitive.—Circiter, about; adverb modifying quindecim.
38. Cultum, mode of life.—Coptas, riches, wealth.
2. Ad... millium numerum, to the number of, etc.
3. Clientes, dependants; i. e., dependent states.—Semel atque iterum, again and again; lit., once and again.
4. Pulso. Supply eos as the subject of acceptisse and amisisse.
6. Fracto. Supply eos as the antecedent of qui and the subject of coactus esse.
7. Populi Romani hospitio, by the hospitality of the Roman people. The friendship of the Romans had given the Aedui great influence in Gaul. Hospitium, as here used in its application to states, has the same force as when applied to individuals. States extended to each other the rights of hospitality in the persons of their representatives and ambassadors.
9. Nobilissimos civitatis, the noblest men of the state. G. 441; 363.
12. Neque recusaturos quo minus, etc.; supply esse; nor refuse to be, etc.; lit., by which the less they should be. G. 497, II.—Illorum, of them; i. e., of the Sequani.
13. Unum se esse, that he (Divitiacus) was the only person.
14. Obsides, as hostages. G. 373, I.—Potuerit; G. 525, 1; 503, II., 1.
—Ut juraret, to take the oath.
16. Postulatum; G. 546. He was, however, unsuccessful. See p. 108
17. Peius accidisse, that a worse fate had befallen. Peius, used substantively, is the subject of accidisse.
19. Eorum refers to the Sequani.
20. Agrī Sequani. The territory of the Sequani lay between the Saône, the Rhone, the Jura, and the Rhine, and was very fertile.
21. De altera parte tertia, from a second third.
22. Mensibus; G. 430.
23. Harudūm... quadraūna, twenty-four thousand of the Harudes. Harudum is a Partitive Genitive, depending upon hominum.
25. Paucis annis, in a few years; Abl. of Time. G. 429.—Omnes refers to the Galli.
27. Gallicum. Supply agrum.—Gallicum cum Germanorum agro = Gallicum cum Germano agro, the Gallic territory with the Ger-
man. Such expressions as this are good illustrations of the fact that Adjectives and the Genitives of Nouns are kindred forms, which are often interchanged. See also sua omniumque salute, p. 15, line 26, and auctoritate sua atque exercitus, p. 17, line 4; also G. 393; 401, note 2.

28. Hanc consuetudinem victus, their mode of living; lit., this, i.e., the one which is near the speaker, or belongs to him, referring to the mode of life in Gaul; while illa refers to that of the Germans. G. 450, 1

29. Ut semel... vicerit, when once he had conquered. The Perf. Indic. of the Direct Discourse has become the Perf.Subj. of the Indirect. G. 524.


32. In eos... edere, practised upon them all kinds of severity and torture; lit., all examples and tortures. Exemplum, as here used, is a punishment which, by its severity, will be a warning or example to others.

—Si qua; G. 190, 1.

33. Ad nutum... voluntatem, according to his bidding or desire. Nutum, a nod, beck, is the outward expression of the desire, while voluntas is the desire itself. —Hominem... temerarium, that he was a savage, passionate, rash man. Supply cum as the subject of esse. Hominem is the Predicate after esse.

34. Non posse. Supply se.

36. Auxilli; Partitive Genitive with quid. — Galls; G. 388.

37. Ut emigrent; in apposition with idem. G. 501, III.

1. Fortunamque quaecumque, etc., and experience whatever fortune might befall them. Quaecumque refers to fortunam.

2. Dubitare. Supply se. — Quin de... sumat, that he would inflict the severest punishment upon all, etc. The student will observe the Latin idiom, supplicium sumere de, to take satisfaction or pay from, instead of to inflict punishment upon.


7. Arlovisti; Subjective Genitive. G. 396, II.

12. Ejus rel., of this, lit., this thing; i.e., their silence and sadness.

13. Respondere, permanere; Historical Infinitives. G. 536, I.

14. Neque... posset, and could extort no answer (word) at all.

16. Hoc, on this account, viz., quod soli, etc. G. 416.

17. Quam reliquorum, than that of the rest. Supply fortunam. G. 397, 1. — In occulto. Observe the emphatic position between ne and nudam. G. 569, III., 2.


19. Adesset; G. 513, II.

20. Reliquis tamen, etc., to the others the means of escape was nevertheless offered.

22. Sequanis; Dative of the Agent, with essent perferendi. G. 388.
XXXIII.—XXXVI. Messages exchanged between Caesar and Ariovistus.

17 25. Sibi . . . futuram; supply esse; that he would attend to this subject; lit., that this thing should be to him for a care. G. 390.

26. Beneficio suo, by the service which he (Caesar) had rendered him; lit., his service, referring to the fact that in the consulship of Caesar, the year before, Ariovistus received from the Roman senate the title of king and friend. See p. 18, line 24.

28. Et . . . res, and besides (after) these things, many considerations induced him. Ea refers to the facts stated by Divitiacus, and multae res to considerations which he now proceeds to enumerate.

29. Quare putaret, to think; lit., by which thing (qua re) he should think; i.e., so that he should; a clause denoting Result. G. 500, 1.

32. Germanorum is to be construed with ditione only, not with servitute.

34. Quod, which, referring to the fact just mentioned.—In tanto . . . Romani, in so great an empire as the Roman people had; lit., of the Roman people.

35. Paulatim . . . consuecere, that the Germans, moreover, should gradually become accustomed.

38. Periculosum. Supply esse.—Sibi . . . temperaturas . . . quin . . . exirent, would refrain from going, etc.; lit., would restrain themselves, by which they should not go. G. 385; 504, 4.

18 2. Galliam; Gaul, in its limited sense—Celtic Gaul.—Ut, as.—Fecissent; G. 524. — Ante Cimbri. The incursions of the Cimbri and Teutones (or Teutoni), which took place half a century before, are mentioned by Caesar in Book II., 4 and 29.

5. Rhodanus, the Rhone; i.e., only the Rhone.—Quibus rebus, these things. G. 453; 386. — Quam maturrime, as promptly as possible. G. 444, 3.


9. Placuit ei, he decided; lit., it pleased him; i.e., Caesar.

10. Postularent; Subj. of Purpose. G. 497. Ut aliquem . . . deseret, that he should name for the conference some place midway between both: i.e., between Caesar and Ariovistus. Utriusque depends upon medium. G. 399.

11. De re publica, in regard to the common weal; i.e., interests common to both parties.

13. Si . . . esset . . . fuisse; Conditional sentence of the third form. Hence centurum fuisse. G. 527, 111.

14. Si . . . velit . . . oportere; Conditional sentence of the first form.
BOOK I.

15. In eas partes, etc. Ariovistus was probably at this time between the Rhine and the Vosges.

20. Negotiis; construe with quid. — Esset; G. 529, I.

23. Tanto suo...affectus, having been treated with so great kindness on his part and that of the Roman people; lit., with his so great, etc. See note, p. 16, line 27.


27. Dicendum sibi. Supply esse. G. 388. — Haec esse, that these are the things; i.e., those which he now proceeds to specify. Esse depends upon a verb of saying involved in legatos mittit. G. 523, 1.


31. Illi and illis refer to Sequanis.

33. Si...fecisset...futuram; supply esse; Conditional sentence of the first form, with the Fut. Perf. in the condition in the Direct Discourse, and the Fut. in the conclusion — si feceris, erit. Hence fecisset. G. 525, 2. — Id ita. Ita is not strictly necessary to the thought, but is often thus combined with id in Caesar.

35. Si...impetraret...futuram. Here, in the Direct Discourse, we should have the Pres. Subj. in the condition and the Fut. Indic. in the conclusion. Hence, the Imperfect, impetraret. G. 511, I. — Messala...consultibus. See note, p. 2, line 4.

36. Censuisset, had decreed. See Syn. L. C. 576. — Quicumque...obtineret, whoever should hold; i.e., as his province, hence govern.

37. Quod commodo...posset, should he be able to do it consistently with the interests of the republic. Relative clause expressing condition. G. 507, III, 2. Quod refers to the clause Aedus...defenderat as its antecedent, and is itself the object of facere.

1. Se is only a repetition of esse above.

4. Ut, qui vicissent. Supply ii as the antecedent of qui and the subject of imperaret. — Hs; G. 385. — Imperaret; G. 501.

7. Quemadmodum...uteretur; Indirect Question. G. 529.


11. Magnam. Observe position. G. 561, I. — Facere, was doing. Suo refers to Caesar, but sibi, in the next line, refers to Ariovistus. — Quo faceret, since he was making. G. 517.

13. Neque his...illaturum, nor (on the other hand) would he make war upon them, etc.

NOTES.

16. Longe in ... abfutarum, the title of brothers of the Roman people would be far from aiding them; lit., would be far from them.—Fraternum, fraternal—Fratrum, of brothers. G. 385, note 2.

18. Secum ... sua. Se in secum refers to Ariovistus, and sua to nominem. G. 449, 6.

19. Congreaterur; G. 523, III.—Intellectum. Supply esse, also eum; i. e., Caesarum. — Quid virtute possent, what they could accomplish by their valor. G. 378, 2; 529, 1.

XXXVII.—XXXVIII. Caesar occupies Vesontio.


27. Pagos centum, etc. These words, if taken literally, would include the whole body of the Suebi; but they seem to be used here not of the people at large, but only of the army, which consisted of one hundred thousand men, one thousand from each canton. See p. 59.

28. Conarentur. Why Subj.? G. 524. What Mood would have been used if it were the statement of the writer? G. 524, 2. —Hs; G. 386.

31. Minus facile, etc., resistance could be less easily offered; i. e., to Ariovistus. Resistit and posset are both impersonal. G. 301.

32. Ad Ariovistum. Where was Ariovistus at this time? See note, p. 18, line 15.

35. Viam; G. 371, I, 2. See also 62.


38. A suis finibus, etc. When these tidings were received, Caesar was at Arc-en-Barrois, about forty miles from Vesontio (Besançon), and supposed Ariovistus to be quite as near that important city as himself. Hence the pressing need of haste. —Id, this; i. e., the occupation of Vesontio by Ariovistus.

20. 1. Magnopere ... praecavendum; supply esse; that he ought to take great precaution. —Sibi; G. 388.

2. Ad bellum usui, of use in (to) war. G. 384, 1, 3).

3. Natura loci, by its natural position; lit., by the nature of the place.

4. Magnam ... facultatem, abundant means for protracing the war; i. e., against Caesar—a reason why it should not be permitted to fall into the hands of Ariovistus.

5. Ut circumductum, as if traced by a pair of compasses.

7. Pedum. Supply spatio.—Sexcentorum. The distance is found
to be sixteen hundred Roman feet. Perhaps Caesar wrote MDC, from which M was omitted by the copyists. — Qua flumen intermittit, where the river intermits its circular course. The river continues its circular course until interrupted by the high hill which stood on one side of the town.

8. Radices, object; ripae, subject.

XXXIX.—XL. Panic in the Roman Army.

16. Magnitudine; G. 419, II.
18. Actem oculorum; the force expression of their eyes.
21. Tribunls. See 37. — Praefectis, not the prefects of the cavalry, but of the auxiliaries. The prefects held the same position among the auxiliaries as the tribunes among the legionary soldiers. See 42.
22. Ex urbe; i. e., from Rome.
23. Allus, alla causa, etc., one assigning one reason and another another. G. 459, 1.
24. Quam... diceret, which he said was a necessary cause for his departure. — Diceret; G. 500, I.
30. Totis castris; G. 425, 2.
33. Quique, and those who.
35. Vereor implies fear, with the accessory notion of respect and awe.
36. Intercederent. Observe the force of the Subj.; which intervened; i. e., as they supposed. G. 524. — Rem frumentarium ut, etc. = ut res frumentaria... posset, that grain might not be furnished with sufficient readiness. — Ut, that not. G. 498, III., note 1.
38. Cum... jussissent. This temporal clause marks the time of fore and latus, not of remuntiabant.

4. Omnim ordinum, of all ranks. To this council all the centurions were invited, though in a regular council of war only those of the first rank (primorum ordinum) were entitled to a place. Each legion, it will be remembered, contained ten cohorts, each cohort three maniples, and each maniple two centuries. Each century was commanded by a centurion. There were, accordingly, sixty centurions in each legion. See 40.

5. Incusavit. Incusare means to censure, find fault with; accusare, to accuse, prefer an accusation, as in a court of justice.
7. Putarent; Caesar's reason at the time of the accusation. Hence Subj. as if assigned on another's authority. G. 516, II. — Se refers to Caesar.— Se consulate; G. 431. This was the preceding year.
8. Cur . . . judicare; G. 486, II. — Hanc; i.e., Ariovistus.

9. Sibi persuaderi, that he was persuaded; lit., it was persuaded to him. G. 301.

12. Quod si intulisset . . . vererentur; Second form of the Conditional sentence; the Present and Perf. Subj. being changed, by the law for sequence of tenses, to the Imperfect and Pluperfect. G. 527, II. — Amennis denotes simply a want of reason, as an idiot; demensia, a perversion of reason, as in a madman.

14. Sua, their; ipseus, of himself, referring to Caesar.

16. Cimbris . . . pulsis. This victory of Marius was gained in the year 101 B.C., upwards of forty years before.

17. Videbatur. Here the Indicative shows a transition to the Direct Discourse — a transition not uncommon in Caesar.

18. Servili tumultu, in the servile war, under Spartacus, 73 B.C. Tumultus is properly a revolt, tumult. — Quos. The antecedent is implied in servilis, — in the revolt of the slaves, whom. G. 445, 6.


21. Boni; construe with quantum; Partitive Genitive. G. 397. — Inermos, armatos ac victores. At first the insurgents were, to a great extent, without arms (inermos); but they subsequently obtained arms and gained many victories. They were finally defeated by Crassus, 71 B.C.

24. Illorum refers to the Germans.

25. Quis refers, for its antecedent, to the Helvetii.

26. Adversum proelium, etc. See p. 16, lines 28–33.

29. Neque sui potestatem fecisset, and had not given them the opportunity of fighting him; lit., the power or opportunity of himself.


31. Ratione et consilio, by cunning and stratagem.

32. Cui rationi, hic, = hac ratione, cui, by that cunning for which.

34. In rel . . . simulationem, to a pretended anxiety in regard to supplies.

35. Facere. Supply the subject eos, which is also the antecedent of qui.

36. De officio . . . desperare, to despair of the fidelity (duty) of their commander. — Imperatoris; see 33.

37. Praescrivere, to dictate to him. — Sibi esse curae; G. 390.

22. Quod . . . dicantur, as to the fact that it was said (lit., they were said) that they would not.

3. Quibuscumque; G. 390, note 3.

4. Fuerit; G. 525, 1. — Male re gesta, in consequence of some mismanagement.

5. Avaritiam esse convictam, avarice was proved (against them).

6. Innocentiam, blamelessness, freedom from avarice, as opposed to avaritiam.
BOOK I.

7. Quod collaturus fuissest, what he had intended to defer.

9. De quarta vigilia, during the fourth watch; i.e., between three and six o'clock in the morning. See note on de tertia vigilia, p. 6, line 27.
   — Quam primum, as soon as possible. G. 170, 2.

13. Praetoriam cohortem, praetorian cohort, or body guard. The select band which attended the person of the commander was called the praetorian cohort.

17. Mentes, rather than animi, to show that their judgments were convinced. See Syn. L. C. 355.

18. Princps, for prima, which would be somewhat objectionable before the ordinal decima.


21. Cum tribunis . . . egerunt, arranged with the tribunes.

22. Primorum ordinum centurionibus, with the centurions of the first rank. The six centurions of the first cohort are probably meant; see 41. — Uti . . . satisfacerent, to excuse them to Caesar (saying).

23. Se . . . dubitasse depends upon a verb of saying, implied in satisfacerent. G. 523, 1.

24. Summa belli, the conduct of the whole war. — Suum, sed imperatoriis esse, was theirs, but the commander's.

25. Satisfactione, excuse or apology. — Itinere exquisito . . . ut . . . duceret, the route having been ascertained . . . (to be such) that he could lead.

26. Ex aliis, out of all the Gauls; lit., from others.

27. Millium . . . circultu, by a circuit of more than fifty miles. With millium supply paseum. Where was Caesar at this time? See p. 20, line 13. Ariovistus, whom Caesar wished to meet, was in the valley of the Rhine. The direct route would lead over the northern part of the Jura chain, but Caesar preferred a circuitous route through the open country.

29. Septimo die. We must not suppose that Caesar marched only fifty miles in these seven days. The circuit of fifty miles brought him around the mountains into the direct road, but it formed only a portion of the distance.

30. A nostris, from ours. — Millibus; G. 379, 2.

XLII. — XLVI. Interview between Caesar and Ariovistus.

33. Quod . . . postulasset. See p. 18. Quod refers to id as its antecedent. — Per se, with his consent; i.e., with the consent of Ariovistus; lit., through himself.

37. Petendi. Supply sibi; i.e., Caesari.
1. In eum, to him; i.e., Ariovistus. — Fore, uti desisteret, that he would desist. G. 537, 3.

3. Ultro citroque, on that side and on this; i.e., on both sides.


6. Veniret. Why Subj.? G. 523, III. — Alla ratione, on any other terms. G. 419, III.

8. Interposita causa, by the pretext which had been interposed; i.e., by Ariovistus.

10. Equis. Construction? G. 431. — Equitibus; G. 386, 2. — Eo = in eos; i.e., in equos. The horses of the Gallic cavalry, four thousand in number (p. 8, line 12), were assigned to the soldiers of the famous tenth legion.

12. Si quid ... esset, if there should be any need of action. G. 527, II.

14. Plus Caesarem et facere, that Caesar was doing more for it; i.e., for that legion.

16. Ad equum rescribere, that he was transferring them to the cavalry. Perhaps the wit of the remark consists in part in the pun involved in ad equum rescribere, which may mean either to transfer to the cavalry or to raise to the rank of knighthood.

18. Planities. Caesar was probably at this time in the valley of Upper Alsace, twenty or thirty miles north of Bâle.


21. Quam equis dehexerat, which he had brought on horseback, referring to the tenth legion.

23. Ex equis, on horseback; lit., from horses. See ex vinculis, p. 3, line 8.

24. Colloquerentur; Subj. of Purpose. G. 498, I. — Praeter se, beside themselves. — Denos; distributive; ten each.

25. Ubi ventum est, when they came; impersonal in Latin. G. 301.

27. Quod ... missa. These clauses explain beneficia.—Appellatus esset. Why Subj.? G. 524.

28. Munera missa. Presents were often sent to those upon whom the senate conferred the title of king. — Quam rem, that this thing.

30. Illum, referring to Ariovistus, is the subject of consecutum (esse). — Aditum, access; i.e., to the senate, by whom the honor was conferred.

33. Ipsa; to them; i.e., to the Romans.

35. Ut ... tenuisset; G. 529, II., 1.

36. Appetissent; G. 524.

37. Ut velit, to wish; lit., that they (populus Romanus) wish.

38. Sui nihil, nothing of their own. G. 397.

1. Honore auctores esse, to be advanced (lit., more increased) in honor. — Vellit; Subj. of Result, explaining consuetudinem. G. 501, III. Observe tense. G. 495, VI. — Quod ... attulissent, which they had indeed
brought to the friendship of the Roman people; i.e., which they possessed when they became their friends.

2. His; G. 386, 2.

3. In mandatis, in his instructions. See p. 18, lines 22–33.

6. At, at least.

8. De ... multa praedicavit, boasted much of. — Transisse. The whole chapter, from this point, is in the Oratio Obliqua. For the use of Moods, Tenses, etc., see G. 523–531.

13. Victores victrix. See fuller form, p. 19, line 4: qui vicissent (= victores) is quos victissent (= victis).


15. Ad se oppugnandum, to attack him. — Contra se castra habuisse, had encamped against him.

18. Decertare depends upon paratum. G. 533, II, 3. — Pace; G. 421, I.—De stipendio recusare, to raise an objection in regard to (on the subject of) the tribute.


21. Idque. Id, though referring to amicitiam, is used in preference to eam, to give a more comprehensive meaning, — that thing, that relation.

22. Per populum. Why not a populo? Because the result here contemplated, stipendium remittatur, is not viewed as the proposed object of the Roman people, — an act performed by them as a voluntary agent, — but merely as brought about indirectly through their means. G. 416, 1, note 1.


26. Sui munendi; dependent upon causa. G. 543; 542, I.

27. Esse. The subject is the clause quod ... defenderit. G. 540, IV. — Nisi rogatus, without being asked.

28. Sed defenderit; supply id, referring to bellum; but had warded it off. — Prius venisse. Here again Arioivistus misrepresents the facts in the case, as the Romans conquered the Arverni in the year 121 B.C., long before he came into Gaul.


32. Hanc Gallam, this part of Gaul; lit., this Gaul.

33. Illam, that, referring to the Roman province in the south of Gaul. — Ut ipsi ... oporteret, as it would not be proper to yield to him (Ario- vistus). — Concedi; Impersonal passive.

37. Rerum. Construction? G. 399, 2. — Bello Allobrogum prox-
imo. See p. 4, where Caesar tells us that the Allobroges had been re-
ently subdued.

1. Ipsum, they, i. e., the Aedui.

4. Habere. Supply eum as object, referring to exercitum.

5. Qui nisi decedat, if he would not depart. G. 453.

7. Quod si, but if. G. 453, 6.

8. Gratum, a favor; lit., an agreeable thing. G. 441. There was,
doubtless, some truth in this statement of Ariovistus. Caesar had many
bitter personal enemies at Rome.—Id, this fact.

9. Compertum habere, had ascertained. Compertum agrees with
id. G. 388, 1, note.


13. Sineullo ejus labore, without any effort on his (Caesar's) part.

16. Quare non posset, showing why he could not. In translating, it
is best to supply some word, as showing, before why (quare).

17. Utideseret; Object Clause. G. 501, II.

19. Arlovisti; Predicate Genitive with esse. G. 401; 403. —Supera-
tos esse. This was in the year 121 B. C.

20. Quibus ignovisset. The Romans were said to pardon a con-
quered people when they allowed them to retain their own government
and laws.

21. In provinciam redegisset. The Romans were said to reduce a
conquered country to a province when they brought it under Roman gov-
ernment.

22. Quod si ... oporteret, but if the most ancient time (priority of
time) should ever be regarded. In this respect the Romans had the ad-
vantage by sixty years.

25. Quam ... voluisset, since the senate had decreed (wished) that it
(quam), etc.


30. Facit, imperavit. Observe the change from the Historical Pres-
ent to the Historical Perfect—a change by no means uncommon.


32. Legionis; Objective Genitive. G. 393, note; 396, III.

33. Committendum ... ut dici posset, he did not think that he
ought to permit it to be said; lit., that it could be said. With commiti-
dendum, which is impersonal, supply esse sibi.

34. Eos, that they; i. e., the enemy.—Per fidem, through plighted
faith; i. e., by the plighted word of Caesar, who had invited them to this
interview.

36. Qua arrogantia usus, with what arrogance; lit., using what
arrogance. G. 421, I.—Omni ... interdictisset, had forbidden the
Romans all Gaul.
38. Fecissent; Subj. in an Indirect Question. — Ut, how. — Multo; Ablative of Difference; G. 423.

XLVII.—L. Ariovistus avoids a general Engagement.

3. Biduo; G. 430. Post is used adverbially.

4. Velle; G. 523, I., note. — Coepisse essent. Why not coepissent?

5. Uti constitueret; Subj. of Purpose, dependent upon legatos militis, involving the idea of asking.


9. Quin ... conjicerent, from hurling. G. 504, 3.


13. Humanitate, culture. G. 419, II.

14. Civitate donatus erat. This was done by C. Valerius Flaccus, when he was governor of Gaul, 83 B. C.

16. Qua multa. Qua refers to linguæ, and multa agrees with qua, though it may be rendered adverbially — much or freely.

17. In eo peccandi causa, a reason (excuse) for doing wrong in his case; i.e., the Germans would be less likely to injure him than some others. — Quod esset; Caesar's reason at the time, not assigned by him as narrator. Hence the Subj. G. 516, II.


22. Quid; G. 378, 2. — Venirent; G. 523, II., 1. — Conantes agrees with eos, to be supplied.

25. Sub monte, at the foot of the mountain, probably the Vosges.

28. Uti intercluderet. This clause is in apposition with consilium, and at the same time expresses the purpose of transduxit and fecit. G. 499, 3.

— Frumento; G. 414, I.

32. El ... deesset, he might not lack the opportunity; lit., the power might not be wanting to him. G. 386, 2. — His diebus; G. 379, 1.

34. Genus hoc erat pugnae, the following was the kind of battle.

35. Totidem numero pedites, the same number of infantry. — Numero; Abl. of Specification. G. 424.

36. Quae ex ... delegerant, whom they (the cavalry) had individually selected, one for each, from the whole multitude. — Copia = multitude.

38. His, hos, hi refer to pedites.

1. Si quid erat durius, if there was anything unusually difficult. G. 2744, 1. — Concurrebant, ran to their support. — Si qui; for the more usual si quis.

2. Si quo erat praeundum, if it was necessary to advance to any place.
4. Ut jubis ... adaequarent, that, supported by the manes of the horses, they equalled their speed.

6. Eum, that he; i.e., Ariovistus.

7. Ultra cum locum. The student will bear in mind the recent movements of the two armies. At the beginning of Chapter XLVIII. they were within six miles of each other. Ariovistus then passed the camp of Caesar, and took up a position in his rear. Caesar now retraces his steps, and secures a position for a second camp, to prevent the enemy from cutting off his supplies.


14. Quae copiae perterrerent, that these (lit., which) forces might terrify. G. 497.

18. Castra majora. Thus Caesar had two camps, castra majora with four legions, and castra minora with two.

20. Die; G. 429.—Instituto suo, in accordance with his custom.

25. Quae oppugnare, to attack; lit., which should attack. G. 497.

29. Quam ob rem ... decertaret, why Ariovistus did not offer a general engagement. G. 529, I.

31. Ut declararent; G. 501, III.—Matres familiae. Many German matrons were supposed to be possessed of prophetic power. —Sortibus. The Germans made frequent use of lots in divining the future.

32. Ex usu esset, it would be of advantage (use).

33. Non esse fas, that it was not right. See Syn. L. C. 405.

LI.—LIV. Caesar defeats the Germans, places his Army in Winter Quarters, and returns to Cisalpine Gaul.

35. Praesidio castris. Construction? G. 390, II.

36. Alarioros, allied troops, called alariori, because originally they were stationed on the wings (alae) of the legion.

28 1. Ad speciem, for show; i.e., to impress the enemy by a show of numbers.


4. Generatimque ... Harudes, etc., and stationed by tribes (generatim) and at equal intervals the Harudes, etc.


7. Ne qua; G. 190, 1.—Eo = in iis; i.e., in the carriages and wagons.

8. Proficiacentes; supply militiae.
BOOK I.

9. Se, them; i.e., the women.

11. Singuloe legatos et quaestorem. Caesar appointed his quaesitor over one legion, and a lieutenant over each of the others. The quaesitor was intrusted with the care of the public money. See 34, 35.

13. A dextro cornu, on the right wing; Latin idiom, from the right wing, as the action proceeded from that quarter.


16. Pilae; object of conjiciendi, which depends upon spatium, time, opportunity. For the pilum, see 9, 9.

19. Phalange facta. See note on phalange, p. 12, line 32.

20. Complures nostris militibus, many of our soldiers; lit., many our soldiers. — Qui...insilirent; G. 503, L.

22. A sinistro cornu, on their left wing; i.e., on the left wing of the Germans.

24. Publius Crassus; the son of Marcus Licinius Crassus, who was triumvir with Caesar and Pompey.

25. Equitatuli; G. 386. — Quod expeditor erat, because he was more disengaged.

27. Aclem nostris subsalito; G. 390, II.

30. Millia; G. 379. Quinquaginta. Some editions have quinque.


32. Lintribus inventis, by means of boats which chanced to be at hand; lit., by boats found. — Inventis, repererunt. Invenio means to find without seeking, to meet with accidentally, while reperio means to find by seeking, to obtain by effort. This sentence is a good illustration of the use of these two synonyms.

34. Ea, with this; i.e., with the skiff. G. 420. — Equitatuli; Means rather than Accompaniment; hence without cum.

35. Duae uxorae. Among the ancient Germans polygamy seems to have been confined to the chieftains.


38. Duae filiae...capta est, their two daughters were, the one slain, the other captured. Filiae is in apposition with altera, altera.


2. Cum transferetur; G. 521, II., 2.—Trinis catenis vinctus, bound with triple chains.

3. In ipsum...incidit, falls into the hands of Caesar himself.

4. Quae res, this thing; i.e., the rescue of his faithful friend Proculius. — Victoria; G. 417, 1.

5. Provinciae; G. 397.

7. Ejus calamitate, by his death.
9. Se praesente; construe with consultum.—Consultum (esse); impersonal, that it had been consulted; i.e., that they (the enemy) had consulted.

17. Duobus bellis; i.e., the war with the Helvetii and that with Ariovistus.

18. In hiberna in Sequanos, into winter quarters among the Sequani. Here the Latin idiom requires in Sequanos, not in Sequanis, to designate the place into which the army was led.

The Romans paid great attention to the winter quarters of their armies. They not only fortified them very strongly, but also furnished them with many accommodations for the convenience and comfort of the soldiers.

19. Citeriorem Galliam; also called Gallia Cisalpina, consisting of Gaul south of the Alps.

20. Ad conventus agendos, to hold the assizes or courts. The Roman governors of provinces usually employed their time in winter in the civil duties of their office. They held courts, corrected abuses, levied taxes, and exercised a controlling influence over public affairs.

---

BOOK SECOND.

CAMPAIGN OF THE YEAR 67 B.C., IN THE CONSULSHIP OF P. CORNELIUS LENTULUS AND Q. CAECILIUS METELLUS.

I. WAR WITH THE BELGAE. I.-XXXIII.
II. OTHER EVENTS OF THE CAMPAIGN. XXXIV., XXXV.

I. The Belgae combine against Caesar.

1. Cum esset; G. 521, II., 2. — In hibernis. These words seem to imply that Caesar had, at least, a small force with him in Cisalpine Gaul, although his main army was in winter quarters among the Sequani.—Ita demonstravimus. See p. 29, line 19.

3. Litterisque...fiebat, and he was informed by the letters of Labienus. Labienus, it will be remembered, had been left in charge of the winter quarters. See p. 29, line 19.
BOOK II.

4. Quam, for quos, attracted to agree with the predicate noun partem. 80
G. 445, 4. — Tertiam partem, one of the three parts, not strictly a third
part. — Dixeramus. See p. 1, line 2. The Perfect tense might have
been used, but the Pluperfect is more exact, showing that this act was
completed at the time of the past events just mentioned.

7. Omni Gallia; not all Gaul in its most comprehensive sense, but
all Celtic Gaul.

8. Partim qui . . . partim qui, some of whom . . . others of whom;
lit., who partly.

9. Ita molestae ferebant, so they were annoyed; lit., bore it ill.

nonnullis etiam; supply sollicitarentur, from line 8 above.

15. Eam rem consequit, to accomplish this (thing); i. e., to obtain
power in this way. — Imperio nostro, under our rule. This involves
both time and cause, and may therefore be referred either to G. 416 or
to 429. Some grammarians explain it as the Ablative Absolute, which also
expresses time and cause. G. 431.

II., III. The Remi surrender to Caesar.

16. Duas legiones, two legions, the thirteenth and the fourteenth.

17. Initia acreate, in the beginning of the summer. G. 431, 2, (1),

18. Qui deduceret, to lead. G. 497. — Quintum Pedum; the son
of Caesar’s eldest sister, Julia.

19. Cum primum, as soon as. — Inciperet. Why Subjunctive? G.
521, II., 2.

21. Belgis; G. 391, I. — Uti . . . faciant; a Substantive Clause in
apposition with negotium. G. 499, 3.

22. Gerantur; G. 529, II.

25. Quin proficisceretur; G. 504, 3.

28. Eo; i. e., ad fines Belgarum. — Celerius omni opinione, sooner
than any one expected. G. 417, note 5.

29. Proximi ex Belgis, the nearest of the Belgae. G. 397, 3, note 3.

Galliae, to Gaul: i. e., Celtic Gaul.

1. Se suaque omnia; object of permittere. The subject se is omitted. 31
G. 523, 1; foot note 2.

5. Oppidis; G. 425, 1. — Recipere; supply eum; i. e., Caesarem.

6. Cic Rhenum, on this side; i. e., the southern or Gallic side, on
which several German tribes had settled.

8. Suessiones; object of deterrere, below.

9. Eodem jure et eisdem legibus, the same right (political prin-
ciples) and the same laws. Jus denotes the principle of right on which lex
NOTES.

10. *Cum ipsis, with themselves; i. e., with the Remi.
11. *Quin consentirent; G. 504, 4. — *Cum his; i. e., *cum Belgia.

IV. Forces of the Belgae.

12. *Ab his, from these; i. e., from the two ambassadors of the Remi.
13. *Essent; G. 529, I. — *Quid possem, how powerful they were.—
   Quid, G. 378, 2.
15. *Ibi, there, i. e., in Gaul.
16. *Loca; G. 141. — *Solosque esse, qui, and that they were the only
   ones, who.
18. *Teutones Cimbrosque . . . prohibuerunt. The event here
   referred to belongs to the latter part of the second century B. C.,
   when the Teutoni and Cimbri invaded Southern Europe.
22. *Propinquitatibus affinitatibusque, by relationship and
   marriage. For the plural of abstract nouns, see G. 130, 2.
26. *Conlicere, to raise; lit., finish, make up the full number.
27. *Pollicitos, . . . postulare. Notice difference in tense.— *Electa
   millia sexaginta, sixty thousand picked men.
28. *Imperium, management. — *Suos finitimos, their neighbors;
   i. e., neighbors of the Remi.
30. *Divitiacum; not Divitiacus, the Aeduan. See Dict.
31. *Potentissimum, the most powerful chieftain.— *Cum . . . tum
   etiam, not only . . . but also.
32. *Britanniae. This is the earliest mention of Britain by a Roman
   writer.
36. *Totidem Nervios. Supply *polliceri, of which *totidem is the
   object and *Nervios the subject.
37. *Longissime absint, are very remote; i. e., far removed from
   the refining influence of Southern Gaul; hence *maxime fere.
38. *Atrebates, Ambianos, etc. Supply *polliceri. On proper names,
   see Dict. and Map.
32 3. Condurusos, etc., arbitrari . . . millia, that they (see, i. e., Remos,
   understood), estimated the Condrusi, etc., at forty thousand. Observe that
   the construction changes at this point. *Condrusos is not, like the preceding
   proper names, the subject of *polliceri, to be supplied, but the object
   of *arbitrari, expressed.
Against this formidable host of almost three hundred thousand, Caesar had eight legions of Roman soldiers, together with twenty or thirty thousand auxiliaries and mercenaries, in all about fifty or sixty thousand men.

V.—VII. Caesar relieves Bibrae, a town of the Remi.

6. Liberaliter . . . prosecutus, having addressed them with kind words.
8. Obsides; G. 362.
10. Quanto opere, also written quantopere, is in effect an adverb, but may also be explained as an Ablative of Difference. G. 423.—Ref publicae; G. 408, I.
11. Intersit; G. 529, I. The subject is manus hostium dinstineri. G. 408, II.—Distineri, be kept apart.
13. Id fieri posse; i. e., manus dinstineri posse.
17. Abesse. Supply subject eas; i. e., copias.
20. Atque ibi, and there; i. e., on the farther side of the river. — Quae res, this position; lit., which thing. G. 453.
21. Quae essent; G. 503, 1.
22. Tuta; Predicate Accusative, agreeing with ea, to be supplied as the object of reddebat and the antecedent of quae. — Commenatus . . . ut . . . efficiebat, made it possible that supplies should be brought. — Commenatus, subject of possent.
24. In eo flumine, over this river.
25. In altera parte, on the other side; i. e., the south side, or the left bank of the river.
27. Duodevigi mill pedum. Supply in latitudinem; see 70.
31. Sustentatum est, the attack was sustained. The verb is here impersonal.
32. Gallorum eadem . . . est haec, the mode of attack, the same on the part of the Gauls as of the Belgae, is as follows.
35. Testudine facta, forming the testudo or tortoise. See 96. Phalanx facta has nearly the same meaning. See note on the same, p. 12, line 32.
38. Consistendi; G. 542, I. — Nulli; G. 387.
1. Summa nobilitate; Ablative of Characteristic.
2. Unus ex his . . . de pace. See p. 30, line 30.
5. Posse. The verb of saying is implied in nuntium mittet. G. 523, I.
6. Eo, thither; i. e., to Bibrae. — De media nocte, at midnight.
III. ducibus usus, employing as guides the same persons. — Duci-
bus. Predicate noun agreeing with illudem, used substantively. G. 362, 3.
10. Hostibus; for ab hostibus. G. 413.
14. Coplis; G. 419, 1.— Ab millibus . . . duobus, less than two
miles off; i.e., from the camp. G. 379, 2; 423, note 2.—Minus; G. 417,
1, note 2.

VIII., IX. Skirmishing between the two Armies.

19. Eximiam . . . virtutis, their remarkable reputation for valor. G.
393, note. — Proelio; G. 414.
20. Quid . . . posset periclitabatur, he attempted to ascertain what
the enemy could effect by his valor.
22. Loco opportuno, as the place was favorable. G. 431.
24. Collis adversus, the hill on the side opposite the enemy. Adversus
is an adjective agreeing with collis. G. 440, note 1.
25. Tantum, quantum loci, as much space as. — Loci; Partitive
Genitive after quantum, though in translating we connect it with tantum.
G. 397.
26. Ex utraque . . . habebat, had a precipitous descent on each side;
lit., declivities of side (lateris) from each part.
29. Transversam fossam, a transverse trench; i.e., a trench at right
angles with the front of the hill. These two trenches were designed to
protect the flanks of the Roman army.
30. Ad extremas fossas, at the extremities of the trenches; i.e., at
each end of each of the two trenches. There were, therefore, in all four
redoubts (castella).
31. Tormenta. See 87.
33. Pugnantes suos, his men while fighting. — Duabus legionibus,
quas; i.e., the two enrolled in Cisalpine Gaul. See p. 30, line 16.
35. Si quo = si quo subsidio. — Subsidio; G. 390, note 2.
37. Ductas instruxerant; G. 549, 5.

1. Si transirent; Indirect Question. G. 529, II., 1.
3. Impeditos, while embarrassed or entangled; i.e., in crossing the
river.
5. Secundiores . . . nostris, the engagement of the cavalry being more
favorable for our men. G. 391.
10. Cui . . . Titurius. See p. 32, line 25.—Si possent, si minus
potuissent. Observe the change of tense. Potuissent expresses past
time relative to popularentur.
X., XI. The Belgae disperse to their Homes.

15. Certior factus, having been informed; i.e., of this movement of the enemy.
16. Levis...Numldas, the light-armed Numidians; lit., of light armor. They were armed with javelins. See 2, 2, footnote.
17. Ad eos; i.e., ad hostes.—In eo loco, in that place; i.e., the place where he met the enemy, suggested by ad eos contendit.
19. Per eorum corpora, over their dead bodies.
23. Spem se feellisse, that they were disappointed in their hope; lit., that hope had disappointed them.
24. Neque = et non. Construe the negative non with progresi.
26. Optimum esse, that it was best. The subject of esse is the clause domum...reverti. G. 538, 2.
27. Quorum. The antecedent is eos.
30. Domesticis copibus, home supplies, or supplies from their own land.
33. His persuaderi non poterat, these (the Bellovaci) could not be persuaded. His persuaderi, the subject of poterat. Persuaderi, Impersonal Passive. G. 301.
35. Secunda vigilia, at the second watch. G. 645, 1.
38. Fecerunt ut...videretur, caused their departure to seem.—Fugae; G. 391, 1.

1. Hac re Caesar...cognita. The subject is often thus inserted in the Ablative Absolute when it is the agent of the action expressed by the participle. Here Caesar is agent of the action denoted by cognita.
6. His; i.e., equitatus.
8. Hi, these; i.e., the cavalry and the three legions.—Novissimos, the hindmost, the extreme rear, called below (line 10) extremum agmen.
10. Cum...consistent, since those on the extreme rear, to whom (ad quos) our men had come up, made a stand. After quos supply ut, the antecedent of quos. Ventum erat; Impersonal Passive. G. 301.
13. Neque ulla...continentur, and were not restrained by any necessity or command.
17. Quantum...spatium, as the length of the day permitted; lit., as was the space of the day.—Sub occasumque; G. 569, III., 4.
XII.—XV. The Suessiones, the Bellovaci, and the Ambiani submit to Caesar.

19. Priusquam . . . recipient; G. 520, II.

22. Oppugnare, expugnare. The first of these verbs means to assault, the second to take by assault. See 94—96.

24. Paucis defendentibus, though only a few defended it. G. 431, 2.

26. Vineas agere, to prepare the vineae. This expression usually means to push forward the vineae, which were movable sheds, and could be brought very near the walls of the besieged city. But in this instance they were not brought up to the walls till the next day. See line 29. See 86 and 90. — Quaeque — et ea quae.

29. Aggere jacto. The agger was a mound of any suitable materials, as earth, wood, stone, thrown up before a besieged city. This mound was sometimes of vast dimensions, hundreds of feet in length, and of great height. See p. 134, line 2. On this, or near it, were placed towers, some stationary and others movable. These towers, some of which were ten or fifteen stories high, were furnished with all the engines and implements of ancient warfare. See also 88, 89; 99—105.

32. Petentibus Remis . . . impetrant, they obtain their request, as the Remi ask that they may be spared.

34. Primis. Supply hominibus in apposition with obsidibus.

35. Armis . . . traditis. Conquered towns were generally thus disarmed.

37. Quin cum, when they; i.e., the Bellovaci. G. 453.

2. Majores natu, elders; lit., greater by birth, or in age.

3. Sese . . . venire, that they committed themselves to (were coming into) his protection and power. G. 537; 538.

8. Post discessum Belgarum. See Chapter XI.

9. Ad eum, to him; i.e., to Caesar.

10. In fide . . . fuisse, had been (steadfast) in their fidelity and friendship to the Aeduan state.

11. Quic dicerent; G. 524.


17. Ut . . . utatur; G. 498, I.

18. Quod si fecerit, if he (Caesar) would do this (quod).

20. Quorum auxilliis . . . consuerint, by whose aid and resources, they (the Aedui) were accustomed, if any wars arose, to sustain them.

22. Honoris causa, as a mark of honor; construe with recepturum.

23. Eos, them; i.e., the Bellovaci.

24. Quod, as however. Et or sed may be supplied before quod.

25. Multitudine; G. 424.
BOOK II.

30. Esse mercatoribus, that merchants had. G. 387.

31. Nihil vinæ, no wine; lit., nothing of wine. G. 397, 1. Nihil is the subject of inferri, which depends upon pati.

32. Quod ... existimarent; G. 518, II.—Relanguescere animos, spirits are enfeebled; i.e., the spirits of men in general.


XVI.—XXVIII. War with the Nervii; they are completely subdued.

38. Eorum refers to the Nervii. —Triduum; G. 379.


3. Consedisse, had taken a position.

5. Eandem ... fortunam, the same fortune of war; i.e., the same as the Nervii.

7. Mulieres; object of conjecisse. —Quique = et eos qui, and those who.

8. In eum locum quo, in (into) a place to which (whither). G. 497, II.

9. Exercitut, for an army.

11. Qui diligent; G. 497.

14. Eorum dierum ... perspecta, having perceived our army’s mode of marching during those days. Observe the accumulation of genitives, itineris depending upon consuetudine, dierum and exercitus upon itineris.

16. Inter singularas legiones, between the several legions. —Impedimentorum. This included all the heavy baggage of the army which was carried in wagons or on beasts of burden. The soldiers carried their arms, rations, and some few necessary utensils, as axes, saws, spades, etc. Thus encumbered the soldiers were said to be sub sarcinis, under their packs. See line 19, below.

17. Magnum numerum, a large amount; lit., a large number, used perhaps, with reference to the number of wagons and beasts of burden. —Neque ... negoti, and that it would not be at all difficult; lit., nor was there anything of difficulty. G. 397. Quidquid is the predicate after esse, while hanc sub sarcinis adoriri is the subject of esse.

20. Futurum ut auderent; G. 537, 3.

21. Reliquae. Supply legiones. —Adjuvabat. The subject is the clause quod Nervii, etc.

23. Nihil; G. 378, 2.

25. Quo ... impedirent; G. 497, II., 2.

26. Teneris arboribus ... interjectis, by heading down young trees and intertwining (inflexis) the numerous branches (crasbris ramis) which grew out in a lateral direction (in latitudinem enatis), and by allowing brambles and briers to entwine themselves among them (lit., brambles and
NOTES.

87 briers having been inserted between). The Ablatives are all Absolutes.
G. 451.

The student will observe that Caesar is not describing any temporary
expedient to impede the progress of an army, but the permanent hedges
in the country of the Nervii. They were the result of years of growth
and care.

28. Instar muri, like a wall; lit., the likeness of a wall.
29. Quo = in quod, into which.—Non modo, not only not. For the
omission of non after modo, see G. 552, 2.
33. Erat haec, was as follows; lit., this.—Quem locum. Observe
the repetition of the antecedent, not uncommon in Caesar.
34. Ab summo... declivis, descending evenly from its summit. De-
clivis, descending; acclivis, ascending; hence, acclivitate, below, line
36. Summo = summo colle.
36. Pari, equal; i. e., like that on the other hill. — Adversus et con-
trarius, opposite to this, and facing it. Contrarius refers simply to the
position of the hills, opposite each other; while adversus is more definite,
and implies that corresponding sides of the two hills, — i. e., the sides with
the same slope—were turned toward each other; faced each other. In
rendering it is better to bring in contrarius before adversus.
37. Infimus apertus, clear at its base. Infimus and apertus are both
adjectives, agreeing with collis, but the first only specifies the part to
which the second is applicable, as infimus collis means the lowest part of
the hill; i. e., the base. G. 440, 2, note i.
5. Coptis; G. 419, 1, 1).—Alter se habebat ac, was otherwise
than. G. 459, 2.
7. Consuetudine suas, in accordance with his custom; i. e., when in
the vicinity of the enemy. — Expeditas, unencumbered; i. e., without the
baggage; see 57.
13. Silvas, silia. Silvas refers to the different portions of the forest,
while silia means the forest as a whole.
15. Longius... ad finem, farther than; lit., farther than as far as
(to what end). — Porrecta loca aperta, the extended open ground.
17. Opere dimenso, the work having been measured off; i. e., the
ground which the work or camp was to occupy.
20. Ita, ut... confirmaverant, just as (i. e., in the same order as)
they had arranged their line of battle and their ranks within the woods,
and as they themselves had encouraged one another to do.
23. His, these; i. e., the Roman cavalry.
25. In manibus nostris, close at hand.

The Nervii had formed an alliance with the Atrebates and the Veromandui, and had concentrated a large force in the vicinity of the Sabia, the modern Sambre, a small stream about three feet deep. They had learned that in the Roman order of march each legion was generally followed by its baggage-train. Their plan was to surprise and overwhelm the first legion as it emerged from the hills, encumbered with baggage and cut off from all assistance from the rest of the army; but Caesar, in accordance with his usual custom in the vicinity of the enemy, had placed his baggage in the rear of the main body of the army, with his six veteran legions in front of it, while the two legions recently enrolled formed the rear-guard. The Nervii, confident of an easy victory, concealed themselves and their allies in the woody heights of Hautmont, overlooking the valley of the river.

When the Romans reached the Sabia, only the enemy's cavalry was in sight. The six veteran legions, as they arrived, one after another, proceeded at once to fortify the camp. Some went in search of timber and other materials for the ramparts, while others were engaged in the trenches; but as soon as the baggage-train came in sight, the Nervii and their allies rushed from their hiding-place in battle-array, and, routing the Roman cavalry, crossed the river, and, climbing the opposite heights, suddenly appeared before the Roman encampment. Then, in the expressive language of the Commentaries, Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda, everything was to be done at once.

29. Vexillum. This was the general standard of the army, the vexillum or banner of the commander-in-chief. When displayed from the general's tent, it was the signal to prepare for immediate action. See 78.

30. Proponendum; supply erat. — Cum oportet erat, whenever it was necessary. G. 518, 1.

31. Signum tuba dandum, the signal was to be given with the trumpet. This was the signal to prepare for action. See 82.

32. Qui. Supply at.—Paulo longius, a little too far. G. 444, 1.—Aggeris petendi causa, for the purpose of seeking materials for the rampart. Agger here refers to the defences of the camp. See 70—74.

33. Signum dandum, the signal for battle was to be given. In line 31 signum tuba dandum refers to the signal to prepare for battle. The signal for the onset, the classicum, was given by the united blasts of the horn and the trumpet. See 82, foot note.

35. His difficultatibus . . . subsidio, two things proved a relief against these difficulties. G. 390.

37. Quid fieri oporteret, what ought to be done; Indirect Question, depending upon proscirebieras and doceri.

38. Ipsa; subject of poterant.
NOTES.

29 2. Nil munitis castris, unless the camp was fortified; i. e., until it
was fortified. G. 431, 3.
7. Quam . . . obtulit, in whatever direction chance presented.
8. Milites . . . quam uti retinerent, having addressed the soldiers in
a speech not longer than to exhort them to retain. After quam supply
cohortari. G. 498, 11.
11. Quod . . . aberant; construe with signum dedit. — Quam quo,
than; lit., than whither.
13. In alteram partem. He went to the right wing. See p. 40,
line 30.
14. Pugnantibus occurrit, he found them (i. e., his men) fighting;
i. e., they had already engaged the enemy.
16. Insignia. These were plumes and other ornaments, which were
usually laid aside on the march, but resumed before battle.
17. Scutisque . . . detrudenda, and for removing the coverings from
the shields. The shields, when not in use, were protected by leathern
coverings. Detrudenda indicates haste and violence. — Scutis; G. 386, 2. —
Quam; construe with partem.
18. Quaerat = et quae.
19. Ad haec constittit, near these he took his stand. Haec refers to
signa.— In quaerendis suis, in seeking his own; i. e., his own standard.
23. Cum, diversis . . . resisterent, since, as the legions were sepa-
rated, some (i. e., some legions) resisted the enemy in one place, and others
in another. G. 431; 459, 1.
26. Subsidia; subject of poterant. — Quid . . . opus esse; Indirect
Question, subject of poterat to be supplied.
29. Fortunae depends upon eventus.
30. Legiones nonae et decimae. For the disposition of Caesar's
forces, see plate X. in the text.
31. Acie; Genitive. G. 120.
32. His, refers to the soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions, and as
pars to the Atrebates.
34. Conantes agrees with eos; i. e., Atrebates.
35. Impeditam, entangled; i. e., in crossing the river. — Ipsa, they
themselves; i. e., the Roman soldiers.
38. Diversae, other; lit., different.
40 2. Ex loco superiore, having descended from their higher position;
i. e., in pursuit of the Veromandui.
3. Totis . . . nudatis castris. G. 431. It will be remembered that
six legions were engaged in fortifying the camp when the attack began
BOOK II.

(p. 38, line 16); two of these at once took their position on the left of the camp, two in front of it, and two on the right. Soon the two on the left, the ninth and the tenth (p. 39, line 30), routed the Atrebates and went in pursuit of them, while the eleventh and the eighth, who were stationed in front, went in pursuit of the Veromandui (p. 40, line 2). Thus the camp was exposed in front and on the left (a fronte et ab sinistra parte). At this juncture the whole force of the Nervii was led against the twelfth and the seventh legions, who occupied a position on the right of the camp, and were, at the moment, its only defence. See plan.


8. Aperto latere, on the unprotected flank; i.e., on the left, exposed by the removal of the legions which had occupied that position. — Summum ... locum, the summit occupied by the camp; lit., of the camp.

11. Quos ... dixeram. See p. 38, line 22.

12. Adversis ... occurrebant, met the enemy face to face; lit., the facing enemy. The Roman cavalry found the Nervii in the Roman camp.

14. Ab decumana ... jugo; construe with consequerunt. The rear of the camp, where the decuman gate was situated (see plan), occupied the summit of the hill.

15. Nostros victores, our victorious troops, or our troops (men) as victors. Nostro is used substantively, and victores is in apposition with it.

19. Alli allam ... ferebantur, they fled (were borne) in terror (terrified), some in one direction, others in another. G. 459, 1.

21. Equites Treviri; the cavalry of the Treviri. Equites, subject of contenderunt. Treviri, used as an adjective.

23. Cum vidissent, when they had seen.


30. Caesar; subject of processit, p. 41, line 6. — Ab ... cohortatilone, after (from) exhorting the tenth legion. Caesar here resumes from p. 39, line 14, the account of the part which he himself took in the battle.

31. Ubi vidit, where he saw. Here commences the description of the scene of confusion and ruin which met the eye of Caesar when he reached the right wing. — Urgeri, esse. These infinitives, with several others, depend upon vidit.

33. Quartae ... centurionibus. The student will remember that there were six centurions in each cohort, and ten cohorts in each legion. See note on omnium ordinum, p. 21, line 4.

34. Signo amisso. The loss of a standard was regarded as a great disgrace.

36. Primipilo, the chief centurion. The primipilus, as the chief centurion of the legion, was intrusted with the eagle, or standard of the legion.

1. Deserto proelio, abandoning the contest. G. 431.

4. In angusto, in a critical condition.

5. Militi; G. 386, 2.

6. Eo, thither.

8. Manipulos laxare, to open their ranks.

9. Cujus; i. e., Caesaris. — Millibus; G. 386.

10. Pro se quisque, each one for himself; i. e., irrespective of the others.

11. In extremis suis rebus, in their most critical situation.

15. Legiones; i. e., the twelfth and the seventh. — Conversa signa... inferrent, to face about and advance against the enemy; lit., to bear the standards turned about. The two legions, when united, probably formed a rectangle, thus facing the enemy on all sides.

16. Cum alius... ferrent, since they bore aid, one to another. G. 461, 3.


22. Labienus castris. Labienus, in command of the ninth and tenth legions, having driven the Atrebates across the river (p. 39, line 33), had reached the enemy's camp on the other side.

24. Legionem subaldis nostris; G. 390, II. — Qui cum, when they; i. e., the soldiers of the tenth legion. G. 445, 5.

26. Versaretur, were. G. 463, I.

27. Nihil... fecerunt, they made all possible haste; lit., they made nothing (of) left; i. e., left nothing undone. — Reliqui; Predicate Genitive. G. 483.

29. Ettam qui, even those who. Supply ii.

31. Occurrerent. Supply ut, from line 29; so also before praeferrent.

32. Turpitudinem fugae. See p. 38, line 22.

33. Legionaris... praeferrent, placed themselves before the legionary soldiers; i. e., they sought to outdo them in deeds of valor.

37. His refers to proximi. — Qui. Supply ii.

38. Conjicerent, remitterent. Supply ut from line 35.

42 1. Ut, so that. — Non nequidquam, not in vain; i. e., not without reason and a deliberate purpose; construe with transire.

3. Flumen; i. e., Sabim. See p. 37, line 1.

4. Quae facilia redigerat, had rendered these things easy.


9. Dixeramus. See note, p. 30, line 4. — Victoribus... impedimentum, that nothing was difficult for the victors. G. 391.


The Nervii seem to have exaggerated their loss to excite the compassion of Caesar.

18. Ut . . . prohiberent; G. 498, II. — Ab injuria, from injury; i. e., from injuring the Nervii.

XXIX.—XXXIII. War with the Aduatuci. They surrender, but afterwards attempt to surprise the Romans, and are utterly overthrown.

20. Supra scripsimus. See Chapter XVI.
23. In unum oppidum. The situation of this town is not known.
24. Cum . . . partibus haberet, while this had around it (in circuitu) on all sides. The town occupied the summit of a hill which was precipitous on all sides except in one place, two hundred feet wide, where there was a gentle ascent.
27. Pedum; construe with aditus. — Duplici muro, with a double wall; i. e., with two walls, one within the other. In front of the outer wall they had also dug a trench. See p. 43, line 33.
30. Cimbris Teutonis. See Dict.
32. Citra Rhenum, on this side (i. e., the south side) of the Rhine.
33. Custodiam, praesidium. Here custodiam is used of those who had the immediate care of the baggage, while praesidium refers to the soldiers who guarded it.
34. Post eorum obitum, after their overthrow; i. e., after the overthrow of the Cimbri and Teutones (eorum) by C. Marius, 101 B. C.
36. Illatum defenderent, warded it off when waged against themselves. With illatum supply bellum sibi.
37. Hunc locum, this place; i. e., the territory which they then occupied, situated between the Meuse and the Scheldt.
2. Pedum duodecim, twelve feet in height.
3. Quindecim millium. Supply passuum, as usual. Some critics supply pedum. The works here spoken of were constructed by the Romans to enclose the besieged city.
7. Ab tanto spatio, at so great a distance, so far off.
11. Considerent; G. 523, II., 1.
14. Qui; subject of dixerunt. The object of dixerunt begins with suaque, and embraces the rest of the chapter.
17. Se suaque; object of permittere. The subject se is omitted. G. 523, I., foot note 2.
18. Petere, deprecari. Deprecari is more specific than petere, and means to strive to avert by prayer; unum deprecari, that they implored him not to do one thing, viz., ne se armis despoliaret.
23. Sibi praestare, that it was better for them.
28. Aries. The battering-ram was used to batter down the walls and towers of besieged cities. It consisted of a heavy beam with a massive iron head. It was suspended from a framework by means of ropes or chains, and, in the hands of a hundred men, could be driven against the walls with almost irresistible force.
29. Nisi armis traditis, unless the arms be given up.
30. In Nervis, in the case of the Nervii.
31. Ne quam; construe with injustam.
32. Quae . . . facere, that they were already doing those things which were commanded; i. e., by Caesar. This is the report brought back by the ambassadors after they had communicated Caesar's commands to their people (re nuntiata ad suos).
35. Adaequarent; Subjunctive of Result. G. 500.
37. Pasci usi sunt, they availed themselves of peace. G. 421, I.
38. Quod . . . crediderant. Observe the force of the Indicative. G. 516, I.
4. Denique, at least.
5. Scutis . . . Intextis, with shields made of bark or of intertwined osiers.
10. Significatione facta, a signal having been given.
13. Contra eos qui jacarent, against those who (i. e., any who) were hurling. The subjunctive jacarent makes the remark a general one; the indicative would have limited it to Caesar's men. G. 503, I.
15. Ad millibus quattuor, about four thousand.

XXXIV., XXXV. Other events of the Campaign.

28. Miserat, had sent. This must have been after the battle with the Nervii, for the eight legions were all present in that engagement. See p. 38, lines 7-9. — Venetos . . . Redones. These states were situated on or near the coast between the Loire and the Seine.
BOOK III.

25. Oceanum; i.e., the Atlantic.
30. Incoerent; G. 529, II. — Mitterentur; Subj. of Result.
35. Ubi . . . gesserat. Perhaps Crassus, and not Caesar, should be supplied as the subject of gesserat; because the Carnutes, Andes, and Turones, situated on the Loire, were near (propinquae) the scene of the military operations of Crassus, but quite distant from the scene of Caesar's campaign.
37. Ex litteris, in consequence of the despatches. — Dies . . . supplicatio, a thanksgiving for fifteen days. Public thanksgivings had often been decreed by the senate after signal victories, but never before for so long a period as fifteen days.
38. Quod, which, referring to the general idea contained in dies . . . decreta est.—Nulli; G. 561, II.

BOOK THIRD.

CAMPAIGN OF THE YEAR 56 B.C., IN THE CONSULSHIP OF CN. CORNELIUS LENTULUS MARCELLINUS AND L. MARCIUS PHILIPPUS.

I. EXPEDITION OF GALBA AGAINST CERTAIN ALPINE TRIBES. I-VI.
II. WAR WITH THE VENETI. VII-XVI.
III. WAR WITH THE VENELLI. XVII-XIX.
IV. EXPEDITION OF CRASSUS INTO AQUITANIA. XX-XXVII.
V. EXPEDITION OF CAESAR AGAINST THE MORINI AND THE MENAPII. XXVIII, XXIX.

I. Winter Quarters of Galba.

1. Servium Galbam; the great-grandfather of the Emperor Galba. 45
5. Quod . . . volebat. This clause supplies the place of a Predicate Nominative after finit. — Iter; subject of pateferi.
6. Quo, by which, referring to iter. — Magnis cum portolis, with heavy imposts. This refers to the imposts levied by these Alpine tribes upon all the merchandise carried through their territory. Caesar wished to open a route by which merchandise might be brought into Gaul free of duty.
10. Eorum refers to the tribes above mentioned.
II.-VI. The Gauls attack Galba, but are repulsed. He retires into the Roman Province.

20. Hibernorum, of their wintering, or of the winter. Hiberna, which properly designates the winter quarters themselves, here refers to the time spent in them.

21. Ec, thither; i.e., to him in his quarters.—Per exploratores. Why not the Ablative with a or ab? G. 415, I., 1, note 1.

25. Id, accident ut, it had happened that. Id represents the clause ut caperent. G. 636, III., 7.

27. Primum quod... despicebant. This is the first reason assigned for the movement of the Gauls. —Neque eam plenissimam, and that indeed not very full. G. 451, 2. This legion had suffered severely in the battle of the Sambre, so that it was not full even before the two cohorts were detached for service among the Nantuates. See p. 40, lines 32-37.

28. Commeatus; probably Genitive.

30. Tum... quod... existimabant; a second reason.

3. Accedebat, quod, an additional reason was that. Quod... habe- bant supplies the subject of accedebat.

4. Abstractos. Supply esse.—Obsidum nomine, under the name of hostages. G. 419, III.

7. Sibi persuasum habebant, they were persuaded; lit., had it per- suaded to themselves. Sibi depends upon persuasum. G. 385, II.

9. Neque satis esset provism, nor had sufficient provision been made.


18. Ut... contenderit, that they should hasten to a place of safety, lit., to safety.

19. Pervenissent; Subj. in an Indirect Clause. G. 529, II.

21. Ad extremum, to the last; i.e., as a last resort.—Rel eventum experiri, to try the issue of the movement.

23. Vix ut; more emphatic than ut viz. —His rebus... administrandis, for arranging and executing these measures.

25. Decurrere, conjiacere, repugnare, etc.; Historical Infinitives. G. 536, 1.

27. Ex loco superiore; i.e., from the ramparts.
BOOK III.

28. Ut quaque pars, when any part; lit., as each (every) part.

30. Hoc superari, they were surpassed in this; i.e., they labored under this disadvantage, explained by quod ... suceedebant.

31. Proelio excedebant, were continually withdrawing from the battle; i.e., they withdrew one after another, as they became weary, and fresh troops took their places.—Integris viribus; G. 419, II.


38. Languidioribus nostris, as our soldiers were becoming more exhausted. G. 431.

2. Ad extremis casum, to the last extremity.—Baculus. See 47 p. 40, line 38.

3. Proelio; G. 429.

7. Extremum auxilium, the last resort.

8. Miltetes certiores facit, he directs the soldiers.

9. Intermittent, excipertent. G. 523, III.

13. Omnibus portis, through (by) all the gates. G. 420. See note, with plan, on legionis decimae, p. 39, line 30.


16. In spem venerant, had entertained the hope; lit., had come into the hope.

17. Circumventos interficiunt; G. 549, 5.


22. Armisque exutis, and stripped of their arms. They had thrown away their arms in flight. Exutis agrees with copii.

23. Saepius, too often.

24. Allo consilio, with one purpose; i.e., to open free communication with Italy by way of the Alps.


VII., VIII. The Veneti Revolt.

31. Cum, though.—Omnibus de causis; construe with consequit se.

32. Expulsis Germanis. This seems to refer to Ariovistus and his Germans. See Book I., 53.

33. Atque ita, and accordingly.

37. Mare Oceanum, the ocean; i.e., the Atlantic. G. 433, note 3.

1. Praefectos tribunosque. See note p. 20, line 21.

2. Frumenti; construe with petendi causa.


7. Orae; Partitive Genitive, depending upon amplissima.


10. In magnino impetu ... aperto, in consequence of (lit., in) the
great violence of the open sea; lit., the great and open violence of the sea.

12. *Fit initium retinendi Silii*, a beginning is made by detaining (lit., of detaining) Silius.

13. Se obsides. *Se* is the subject of recuperaturas (esse) and obsides the object.

16. *Subita et repentina*, sudden and unexpected. *Subitus* is applicable to whatever takes place suddenly; *repentinus* only to that which is at once sudden and unexpected.

19. *Acturos*. Supply *se* and *esse*.

20. *Ut mallet*; Subjunctive of Purpose.


25. *Sibi, to them*; *i. e.*, to the Gauls.

IX. — XI. Caesar prepares for the War.

27. *Ipse aberat longius*. Where was Caesar at this time? See p. 47, line 34. — *Naves longas*. See Dict.

32. *Simul quod . . . intelligebant*, as at the same time they understood.

33. *In se, against themselves*.

34. *Legatos . . . conjectos*. Supply *esse*. The clause explains *facinus*, and depends upon *intelligebant*. — *Quod nomen, a name which*; lit., *which name*.

38. *Hoc majore spe, with the greater hope on this account; explained by quod . . . confidebant*.

49 1. *Pedestria itinera, approaches by land*. — *Aeustautia*. Some of these estuaries, upon the coast of the Veneti, extend inland to the distance of five or ten miles. — *Navigationem . . . inscientiam, that access by sea was difficult* (impeded) on account of our ignorance.

4. *Diutius, very long*. — Ac jam ut, and even though. G. 515, III.

8. *Longe allam . . . atque, very different from what it was*; lit., *far other than* (and). G. 459, 2.

9. *In concluso mari, in a closed sea*; referring to the Mediterranean.

11. *Naves quam plurimas possunt, as many vessels as they are able*. G. 444, 3.

17. *Erant hae, quas, were these which*.

19. *Injuriae retentorum, etc., the crime of retaining Roman knights*; lit., *the wrongs of the Roman knights retained*. This refers to the ambassadors mentioned in the preceding chapter, who, it appears, were of equestrian rank. *Injuriae, rebellio, defectio, conjuration*, and the clause *ne . . . arbitrorientur*, are all in apposition with *multa*, and present the considerations which led Caesar to enter upon this war.
BOOK III.

25. Præsquam conspirarent; G. 524.
30. Adeat; G. 499, 2.
38. Qui eam ... curet, to see that that force (i.e., the force of these
three tribes) be kept separate; i.e., be prevented from effecting a union
with the other forces. G. 497.
1. Classi depends upon praecit. See also 106, 107.
4. Eo, thither; i.e., into the country of the Veneti.

XII.—XIII. The Country of the Veneti. Their Maritime
Power.

6. In extremis lingulis, at the very end of tongues of land. G. 440,
2, note 1.
7. Pedibus, by land; lit., by feet.
8. Ex alto se incitavisset, had rushed in (had roused itself) from
the deep.
11. Utraque re, by both facts; lit., each thing; i.e., by the danger
attending an approach by land at high tide, and by sea at low tide.
12. Magnitudine operis, by the greatness of our work; i.e., of the
Roman works.
13. Extruso mari, the sea being kept out.—His, these; i.e., aegra
ac molibus; Abl. Absolute.—Moenibus depends upon adaequatis.
14. Fortunis; G. 386, 2.
15. Cujus rei, of which; lit., of which thing; referring to the ships
(navium).
18. Eo, on this account; viz., quod ... navigandi.
20. Marle, aestibus, portibus; Ablatives Absolute.—Rarls ... portibus, with few and almost no harbors.
22. Namque, for, introducing the reason for the success of the enemy.
—Ipsum naves, their vessels, in contrast with those of the Romans.
23. Armatae, equipped.
24. Excipere, to encounter.
27. Totae; G. 443.—Ad quamvis ... perferendam, for sustain-
ing any force and violence whatever.
28. Transtra ... trabibus, cross-beams (consisting of timbers a foot
in thickness; lit., in height.—Trabibus; G. 419, II.—Digitii ... crassit-
tudine, of the thickness of a thumb. G. 419, II.
30. Pro funibus, instead of ropes.—Pelles pro vells, skins served
as soils; lit., were for soils. Supply erant.
31. Alutae teniutur confectae, thinly dressed leather.—Hae, re-
ferring to pelles alutaeque, is the subject of erant, to be supplied.
35. Cum his... erat, the encounter with these vessels was such for our fleet.

36. Ut... praestaret, that it (our fleet) excelled.

51 1. His; G. 383, I. — Nostrae. Supply naves. — Rostro, with the beak. The beaks of ancient ships of war, consisting of solid beams armed with pointed irons, were very formidable in dashing in the sides of the enemy's vessels.

5. Coepisset; ferrent. Observe that coepisset and dedissent depend upon cum, but ferrent, consistere, and timentur upon ut. G. 521, II., 2; 501, I., 1.

7. Nihil; G. 378, 2. — Quarum rerum omnium casus, disasters from all these things.

XIV.—XVI. Caesar conquers the Veneti in a naval Engagement.


11. Neque his noceri posse, nor could any injury be done to them. — Noceri; G. 483, 1.

14. Omnis genere... ornatisalmae, most fully furnished with every kind of equipment. Here armorum probably includes arms, as well as the tackle and the ordinary equipment of a vessel.

15. Nostris; i.e., nostris navibus. G. 391, I.

16. Bruto; construe with constabat.

18. Agerent, insisterent; G. 529, I.

20. Turribus excitatis, though towers were erected; i.e., upon the Roman vessels.


22. Missa ab Gallis, those sent by the Gauls. — Gravius, with greater force.

24. Falces; in apposition with res. — Non absimili... falciun = forma non absimili formae muralium falcium, of a form not unlike that of mural hooks. G. 419, II. The mural hooks were powerful iron hooks, fastened to long poles, used in pulling down the walls of besieged towns.


33. Nullum... factum, no deed a little braver than usual.

38. Binae ac ternae naves, two and even three (of our) vessels at a time.

52 4. In eam partem, quo... forebat, in the direction in which the wind was blowing.

5. Malacia, the going down of the wind, a caim.

6. Tranquillitas, stillness, as the result of the going down of the wind.

8. Singulas, the ships one by one. Supply naves.
BOOK III.

15. Navium quod ubique fuerat, whatever vessels they had anywhere; lit., what of vessels.
16. Reliqui, the others, in distinction from quibus, which seems to include both men and ships.
17. Neque ... recipiunt, habebant, neither know (had) whither to betake themselves. G. 529, I.
19. Ex gravius ... quo, the more severely for this reason, that.
22. Sub corona, as slaves; lit., under the crown, referring to the chaplet placed on the head of the prisoner when offered for sale.

XVII. Quintus Titurius Sabinus is sent into the Country of the Venelli.

24. Quas ... accipserat. See p. 49, line 37.
25. Hic, these; i.e., the Venelli. G. 386.
27. Exercitum magnasque copias. He had not only assembled the regular army, but had also raised additional forces by new levies. — His paucis diebus; G. 429.
29. Auctores bellii esse, to sanction the war; lit., to be the authors of the war.
32. Ab agricultura ... revocabat, detained from agriculture.
34. Idoneo ... loco, in a place in all respects suitable. G. 424; 425, 2.
1. Opinionem timoris, an impression (on the part of the enemy) of his fear.
2. Id faciebat, he did this; i.e., he kept himself in the camp.
3. Cum multitudine; construe with dimicandum (esse).
4. Ex absente qui, in the absence of him who; i.e., Caesar.
5. Legato; G. 388.

XVIII., XIX. Sabinus defeats the Venelli.

11. Pro perfuga, as a deserter.
12. Timorem ... proficiscatur; the false report of this pretended deserter.
13. Neque longius ... educat, and that it is not farther off than the next night that Sabinus will secretly lead forth his army from the camp; i.e., that he will do so on the next night; lit., nor is it farther off but that Sabinus, etc.
16. Neogoti bene gerendi, of fighting a successful battle.
17. Iri oportere, that they ought to go; both verbs Impersonal.
232

NOTES.

58 18. Superiorum . . . cunctatio, the delay of Sabinus during the previous days. G. 393, note; 398, 2.
21. Spes Venetici bellic. They had not yet heard the result of this war. See Chapter XVI.
22. Prius; construe with quam in the next line.
25. Ut explorata victoria, as if victory were already secured; lit. victory having been as it were already secured. Ut = sicut.
26. Quibus compleant; Purpose. G. 497.
33. Hostibus; G. 431.

54 1. Equites; subject of reliquerunt.
2. Ex fuga evaserant, had escaped from flight; i.e., were no longer in flight.
5. Titurio = Titurio Sabino.
7. Minime resistens, by no means resolute.

XX.—XXII. Crassus defeats the Sontiates.

11. Ex tertia parte . . . adestimanda, is to be regarded as the third division of Gaul; i.e., as one of the three general divisions; lit., from the third part.
13. Paucis ante annis, a few years before, probably in the year 79 B.C., in the war with Sertorius.
19. Civitates, cities. — Galliae provinciae = Provinciae Romanae, of the province. — Finitimae; construe with civitates.
22. Quo plurimum valebant, in which they were very powerful.
29. Superioribus victoribus; probably those over Valerius and Mallius, mentioned in the last chapter. G. 425, 1, 1), note.
30. Sine imperatore, without their commander; i.e., without Caesar.
31. Sine . . . legionibus. It will be remembered that Crassus had, in addition to his cavalry, only twelve cohorts. See p. 49, line 34. — Adolescentulo duce, with a young man (Crassus) as their leader.
32. Perspicil. The subject is the clause quid . . . possent.
33. Vertere = verterunt.
34. Oppidum Sontiatum; perhaps the modern Sols.
35. Vincas turreisque. See notes, p. 35, lines 26 and 29. — Illi; subject of mittunt.
36. Cuniculis. These were subterranean passages which the Gauls opened under the Roman works, for the purpose of undermining them.
37. Cujus rel, in which thing; i.e., in constructing these mines (cui niciu). G. 399, I., 2.
9. Commodis; G. 421, I.—Quorum; construe with amicitiae.—55
Dediderint; G. 529, II.

11. Ferant, consuliscant; construe, like fruantur, with uti.

13. Recusaret; G. 503, I.—Cum his Adcantuanus. This is a
repetition of Adcantuanus cum sexcentis devitis, justified by the long in-
tervening parenthesis.

17. Tamen, yet; i. e., though he attempted to escape.—Uti . . uste-
retur; G. 498, II.

XXIII.—XXVII. Crassus conquers the Aquitani.

21. Oppidum; subject of exspugnatum (esse).

22. Paucis diebus, quibus ... erat, in a few days after; lit., in
which) he had arrived. G. 430, note 2.

25. Citerioris Hispamiae, Hither Spain; i. e., Spain north of the
River Ebro. G. 401.


29. Omnes annos, during all the years; i. e., all the years of the
war, from 80 to 72 B. C.

32. Consuetudinie; G. 416. They had learned the Roman mode of
warfare from Sertorius.

33. Quod, this, referring in part to the preceding sentence, but more
fully explained by suas copias ... diduci ... augeri.


38. Quin pugna decertaret, to contend in battle. G. 504, 3.

3. Duplce acie, in a double line of battle; i. e., with two lines of 56
cohorts, instead of three, the usual number. See note on triplicem aciem,
p. 12, line 25. By this arrangement Crassus presented a more extended
front.

4. Auxilia. Crassus, having but little confidence in the auxiliaries,
placed them in the centre, and not, as usual, on the wings.

10. Sese ... coepissent, should begin to retreat. G. 525, 2.

11. Sub carcina. See note on impedimentorum, p. 37, line 16.—In-
firmitore animo, more depressed in spirit; lit., of (with), more depressed
(weak) spirit. G. 419, II.

14. Sua, their; referring to the enemy.—Opinione timoris, by the
opinion (now entertained by the Romans) of their cowardice.—Hostes;
subject of effusissent.

16. Exspectari, iretur; Impersonal Passive. Render like the Per-
sonal Active, to hesitate, to go. The clause exspectari ... iretur is in ap-
position with voces.


22. Lapidibus, tells, cespitibus; Abls. of Means.—Ad agge-
rem. Supply faciendum.
NOTES.

56  25. Ex loco superiore; i. e., from their fortifications.
    26. Circumita... castris; G. 431.
    28. Ab decumana porta, at (from) the decuman gate. See note on
        castris, p. 6, line 28.
    33. Praesidio castris; G. 390. Intritae ab labore, not worn out
        by labor. G. 415, I., 2.
    34. Ne possent; Subjunctive of Purpose. G. 497.
    36. Eas... munitiones; i. e., those near the decuman gate.
    37. Prius quam... videri. Supply possent.

57  1. Posset. The subject is quid rei gereretur. G. 529, 1; 520, II.
    3. Consuevit, is wont. G. 297, I., 2.
    5. Per munitiones; over (through) the fortifications.
    7. Quae, referring to millium, is the subject of convenisse.
    9. Multa nocte, late at night.
    11. Ulter, moreover. Quo in numero, in this number; referring to
        maxima pars Aquitaniae.
    14. Tempore; G. 425, 1, 1), note.

XXVIII. Caesar marches against the Morini and the
         Menapii.


20. Qui, but they; i. e., the Morini, etc. G. 453. Longe alia...

Galli, in a way far different from the other Gauls; lit., far other than the
other Gauls. G. 459, 2. Galli; subject of gestorant, to be supplied.

22. Contendissent; G. 524.

23. Continentesque silvas habeant, and because (quod) they had
    extensive forests.

30. Compluribus; i. e., of the Gauls. Longius, too far. G. 444, 1.
    — Locis; G. 425, II., 1.

XXIX. The Campaign is interrupted by violent Rains.
       Caesar retires into Winter Quarters.

32. Reliquis deinceps diebus, in all the remaining days. Deinceps
    implies an uninterrupted series.

33. Ne quis impetus, that no attack. Militibus; G. 431.

35. Conversam ad hostem, facing the enemy; i.e., before the enemy.

37. Confecto, finished; i. e., cleared.

38. Extrema impedimenta, the rear of the baggage; i.e., of the
    enemy.
BOOK IV.

3. Sub pellibus, in the tents, lit., under skins; i.e., the skins with which the Roman tents were covered.

5. In Aulercis; construe with in hibernis collocavit.

6. Quae proxime...fecerant, which had last made war upon him, viz., the Veneti, the Venelli, and the Sontiates.

---

BOOK FOURTH.

CAMPAIGN OF THE YEAR 55 B.C., IN THE CONSULSHIP OF CN. POMPEIUS MAGNUS AND M. LICINIUS CRASSUS.

I. EXPEDITION INTO GERMANY. I.-XIX.

II. EXPEDITION INTO BRITAIN. XX.-XXXVI.

III. WAR WITH THE MORINI AND THE MENAPIL. XXXVII., XXXVIII.

---

I.-III. Two German Tribes come into Gaul.

1. Hieme; construe with transierunt. G. 429. — Qui fuit...con- sullibus, this (lit., which) was the year when Gnaeus Pompey and Marcus Crassus were consuls. This is somewhat parenthetical, but is added to show to what year these events belong. — Qui; G. 453.

2. Germant, Germans; i.e., a German tribe.

4. Quo, into which; lit., whither.

5. Quod ab...prohibebantur. This clause supplies the place of a predicate noun after fuit. G. 362. — Suebis. The Suebi occupied a vast tract of country extending from the Baltic to the Danube and from the Elbe to the Vistula.

9. Singula millia, each a thousand; lit., single thousands; i.e., a thousand apiece.

11. Illos, those; i.e., the warriors. — Hi, these; referring to reliqui.

12. Ratio atque usus bellii, the theory and practice of war.


16. Maximam partem, for the most part. G. 373, 2. — Lacte; G. 420.

17. Quae res, and this fact; referring to the mode of life just mentioned. — Res; subject of ati, officit.

18. Quod...faciant. This explains libertate vitae. — Nullo officio
39 assuetudine, accustomed to no duty; lit., accustomed, trained in (by means of) no duty.

20. Faciant; G. 516, II. — Magnitudine; G. 419, II.

22. Locis frigidissimis, though their country (lit., places) is exceedingly cold. G. 431. — Vestitus; Partitive Genitive with quidquam.

25. Magis, eo, ut, the more for this reason, that. — Quae. Supply ea, as the antecedent of quae and as the object of vendunt.

26. Quibus. Supply eos, as the antecedent of quibus and the object of habeant. — Quam quo, than because.

27. Jumentis depends upon sustinentur.

30. Haec ... ut sint efficiunt, these they make, by daily exercise, capable of the greatest labor. — Haec; i. e., haec jumenta, is the antecedent of quae and the subject of sint.

60 1. Ut sint; G. 500. — Laboris; Predicate Genitive. G. 401.

2. Pedibus, on foot; lit., on their feet. G. 425, I, 1).


8. Ex re, by this; lit., by this thing; i. e., wine.


13. Una ex ... a Suebis, in one direction from the Suebi.

15. Ut est ... Germanorum, according to the German standard; lit., as is the capacity of the Germans; i. e., so far as a German state can be ampla atque florens.

16. Eiusdem ... ceteris, than the others of the same race; i. e., than the other Germans.

19. Hos; the object of expellere. It refers to the Ubii.

IV. The Usipetes and the Tencteri seize the Territory of the Menapii.

24. In eadam causa, in the same condition; i. e., the same as the Ubii.

30. Trans flumen, on the other side of the river; i. e., on the German side.

33. Vi contendere, to accomplish their object by force.


61 2. Hís, córum. These words refer to the Menapii, who had returned to their homes.

6. Rórum cópítis, upon their stores; i. e., upon the stores of provisions which the Menapii had collected for their own use.

V., VI. Caesar prepares to carry the War into Germany.

8. Mobiles, impulsive, changeable.
9. Nihil his committendum, that no confidence should be reposed in them; i. e., at such a crisis.

10. Est ... consuetudinis, is a Gallic custom. G. 401. — Ut ... cogant. This clause is in apposition with hoc, while at the same time it denotes result. G. 501, III.

11. Ut connects quaerant to cogant.

12. Audierit; G. 529, I.


16. Quorum; G. 409, III.

18. Et plerique ... respondeant, and since most persons give them answers adapted to their desires.

19. Ne graviore ... occurreret, that he might not encounter a more formidable war. Caesar feared that the Gauls would unite with the Germans.

20. Ad exercitum, to the army, which was at the time in winter quarters. See p. 58, line 7. He himself probably spent the winter, in accordance with his usual custom, in Northern Italy or Cisalpine Gaul.

23. Uti ... discenderent, to withdraw from the Rhine; i. e., to come into the interior of Gaul.

24. Quae postulassent, which they (the Germans) might demand. G. 525, 2.—Fore depends upon a verb of saying implied in invitatos. G. 523, 1.


29. Equitatu imperato. Caesar depended upon the Gauls for cavalry.

30. Constituit, made known his purpose.

VII.—IX. Caesar's Interview with the German Embassy.

32. Quibus in locis. See note on quibus itineribus, p. 3, line 33.

38. Resistere. Supply iiis referring to quicumque.

2. Posse. Supply se.—Sibi, to them; i. e., to the Germans.

3. Attribuant, patiantur; Imperative in the Direct Discourse. G. 523, III.

5. In terris, in the world; it., in the lands.

7. Quae; object of respondere, to be supplied.

8. Exitus, the conclusion. —Sibi; G. 387.


14. Hoc se. Se is the subject and hoc the object of imperaturum (esse.)
NOTES.

18. Proplius se, nearer to them. G. 437, 1.

21. Trans Mosam, across the Meuse; i.e., to the western side of the river. Caesar was at this time between the Rhine and the Meuse.

X. Description of the Rhine and the Meuse.

24. Ex...Vosgeo, qui...Lingonum, from Mount Vosges, which is in the territory of the Lingones; i.e., from that part of the Vosges which is thus situated, as only a portion of it is in the territory of the Lingones.

25. Parte...recepta. This refers to the left branch of the Rhine, called the Waal, which forms a junction with the Meuse.

26. Insulam Batavorum. This island, triangular in form, is bounded on the north-east by the Rhine, on the south by the Waal and the Meuse, and on the west by the North Sea. See Map.


30. Citatus, with a swift current.

33. Sunt, qui, there are some who. G. 445, 5.

34. Pleciibus; G. 420.

XI.—XV. Caesar defeats the Germans with great Slaughter.

37. Ut...constitutum. See line 17 above.

38. Congressi, having met him (Caesar).

63 3. Sibi...faceret, that he would grant them the privilege.

5. Sibi...fecissent, would give them security by an oath; i.e., that they would receive them into their territory, as Caesar had proposed. See p. 62, line 12. — Fecissent; G. 525, 2.

7. Daret; Imperative in Direct Discourse. G. 523, III.

8. Eodem illo, to that same object; i.e., the same as their other proposal, p. 62, line 22. It is, however, more fully explained in the following clause, ut equites reserterentur.

11. Huc, thither; i.e., to the place where he would then be.

13. Praefectos; i.e., the prefects of cavalry.

14. Quil munisierint; Subj. of Purpose. G. 497. The antecedent is quodam, the omitted object of mittit.

15. Sustinerent, to sustain the attack; i.e., to act on the defensive.

21. Legati eorum, their ambassadors; i.e., the ambassadors of the Germans.

23. Rursus resistentibus, when our men in their turn resisted. Supply nostris.
30. Genere; G. 415, II.
3. Exspectare; subject of esse in the next line.
4. Dementiae esse; G. 401.
6. Hostes, the enemy; i. e., the Germans. — Auctoritatis; construe with quantum.
8. Legatis et quaestore. See note on legatos et quaestorem, p. 28, line 11.
9. Diem pugnae, day suitable for battle; lit., day of battle. G. 393, note.
13. Ut dicebatur, as they said; lit., as was said; i. e., by them. —
14. Contra atque esset dictum, contrary to what had been agreed upon. G. 554, I., 2.
16. Fallendo, by deceiving him. — Quos; subject of oblatis (esse).
   According to Caesar’s account the Germans were guilty of the basest violation of good faith. It is entirely possible, however, that Caesar was deceived, and suspected treachery when none was really intended. Some have even supposed that he availed himself of this attack upon his cavalry as an excuse for destroying the Germans.
23. Diessu suorum, by the departure (absence) of their chiefs, detained by Caesar.
25. Perturbantur = dubitant, are in doubt.
29. Quo loco, in this place; i. e., in the camp. G. 425, 2.
33. Ad quos consecutandos, to pursue these. G. 546, 4, 2). This act of Caesar seems to have been an instance of inexcusable barbarity.
37. Ad confluentem . . . Rheni. This probably refers to the confluence of the Meuse with the left branch of the Rhine, also called the Waal. See p. 62, lines 25 and 26.
3. Ad unum omnes, all to a man; i. e., without exception. — Ex 65 tant! . . . timore, after the alarm of so great a war.
9. Libertatem concessit, granted liberty; i. e., allowed them to remain with him as free men.

XVI., XVII. Caesar bridges the Rhine.

11. Quarum . . . justissima, of which the most important (most suitable) was the following. G. 450, 3.
12. Quod; construe with voluit.
13. Suis . . . voluit, he wished them (the Germans) to fear for their own possessions. — Rebus; G. 385, II., 1.
15. Accessit etiam, quod, an additional reason also was that.
NOTES.

23. Se invito, without his (Caesar’s) consent. G. 431.
24. Usu imperii aut potestatis, under (of) his sway (rule) or power.
   G. 401.
29. Occupationibus rei publicae, by his public duties; lit., occupations of state.
30. Exercitum Rhenum; G. 376.
32. Ejus exercitus, of his (Caesar’s) army.
34. Opinionem et amicitiam, by the reputation and friendship.

1. Suae . . . dignitatis esse, to be consistent with his own dignity or that of the Roman people. G. 402.
3. Proponebatur, was clearly seen; lit., was set before him.
4. Id sibi contendendum, that he must attempt it. He accordingly proceed to bridge the Rhine, probably near Bonn.
6. Tigna bina sesquipedalia, two piles each a foot and a half thick. Tigna is the object of jungebat. The distributive bina is used because there were several pairs. See plan on the next page.
7. Dimensa ad altitudinem, etc., adapted to the depth of the river. The longest piles would, of course, be needed in the deepest water.
8. Intervallo . . . jungebat. This means that the two piles were made fast to each other, but were at the same time kept two feet apart. This was probably done by means of strong cross-pieces or ties (stibulis, line 16 below). — Haec cum . . . adegerat, when, by means of machines, he had let these down into the water (immissa), had secured them there (defixent), and had driven them down with rammers.
10. Non subiclae . . . perpendiculum, not like (in the manner of) an ordinary pile, vertically (directe ad perpendiculum); lit., entirely according to the plumb-line.
11. Secundum . . . fluminis, according to the current (nature) of the river; i.e., down the stream.
12. His contraria, opposite to these. G. 391. Contraria agrees with tigna, to be supplied after duo = bina. Duo is admissible in this instance, because the meaning is perfectly clear from bina, in line 6 above.
13. Intervallo pedum . . . parte, at the distance of forty feet down the river (ab inferiore parte). — Contra vim . . . conversa, turned against the force and current of the river. Thus the upper pair of piles sloped down the river, and the lower pair up the river. See plan.
14. Haec utraque, these two pairs.
15. Quantum . . . distabat, which was the distance between the piles; lit., as much as the joint of these piles opened; i.e., the interval between the two piles was two feet, and accordingly a beam two feet thick (bipe-
daulis) was let in between them, and connected this pair of piles with the opposite pair, forty feet lower down the river.

**PLAN OF CAESAR’S BRIDGE.**

I. **View of one Pier.**

![Diagram of a bridge pier with labels]

**I. View of Three Sections.**

![Diagram of three sections of a bridge with labels]

- a Tigna binia sesquipiedalia. — b His contraria duo. — c Bipedales trabes. —
- d Binse utrimque fibulis. — e Directa materia. — f Longuril. — g Crates. —
- h Sublicae obliqueae. — i Defensores.

16. **Binis utrimque fibulis, with two ties on each side; i.e., at each extremity of the beam.** See plan.

17. **Quibus disclusis ... revinctis, as these (i.e., the two opposite**
pairs of piles) were kept apart, and also secured in the opposite direction. Quibus disclusis relates to what has already been described in haec utraque distinebantur. The two pairs of piles inclining towards each other were prevented from inclining too far by the cross pieces or ties inserted in the two acute angles which the large connecting beam made with those piles. The action implied by in contrarium partem revinctis has not been described, because it is at once apparent. As the opposite pairs of piles inclined towards each other, the whole weight of the bridge tended to bring them nearer together. This tendency was just the opposite of the action denoted by disclusis, and is accordingly well expressed by in contrarium partem revinctis.

20. Haec ... contexebantur, these were connected by timbers placed in the direction of the length of the bridge. Caesar, having first described one pier, now proceeds to show how the several piers were connected, and how the bridge was covered.

23. Quae ... excipserent; G. 497, 1.

24. Ailae item ... spatio, others also at a small distance above the bridge. The brevity of the description does not enable us to decide positively whether these were connected with the bridge or not. The words mediocri spatio render it somewhat doubtful, but they may refer merely to the lower end of the pile. Colonel August Von Cohausen, of the Prussian Corps of Engineers, in an elaborate and carefully prepared work upon this bridge, takes this view of the subject, and accordingly connects the piles with the bridge itself. See plan.

XVIII., XIX. Caesar makes an Incursion into Germany.

28. Diebus; G. 429. — Quibus ... coepit erat, after the materials began to be collected. G. 430, note 2; 297, I., 1.

35. Quos ex Tencteris. This refers to the cavalry, who had taken refuge among the Sigambri. See p. 65, lines 15 to 20.

37. In solitudinem. The accusative is necessary to imply that they first went into the desert before they concealed themselves in it.

5. Suebos; subject of dimisisse.

7. Uti demigrarent; G. 497, II.

9. Hunc esse ... regionem, that this place had been selected near the centre of those regions. — Medium agrees with hunc and governs regionum. G. 399.

11. Ibi, there; i., e., in the same place.

18. His rebus; explained by the clauses ut ... injiceret, ut uliscercetur, etc.

17. Profectum; from proficio, not from profiscior.
XX. – XXII. Caesar prepares to invade Britain.  

23. Et si tempus . . . deficeret, even if the season should be insufficient; i. e., too short.

28. His ipsi; i. e., mercatoribus.

30. Gallias. Observe the force of the plural referring to the several divisions. See Dict.

31. Quanta esset; Indirect Question depending upon reperire. G. 529.

33. Neque qui; construe with portus.

36. Ad . . . cognosceenda; construe with praemittit.

37. Idoneum . . . arbitratus, thinking him to be a suitable person.

1. Ad se; G. 449, 1. — Quam primum; G. 170, 2.

3. Huc; construe with convenire.

4. Quam. The antecedent is classem. — Ad Veneticum bellum.

See p. 48, line 27.

7. Qui pollicieantur; G. 497.

8. Dare; for daturos esse. G. 537, note.

11. Commissum; object of mittit. — Atrebatibus superatis; i. e., in the great battle of the Sambre. See p. 39, line 35.

12. Ibi, there; i. e., among the Atrebates.

14. Magni, of great weight, or value. G. 403.

15. Quas possit. Supply adire. — Adeat; G. 499, 2. — Ut fidem sequantur, to seek (follow) the alliance.

16. Se; i. e., Caesarem.

17. Quantum facultatis, so far as the opportunity; lit., as of opportunity. — Quantum; subject of potuit. — Facultatis; Partitive Genitive. — El qui, to him who; i. e., to one who.

21. In his locis; i. e., among the Morini. See line 2 above.

23. De . . . consilio, for their past conduct. See p. 57.

24. Homines; in apposition with the omitted subject of facissent. G. 833, 2. — Consuetudinis; G. 399, 1., 2.


29. Has . . . occupatones, engagements in these trifling affairs.

30. Britanniae, to Britain; i. e., to the invasion of Britain. G. 386.

31. Hic; G. 384, II.

32. Coactus contractisque, collected and brought together. Contractis is more specific than coactus, and refers to the final assembling of the vessels at the place of embarkation.

34. Quod navium; G. 397, 3.

35. Praefectis. These were commanders of the auxiliaries. — Huc succedebant, to this number of vessels (lit., hither) were to be added.

2. In Menapiae; construe with ducendum.
XXIII. – XXVI. Caesar lands in Britain.

8. Solvit, set sail. Supply naves. Caesar probably sailed from the port Itius, which is expressly mentioned as the place from which he embarked on his second expedition into Britain. See p. 77, line 5; also Dict. Itius.

9. Ulteriores portum, the farther port; i. e., farther to the east; referring to the place where the eighteen vessels assigned to the cavalry had been detained. See p. 68, lines 36 to 38.

11. Hora quarta, about the fourth hour; i. e., about ten o’clock in the morning, probably on the 16th of August. G. 645.

16. Dum convenirent; G. 519, II., 2.
20. Monuit... administrarentur, admonished them that all things should be performed, etc.—Ut rel... haberent explains ad nutum... administrarentur.
21. Ut quae... haberent, since they had; lit., as (things) which had. G. 517, 3, 1.

22. Ad nutum et ad tempus, at the word of command (i. e., instantaneously), and at the proper moment.
24. Secundum; construe with ventum and aetum.
25. Aperto... constituit, he anchored off an open and level shore; probably on the coast of Deal. G. 425, II., 1.
28. Quo genere, which kind (of force). G. 421, I.
32. Miliibus; construe with erat desiliendum. G. 388.
33. Illi, they; i. e., the enemy.
36. Omnibus... expediti, with the free use of all their limbs. G. 424.
38. Insuefactos, accustomed to this work; i.e., to this mode of warfare.

4. Naves longas; construe with moveri jussit. See 106.

5. Motus... expeditior, their movement easier to use; lit., for (to) use; i. e., they were more easily managed.

6. Removeri, submoveri. Remove means to remove, referring simply to a change of position, while submovei means to dislodge, to take out of the way.

9. Quae res, which movement.—Usul nostris; G. 390.
13. Qui, he who. This refers to the chief centurion, who bore the eagle; i. e., the standard of the legion.

16. Aquilam... prodere. The loss of the eagle would be a great disgrace.

17. Praestitero; G. 473, 1.
23. Nostri; subject of perturbabantur.
BOOK IV.

25. Allus alia ex navil, one from one vessel and another from another. 70
G. 469, 1.

29. Plures, several; i.e., of the enemy.
30. In universos, against our assembled forces, opposed to aliquos
singulares.
34. Simul = simul ac, as soon as.
36. Neque potuerunt, but were not able. — Equites. The cavalry
had embarked in eighteen transports. See p. 68, line 36. They encoun-
tered a storm, and had not been able to reach the island. See p. 71, lines
21 to 29.

XXVII. The Britons surrender to Caesar.

3. Daturos. Supply esse and se.—Quaeque = et quae.
5. Supra demonstraveram. See p. 68, line 11. For the pluperfect,
see note on dixeramus, p. 30, line 4.
6. Oratoris modo, in the character of an envoy. — Illi, they; i.e.,
the enemy, subject of comprehenderant.
9. Ejus rei, of this; lit., of this thing; i.e., of the imprisonment of
Commius.
11. In continentem, to the continent; i.e., to Gaul.
16. Remigrare in agros, to return to their fields; i.e., to their homes
and usual occupations, as the war was at an end.

XXVIII., XXIX. Caesar’s Fleet encounters a severe
Storm.

19. Post diem . . . quam, on the fourth day after. G. 430, note 1.
21. Supra. See p. 68, Chap. XXII.
22. Superiore portu, the upper port; called, also, ulterior portus.
See note on ulteriorem portum, p. 69, line 9.
26. Quae . . . occasum, which is farther to the west. G. 437, 1. They
were carried toward the south-west.
27. Sui; Objective Genitive with periculo. G. 393, note. — Tamen
ancorils jactis, yet casting anchor; i.e., notwithstanding the violence
of the storm.
30. Luna plena. According to astronomical calculation, this was on
the night of the 30th of August, 55 B. C. — Quil dies, which period.
36. Administrandi, of managing them.
1. Id quod; G. 445, 7.
XXX.-XXXVI. The Britons attack Caesar, but are defeated. Caesar returns to Gaul.

7. Principes; subject of duzerunt in line 13.
11. Quae refers to castrorum.—Hoc, on this account, viz., quod... transportaverat.
13. Factu; G. 547, 1.
14. Rem producere, to protract the war.
17. Rursus here does not mean strictly a second time, but implies that the Britons were resuming their former hostility.—Ex castris, i.e., of Caesar.
18. Ex agris deducere. This refers to the assembling of the forces, as remigrare in agros refers to the disbanding of them. See p. 71, line 16.
20. Ex eventu...ex eo quod, from the fate of his ships, and from the fact that.
28. Reliquis ut...effect, he made it possible to set sail with the rest in safety.
31. Frumentatum; G. 546.
32. Appellabatur septima, was called the seventh; i.e., septima was the name of the legion. The legions were numbered as they were raised, and were afterwards known by the numbers then assigned to them. Caesar had under his command in all eight legions, two in Britain, the seventh and tenth, and six in Gaul, the eighth, ninth, eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth and fourteenth.
33. Hominum, of the men; i.e., of the Britons.—Etiam in castra, even into our camp.
35. Quam consuetudo ferret, than usual; lit., than custom bore. G. 524.
37. Id, quod erat, that which was actually the case, explained by aliquid...consilii.
38. Cohortes, quae...erant. One cohort guarded each of the four gates of the camp. See note on castris, p. 6, line 28.—Cohortes; construe with proficisci jussit.

78 1. Ex reliquis...succedere, two of the other (six) cohorts to take their places on guard. He could spare only two cohorts to guard the gates.
7. Pars una, only one part; i.e., only one place from which grain could be obtained.
BOOK IV.

10. Incertis ordiniibus, as their places were uncertain. In the confusion of the moment they could not readily find their places in the ranks.

12. Hoc est, is as follows.

13. Peregrinat; G. 467, II. — Ipso terrore equorum, by the very terror caused by their horses; lit., dread of their horses.

22. Sustinere, to rein in; construe with consuerint. — Brevi . . . flectere, quickly to control and turn them.

23. Per temonem percurrere, to run along the pole; i.e., to run out on the pole of the chariot, between the two horses.

25. Perturbatis nostris; G. 431. — Novitate pugnae, by the strange mode (newness) of fighting.


32. Qui . . . reliqui, the rest (of the Britons), who were in the fields, departed; i.e., joined the army.

33. Quae continentur; G. 500.

37. Sui liberandi, of freeing themselves; i.e., from the Roman invaders. G. 542, I, note 1. — Daretur depends upon demonstraverunt. G. 529, I.


3. Idem quod, the same thing, which, explained by ut . . . effugerent. 74


10. Spatio; G. 379, 2.

16. Propinquae . . . equinoctii, as the equinox was near at hand. G. 431. The autumnal equinox is meant. Caesar remained in Britain about three weeks.

17. Hieml . . . subjiciendum, that the voyage should be exposed to the storm; i.e., should be made at the stormy season, as might be the case if he should wait for the hostages.

20. Eodem . . . portus, to reach the same port as the rest. The reference seems to be to the two ports mentioned on p. 69, lines 5 and 9.

XXXVII., XXXVIII. War with the Morini and the Menapii.

23. Quibus ex navibus, from these ships; i.e., from the two transports.

26. Non ita magno, not so very large.

27. Circumsteterunt, surrounded them; i.e., the three hundred.

28. Orbe facto, having formed a circle. Thus, though surrounded, they presented a front to the enemy on every side.

29. Ad clamorem, in response to a shout; lit., to a shout.

NOTES.

74  34. Postea ... quam — postea quam; G. 636, V., 3.
75  1. Quo cum, since they; i.e., the Morini.
2. Siccitata paludum, the dryness of the marshes. The plural of the
abstract siccitata is explained by the plural paludum. G. 130, 2. — Quo
se ... non habenter, had no place to which (had not whither) they
could betake themselves.
3. Quo perfugio, which refuge; i.e., the marshes.
9. Eo, thither; i.e., to his winter quarters.
11. Ex litteris ... supplicatio. See note on p. 44, line 37.

BOOK FIFTH.

CAMPAIGN OF THE YEAR 54 B.C., IN THE CONSULSHIP OF L.
DOMITIUS AENONOBARBUS AND APPIUS CLAUDIUS PULCHER.

I. EXPEDITION AGAINST THE TREVIRI. I.—VII.
II. SECOND EXPEDITION INTO BRITAIN. VIII.—XXIII.
III. DISTURBANCES IN GAUL DURING THE WINTER. XXIV.—LVIII.

I.—VII. Caesar returns to his Army, and marches
against the Treviri.

76  2. Ab hibernis. See p. 75, line 8. — In Itallam, into Italy; i.e.,
into Cisalpine Gaul.
8. Uti aedificandas curarent, that they should cause to be built. —
Quam plurimas possent, as many as they could.
5. Modum, style; referring to the general style and fashion of the
vessels.
6. Subductio nesque, and for (ad) drawing them on shore. Roman
vessels, when not in use, were drawn on shore.
7. Quam quibus, than those which. — In nostro mari, in our sea,
i.e., the Mediterranea.
8. Id, he does this. Supply facit. G. 368, 3, note 1.
9. Ibi, there; i.e., in the English Channel, where they were to be
used.
12. Actuanrias, light, easily propelled. They were furnished with oars,
and perhaps also with sails.
BOOK V.  

15. Illyricum. This country also belonged to Caesar’s province.

21. De injuris satisfacere, to render satisfaction for the wrongs done; lit., concerning the injuries.

25. Inter civitates; i.e., between the Pirustae and those whom they had injured.—Dat, appoints.—Qui...constituant, to estimate the damage and determine the penalty.

1. Cujus = cujus generis naves.

3. Ab eo, from this, explained by quin...possent. G. 504.

8. Hunc rei, for this purpose; i.e., to carry out his orders for the assembling of the vessels at port Itius. G. 391.


13. Haece civitas; i.e., the state of the Treviri.—Galliae depends upon plurimum. G. 397, 3.

15. Supra demonstravimus. See p. 49, line 29.

17. Ex quibus alter, the latter of whom.

20. Gerentur; G. 529, I.

21. Cogere; construe with instituit.

23. Ingenti magnitudine; Abl. of Characteristic. G. 419, II.


31. See noluisse; G. 523, I.

33. Dicessu; Abl. of Cause.—Propter...laberetur, should, on account of their thoughtlessness, revolt.

36. Ejus fidel, to his (Caesar’s) protection, implying trust and confidence.

6. Nihil tam secus, still none the less on that account; i.e., although Indutiomarus had complied with his demands, yet.—Principibus, the chiefs; i.e., of the party of Indutiomarus.

8. Merito ejus, in accordance with his deserts; i.e., the deserts of Cingetorix.

9. Magni interesse, that it was of great importance. G. 408, III.

11. Perspexisset; G. 503, I.—Id factum is explained by suam gratiam...minui.

12. Qui fuissest; G. 517.

13. Hoc dolore = hujus rei dolore, with resentment at this.

17. Eodem, unde, to the place from which. They had been unable to reach port Itius.

20. Millium depends upon equitatus.—Numero; Abl. of Specification.


28. Magni animi, of a haughty spirit.

31. Recusandi...causa, for the purpose of objecting or entreatng.
NOTES.

78 33. Ex suis hospitibus, from his friends.

35. Navigandi; G. 542, I.

36. Religionibus, by religious scruples. — Impediri esse dicaret — impediretur, ut dicebat, was hindered, as he said. G. 516, I.

79 2. Fieri depends upon a verb of saying, implied in terricare. G. 523, I.

The subject of Fieri is the clause ut ... spoliaretur.

3. Ut ... necaret explains consiliwm. G. 501, III.

5. Fidem ... interponere; Hist. Infinitive; he pledged his word to the rest.


12. Ne quid; G. 378.

19. Impeditus, occupied; i.e., in the preparations for the voyage.


24. Pro sano, as a sane man.


VIII.—XI. Caesar lands in Britain, gains a victory, and repairs his Fleet.

35. Ipse, he himself; i.e., Caesar. — Pari numero quem, the same number as; lit., which.

80 1. Delatus aestu, having been carried away by the tide. The tide carried him to the north-east, so that he saw Britain on his left, sub sinistra.

2. Secutus, taking advantage of.

3. Qua . . . superiore acetate. See note on aperto, etc., p. 69, line 25.

5. Virtus, the endurance.


17. Consedissent; G. 529, I. — Cohortibus decem. The ten cohorts were probably detailed from different legions.


23. Equitatu; G. 419, I. — Ad flumen, probably the Little Stour, about twelve miles from Deal.


37. Millites, infantry, in distinction from equites.

81 2. Extreml, the rear; probably the rear of the retreating enemy.

5. Subsisterent, held,— the reason assigned by the cavalry; hence the subjunctive. G. 516, II.


14. Fabror deligit. Each Roman legion had its complement of artisans, but deligit seems to imply that he also selected from the ranks any others whose skill could be made available in this emergency.
BOOK V.

16. *In legionibus*; G. 415, I., 1. See p. 79, line 31.
17. *Operae ac laboris*; G. 404.
23. *Eodem, unde, to the same place, from which*; referring to the fortified position which he had taken from the enemy. See p. 80, lines 26 and 32.
25. *Summa *... *administrandi, the supreme command and the entire management of the war*. G. 431.
26. *A mari ... octoginta*. Caesar here estimates the distance by the length of his own march from the coast. — *Hunc cum ... intercesserant, he (Cassivellanus) had been engaged in continual wars with the other states*; lit., *continual wars had existed between him and (with) the other states*.

XII.—XIV. *Description of Britain and its Inhabitants.*

32. *Quos natos ... dicunt, who themselves say that there is a tradition that they were the aborigines of the island*; lit., *born in the island*. — *Quos; subject of natos (esse).*
1. *Gallicis*. For a brief notice of the Gallic dwellings, see p. 94, line 37, and p. 116, lines 7 to 11.
2. *Ad certum ... examinatis, of a definite weight*; lit., *weighed to a certain weight*.
3. *Mediterraneis*. This is incorrect, as the tin mines are in Cornwall, in the south-west of England.
5. *Materia, timber; i.e., wood, trees.*
8. *Animi causa, for the sake of amusement*; lit., *of the mind*; i.e., to divert the mind.
13. *Inferior*. Supply *angulus*.
14. *Militia ... quingenta*. This measurement must include the irregularities of the coast.
17. *Pari spatio ... atque ... Britanniam, with as long a passage (i.e., into Britain) as is that from Gaul into Britain*; lit., *with an equal distance of passage, etc.* — *Pari spatio*; Abl. of Characteristic with *Hibernia*. — *Atque, as*. G. 554, I., 2.
19. *Objectae, lying opposite*; i.e., on this coast.
20. *Dies ... esse noctem; a false report.*
22. *Certis ex aqua mensuris, by accurate measurements by means of water*; i.e., by the water clock, or clepsydra.
24. *Septingentorum millium*; G. 401. The true length is about 890 miles = 610 Roman miles.
NOTES.

25. Tertium; i.e., tertium latus. — Contra septemtriones, opposite the north. This is of course incorrect. Caesar means the north-east side.

27. Millia . . . octingenta. The true measurement is about 550 miles = 870 Roman miles.

The inaccuracy of this description of Britain will occasion no surprise when we consider that Caesar had at this time only the most imperfect means of information upon the subject.

35. Hoc, on this account. G. 416. — Horridiore aspectu; G. 419, II.

37. Parte rasa; G. 419, II.

82 2. Quo = ad quos, to whom; lit., whither.

 XV.—XXIII. Caesar advances into the Interior. Several Tribes surrender. He returns to Gaul.

5. In itinere. The narrative, which has been interrupted by the description of Britain in the last three chapters, is here resumed from p. 81, line 23.

8. Intermisso spatio, an interval having elapsed.
13. Atque illa . . . duarum, and that too (these) the first of two legions.

The first cohort of each legion probably contained its best men.

14. Spatio, space, not time; though in line 9 above, it refers to time.

16. Perruperunt. The subject is illi, referring to hostes.

24. Illi, they; i.e., the enemy.

26. Pedibus, on foot.

31. Allos alli . . . exciperent, they relieved one another in succession.

38. Sic uti ab . . . abisterent, so that they (the enemy) did not keep aloof from the standards and legions.

84 5. Sui colligendi; G. 542, I., note 1.


15. Praefixis, driven into the ground in front of it; i.e., in front of or along the bank.

19. Cum capite . . . extarent, though they were above water with the head only; i.e., though only their heads were above the water.

26. Iis regionibus; G. 425, II., 1.

31. Nostrorum equitum, to (lit., of) our cavalry.

32. Hoc metu, by the fear of this. — Rellinquebatur ut, it remained that; i.e., the result was that.

33. Discedii, to depart; Impersonal Passive.

38. Caesaris fidem secutus, seeking the protection of Caesar.

85 3. Ipsi, while he himself. The connective is omitted.

4. Sese; the object of dedituros. The subject is omitted.
7. Quis praecedit; to preside over it. G. 497. Quis refers to Mandubratius. 85
11. Defensione, protected; i.e., against Cassivellaunus.
20. Natura atque opere, by nature and art.
27. Ad mare, on the sea-coast. — Supra. See p. 82, line 31.
30. Castra navalia, the naval camp described on p. 81, lines 18 to 23.
36. Per Commium, by the aid of Commius.
38. Motus, movements; i.e., the revolts which he had reason to apprehend.

1. Id ... posse, that this (the remainder of the summer) could be easily wasted; i.e., if he remained in Britain.
2. Quid vectigallis, what tribute; lit., what of tribute.
4. Interdict atque imperat, prohibits and commands.
19. Angustius ... collocavit, stowed his soldiers more compactly; i.e., loaded his vessels more heavily than usual.

XXIV.—XXXVII. Distribution of the Legions in their Winter Quarters. Revolt among the Eburones.

24. Angustius provenerat, had been produced (had grown) more sparingly than usual.
28. Quinto Cicero; the brother of the orator. Supply ducendum dedit from the preceding clause.
32. Unam legionem; object of misit. This is a new legion, recently levied north of the Po (trans Padum).
33. Cohortes quinque. Caesar here mentions eight legions and a half, but he may have retained the other half legion with himself at Samoabrina, or may have lost it in Britain.

1. Inoplae; G. 386, II., note 3.
4. Millibus ... continebantur. The measurement seems to be incorrect, as the quarters of Sabinus, in the eastern part of Belgic Gaul, must have been more than a hundred miles from those of Crassus, in the western part of it.
6. Cognovisset; G. 519, II., 2; 525, 2.
7. Summo loco natus, born in the highest station; i.e., of a royal family.
9. In se, toward him; i.e., toward Caesar.
11. Hinc annum; G. 379.
12. Inimicii. See Syn. L. C. 344. — Multis ... auctoribus, with the approval also, of many of the citizens.
22. Diebus . . . quibus, about fifteen days after. G. 430, note 2.
25. Praeco fuisset, had met; i. e., in a cordial manner.
33. Habere. The object is the omitted antecedent of quae.
37. Quinti Titurii = Quinti Titurii Sabini, called simply Sabinus in line 25 above, and Titurius on p. 88, line 22.

3. Plurimum ei debere, that he owed very much to him; i. e., to Caesar.
10. Esse eijusmodi, was of such a nature. — Non minus juris, no less authority.
14. Rerum; G. 399, I., 2.
18. Alterae; G. 151, I.
21. Pro pletate, in respect to his duty to his country. — Habere nunc . . . Caesares, that he now had regard (rationem) to duty in return for the favors of Caesar.
23. Pro hospitio, because of friendship.
25. Ipsorum esse consilium, that it belonged to them to consider. G. 401. Ipsorum refers to Sabinus and Cotta.
30. Quod cum faciat, while he does this.

7. Rem, the fact, explained by quod . . . sustinuerint.
11. Quid esse levius, what is more inconsiderate? G. 523, II., 2.
13. Sero facturos, cum, that they would act too late, when; i. e., that it would be too late to act, when.
17. Profectum. Supply esse. — Neque . . . fuisse capturos, that otherwise the Carnutes would not have adopted. — Fuisse capturos, in the Direct Discourse, cepissent; but in line 20 venturos esse would be, in the Direct Discourse, venirent. G. 527, III.
20. Non hostem . . . spectare, that he looked not to the enemy, but to the fact itself, as his authority.
25. Persuaderet; G. 486, II. — Sine certa re, without sure grounds; i. e., without a good reason.
30. Cottae; construe with consilium.
34. In utramque partem, on each side.

1. Hi, these; i. e., the soldiers.
2. Si . . . liceat, if it should be permitted by (through) you.
12. Dat manus, yields; lit., gives his hands; an expression derived from the battle-field, where the vanquished offered their hands to be bound.
16. Omnia excogitatantur, quare, all things are considered to show why. — Nec = et non.
18. Ut quibus . . . persuasum, as they would do who were persuaded Supply it before quibus.
29. Nostris; G. 391, I.
32. Trepidare, concursare, etc.; Historical Infinitives.
33. Haec. Supply facere. G. 368, 3, note 1. — Atque ut, and is such a way that.
38. Imperatoris. Supply officia.
4. In orbem consisterent, to arrange themselves in a circle. See note on orbe facta, p. 74, line 23.
14. Tota acie, along the whole line. G. 425, II., 2.
15. Illorum, their; lit., of them, referring to the Gallic soldiers.
25. Se; object of recipientes.
28. Eam partem, that portion of the army; i. e., the cohort itself.
31. Qui proximi steterant. The enemy in front of the cohort fell back, while those who stood next on either side closed in around it.
32. Locum tenere, to retain their place; i. e., in the circle, instead of sallying from it.
1. Primum pilum duxerat, had led the first maniple; i. e., had been the chief centurion of the legion.
5. In adversum os, directly in the face.
12. Ipse, to himself; i. e., to Titurius.
15. Ut excedant depends upon communicat. — proposes that they should withdraw, etc., if it should seem best.
19. In praesentia, at the time.
34. Pauci . . . elapsi. As only a few escaped, Caesar must have lost, on this occasion, about six thousand men. The force of Sabinus and Cotta consisted of a legion and a half. See p. 86.

XXXVIII. — XLIV. The Attack upon the Winter
Quarters of Quintus Cicero.

3. Re demonstrata, the subject having been laid before them; refer-
ring both to his successes and his plans.
7. Legatos duos; i. e., Titurius and Cotta.
8. Nihil esse negotii, that it is easy; lit., is nothing of difficulty.—
Oppressam interfici, to be surprised and slain. G. 549, 5.
13. Eorum; i. e., Nerviorum.
14. Cogunt, they (the Nervii) collect.
15. Huc; i. e., to Cicerone.—Quoque refers to the similar experience
of Sabinus and Cotta. See p. 87, lines 25 to 28.
17. Munitionis, of fortifying; i. e., of collecting materials for their
fortifications. See plate III.
26. Propositis, having been offered; i. e., to the messengers.
35. Ad oppugnationem, against the assault.
37. Praeustae, burned at the end; i. e., sharpened and hardened in
the fire.—Muralium pilorum, of mural javelins. These were to be hurled from the walls against those who were attempting to scale them.
38. Turres contabulantur, the towers are furnished with floorings;
i. e., at different elevations, one above another.—Pinnæ loricæaeque
. . . attexuntur, breastworks and pinacles of hurdles are attached to
them; i. e., to the towers. Loricæ seems to designate the main work,
and pinnæ the parts which rise at intervals above the rest.
2. Esset; G. 515, III.
3. Ultra militum concursu, by the assembling of the soldiers of their
own accord.
6. Sermonis aditum, access for conversation.
12. Ab his, from these; i. e., from the Romans in their several quar-
ters.
15. Consuetudinem, the custom; i. e., of wintering in Gaul.
16. Per se, as far as they (the chiefs) were concerned; construe with
licere.
20. Adjutore, as an assistant, or intercessor.—Utantur; G. 523, III.
21. Pro ejus justitiae, in accordance with his (Caesar's) sense of
justice.
23. Ab hac spe; i. e., from the hope of inducing the Romans to
leave their quarters.
28. Manibus . . . exhaurire, to take up the earth with their hands
and carry it away in their cloaks. Exhaurire, strictly applicable only to
manibus, is applied by zygma to sagulis. G. 636, II., 1.
31. Millium . . . quindecim. This statement seems almost incred-
ible. Perhaps there is an error in the text.
38. Ventil magnitudine, in consequence of the violence of the wind.
5. Ut; construe with decrederet.
8. Demigrandi, of retiring from the battle.
13. Recessum prims, etc., the most remote (from the wall) did not
allow any means of retreat to those who were nearest (prims).
22. Qui ... appropinquarent, who were already approaching the first rank; i.e., the rank of chief centurion. G. 503, I.

24. De loco, for precedence.

32. Spatia relictio; i.e., between himself and the enemy.

7. Dejectus, thrown down; i.e., having stumbled in the ardor of pursuit.

XLV. — LIII. Caesar marches to the Relief of Cicero.

14. Quanto gravior — tanto crebriores, the more severe — the more frequent. G. 423; L. C. 450.

16. Res ... pervenerat, the garrison had been reduced (lit., the thing had come) to a small number of defenders.


23. Ad Caesarem. Caesar was probably at Samarobriva, Amiens.

25. Ab eo, from him; i.e., from the slave.

31. Cum nuntio, as soon as he received the message; lit., with the message.

33. Qua ... sciebat, where he knew he must make his journey; i.e., must pass on his way to the relief of Cicero. G. 388.

35. Veniat; in Direct Discourse veni. G. 523, III.

5. Litteras publicas, public documents. — Tolerandae hiemis causa, for the purpose of enduring the winter; i.e., as a supply for the winter.


14. Rem gestam, what had taken place; referring to the revolt and its consequences. See pp. 87 to 92.

17. Consilio ejus, his plan; i.e., the plan of Labienus.

24. Graecis litteris, in Greek characters; perhaps, also, in the Greek language, though that is not definitely stated.

26. Adire, to approach; i.e., so as to deliver the letter.


34. Laetitia; G. 420, 2.

2. Gallum ... repetit, asks again for the Gaul; i.e., for the Gallic slave of Vertico. See p. 96, line 22.

4. Faciat; G. 499, 2.

5. Ad eum, toward him; i.e., toward Caesar.

9. Trans vallem; construe with conspicatur. The expression indicates the situation of the enemy.

11. Tum, moreover, introducing an additional reason for delay.

13. Remittendum de celeritate, that he ought to abate somewhat from his speed.

16. Augustalis viarum, by making the passages (in the camp) narrow; lit., by the narrowness of the passages.
NOTES.

82. Quam ... concursari, that there should be as much running to
and fro as possible.

83. Seu quis ... Romanus, if any one, whether a Gaul or a Roman.

84. In speciem, in appearance. Single rows of turf were placed before
the gates simply to deceive the enemy.

4. Ea — ea parte, in that part, or there; i. e., through the gates.

9. Omnes armis exuit, forced all to throw away their arms; lit.,
stripped all of their arms.

11. Parvulo ... illorum, for inflicting a small damage upon them;
lit., for a slight injury to them.

24. Legati; i. e., Sabini.—Ct acceptum; G. 524.—Hoc, on this
account; viz., quod beneficio ... relinquatur.

26. Eorum, of them; i. e., of the Roman soldiers.

LIII. – LVIII. Disturbances among the Senones and the
Treviri.

28. Per Remos, through the country of the Remi.

31. Eo, there; i. e., at the quarters of Cicero.

32. Orriretur; G. 500, II.

34. Fieret; G. 600, I.

35. Trianis hibernis; G. 174, 2, 3).

100 5. Quid ... capere, what plan the rest were adopting.

10. In his, among these reports. Supply nuntiis.

17. Territando; G. 542, IV.


20. Cavarinum; object of interlocutum.

26. Satisfaciendi causa, for the purpose of making an apology.

28. Principes ... inferendi, leaders of a hostile movement; lit., of
waging war. Principes refers to the Senones.

31. Alteros — alteros, the former — the latter.

33. Fuerit; G. 495, VI.

36. Virtute belli, in martial valor; lit., the valor of war. —Tantum
ejus opinionis, so much of that reputation.

101 5. Uili ... persuaderi, to persuade (be persuaded to) any state.

7. His expertos, had twice tried the experiment. See pp. 15 to 28 and
p. 59.

14. Publice privatimque, for the state and for themselves.

16. Conscientia factornis, by a consciousness of guilt. The Senones
had banished Cavarinus, and the Carnutes had assassinated Tagetius.

19. Hoc, this; i. e., the act of calling an armed council. Hoc is the
subject of est.

20. Quo, to which; i. e., to the council.
BOOK VI.

25. Ab eo, from him; i.e., from Caesar.
26. Huc = ad has civitates.
35. Cogitabat, but was intending. Observe the asyndeton. G. 636, I., 1. — A Cingetorige, from Cingetorix.
16. Dispersae ac dissipati, scattered and dispersed; i.e., in confusion and disorder.
18. Praecipit (he orders) has unum...peterent, etc., as its object, while interdicit (he forbids) has nee quis...vulneret.
21. Illum, him; i.e., Indutiamus.—Mora reliquorum spatium nactum, having gained time by the delay occasioned by the rest; i.e., in slaying the rest.
24. Equitibus subsidio; G. 390. — Hominis; i.e., Labieni.
25. Fluminis. The Meuse, or the Ourthe, one of its branches, is probably meant.
29. Paulo; construe with quietiorum.

BOOK SIXTH.

CAMPAIGN OF THE YEAR 53 B.C., IN THE CONSULSHIP OF CN. DOMITIUS CALVINUS AND M. VALERIUS MESSALA.

I. CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE NERVI AND THE TREVIRI. I.—VIII.
II. EXPEDITION AGAINST THE SUEBI. IX.—XXVIII.
III. WARS AGAINST AMBIORIX AND THE EUBRONES. XXIX.—XLIV.

I. Caesar augments his Army.

3. Delectum habere, to hold a levy; i.e., to raise forces.
4. Ad urbem, near the city; i.e., near Rome. Pompey was at this time proconsul, or military governor of Spain, but remained in person in Italy while he sent his lieutenants into his province.
5. Rel...causa. Pompey was charged with the duty of supplying the city with grain.—Remaneret; G. 516, II. — Quos...rogavisset, whom he (Pompey) had enrolled from Cisalpine Gaul. Consuls sacramento rogares means to bind (ask) with the oath of allegiance to the consul. Rogare is used because the soldiers were asked whether they would be faithful and loyal.
8. Ad opinionem Galliae, for its effect on Gaul; lit., for the opinion of Gaul.
NOTES.

108 11. Majoribus ... coplis, to be replaced by larger forces.
14. Duplicato ... numero. Caesar lost under Sabinus fifteen cohorts, but he has now received from Italy thirty cohorts; i.e., three legions, the first, the fourteenth, and the fifteenth.

II., III. Movements among the Nervii and the Treviri.

18. Propinquos. These had been held by Caesar as hostages, but were probably released after his return from Britain.
22. Confirmant, they ratify the compact.
23. Obsidibus cavent, they give security by means of hostages; i.e., the Treviri give hostages to the Germans as security for the payment of the money.
26. Cisrhenanis Germanis; i.e., the German tribes who had settled in Gaul. See p. 32, line 3.
27. Ad imperatum non venire. See p. 100, line 26.

104 8. Primo vere; G. 440, 2, note 1. — Uti instituerat, as he had been accustomed to do.
10. Hoc, this; i.e., absence from the council. — Omnia postponere, to make all things subordinate; i.e., to his present purpose to crush the rebellion.
12. Hi, these; i.e., the Parisii. — Civitatem conjunxerant, had formed a confederacy with them.
13. Hoc consilio, this conspiracy.
14. Hac re, this fact; i.e., the adjournment of the council to Lutetia. — Pro suggestu, from (in front of) the stand; i.e., from the stand occupied by the general.

IV.—VIII. The Senones and Carnutes submit to Caesar.
The Menapii and Treviri are defeated.

19. Conantibus. Supply convenire. — Priusquam ... posset; before this could be accomplished. G. 520, II.
21. Adeunt per Aeduos, they gain access (to Caesar) through the Aedui.
23. Petentibus Aedulis; G. 431.
34. Hujus iracundia, his violent temper.
35. Pro explorato, as certain; lit., for ascertained.
38. Uni ex Gallia, alone of the Gauls; lit., alone from Gaul.
8. III, from him; i.e., from Ambiorix. G. 386, 2.
BOOK VI.

5. Cum congregi, to form an alliance with.
13. Effectis pontibus: i.e., he bridges the streams which he encounters.
17. Habiturum. Supply eos, as object.
31. Intermisso spatio; i.e., between himself and the enemy.
37. In dubium non devocaturum, that he will not expose.
1. Ut... cogebat, as nature (natural love of country) compelled.
12. Longum esse; G. 476, 5.
23. Illum, him; i.e., the commander, Caesar.
29. Impetum modo, the onset merely; i.e., even the onset.
33. Civitatem recepit, recovered the state; i.e., to Roman authority.
35. Cum his, at the same time with these.
37. Quem... demonstravimus. See p. 77, lines 16 to 20.

IX., X. Caesar crosses the Rhine, and the Suebi retire before him.

1. Postquam venit. The narrative is here resumed from the close of Chapter VI.
3. Miserant, they (the Germans across the Rhine) had sent.
5. Quo ante. See p. 66.
6. Nota... ratione, as the plan was already known and settled; i.e., the bridge was constructed upon the same plan as that built the preceding year.
13. Fidem, their oath of allegiance.
15. Poenas pendant, should suffer (pay) the penalty.—Amplius obisidum, more hostages. G. 397.
20. Omnes; construe with copias.
26. Ad inquam... deduct; i.e., he hoped that they could be induced to fight at a disadvantage.
32. Penitus... fines, back to their most remote frontiers.
35. Cheruscos ab... prohibere, to protect the Cherusci from injuries and incursions on the part of (from) the Suebi, and the Suebi on the part of the Cherusci.

XI.—XX. The Manners and Customs of the Gauls.

1. Ad hunc locum, to this place; i.e., to this point in the narrative.
3. Quo; G. 424, note 1.—Differant; G. 529, I.

7. Eorum judicio, in their judgment; i.e., the judgment of the Gauls.

8. Quorum has the same antecedent as qui in line 6.

11. Auxilli; G. 410, V., 1. — Quisque, each one; i.e., each leader or patron.

12. Si factat, habet; G. 511, 1.


16. Hi, the latter; i.e., the Sequani.

29. Imperfectamente, without having accomplished his object.

32. Eorum, of these; i.e., of the Aedui.

33. Se uti, that they enjoyed. — Reliquis rebus, by all other means.

36. Aedaquale. Supply Aedus as object.

1. Illi, they; i.e., the Remi. — Ita, thus; i.e., by defending their dependants.

3. Longe principes, by far the foremost.

5. Aliquò numero atque honore, of any account and honor. G.

419, II.

7. Nullo; G. 151, 1, note 1.


16. Apud eos, among them; i.e., among the Gauls.


21. Sacrificis interdicunt; i.e., they excommunicate him.

29. Suffragio; construe, like armis, with contendunt.

34. Disciplina, the system; i.e., the Druidical system.

37. Illa, thither; i.e., to Britain.

4. Ibi, there; i.e., in the schools of the Druids.

8. Rationibus, transactions.

13. Hoc persuadere, to inculcate this doctrine.


24. Ut quiesque—ita; G. 458, 2.

27. Religionibus, religious rites.

35. Simulacra; probably colossal representations of their gods, constructed of combustible materials for the temporary purpose.

3. Descendunt, they resort.


18. Posita tollere, to remove those things which have been deposited; i.e., in sacred places.

21. Ab Dite patre, from Dis (Pluto) as their father. They seem to have meant that they were the offspring of the earth, the aborigines of the country.

22. Ob eam causam; i.e., because of their descent from Pluto, the god of the lower world, the realm of darkness and night.
BOOK VI.

25. Ut . . . subsequatur, so that the day follows the night; i. e., they began their day not at midnight, but at sunset.
32. Tantas ex suis . . . communicant, so much from their own property do they add to the dowries.
34. Vita superariit, shall survive the other. G. 424.
1. In servilem modum, like slaves; i. e., by torture, which might be resorted to in the case of slaves.
2. Si compertum est, if their guilt is proved.
4. Pro cultu Gallorum, considering (for) the Gallic mode of life.
5. Vivis cordi fuisse, to have been dear (for the heart) while alive.
G. 390.
6. Paulo supra hanc memoriam, a little before the present generation.
10. Legibus sanctum, established by law. Sanctum belongs to uti . . . communicat.
15. Quae visa sunt, which it has seemed best to conceal; lit., which have seemed good.
17. Per concilium, in the council.

XXI. – XXIV. The Manners and Customs of the Germans.

19. Hac consuetudine; i. e., Gallorum.
23. Vulcanum; a personification, for fire. — Acceperunt, they have heard.
31. Parvis . . . tegimentis, small garments of deerskins.
36. Gentibus cognationibusque; construe with attributum.
37. Quantum; construe with agri.
38. Allo, to another place.
2. Studium . . . commutent, they may exchange the pursuit of war for agriculture. G. 422, note 2.
10. Vastatis finibus, by devastating their frontiers; i. e., the country on their borders.
16. Communis magistratus, general magistrate; i. e., with jurisdiction over the whole country.
23. Profitecantur, may give in their names. G. 523, III. Supply i.
25. Ex his, of these; i. e., of those who had volunteered.
26. Omnium . . . fides, all confidence; lit., of all things.
82. Superarent; G. 521, II., 2, 1).
1. Bellicae . . . opinionem, reputation for martial prowess.
4. Provinciarum; i. e., of the Roman provinces on either side of the Alps.
7. Ipsa, they themselves, the Gauls. — Cum illis, with them, the Germans.

XXV. — XXVIII. The Hercynian Forest.

12. Recta ... regione, in a straight line along (of) the river Danube; i. e., it follows the straight course of the river.
13. Diversa ... regionibus, in a direction away from the river.
15. Hujus Germaniae, of this part of Germany; i. e., of Western Germany, where Caesar then was.
16. Ad initium, to the beginning; i. e., the eastern end.
20. Memoriae probenda, worthy to be mentioned.
21. Bos cervi figura; G. 418, II. Caesar probably means the reindeer, but his description is inaccurate.
22. Unum cornu. The reindeer has a pair of horns.
23. Sicut palmae, like the palm of the hand; i. e., like the open hand.
27. Varietas, varied color.
29. Sine nodis articulisque. This statement is of course incorrect. Caesar was evidently misled by the accounts of others.
30. Affictae, thrown down.
35. Omnes; construe with arbores. — A radicibus subruunt, they undermine at the roots.
37. Infirmas arbores, the weakened trees.

115
1. Est eorum, consists of these. — G. 401.
8. Quae sint testimonio; G. 390, note 2; 497.

XXIX. — XXXIV. Caesar scatters the Forces of Ambiorix, and lays waste the Country of the Eburones.

14. Postquam. After his long digression on the manners of the Gauls and Germans, Caesar here resumes, from p. 107, the account of his expedition against the Suebi.
29. Millibus quingentis; a remarkable exaggeration. An error may have been introduced into the text by some early copyist.

116
3. Priscusquam fama afferetur, before any rumor was brought.
5. Fuit. The subject is ipsum ... mortem. — Omni ... instrumento, every implement of war.
7. Hoc eo factum est, this (the escape) happened in this way.
17. An tempore exclusus, or prevented by the shortness of the time. 116
G. 353, 1.

29. Taxo, with you; probably with the berry.
34. Neve, judicaret; G. 497, II., 1, note.—Omnium esse causam, that the cause of all the Germans was one; i. e., that they had made common cause.
37. Quaestione captivorum, by an examination of the prisoners.
38. Si ita fecissent, if they would do so. G. 525, 2.
9. Ex his tribus ... transduxerat. See p. 163, line 13. 117
17. Scaldem ... in Mosam. Here Caesar's geography seems to be at fault; but some have conjectured that in Caesar's time a branch of the Scheldt actually emptied into the Meuse.
23. Commodo; G. 416.
33. Ab ... dispersis, from the terrified and scattered enemy.
37. Confertos, in compact bodies.
7. Ut ... praetermitteretur, that there might be some omission in injuring; i. e., that less injury should be done the enemy.
12. Legionarius miles = vita legionarii militis.
14. Pro talis facinore, for such a crime. The Eburones had massacred the troops under Sabinus and Cotta, and joined the Nervii in besieging the quarters of Cicero. See pp. 87 to 99.

XXXV.—XLIV. The Sigambri make an unsuccessful Attack upon Aduatuca. Caesar places his Army in Winter Quarters.

19. Possit, afferat. The Present is here used to denote a general truth.
29. Multos ... dispersos, many (of the Eburones) scattered in flight.
34. Prefectum. Supply eum and esse.
37. Fortunatissimis; G. 533, 2, 3).—Tribus horis; G. 429.
1. Praesidii tantum est, there is so small a garrison.
2. Cingi, to be manned; lit., encompassed; i. e., with soldiers.
6. Cicero; subject of mitter, line 18. — Qui continuisset; G. 515, III.
14. Quo offendit posset, by which any harm could be done; i. e., to his men.—Novem ... legionibus, as nine legions were opposed to the enemy; i. e., had gone to meet them.
16. In millibus ... tribus, within three miles; i. e., of the camp.
18. Quas inter; G. 569, II., 1.
NOTES.

119 24. Hoc ipso . . . casu, at this very moment, and in this condition of things.

28. Usque eo, ut, so that; lit., to such an extent that.

29. Recipienti sui, of retiring (betaking themselves); i.e., within the walls. G. 542, I., note 1.

120 2. Qui occiderint; G. 517.


9. Ad Caesarem, with Caesar; i.e., in Caesar's army.

10. Cujus mentionem. See pp. 40 and 47.

17. Per manus tractus, passed from hand to hand.

33. In signa manipulosque, among (into) the standards and maniples; i.e., into the ranks themselves.—Eo magis; construe with perterrent.

34. Cuneo facto; i.e., marshalling their forces in the form of a wedge, so as to penetrate and divide the enemy's line.


121 7. Eo; construe with consilio.

15. Horum, of these; i.e., of the centurions.

22. Ut fidem non faceret, that he did not gain credence. G. 500. —Missa, sent; i.e., by Caesar.

27. Incoluim exercitu, if the army (Caesar's) were safe. G. 431, 2.

29. Ille; i.e., Caesar. —Unum questus, ensuring one thing; explained by quod . . . emissae.


35. Rerum; Partitive Genitive with maxime admirandum.

36. Eo consilio, explained by ut . . . depopularentur.


7. Anni tempore, in consequence of the lateness of the season. The crops had not been gathered at the proper time, and had consequently been beaten down by the heavy rains.


10. In eum . . . ventum est, it came to such a point.

11. Ambiorigem circumspicserunt, looked around for Ambiorix; i.e., they claimed to have just seen him, and turned to see where he had gone.

16. Paulum de exitu videretur, little seemed to have been wanting.

17. Ille, he; i.e., Ambiorix.

22. Duarum . . . damno; G. 419, III.

23. Galliae; construe with consilio.

26. More majorum. The punishment was death by scourging.

27. Quibus; G. 385. —Aqua atque igni; G. 414.

BOOK SEVENTH.

CAMPAIGN OF THE YEAR 82 B.C., IN THE CONSULSHIP OF CN. POMPEIUS MAGNUS AND Q. METELLUS SCIPIO.

I. Revolt of several Gallic Tribes. I.-XIV.
II. Sieges of Avaricum and Gergovia. XV.-LIII.
III. Movements among the Aedui. LIII.-LVI.
IV. Expedition against the Parisii. LVII.-LXII.
V. General Revolt of the Gaule. LXIII.-LXVII.
VI. Siege of Alesia. LXVIII.-XC.

I. - V. Revolt of the Carnutes and Arverni.

2. Clodii caede. The murder of Clodius, a prominent political leader, was immediately followed in Rome by scenes of lawless violence.

3. Ut conjurarent, should take the military oath. The senate ordered a general levy throughout Italy.

6. Addunt, affingunt. The direct object is retineri . . . posse, the antecedent of quod.

15. Qui faciant; G. 503, I.

18. Ut . . . intercludatur; the purpose of rationem esse habendum.

26. Principes . . . facturos, that they will be the first of all to make war.

28. Nerres effebratur, lest their action should become known; the reason why they could not exchange hostages, as that step would attract attention.

29. Collatis . . . signis. By this act, symbolizing union, they pledge themselves to a common work.

1. Continetur, is comprised.

11. Galliae; i.e., of Celtic Gaul.

12. Clamore, by shouting; probably by heralds, stationed at intervals, transmitting the news from station to station.

14. Genabi; G. 425, II.


18. Ibi, there; i.e., in the territory of the Arverni.
22. Incendit. Supply eos; i.e., clientes.—Ad arma concurritur, they rush to arms; i.e., Vercingetorix and his opponents.

27. Quoscumque . . . civitate, whomsoever of the citizens (lit., from the state) he has access to.

38. Quantum; object of efficat.—Quodque ante tempus, and before what time.

5. Singulls . . . oculis, with one of their eyes put out. G. 431.

6. Reliquis documento, a warning to the others. G. 390.

9. Cadurcum, the Cadurcan, or one of the Cadurci.

11. Quorum in fide, under whose protection.

13. De consilio, in accordance with the advice.

15. Qui cum, when they. G. 453; 446, 5.

19. Qubus id . . . cognoverint, who, they ascertained, had this design (this of design). G. 387.

22. Quod . . . constat, because it is not at all clear to us.

VI.—XIV. Caesar returns to Gaul, and enters vigorously upon the Campaign.

28. Magna . . . affluebatur, he was in great doubt; lit., was affected by a great difficulty.

3. Provincialisibus distinguishes the Ruteni of the Province from those in Aquitania.

9. Quod putabat, because he (Lucterus) thought.

26. Opiume praeceperat, had conjectured.—Per causam, under the pretense; used of a feigned purpose.

32. Nactus recentem equitatum, having obtained a fresh body of cavalry; i.e., a fresh escort for his rapid journey.

36. De sua salute, involving his safety.

37. Celeritate praecurreret, he might anticipate it by his rapid movements.

3. Quos ibi . . . collocauerat. See p. 14, lines 28 to 32.

8. Ne defeceret explains difficultatem in line 6.—Ne, lest.

9. In eo, in him; i.e., in Caesar.

10. Videret, it (Gaul) would see.

15. Qui docceant; G. 503, 1; 445, 6.

20. Altero die, on the second day. G. 174, foot-note 4; 429.

30. Quod eo mitterent, to send thither; i.e., to Genabum. G. 497.

31. Diel tempore exclusus, being prevented (from commencing the attack) by the time of the day; i.e., by the lateness of the hour.

32. In posterum. Supply diem.

34. Continebat, connected; i.e., with the opposite side of the river
BOOK VII.  

1. Perpancis desideratis... caperentur, very few having escaped 128 being taken.

5. Exercitum Ligerim; G. 62, III., 1; 376.
8. Oppugnatione; i.e., of Gergovia. See p. 127, line 3.—Caesar;
   G. 392.

9. Ille; i.e., Caesar.
12. Ut conferceret; purpose of jubet.
21. Ex significacione Gallorum, from the conduct (indication) of
   the Gauls.

29. Ad agmen, to the main body of the army, still on the march;
   hence agmen.

35. Se, that he (Caesar). G. 536.
1. Longe alia atque, far other than. G. 459, 2.
2. Huic rel, to this object; explained by ut... prohibebantur.
4. Annis tempore, by the time of the year, as it was winter.
13. Neque interesse, and that it makes no difference.
17. Neu sint... nee, that they may be neither... nor.
18. Romanis proposita, set before the Romans; i.e., become an in-
   vitation to them to plunder (ad opiam... tollandam).
20. Illa; explained by liberis... interfici.

XV.—XXXI. Siege of Avaricum.

27. Hoc solatii, this (of) consolation; explained by quod... conside-
   rant.

34. Flumine; i.e., the Avaria, now the Evere, which flows into the
   Loire.

9. Occurrebatur, the difficulty (lit., it) was met.—Ut iretur, so that
   they went; i.e., by going.

16. Quorum alteri, of whom the latter. G. 459, 3.
21. Usque eo, ut, to such a degree that.
26. Si acerbius... ferrent, if they found the scarcity too severe.
29. Meruissete, had served; lit., had earned; i.e., their pay. Supply
   stipendia.

32. Quam parentarent; G. 502, 2.
2. Eo quo, to the place to which.
14. In civitatibus, according to states.
16. Haesitantis, sticking fast; i.e., in the mire.
17. Propinquatatem loci, the nearness of their position; i.e., to the
   enemy.

19. Iniquitatatem conditionis, the inequality of situation; i.e., though
   the armies were so near to each other, the Gauls had every advantage in
NOTES.

181 situation. — Inani simulations, with an empty show; i.e., of courage, as their pretended courage depended upon their situation.

27. Sua salute, his welfare, with special reference to success and reputation.

30. Vercingetorix; subject of respondit, in line 37.

31. Quod movisset; G. 516, II. — Romanos; G. 437, I.

35. Potulisse depends upon a verb of saying implied in insimulatum.

37. Quod movisset, as to the fact that he had moved. G. 516, 2, note.

182 1. Persuasum — sibi persuasum esse.

2. Qui refers to loci. — Munitone, by its own defences.

6. Cul ret, for which; i.e., for an engagement.

8. Fortunae habendam gratiam, they (the Gauls) should be grateful to fortune.

9. Hunc, to him; i.e., the informer.

15. Remittere, that he resigned the command. Supply imperium.

29. Tantum exercitum victorem, so large a victorious army.

33. Quod refers to armis inrepet. — In eo, in the case of one.

35. Majore ratione, with greater wisdom.

183 1. Summam victoriarum, the whole victory; and of course the glory of it.

4. Cujusque modi, of every kind. — Gallorum, on the part of the Gauls.

8. Cuniculis subtrahebant, they undermined. — Eo, on this account.

11. Turribus contabulaverant = contabulatis turribus instruxerant, had furnished with towers several stories high.

15. Quotidianus agger, the daily addition to the mound.

16. Commissis malleis, by uniting the uprights. The uprights at the corners, which at first projected far above the main part of the tower, were afterwards connected by horizontal beams, as one story after another was added, till the tower was finished.


19. Appropinquare prohlbebant, prevented them (the mines) from approaching.

21. Perpetuae in longitudinem, continuous in length.

23. Introrsus, within the wall.

24. In fronte . . . effarciuntur. This completes the description of one layer of the wall. The beams, which were two feet apart, extended through the wall, from one side to the other, and were connected within by long sticks of timber lying in the direction of the length of the wall. The spaces between the beams were filled with earth (muito aggeres), except in front, where large stones (grandibus saxis) were used.

26. Idem intervallum. This refers to the interval between the beams in the second layer or tier, which, like that in the first, was two
feet. It will be observed that the second layer was constructed precisely like the first, but the beams in the second were probably placed upon the stone and earth in the first, and the stone and earth in the second upon the beams in the first.

31. Alternis... saxis; G. 431.

34. Perpetuis... quadragesimae, by beams forty feet long; referring to the long sticks of timber by which the cross beams were bound together (rectinota).

9. Ab... turrimum, on each side of the (Roman) towers.

12. Quo... occurreretur, whether they should first run to the defence.

15. Partitis temporebus, at stated times; i.e., in turn.

17. Reducerent, rolled back. These towers were on rollers.—Inter-scinderent, cut through; i.e., severed the fire from the rest of the mound.

22. Aperos, exposed; i.e., by the burning of their defences. Supply Romanos.

25. Accidit quod, there occurred an event which.

27. Per manus; construe with traditas.

29. Scorpio; see 87 L.

33. Prius ille. Construe prius with quam and ille with locus.

37. Profugere; G. 533, II.; 3, note 3.


11. Non recipit, does not admit.

15. Directisque operibus, and the military engines were properly placed.

20. In occulto, in concealment.

28. Obviam contra. Contra is added to obviam to obviate a hostile meeting.


32. Continenti impetu, with an uninterrupted struggle; i.e., without stopping.


4. Ex... concursu, from their arrival in a body.

7. Quae... castrorum = ad eam partem castrorum quae cuique civitati, to that part of the camp which had from the first fallen (obvenerat) to each state.

13. Errare. The subject is to be supplied from si qui... exspectent.


29. Plus... praesentire, to discern and foresee more clearly. Praesentire is stronger than providere, and implies prophetic power.


34. De... civitatibus; construe with in opem veniebant.
NOTES.

35. Galli; i. e., the Celtic Gauls. The Nervii and some of the Aquitani had previously fortified their camps. See pp. 55 and 94.

36. Consternati, alarmed; i. e., in consequence of the loss of Avaricum.

4. Quorum; construe with oratione.—Quisque, each one; i. e., of the chiefs.


14. Quos = cum suis quos.

XXXII.—LII. Disturbances among the Aedui. Siege of Gergovia.

23. Maxime necessario tempore, at a very critical time.

24. Singuli magistratus, a single magistrate; i. e., for each year; hence the distributive.

33. Cujusque corum, that each of them had. Supply esse. G. 401.

4. Sibi refers to quae.


8. Ne...videretur; construe with proficisci statuit.

10. Et quos inter = et eos inter guos; G. 569, II., 1.—Decetiam; G. 380, II.

12. Allo...atque oportuerit, at a time and place other than was proper. G. 459, 2.

13. Fratrem a fratre; i. e., Cotus by Valetiacus.

24. Quae disponeret, that he might distribute them. G. 497.

30. Ab altera...parte, on the other side of the Allier.

32. Utrique esset in conspectu, was in sight of the other. G. 384, 4, note 2.

33. Castris depends upon e regione poneret.

4. Captis...cohortibus, having selected certain cohorts; i. e., to take the place of the two legions which remained behind. Caesar so arranged the cohorts of the four legions sent forward, as to give them the appearance of six legions.

7. In castra perventum, had come into camp; i. e., had encamped. Supply esse.

21. Qua despicit poterat, from which one could look down.

31. Hostes; object of prohibituri.

32. Tamen refers to egregie munitus, etc.

36. Ad minora, to the smaller camp, situated upon the hill just captured.

8. Distineat; G. 503, II., 1.

9. Qua transducta, if this were brought over; i. e., to the Gallic cause.

BOOK VII.


37. Ut sibi consulat, to consult for their safety.

38. Quasi ... sit res, as if it were a subject for deliberation; implying that there is but one course left for them. G. 401.

6. Qui ... una erant, who were with him, relying upon his protection. They were taking supplies to Caesar, as we see from the next line—magnum numerum frumenti, etc.

11. Simili ratione atque, in the same manner as. G. 554, I., 2, note.

15. Parte actate, genere dispari; G. 419, II.; 562.

19. In illa ... controversia; i.e., the controversy between Convicitolitavis and Cotus. See p. 137.

25. Quorum salutem ... posset; G. 517.


32. Ad contrahenda castra. The camp prepared for six legions was of course too large to be properly guarded by two.

35. Paulo ante; construe with profugisse.

14. Quanto ... fuerit, in how great peril the camp (thing) has been; i.e., before the enemy withdrew at night.

21. Diessum eorum, after (at) the departure of these.

22. Pluteus; see 92.

27. Ad cognoscedendum, for ascertaining the facts in the case.


32. Adjuvat rem proclinam, helps forward the ruinous movement.

36. Educant, they lead out; i.e., by the promise of safety.

5. Quaestionem decernunt, they institute an investigation.

9. Ea res, that act; i.e., the plundering of property.

18. Omnem ... contraheret, he might unite his whole army; i.e., by effecting a junction with Labienus, who was in command of four legions.

See p. 138, line 25.

29. Sed hunc silvestrem, but also covered with woods.

30. Ad alteram partem, to the other side.

31. Nec ... sentire quin, and did not doubt that.

33. Ad hunc muniendum, to fortify this. Hunc refers to alterum (collem), in line 32, which again seems to refer to the woody height which gave access to the town.

36. Eo, thither; i.e., toward the hill which the Gauls were fortifying. This movement, as well as those described in the next twelve lines, was only a diversion by which Caesar hoped, while threatening this hill, suddenly to seize the Gallic camp.

2. Equitum specie, with the appearance of cavalry. These mounted muleteers appeared in the distance like regular cavalry, and were here used to deceive the enemy.—Colibus, over the hills, where they could be seen by the enemy. G. 425, II., 1.
NOTES.

144 7. Certi quid esset, what it really was; lit., what of certain there was. 8. Eodem jugo, by the same range; i.e., the one by which the horsemen and muleteers went.

12. Raro, in small bodies.

17. Incommodi; construe with quid.

18. Occasionis esse rem, that the case demanded (was of) a surprise.


25. Ut . . . ferebat, so far as the form (nature) of the mountain permitted.

34. Superiore . . . parte nudata. He had laid aside his cuirass.

38. Signa constituit, brought the standards to a halt.


15. Per manus demissae, let down by hand; i.e., by those upon the wall.

18. Avaricembus praemilia, by the rewards offered at Avaricum. See p. 135, lines 22 and 23.

23. Supra demonstravimus. See p. 143, line 34.

26. Ut quisque . . . venerat, as soon as each one arrived.

33. Spatio, by the long continuance.

146 2. Hostes; subject of insequeretur.

5. Loco, numero, virtute; G. 425, II., 1, 1), note.

8. Manus . . . causa, for the purpose of dividing the forces; i.e., of the enemy.—Similitudine armorum, by the resemblance of their arms; i.e., to those of the enemy.

10. Dextris . . . exertis. The Gauls in the service of Caesar were thus distinguished from the enemy. —Insigne pacatum, the friendly sign.

20. Quos; G. 445, 6. The antecedent is implied in vestra.

35. Infestis . . . signis, with hostile standards to the enemy.

147 5. Quid ipse . . . sensisset, what he himself had thought at Avaricum. See p. 131, lines 20 to 27.

8. Quanto opere—tanto opere, as much as — so much.

12. Plus se sentire, that they knew more.

13. Se desiderare, that he (Caesar) desired.

LIII. —LVI. Revolt of the Aedui.

23. Reduxit, he (Caesar) led back.

31. Ipsos antecedere, that they themselves should go before him.

33. Perspectabant habebat, clearly saw. G. 388, 1, note.

37. Quos = quales, in what condition. Caesar reminded them of the condition in which he found the Aedui when he took them under his protection. See p. 16.

148 14. Bibrate . . . receptum, had been received by the Aedui into (at) Bibrate. G. 425, II.; 83, 2, (1).
BOOK VII.

23. Ne cui ... Romanis, lest it should be of some use to the Romans. 148

G. 390.

30. Adjuvabat. The subject is the clause quod ... creverat.
31. Ex niveibus, from the melting of the snows.
34. Si esset periclitandum, even if he must incur danger.
38. Cum — tum maxime, not only — but especially.

2. Abjuncto Labieno timebat, he feared for Labienus, who had been detached.

5. Pro rel necessitate, in view of the urgency of the case.

LVII. — LXII. Expedition against the Parisii.

19. Confectus; G. 549, 3.
26. Iter munire, to secure a road.
32. Eo — in eas; i. e., in naves.
36. Secundo flumine, down the river; i. e., upon the right bank of it. Labienus, finding it difficult to approach Lutetia from the left side of the Seine, retraced his steps, crossed the river at Melodunum, and proceeded down the right bank to Lutetia.

8. Qui refers to Bellocavi.

10. Longe allud, atque; G. 459, 2.


17. A praesidio, from the garrison, referring to the force left at Agen- dicum to guard the baggage. Intercllas distinabat; G. 549, 5.
18. Maximum flumen; i. e., the Sequana.
22. Equitibus Romanis, to Roman knights.

27. Quinque ejusdem ... mittit. All this was intended as a diversion. He ordered, five cohorts and a number of boats to proceed up the river with a great noise, to attract the attention of the enemy, while he himself, with three legions, marched in silence down the river, which he crossed, four miles below, by means of vessels which he had sent in advance.

1. Praeter ... tumultuarl, that there is an unusual tumult.

9. Quae ... progresdiatur; G. 497. — Naves = lintres; i. e., the boats sent up the river by Labienus.

15. Praesentem adesse, to be present in person.
19. Cum ... concidissent; G. 515, III.

24. Eset nuntiatum. The subject is the Indirect Question quae ... gerentur.

31. Neque potuerunt, but were not able.
LXIII. — LXVII. *General Revolt of the Gauls.*

152 3. Horum supplicto. The Aedui, holding in their possession the hostages, whom the other Gauls had given to Caesar, treated some of them with severity, to intimidate the tribes who opposed the revolt.

7. Bibraecte; G. 380, II. Supply convenire.

10. Illi, the two former.

17. Inviti; G. 443, note 1.

20. Hunc rel, for this; i. e., for receiving hostages.

24. Factu; G. 547, 1.

26. Corrupunt; Imperative in Direct Discourse. G. 523, III.

30. Hunc addiit, to this force (lit., hither) he adds.

36. Ab superiore bello. See note on *Allobrogum*, p. 4, line 1.

153 1. Ad nos casus, against these contingencies.

14. Inter eos; i. e., inter equites. See p. 26, lines 34 to 38.

15. Minus idoneis, unserviceable.

28. Parum profici, that little is effected; i. e., by the supposed retreat of the Romans.

31. In eo morentur, should be detained (lit., should delay, or linger) in this; i. e., in relieving their comrades.

35. Et ipso quoque, even they indeed, as distinguished from himself.

36. Quo factant; G. 497, II., 2.


16. Flumen; not the Arar itself, but one of its branches.


LXVIII. — LXXIV. *Caesar invests Alesia.*

27. Alesiam, quod; G. 380, II; 445, 4.

38. In colle summo, upon the summit of a hill; viz., Mount Auxois, an isolated hill five hundred feet in height.

155 2. Duo fluminia, two streams, the Ose and the Osclair.

6. Quae pars collis, on that side of the hill which; lit., which part of the hill.

16. Intermissam collibus, unbroken by hills.

22. Angustioribus ... reliquis, as the openings (gates) left (in the wall) were too narrow.


156 4. Ratione inita, by actual calculation.

6. Qua ... intermissum, where our work did not extend; i. e., where
BOOK VII.

there was an opening, as the Roman line of investment was not yet com-\textsuperscript{156} pleted.

15. Pedum viginti, \textit{twenty feet wide. Supply in latitudinem.}

16. \textit{Directis lateribus, with vertical sides.}

19. Id hoc consilio, \textit{he did it (i. e., left this space of four hundred feet between the trench and the other works) with this design. Supply f deceit. G. 368, 3, note 1.}

27. \textit{Loricam pinnasque. See note on pinnae loricaeque, p. 93, line 38.}

28. \textit{Eminentibus \ldots aggeris, projecting (horizontally) at the junction of the breastworks and rampart.}

33. \textit{Deminutis \ldots copitis, our (available) forces being (thereby) diminished.}

2. \textit{Perpetuae fossae, continuous ditches. Perpetuae seems to be used simply to distinguish these ditches (as continuous) from the rows of pits mentioned in line 8, below. In the ditches were placed the trunks of trees with their branches cut to a point. The number of ditches is not given, but there were five rows of trunks of trees. Perhaps each row occupied one ditch.}

3. \textit{Huc, in these ditches; lit., hither.}

5. \textit{Ab ramis eminebant, rose above ground with their branches; lit., from their branches.}

9. \textit{Angustiore \ldots fastigio, smaller toward the bottom; lit., of a narrower slope; i. e., sloping toward a point.}

13. \textit{Singuli \ldots exculpabantur, they were filled, each one foot from the bottom with earth well stamped down; lit., single feet from the bottom, were stamped down with earth.}

23. \textit{Diversas, on the opposite side; explained by contra exterioriorem hastem.}

LXXXV.–LXXXVIII. \textit{Unsuccessful Attempt of the Gauls to relieve the City.}

2. \textit{Duodena millia, twelve thousand each. Observe the force of the distributive.}

16. \textit{Ut antea demonstravimus. See p. 68, line 11.}

19. \textit{Reddiderat, had restored; i. e., to the state.}

29. \textit{Delecti ex civitatibus, men selected from the states.}

11. \textit{Quorum in consilio, in whose advice.}

16. \textit{Dignitas, their authority; i. e., the authority and influence of those who proposed a sally.}

20. \textit{Millibus octoginta; i. e., the Gallic force in Alesia.}

21. \textit{Animi; construe with quid.}
159 20. Illorum refers to the Gauls, his (line 30) to the Romans, and eorum (line 31) to the Gauls.
34. Cimbrorum. See note on p. 31, line 18.
160 1. Pulcherrimum judicarem, I should judge it a most glorious thing.
—illi bello; G. 387.
2. Simile, like this. Supply hic.
6. Quos. The antecedent is horum.
16. Experiantur, that they themselves would try.
19. Mandubii; i. e., the citizens themselves.
27. Colle exteriore. This hill was on the west side of the plain mentioned two lines below. See also p. 155, line 3.
29. Plantiem, quam... demonstravimus. See p. 155, line 3.
32. Abditas... constituant, withdraw... and station. G. 549, 5.
161 1. Ad utramque... munitionum, on both lines of his intrenchment;
i.e., on the line which invested the city, and on that which enclosed the Romans. He put his own forces in a position to resist any attack upon his lines, either by the besieged within or the army of relief without.
4. Ex omnibus castris quae, from all the camps which. Caesar had several camps. See p. 155, line 11.
19. Germani, the Germans; i. e., the German cavalry in Caesar’s service. See p. 128, line 25, and p. 154, line 14.—Confertis turmis, is compact squadrons. Construe with Germani.
12. Ex superioribus castris, from the upper camp, situated on the heights north of the city. See lines 21 to 25.
14. Interiores; i. e., the Gallic force in the city.
15. Prioress fossas expulent, those in advance fill up the trenches.
29. Quoque pacto, and in what manner.
11. In aliena virtute constare, depended upon the valor of others; i.e., of their comrades.
21. Exiguum... fastigium, a slight descending slope. Ad declivitatem indicates the direction of the slope.
35. Ex ascensu, by climbing up. Construe with tentant.
164 11. Quid factendum, must be done; i. e., in accordance with Caesar’s command. See p. 163, line 30.
14. Quo insigni refers to the purple cloak worn by Caesar in battle. Insigni is probably a noun.
29. Crebris subsidii, by the frequent aid rendered to one another.
LXXXIX., XC. Surrender of Alesia. Winter Quarters of the Romans.

35. Suarum necessitatum; of his own interests.

G. Toto ... capita singula, one to each soldier of the whole army. 165

G. 151, 1, note 1.

13. Huius attribuit, assigned to him; i.e., as his deputy.

20. Cabillonì et Matiscone; i.e., Cicero was stationed at Cabillonìnum and Sulpicius at Matisco.
DICTIONARY.

A — ABSUM

ä, äb, abs, prep. with abl. A is used only before consonants; ab, before vowels and consonants; abs, only with te. I. Of space: from, away from, on the side of, in the direction of, on, in; Gallia attingit ab Sequánus Rhenum, on the side of the Sequanni, i. 1; a dextro cornu, on the right wing, i. 52; a fronte, in front, ii. 23; ab millibus passuum octo, eight miles off or away, iv. 22. II. Of time: from, after; ab cohortatione, after exhorting, ii. 25. III. Of other relations: from, by, by means of, in respect to, among, from with an accessory idea of against; ab iis defendere, to defend against (from) them, i. 11; ortus est a tribunis, arose among or had its origin from, i. 39; ab re frumentariâ laborare, to suffer in respect to provisions, vii. 10.

abdútus, a, um, part. from abdo.

ab-do, ère, dídi, dítum, v. tr. To remove, put away; to conceal; sese in silvas, to hide away in the forests, i. 12.

ab-dúco, ère, xi, ctum, v. tr. To lead away, take away, withdraw.

âb-eo, ère, tvi or íi, itum, v. intr. To go away, depart.

âbesse. See Absum.

ðbítáurus, a, um. See Absum.

abies, ètis, f. The fir-tree, v. 12.

âbissee for abissae, from abeo.

abjéctus, a, um, part. from abjicio.

ab-lio, ère, jáci, jectum, v. tr. (jácio.) To throw away, cast from, cast off, throw down; to hurl.

abjunctus, a, um, part. from abjungo.

ab-jungo, ère, xi, ctum, v. tr. To loose from the yoke; to separate, remove; abjuncto Labiénó, Labienus having been detached, vii. 56.

abreptus, a, um, part. from abripio.

ab-ripio, ère, ripu, reptum, v. tr. (ripio). To snatch, to take away by violence, tear off or away.

ab-scido, ère, scidi, scissum, v. tr. (caedo). To cut off or away.

ab-scindo, ère, scidi, scissum, v. tr. To tear or break off, rend.

abscíusus, a, um, part. from abscido.

absens, entis, part. (absum). Absent, being away; se absente, in his absence, v. 7.

ab-símilis, e, adj. Dissimilar, unlike; formâ, of a form not alike that of, iii. 14.

ab-sisto, ère, sitti, v. intr. To withdraw; to keep off from, v. 17.

abs-tíneo, ère, ui, tentum, v. tr. (tē-neo). To hold from, keep from. Intr. to refrain from, abstain from; to spare, vii. 47.

abstructus, a, um, part. from abstráho.

abstráho, ère, xi, ctum, v. tr. To drag away, take or carry away by force.

ab-sum, esse, fui, v. irr. n. To be absent or away from, to be distant from; longs iis abesse, to be far away from them, i. e., to be of no service to them, i. 36; to be exempt from, vi. 14.

(281)
Abundo, ärse, ävi, ätum, v. intr. (unda, a wave). To flow over, abound in, be well provided with.
ac, conj. See Atque.
Accēdo, ärse, cessi, cessum, v. intr. (ad, cedo). To go near to, approach; to be added. Accedēbat, quod, it was added, that, i. e., moreover, ill. 2.
Accēlēro, ärse, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. and intr. (ad, cēlēro, to quicken). To hasten; to make haste, vil. 87.
Acceptus, a, um, 1), part. from acceptio; 2), adj. Pleasant, welcome, agreeable; maxime plebi acceptus, very much beloved by the people, i. 3.
Accido, ärse, cēdi, v. intr. (ad, caedo). To fall, fall upon; to befall, occur, happen. Accidit, imper. It happens.
Accipio, ärse, epi, epium, v. tr. (ad, capio). To receive, take, accept; to attain, get; to learn; to approve of.
Accipris, e, adj. (ad, citius). Ascending, rising, sloping upwards; locus, paulatim ab imo accipris, a place rising gradually from the plain, iii. 19.
Accivitas, ātis, f. (acceivis). An ascent, steepness, upward slope.
Acco, ānis, m. A general of the Sennœc, vi. 4, 44.
Accompādatus, a, um, 1), part. from accommodō; 2), adj. Suitable, fitted; accommodatiora, better fitted, more adapted, iii. 13.
Accommodō, ärse, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. (ad, commoddum). To adjust, fit, put on, arrange.
Accūrāte, accusātus, accusātissĭme, adv. (ad, cūra). With care, carefully, exactly, attentively.
Accurro, ärse, curri, and cācurrī, currum, v. intr. (ad, curro). To run to, hasten to.
Accusō, ärse, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. (ad, causa). To accuse, blame, reprove, censure, find fault with.
Äcer, äcris, äcre, adj. (acceo, to be sour). Sharp, pungent; disagreeable, violent.
Äcërbe, acerbius, acerbiessime, adv. (acerbus). Roughly, bitterly, harshly, sharply; with pain, with discontent, vil. 17.
Äcērītas, ātis, f. (acerbus). Harshness, sour or disagreeable taste. Fig., severity, rigor, unkindness, harshness of conduct; sorrow, trouble, calamity, hardship, bitter fate.
Äcërbus, a, um, adj. (acerb). Sour or disagreeable to the taste. Fig., severe, hard, disagreeable.
Äcërisme, adv. sup. of äcërter.
Äcërurus, i, m. A heap, pile, collection.
Äcies, ī, f. (gen. äcie, ii. 23, for äciē, G. 120). A sharp edge; sharpness of the sight, fierce expression, keen looks; a line of battle, an army in line of battle, i. 22.
Acquiro, ärse, sīvi, sītum, v. tr. (ad, quairo). To procure, get, obtain, acquire.
Äcērter, ãcrius, äcërisme, adv. (acerb). Sharply, vigorously, eagerly, violently, courageously, zealously.
Actarius, a, um, adj. (ago). Easily moved, swift, fleet.
Acts, a, um, part. from agō.
Äcūtus, a, um, adj. (acuo, to make sharp). Sharp, pointed.
ad, prep. with accus. I. Of space: to, towards, in the direction of, in, at, near, among. II. Of time: towards, to, till, at; ad multum noctem, until late into the night, i. 26. III. Of other relations. 1) With numerals: towards, about. 2) Of purpose: to, for; ad largiendum, i. 18. 3) In respect to, for, in, according to, after, in conformity with; ad hunc modum, after this manner, ii. 31; ad certum pondus, according to a fixed weight, v. 12.
Ädactus, a, um, part. from ädigo.
Ädaeque, ärse, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. To make equal; to equal, make level with; to keep up with, i. 48.
Äd-amō, ärse, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. To love greatly, covet.
Ädaugae, ärse, ausi, auctum, v. tr. To increase, enlarge.
Adcantuannus, s. m. A brave chief of the Sontiastes, iii. 22.

Ad-do, dère, dūdi, dūsum, v. tr. To add, join to, annex, mingle with.

Ad-duco, ère, xi, cūcum, v. tr. To lead or conduct to, bring, convey to, draw towards, ill. 14. Fig., to induce, lead, influence.

Ademptus, a, um, part. from ādāmo.

Ad-ero, ère, i or ii, ātum, v. tr. To go to, approach; to attack, encounter.

Ad-ero, adv. (is). To that point, so far, to such a degree, so much.

Ademptus, a, um, part. from ādāpiscor.

Ad-ēquītus, āre, āri, ātum, v. intr. (ēques). To ride towards or up to, i. 46.

Ad-heresco, īre, hæsi, hæsum, v. intr. To stick to, adhere.

Ad-hēbeo, ère, ui, ātum, v. tr. (hābeo). To bring to, summon, invite, admit, receive, bring, call in; to use, employ, ill. 20.

Ad-besor, āri, ātus sum, v. dep. To encourage, incite, exhort.

Ad-huc, adv. Up to this time, hitherto, thus far, as yet, still.

Ad-i-gō, īre, āgi, actum, v. tr. (āgo).

To drive in, conduct; to compel, force.

Ad-imō, ère, ēni, emptum, v. tr. (ēmo = accepio). To take away, deprive of, remove.

Ad-ipiscor, i, ēptus sum, v. dep. (āpiscor, to reach after). To obtain, get, acquire, attain by effort; nanciscor, to obtain by accident.

Aditus, us, m. (ādeu). Approach, access, admittance; permission to approach, right of access or interview.

Ad-jācēo, īre, cūi, v. intr. To lie at or near, be contiguous, border upon.

Adjunctus, a, um, part. from adjicō.

Ad-jīcio, ère, jēci, jectum, v. tr. (jācio). To cast or throw to, hurl, send; to add, join to.

Ad-jūdico, ère, āri, ātum, v. tr. To adjudge; to award, assign.

Ad-jungo, īre, xi, ātum, v. tr. To join to, add, bind to, annex, unite.

Adjutor, oris, m. (ādītio). Helper, aid, assistant.

Ad-juvo, āre, īwī, jūtum, v. tr. To help, assist, aid; to avail, be of use.

Admagetobriga. See Magetoberia.

Ad-mātūro, āre, āri, ātum, v. tr. To bring to maturity, ripen; to hasten.

Administer, tri, m. (ad, mānus).

A servant, assistant, attendant.

Ad-ministro, āre, āri, ātum, v. tr. (admitter). To be at hand, assist, serve; to take in hand, manage, guide, direct.

Ad-mīrō, āri, ātus sum, v. dep. To wonder at, admire.

Ad-mittō, ère, missi, missum, v. tr. To permit, allow; to commit; to give reins to; equo admissō, at full speed, i. 22.

Admodum, adv. (ād, modus).

Very, exceedingly; with numerals: about, fully, at least.

Ad-mūneo, īre, ui, ātum, v. tr. To admonish, warn, advise; to remind, suggest.

Adōlescens, tis, m. and f. (ādōlescens). A youth, a young man or woman.

Adōlescensia, ae, f. (ādōlescens). Youthful age, youth.

Adōlescentulus, i, m. dim. (ādōlescens). A very young man, stippling.

Ad-ōlescō, īre, olēvi, ulsum, v. intr. To grow up, come to maturity.

Ad-ōrīor, i, ortus sum, v. dep.

To attack, fall upon; to attempt, undertake.

Adortus, a, um, part. from addōrīor.

Ad-scisco, īre, sci, scītum, v. tr. (sciō). To take, receive, admit, join to.

Ad-sisto, īre, stīti, v. intr. To stand by or near, be present, appear, in publico, vi. 18.

Ad-sum, esse, adfui or affui, v. irr. n. To be present or at hand; to aid, assist.

Aduātica, ae, f. A fortress in the country of the Eburones, now Tongres, vi. 32, 35.

Aduātīci, orum, m. A people of Gallia Belgica, ii. 4, 16, 29, 31; v. 27, 38, 39, 56; vi. 2, 33.
adventus, us, m. (ad, vicio). Arrival, approach, coming.

adversārius, a, um, adj. (adversus). Hostile, opposed. Sed. An opponent, adversary, enemy.

adversus, a, um, adj. (adverto). Turned to, opposite, over against. Of rivers: up or against the stream, flumine adverso, v. i. 61. Of winds: adverse, unfavorable. Of persons: hostile, unfriendly; and in general, unfavorable, opp. to secundus; res adversae, unfavorable circumstances, calamities; adversa nox, an unfavorable, stormy night, iv. 28; in adversum os, full in the face, v. 35.
adversus, prep. with acc. (adverto). Against, opposite to.
ad-recto, āre, āri, ārum, v. tr. To turn to or towards; with animus, to turn one's mind to, perceive, observe. Sometimes animus is understood.
ad-vēco, āre, āri, ārum, v. tr. To call to; to summon, call.
ad-vēlo, āre, āri, ārum, v. intr. To fly to, hasten to or towards; to rush upon, v. 17.
aedificium, i, n. (aedifico). Edifice, building, residence.
aedifico, āre, āri, ārum, v. tr. and intr. (aedes, fācio). To build, construct, make; naves, iii. 9.

Aeduanus, a, um, adj. Aeduan. Aeduanus, i, m. An Aeduan. Aedui, ōrum, pl. The Aedui, a powerful people in Gallia Celtaica, between the Liger (Loire) and the Arar (Saône). Their chief town was Bibracte.
aeger, gra, grum, adj. Sick, indisposed; feeble, suffering, faint.
aegre, aegrius, aegerrīme, adv. (aeger). With difficulty, hardly, scarcely, ill.

Aemilius, i, m. Lucius, a decurion of Gallic cavalry, i. 23.
aequālīter, adv. (aequus). Equally, uniformly.
aequinoctium, i, n. (aequus, nox). The equinox; the time when the days and nights are of equal length.
aequitas, ātis, f. (aequus). Equality; justice, equity, impartiality; with animi, composure, calmness, contentment, vi. 22.
aequus, āre, āri, ārum, v. tr. (aequus). To make equal.
aequus, a, um, adj. 1) Even, level; favorable, suitable. 2) Equal, like; aequo Marte, in an equal contest, vi. 19. 3) Just, right, honorable, reasonable. 4) Calm, composed; aequior animo, with greater composure, v. 52.
aerarius, a, um, adj. (aes). Relating to copper or brass; aerariae secundae, copper mines, iii. 21.
aes, aeri, n. 1) Brass, copper. 2) Money, as the first Roman coins were of copper. Aes alīnum, debt; ītum, the money of another, hence, the money which one owes to another.
aestas, ātis, f. The summer.
aestimo, āre, āri, ārum, v. tr. (aes). To estimate the value of; to esteem, regard, consider; to judge, determine, estimate; ītum, v. 1.
aestivus, a, um, adj. (aestas). Relating to summer; tempus, summer time, vi. 4.
aestuarius, i, n. (aestus). An estuary, marsh, creek, frith, inlet.
aestus, us, m. 1) Heat, burning heat. 2) The ebb and flow of the sea, the tide.
aetas, ātis, f. (for aevitas, aevum, age.) The period of life, age; old age.
aeternus, a, um, adj. (for aeternus, aevum, age). Everlasting, eternal, perpetual.
aeffōro, ferre, attestāre, attūram, v. tr. irr. (ad, fero). To bring to, impart, offer, present; to contribute, afford; to occasion, cause, effect, produce.
affectio, āre, fāci, factum, v. tr. (ad, fācio). To affect, influence, treat; beneficio, to influence by kindness, vii. 37; poena, supplicio, to punish.
affige, āre, xī, xum, v. tr. (ad, fingo, to fix). To fix, fasten upon, attach to; longuirius, iii. 14.
AFFINGO — ALIQUOT 285

affingō, ēre, inxi, ictum, v. tr. (ad, fingō). To assert falsely, add falsely.
affinitas, ādis, f. (affinis, near to). Connection, nearness; relationship (by marriage), i. 18.
affixus, is, um, part. from affigo.
affictus, a, um, part. from affigo.
affilo, ēre, xi, ictum, v. tr. (ad, filio, to strike). To strike or dash against; to cast down, prostrate. Of *ships: to shatter, injure, collide, v. 10.
afore, — affiātūrum esse (ad, forē). See Adsum. G. 204, 2.
africas, i, m. The south-west wind.
agedincum, i, n. A town in Gallia Celsica, the capital of the Senones, now Sens, vi. 44; vii. 10, 57, 59, 62.
ăger, ārī, m. Land, territory, field, country, district.
agger, ēris, m. (ad, gēro). A mound, rampart; the materials for a mound.
aggregōriō, ēdi, essus sum, v. dep. (ad, grādior, to go). To go to or against, attack; to attempt, undertake.
aggregō, ēre, ēvi, ātum, v. tr. (ad, grēgo, to collect in a flock.) To collect, assemble; to join, unite, attack.
āgetto, ēre, ēvi, ātum, v. tr. (ago). To put in motion, drive; to revolve in mind, talk about, discuss, deliberate upon.
agnēmen, ēmis, n. (for āgmentem, āgo). An army on the march, the line of march; a march; a troop, band; primum agmen, the van; notissimum, the rear.
āgo, ēre, ēji, actum, v. tr. I. To put in motion, drive. 1) To drive away, carry off, convey away; praedam, vi. 43. 2) To drive before one's self, pursue; iv. 12. 3) Of war machines: to push forward, move nearer; vīneas, ii. 12. 4) Of mines: to extend, conduct, ili. 21. 5) To drive in, iv. 17. II. To pursue a course of action. 1) To express, state; gratias, to give thanks, i. 41; cum Caesāre, to treat with, i. 13; to negotiate, v. 37. 2) To perform, manage, pursue, transact, do, i. 20; conventus, to hold the assizes, i. 54. 3) To pass, spend. Instr., to act, vii. 17.
agricultūra, ae, f. (āger, colō). Agriculture, cultivation of the soil, tillage.
ālācer, oris, ere, adj. Lively, animated, brisk, quick; cheerful, elated; eager, active, fierce.
ālacritas, ādis, f. (ālācer.) Liveliness, ardor, zeal, eagerness, promptness; gladness.
ālārius, a, um, adj. (āla, wing). Stationed on the wings. Subs. pl. The auxiliaries, as they occupied the wings of the army.
albus, a, um, adj. White; plumrum, tin, v. 12.
alces, is, f. The elk, vi. 27.
alēsia, ae, f. A fortified town of the Mandubii, in Gallia Celtica, modern Alise, vii. 68, 76, 77, 79, 80, 84.
alīas, adv. (ālius). At another time, otherwise; alias...alias, at one time...at another time; sometimes...sometimes.
alēchō, ēre, ēvi, ātum, v. tr. (alēchus). To change; to estrange, alienate; to take away.
alēchus, a, um, adj. (ālīus). Belonging to another, foreign to; estranged, hostile; unfavorable, unfriendly; foreign to the subject, vii. 11.
alīo, adv. In another place, elsewhere.
alquamdiu, adv. For some time.
aliquando, adv. (ālīquis). Sometimes; at length.
aliquanto, adv. (ālīquantus). A little, somewhat.
alīquantus, a, um, adj. (ālus, quantus). A little, some, somewhat.
alīquis, or alīqui, qua, quod or quid, pron. indef. (ālīus, quis). Some one, any one, some, any, anything.
alīquot, indef. num. indecl. (ālīus, quot). Some, several, a few.
ALITER—AMPLUS

äliter, adv. (ālius). Otherwise, in a different manner; aliter ... ac, otherwise ... than.

ālius, a, us, gen. ālius, dat. ālii, adj. Other; another; ālius ... ālius, one ... another; ālii ... ālii, some ... others; ālius ālii in parte, some in one place and some in another, i. 22; ālius, āliā causā illātā, one alleging one reason, and another another, i. 39; āliā ratione, ac, in a different manner from, iii. 28.

aláttus, a, um, part. from affecto.

allicio, ēre, lexi, lectum, v. tr. (ad, iucleo, to entice). To attract, allure, entice.

Allōbrōges, um, m. [sing. Allobro, ēgis.] A people of Gallia Narbonensis, between the Rhodānus (Rhône) and Isārā (Iser). Chief town Vienna (Vienne), i. 6, 11, 14, 28; vii. 64.

ālo, ēre, us, altum and altum, v. tr. To nourish, support, sustain, maintain, foster, vii. 33; controversiam, to keep up, continue, vii. 32.

Alpes, ium, f. pl. The Alps, i. 10; iii. 1, 2, 7; iv. 10.

alter, ēra, ērum, gen. altērus, dat. altēri [but altērae, f., v. 27], adj. One of two, the other (of two); alter ... alter, the one ... the other, i. 31; altēri ... altēri, the one party ... the other, i. 26; the second, i. 2.

alternum, a, um, adj. (for altērinus, alter). One after another, by turns, mutual, alternate.

alitūtūdō, inis, f. (ālīus). Height, depth.

altus, a, um, adj. (ālo). High, tall, lofty; deep; in ālo (sic. mari), in deep water, iv. 24.

ālūta, ae, f. Soft leather.

ambustus, i, m. A vassal, dependant.

Ambarri, ērum, m. The Aedui Ambarri, a Celtic people, clients of the Aedui, between the Arar (Sâme) and the Rhodānus (Rhône), north of the Allōbrōges, i. 11, 14, 28; vii. 64.

Ambiāni, ērum, m. A people in Gallia Belgica, whose chief town was Samarobriva (Amiens), ii. 4, 15; vii. 75.

Ambibāriī, ērum, m. An Armor-ican people, in Gallia Celtīca, vii. 75.

Ambilītī, ērum, m. A Gallic people dwelling, according to Reichard, in the vicinity of modern Abbeville, in Picardy, iii. 9.

Ambiōrīx, ēgis, m. King of half of the Eburōnes, v. 24, 27, 34; v. 29; vi. 2, 5, 6, 9, 29, 43.

Ambivārēti, ērum, m. A people of Gallia Celtīca; clients of the Aedui, near the Ambarri, vii. 75, 90.

Ambivārēti, ērum, m. A people of Gallia Belgica, prob. in the region of Namur, on the left bank of the Mosa (Meuse), iv. 9.

ambo, ae, num. adj. Both.

āmentīa, ae, f. (āmō, mens). Folly, madness, want of reason.

āmentūm, i, n. A strap or thong used with missiles to give greater impulse in throwing them.

amfractus, us, m. (am, frango). A turning, bending; a circuitous route.

āmicītia, ae, f. (āmicus). Friendship, alliance.

āmicus, a, um, adj. (āmo, to love). Friendly, well-disposed.

āmicus, i, m. (āmo, to love.) A friend, an ally.

ā-mitto, ēre, mīsī, mīsum, v. tr. To send away, dismiss; to lose, let pass.

āmor, ēris, m. (āmo, to love). Love, affection.

ample, adv. (ampius). Abundantly, copiously, generously.

amplifico, ēre, ēri, ērum, v. tr. (ampius, fācio). To enlarge, extend, increase.

amplissīme, sup. of ample.

amplitūdō, inis, f. (ampius). Size, greatness; dignity, grandeur, consequence.

ampius, adv., comp. of ample. More, further.

ampius, a, um, adj. Of large extent, great, spacious; magnificent, abundant, ample; noble, illustrious, renowned.
an, adv. Whether, or. G. 353.  
Aaartes, īum, m. A Dacian people, dwelling probably on the Tibiscus (Theiss), a branch of the Ister, (Danube), vi. 25.  
Ancalites, um, m. pl. A people in the south-east of Britain, v. 21.  
ancess, cīptīs, adj. (am, caput). Having two heads; double, twofold; doubtful.  
ancōra, ae, f. An anchor.  
Andes, īum, m. A people of Gallia Celtica, on the right bank of the Liger (Loire), above the Nannĕtes, li. 35; iii. 7; viii. 4.  
Andocumborius, i, m. An ambassador of the Remi, li. 3.  
angūlās, ī, m. Corner, angle.  
angustēs, adv. (angustus). Narrowly, closely; scantily, sparingly.  
angustinē, ārum [rare in the sing.], f. (angustus). Narrow space, narrowness, straitness; a narrow pass, defile; difficulty, necessity.  
angustus, a, ānī, adj. (ango, to press together). Narrow, strait; montēs, contracted, steep, iv. 23; in angusto, in a critical condition, li. 25.  
ānima, ae, f. Breath, life; the soul, spirit, vi. 14.  
ānimadvertero, ēre, ēre, ēsum, v. tr. (ānimus, ad, verte). To turn one's attention to; to perceive, attend, take heed, notice; to punish, i. 19.  
ānīmus, i, m. The mind, soul, intellect; the attention; the thoughts, will, purpose, desire, design; inclination, disposition; regard, affection; feeling, anger, courage, spirit; esse in animo, to be one's intention, i. 7; relinquuit animus Sextium, consciousness leaves S., i. c., he faints, vi. 38.  
annōtinus, a, um, adj. (annus). A year old, of the previous year, v. 8.  
annus, i, m. The year.  
annuus, a, um, adj. (annus). Yearly, lasting a year.  
anser, ēris, m. The goose, v. 12.  
anter, prep. with accus. Before.  
I. Of space: ante oppidum, before the town, li. 32. II. Of time: ante id tempus, before this time, lii. 35. III. Adv. Before, previously.  
antea, adv. Formerly, before.  
antē-cēdo, ēre, cessī, cessum, v. intr. To go before, precede; to surpass, excel.  
antē-curser, ēris, m. (curro). A forerunner, advanced guard, pioneer.  
antē-fēro, ferre, tuli, lātum, v. tr. To bear before; to place before, prefer.  
antenna, ae, f. A sail-yard.  
antē-pōno, ēre, pōsum, postum, v. tr. To place before; to give the preference, prefer.  
antē-verte, ēre, ēre, ēsum, v. tr. To prefer or place before, vii. 7.  
antiquitūs, adv. (antiquus). In former times, anciently.  
antiquus, a, um, adj. (ante). Ancient, old, olden.  
Antistius, i, m. Gāius Antistius Regius, one of Caesar's lieutenants, vi. 1; vii. 83, 90.  
Antōnius, i, m. Marcus, son of Julia, sister of Lucius Julius Caesar, consul 64 B. C. One of the most faithful of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul. He became tribune of the plebs in 49 B.C., and as such opposed the decree of the senate which deprived Caesar of his command. In the year 45 B.C. he formed the Triumvirate with Octavianus and Lepidus, was subsequently defeated at Actium (31 B. C.), and shortly after committed suicide in Egypt, vii. 81.  
āpērio, ēre, ērui, ertiōm, v. tr. (ab, pārio). To open, reveal; to uncover, make or lay bare.  
āpertē, adv. (āpertus). Openly, publicly.  
āpertus, a, um, adj. (āpērio). Open, exposed, uncovered, naked; latero aperto, on the unprotected flank, i. 25.  
Apollo, ēnis, m. Son of Jupiter and Latona. Among the Gauls, the god of the healing art, vi. 17.  
appāro, ēre, ēsit, ēsum, v. tr. (ad, pāro). To prepare, make ready, put
in order; to provide, procure, furnish.

appello, ère, ērei, ētum, v. tr. (ad, pelle). To approach, accost, address; to name, call.

appello, ère, pâli, pulsam, v. tr. (ad, pelle). To drive to; to move; to bring. Of ships: to steer for, direct towards.

appēto, ère, èti or si, itum, v. tr. (ad, pelle). To strive after, seek, covet. Intr., to approach, be at hand, vi. 35.

applico, ère, ēri, ētum, or si, itum, v. tr. (ad, placo, to fold). To join to, attach, bring in contact with; se applicare, to lean against, vi. 27.

apporta, ère, ēri, ētum, v. tr. (ad, perto). To convey to, bring, carry.

apprōbō, ère, ēri, ētum, v. tr. (ad, prōbo). To approve, commend, favor.

apprōpinquō, ère, ēri, ētum, v. intr. (ad, prōpinquam, to come near). To approach, draw near.

appulsus, part. from appello, ère.

Aprilis, è, adj. (for aprīlis, from aprērio). Of April. Subs. [sc. mensis], April.

aptus, a, um, adj. Fit for, suitable, adapted; apt, skilful.

āpad, prep. with acc. At, by, near, in the presence of; with, among.

āqua, ae, f. Water.

āquātio, ēnis, f. (āqua). The getting or procuring of water, iv. 11.

āquila, ae, f. The eagle; the standard of the Roman legion. The signa were the standards of cohorts, iv. 25.

Aquilēia, ae, f. A town in Gallia Cisalpinia, near modern Trieste, i. 10.

aquillifer, fēri, m. (aquītā, fēro). The eagle-bearer; standard-bearer.

Aquītānii, ērum, m. pl. Inhabitants of Aquitania, i. 1; iii. 21.

Aquītānii, ae, f. The southern division of Gaul. See Gallia.

Arar, ēris, m. [acc. Arārim, abl. Arāres.] The Saône, a river in Gaul, tributary to the Rhone, i. 12, 13, 16; vii. 90.

arbiter, èri, m. An arbitrator, arbiter, umpire, judge.

arbitrium, i, n. (arbiter). The decision of the arbitrator, sentence; power, pleasure, absolute will.

arbitror, ēri, ētum sum, v. dep. (arbiter). To judge, think, consider.

arbor and arbus, ēris, f. A tree.

arscessus, ère, ēri, ētum, v. tr. (accedo). To cause to approach; to call, send for, summon, invite.

ardeo, ère, èri, sum, v. intr. To burn, to be on fire; hence, of the passions: to be inflated, be excited, burn.

Arduenae, ae, f. [sc. sita]. An extensive forest in Gallia Belgica, upwards of fifty miles in length; now Ardennes, v. 3; vi. 29, 31, 33.

ardus, a, um, adj. Steep; high, lofty; difficult, arduous, hard.

Arecomici Volcae. See Volcae.

argentum, i, n. Silver; silver ware, vii. 47.

argilla, ae, f. White clay, potter’s clay.

āridus, a, um, adj. (āreo, to be dry). Dry, parched; ex arido [sc. loco], from a dry place, dry land.

āries, ēris, m. 1) A ram; a battering-ram. 2) Support, brace, iv. 17.

Āriovistus, i, m. A powerful German king, defeated by Caesar, i. 31, eq., 53; v. 29; vi. 12.

Āristus, i, m. Marcus, a military tribune, under Caesar, vii. 42, 43.

arma, ērum, n. pl. Arms, weapons; war. Of a ship: the tackle, rigging.

armamenta, ērum, n. (arma). Implements; the tackle of a ship, rigging, cordage, etc.

armātūra, ae, f. (arma). Armor; levis armaturae, of light armor, light-armed, i. 24.

armātus, a, um, 1) part. from arma; 2) subs. An armed man, soldier.

armo, ēre, ēri, ētum, v. tr. To arm, equip. Of ships: to fit out, furnish, rig.

Armoricae [civitātes], ērum, f (Celt. ar, on, mor, the sea.) The Ar
moric or coast states; the north-western provinces of Gaul, v. 53; vii. 75.

*Arpinéius, i. m. Gáitus, a Roman knight, v. 27, 28.

arrípício, ére, u, reptum, v. tr. (ad, rápício). To seize, lay hold of, appropriate.

arrógant, adv. (arrógans, arrogant). Arrogantly, proudly, insolently, haughtily.

arrógantia, ae, f. (arrógans, arrogans). Haughtiness, pride, arrogance, insolence.

ars, artis, f. Skill, art, faculty; science, knowledge, method; manner, way, contrivance.

arte, adv. (artus). Closely, firmly, tightly.

artéculus, i, m. (dim. from artus, artus). Joint, knot, vi. 27.

artificium, i, n. (artifex, artist). Trade, employment, skill, knowledge, ingenuity; craft, cunning, dexterity.

artus, a, um, adj. (arceo, to shut up). Close, dense, thick.

Avérnum, i. m. One of the Arvernii; Averni, òrum, a people of Gallia Céltica; Gergovia (Auer-sync) their principal town, i. 31, 45; vii. 3, 5, 34, 90.

árx, arcis, f. A height; a fortified height; a citadel, fortress, stronghold.

ascendo, ére, di, sum, v. intr. (ad, scando, to climb). To ascend, go up, mount.

ascensus, us, m. (ascendo). The act of going up; the ascent, the approach, the ascendency.

aspectus, us, m. (adspicio, to look). The sight; the appearance, looks, presence, countenance.

asper, éra, èrum, adj. Rough, uneven; harsh, severe; violent, fierce, cruel, wild, savage.

assiduus, a, um, adj. (assideo, to sit by). Continual, unremitting, constant, perpetual, incessant, diligent.

assúéfacción, ére, fécit, factum, v. tr. (assúéctus, accustomed, fácio). To accustomed, inure, habituate.

assuesco, ére, évi, òtum, v. intr. (ad, suessco, to be wont). To become accustomed to, accustom one's self to.

at, conj. But, yet, still; but at least.

atque or ac, conj. [ac stands only before consonants; atque before vowels or consonants] (ad, que). And, and also. In comparisons: than, from, as; alter ac, otherwise than.

Atrésés, um, m. [sing. Atrésas, átis.] A people of Gallia Belgica, whose principal town was Nemetacenna (Ares), ii. 4, 16, 23; iv. 21, 35; vi. 6; vii. 75.

Atrius, i. m. Quintus, an officer whom Caesar left in charge of his fleet, while making an incursion into Britain, v. 9, 10.

attexo, ére, ui, òtum, v. tr. (ad, lexo, to weave). To weave on, join by weaving, add.

attingo, ére, igit, tactum, v. tr. (ad, tango). To touch, come in contact with; to border upon; to arrive at, reach.

attribuo, ére, ui, òtum, v. tr. (ad, tribuo). To attribute to, assign, bestow; to give in charge of, appoint over.

attuli. See Affero.

auctor, óris, m. (augo). Creator, maker, author, inventor, producer; leader, originator, director; promoter, approver; adviser, counsellor.

auctôrittas, átis, f. (auctor). Authority, power, influence; standing, reputation, dignity; command, order, will.

auctus, a, um, part. from augeo.

audácia, ae, f. (audax, daring). Boldness; daring courage; insolence, audacity, presumption.

audacter or audácter, adv. (au-

dax, daring). Boldly; courageously, confidently; insolently.

audo, ére, ausus sum, v. semi-dep. G. 288, 3. To dare, venture; to undertake, attempt.

audio, ére, ói, òtum, v. tr. To hear, listen to, perceive; to obey, give heed to; dicto audientes, obedient to, i. 39.
AUDITIO — BELLOCOSUS

auditio, ònis, f. (audio). 1) The act of hearing. 2) That which is heard; rumor, report.

augeo, òre, xi, etum, v. tr. To increase, enlarge, augment; to enrich, advance, promote.

Aulerici, òrum, m. A people in Gallia Celtica, divided into four branches: 1) Brannovices (Branovii), on the Liger (Loire), vii. 75. 2) Cenímarih, west of the Carnutes, vii. 4, 75. 3) Eburovices, north of the Carnutes, ii. 34; iii. 17; vii. 75. 4) Diablintes, north-west of the Centumari, iii. 9.

Aulericus, i, m. One of the Aulerici, vii. 57.

Aulus, i, m. A Roman praenomen. auriga, ae, m. (aurea, a bridle, ago). A charioteer, driver.
auris, i, f. The ear.

Aurunciæus, i, m. Lucius Aurunciæus Cotta, one of Caesar’s lieutenants, ii. 11; iv. 22; v. 24, sq.

Auese, òrum, m. A people in Aquitania, iii. 27.
ausus, a, um, part. from audeo.
aut, conj. Or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or. G. 554, II. 2.
autem, conj. But, moreover; while, i. 2.
autumnus, i, m. (augeo). Autumn, the season of harvest.
aux. See Augeo.
auxiliars, e, adj. (auxilium). Auxiliary, aiding, assisting. Subs. m. pl. The auxiliaries.
auxiliarium, òri, òtus sum, v. dep. (auxilium). To aid, assist, succor, help.
auxilium, i, n. (augeo). Help, aid, assistance; remedy, resource, support; auxiliary troops, i. 24.

Aväricensis, e, adj. (Aváricum). Of or relating to Avaricum, vii. 47.

Aváricum, i, n. A town of the Bituriges, now Bourges, vii. 13, 15, 18, 31, 47.

Aváritia, ae, f. (Avárus, avaricious). Avarice, covetousness.
á-voeo, òre, eseí, vectorum, v. tr. To convey away.
áversus, a, um, 1) part. from áver- to; 2) adj. Turned away [opp. to adver-sus], backwards, in the back; adver-sus hostem, a flying enemy, i. 26.
á-verte, òre, ti, sum, v. tr. To turn away, remove, divert, estrange.
a.vis, i, f. A bird.
avus, i, m. A grandfather.

Axôna, ae, m. A river in Gallia Belgica, now the Aíme, a tributary of the Isara (Oise), which flows into the Sequana (Seine), ii. 5, 9.

B.

Bacénis silva, f. An extensive forest in Germany; acc. to Mannert, the western part of the Thuringian Forest; acc. to Reichard, the Hartz, vi. 10.

Baclius. See Sextius.

Bálearius, e, adj. Balearic; of the Balearic Islands (Majorca and Minorca), ii. 7.
bálteus, i, m. A girdle, belt; a sword-belt.

Baiuentius, i, m. Titus, a brave centurion, v. 35.

barbârâus, a, um. 1) Adj. Foreign, strange, barbarous; wild, savage, uncivilized. 2) Subs. A barbarian, foreigner.

Báslus, i, m. See Minácus.

Bátãvi, òrum, m. The Batavians; Bátãvorum insula, the island bounded by the northern arm of the Rhénus, (Rhine), the Vahális (Waal), the Mosa (Meuse), and the ocean, iv. 10.

Belgæ, òrum, m. The Belgians a powerful and warlike people, dwelling in Northern Gaul, between the Rhénus (Rhine), the Sequana (Seine), Matrona (Marne), and the North Sea. i. 1; ii. 1, 4, 14, 38.


bellicósus, a, um, adj. (bellicus). Warlike, fierce in war.
BELLICUS — BRUTUS

Bellicus, a, um, adj. (bellum). Of or pertaining to war, warlike.

Bello, ëre, ëvi, ëtum, v. intr. (bellum). To wage or carry on war.

Belloccasi, ërum, m. [also Velocasses, ium, ii. 4]. A people of Gallia Belgica, occupying the country east of the Calètii, along the Sequāna (Seine), to the Istra (Oise). Their capital was Rotomâgus (Rouen), vii. 75.

Bellôvâci, ërum, m. A powerful people of Gallia Belgica, between the Sequāna (Seine), the Istra (Oise), and the Samâra (Somme). Capital, Bratuspantium, ii. 4, 13, 14; vii. 59, 75.

Bellum, i, n. (duellum, duo). War.

bêne, melius, optime, adv. (bônum). Well, rightly, favorably, happily, successfully.

bêneficium, i, n. (bêne, fâcio). Kindness, favor, good deed, benefit, service.

bênevôlentia, ae, f. (bêne, volo). Friendly disposition, good will, inclination, friendship.

Bibracte, is, n. The capital of the Aeduini, in Gallia Celtica; later Augustodûnum, now Autun, i. 23; vii. 55, 63, 90.


Bibrôci, ërum, m. A people in the south-eastern part of Britain, v. 21.

bidum, i, n. (bis, dies). The space of two days, two days.

biennium, i, n. (bis, annus). The space of two years, two years.

Bigerrîones, um, m. A people of Aquitania, at the foot of the Pyrenees, iii. 27.

bîni, ac, a, num. distrib. (bis). Two by two, two each.

bîpartito, adv. (bis, partio). In two divisions, in two lines, i. 25.

bipêdalis, e, adj. (bis, pes). Two feet long, broad, or thick; trabes, iv. 17.

bis, num. adv. Twice.

Britûrîges, um, m. A people of Gallia Celtica, i. 18; vii. 5, 8, 9, 15.

Boduognâtus, i, m. A leader of the Nervii, ii. 23.

Boii, ërum, m. The Boii, a widely-extended and nomadic people, who dwelt chiefly in Gaul, Italy, and Germany. In Gallia Celta their district was between the Liger (Loire) and the Elaver (Allier), i. 5, 25, 28, 29; vii. 9, 17, 75.

bônitas, âtis, f. (bônum). Goodness, excellence; agrorum, fertility, i. 28.

bônum, a, um, comp. melius, sup. optimus, adj. Good, excellent; useful, suitable; well-disposed, friendly.


bos, bôris, m. and f. Ox, cow.

brachium, i, n. The fore-arm, the arm.

Brannovices. See Aurei.

Brannovii, ërum, m. A people in Gallia Celtica, subject to the Aeduni, vii. 75.


brêvis, e, adj. Short, brief, of short duration.

brêvitás, âtis, f. (brêvis). Shortness (either of space or time), brevity.

brêviter, adv. Shortly, briefly, with few words.

Britanni, ërum, m. The Britons, iv. 21; v. 11, 14, 21.

Britannia, ae, f. The island of Britain, iii. 9; iv. 20, 21; v. 8, 12; vi. 13.

Britannicus, a, um, adj. (Britannia). Pertaining to Britain, British.

brâma, ae, f. (for brêxma, brêvis). The shortest day in the year, the winter solstice.

Brutus, i, m. Decimus Ædiles, i. e., Decimus Junius Brutus. He commanded a portion of Caesar's fleet, in the Gallic war, and served under him in the civil war, but finally became one of his assassins, 44 B.C., iii. 11, 14; vii. 9, 87.
C.

*Cabillōnum*, i, n. An important town of the Aedui, in Gallia Celta, on the Arar (*Saône*), vii. 42, 90.

*Cadūrus*, i, m. See *Valērius*.

cācāmen, *tunis* n. The extreme end, extremity; point, top.


cādo, *āre, cācidō, cāsum*, v. intr. To fall; to perish, die.

*Cadurci*, ērum, m. A people of Gallia Celta, vii. 4, 64, 75.

*Cadurcius*, i, m. A Cadurcan, vii. 5.

cæedes, *is*, f. (caedo). A cutting down, slaughter, murder.

caedo, *āre, cācōde, cæsum*, v. tr. (caus. of cādo). To cut, fell, cut down, cut off; to beat, kill, destroy.

cærōmōnia, *ae*, f. A religious ceremony; a sacred rite.

*Cæroesti*, ērum, m. A Germanic tribe, dwelling between the Rhēnum (*Rhine*), and the Mōsa (*Meuse*), ii. 4.


Caesar, āris, m. 1) *Gāius Julius Caesar*; consult Life, p. vii. 2) *Lucius*, consul 64 B.C., one of Caesar’s lieutenants in the Gallic war, vii. 65.

caesus, *a, um*, part. from caedo.

*Cāius*, See *Gaēius*.

cālāmmittas, *ātis*, f. Calamity, misfortune, loss, disaster, damage.

*Cālendae*, ērum, f. The first day of each month. G. 642.

*Cālīti*, ērum, or *Calētes*, tum, m. A people of Gallia Celta, on the north side of the lower Seine and along the coast, ii. 4; vii. 75.


cālo, *ōnis*, m. A soldier’s servant, a servant.

*campester*, *tris, tre*, adj. (campus). Plain, level, flat; *campestres munitiones*, fortifications on the open plain, vii. 81.

campus, *i, m*. A plain, a level field.

*Camulōnegus*, i, m. A Gallic chieftain, of the tribe of the Auleri, vii. 57, 59, 62.

Canius, i, m. See *Gaēus Caniarius Reblius*.

cāno, *āre, cāctūni, cantūm*, v. tr. To sound; to sing; to give a signal with a trumpet; *receptus canere*, to give the signal for retreat, vii. 47.


*Cantium*, i, n. A district on the southern coast of Britain, now *Kent*, v. 13, 14, 22.

*capillus*, *i, m*. The hair of the head.

cāpio, *āre, cāpi, captūm*, v. tr. To take, receive, lay hold of, seize, capture; to occupy, gain, reach; to select, choose; *consilium capere*, to form the design, ii. 2.

caprea, *ae*, f. A she-goat, a roe.

cāptivus, *i, um*, adj. (cāpio). Captive, captured in war, prisoner; captured, plundered, taken as booty.

cāptus, *us*, m. (cāpio). Capacity, power of comprehension, notions, ideas, iv. 3.

cāptus, *a, um*, part. from cāpio.

cāput, *tis*, n. The head; individual, person; *multis captibus*, with many mouths, iv. 10; *cappium poema*, the punishment of death, vii. 71.

cāreco, *āre, ui, tānum*, v. intr. To be without; to want, be in want of; to be deprived of.

*cārina*, *ae*, f. The keel of a ship.

*Carnūtes*, *um*, m. A people of Gallia Celta, on both sides of the *Liger* (*Loire*), whose principal town was *Gaēnum* (*Orléans*), ii. 35; v. 25, 29, 56; vii. 2, 4, 13; vii. 2, 3, 11, 75.


carpo, *āre, pei, pārum*, v. tr. 1) To pluck, tear off. 2) To assail with words; to detract, slander, calumniate, carp at.

carrus, *i, m.*, or *carrum*, *i, n*. A wagon.
cārns, a, um, adj. Dear, beloved, highly prized.

Carvilius, i, m. A king of the Britons, v. 22.

cāsa, ae, f. A hut, cottage, barricade.

cāscus, i, m. Cheese.

Cassi, ērum, m. A small tribe in the south of Britain, v. 21.

Cassiānus, a, um, adj. (Cassius).

Cassian, pertaining to Cassius, i. 13.

cassia, tīsis, f. A helmet of metal, (galea, of leather).

Cassius, i, m. Lucius Cassius Longinus, consul 107 B.C., was defeated and slain by the Helvetii, and his army compelled ignominiously to pass under the yoke, i. 7, 12.

Cassivellaunus, i, m. A commander of the Britons, v. 11, 18, 22.

castellum, i, n. (dim. of castrum). A castle, fort, citadel, stronghold, redoubt.

Castric, i, m. A chief of the Sequani, i. 3.

castigo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. To punish, chastise, reprimand.

castrum, i, n. A fortified place, a fort. Castra, ērum, n. pl. A camp, encampment; quintis castris, in five days' march, i.e., at the fifth encampment, vi. 36; castra movēre, to break up, to decamp, i. 39.

cāsum, us, m. (cūdo). That which comes to pass, an event, an occurrence; misfortune, calamity; chance, accident.

Catamantālēdes, is, m. A chief of the Sequani, i. 3.

cātēna, ae, f. A chain, fetter.

Cātūriges, um, m. A small tribe in Gaëlia Narbonensis, i. 10.

Cauvulocus, i, m. King of half of the Eburones, v. 24, 26; vi. 31.

causa, ae, f. 1) Reason, ground, motive, cause; abl. causā, for the sake of, on account of; auxiliī causā, for the sake of aid, ii. 24. 2) An alleged reason, pretense; amicitiae causā, under the pretence of friendship, i. 39. 3) As a legal term: cause; causam di-cere, to plead one's cause, i. 4. 4) Condition, situation; in eōdem causā, in the same condition, iv. 4.

cauta, adv. (cavēo). Cautiously, with prudence.

cautēs, is, f. A rough pointed rock, cliff.

Cavarillus, i, m. Commander of the Aedui, vii. 67.

Cavarinus, i, m. King of the Sequani, appointed by Caesar, v. 54; vi. 5.

cāveo, ēre, ēvi, cau-tum, v. intr. To be on one's guard, either for one's self or another; to take care; to make one secure (as by ball); obsequiar de pecuniā caviunt, they give hostages as security for the money, vi. 2; inter se cavēre, to take and give security, vii. 2.

cēdo, ēre, cessi, caesum, v. intr. To go, go forth, go away; to yield, retire.

cēler, ēris, ēre, adj. Swift, rapid, quick, speedy.

cēleritas, ēdis, f. (cēler). Swiftness, rapidity, quickness.

cēleriter, cēlerius, cēleritūne, adv. (cēler). Swiftly, quickly, rapidly.

cēlo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. To conceal, hide, keep secret.

Celtae, ērum, m. The Celts, a people who, in the time of Caesar, occupied the largest of the three principal divisions of Gaul, i. 1.

Celtillius, i, m. One of the Arverni, father of Vercingetorix, vii. 4.

Cenimagni, ērum, m. A people in the south of Britain, v. 21.

Cenomāni, ērum, m. See Aulerci.

censeo, ēre, sui, sum, v. tr. To be of an opinion; to judge, determine, decree, resolve, ordain; to be in favor of, vote for.

census, us, m. (censeo). A census, enumeration, registration.

Centrōnes, um, m. A mountain tribe in Gaëlia Narbonensis, i. 10.

centum, num. indecl. A hundred.

centūrio, ēnis, m. (centūria). A centurion, the commander of the division of troops called the century. The century consisted originally of one
hundred men, later of sixty. In each legion there were sixty centurions.

cépi. See Cápio.

cerno, ère, crèvi, crètum, v. tr. To separate; to distinguish by the senses; to see, perceive; to decide, decree, resolve.

certàmen, tíis, n. (certo, to strive). A contest, strife, engagement, battle.

certe, adv. (certus). Certainly, surely; at least.

certus, a, um, adj. (cerno). Certain, definite, fixed, sure, established; certiorum facere, to inform, ii. 2.

cervus, i, m. 1) A stag. 2) As a milit. term: a piece of wood forked like the horns of a stag, a forked stake, vii. 72.

cespes, tís, m. (caedo). A turf or sod.

cétérus, a, um, adj. [nom. sing. m. not used]. The rest, the remainder, the other.

Ceutrónes, um, m. A people of Gallia Belgica, in the region of West Flanders, v. 39.

Cévenna, ae, m. A mountain chain between the Arverni and the Helvii, now the Cévennes, vii. 8, 56.

Chérusci, órum, m. A Germanic people between the Visurgis (Weser) and the Albis (Elbe), vi. 10.

cíbarius, a, um, adj. (cibus). Pertaining to food, suitable for eating; cibária, órum, subs. n. pl.; food, provisions, supplies.

cibus, i, m. Food, nourishment, provender.

Cicéro, ónis, m. Quintus Tullius, brother of the famous orator, one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul, v. 24, 38, 52; vi. 36; vii. 90.

Cimberius, i, m. A leader of the Suébi, i. 37.

Cimbrí, órum, m. A warlike people from the north, who, in the latter part of the second century B.C., invaded Southern Europe, and were finally conquered by Gaius Marius 101 B.C., i. 33, 40; ii. 4, 29; vii. 77.

Cingetórix, ígis, m. 1) A chief of the Treviri, thoroughly devoted to Caesar and the Roman cause, v. 3, 56; vi. 8. 2) A chief of the Kentish Britons, v. 22.

cingó, ère, nxi, nctum, v. tr. To surround, encompass, enclose, encircle, invest.

cippus, i, m. A post, sharp stake. circa, prep. with acc. Around, about.

circínus, i, m. A pair of compasses. circiter, adv. and prep. (circus, a circle). About, near.

circúltus, us, m. (circúmo). A going around, circuit, circumference, way around.


circum-cidó, ère, cidi, cism, v. tr. (caedo). To cut around; to cut.

circumcisús, a, um, part. from circumcidó. Cut around, steep.

circum-cládo, ère, xi, sum (clau- do). To shut in, enclose on every side, surround, hem in.

circum-do, däre, dédi, dátum, v. tr. To put, set, or place around; to encompass, encircle.

circum-dícó, ère, xi, cútum, v. tr. To lead or draw around.

circúm-éo, ère, évi or éi, étum, v. intr. To go around. Trans., to surround, enclose, encompass.

circum-flundo, ère, füdi, físum, v. tr. To pour around, to surround; Pass., to collect in multitudes; to flock about or around.

circum-jició, ère, jéci, jectum, v. tr. (jácio). To cast, throw, or place around.

circum-mittó, ère, misi, misum, v. tr. To send around.

circum-mánió, ère, évi, étum, v. tr. To wall up around, fortify, make secure; to enclose, surround.

circum-plector, i, pléxus sum, v. dep. To embrace, surround, enclose.

circum-sistó, ère, stím, v. tr. and intr. To stand around; to surround
circum-spicio, ire, exi, ectum, v. intr. (spicio, to look). To look around, gaze about. Trans., to view on all sides; to consider, ponder upon.

circum-sto, ire, steti, v. tr. and intr. To stand around; to surround.

circum-vallo, ire, avi, atum; v. tr. (valrum). To surround with a wall; to blockade, invest, encompass.

circum-véhor, iri, vectus sum, v. dep. (vetho). To ride around, go around.

circum-vénio, ire, vami, ventum, v. tr. To come around, esp. in a hostile manner; to surround, encompass, invest; to deceive, entrap.

cis, prep. with acc. On this side of. Cis-alpinus, a, um, adj. (Alpes). On this side of the Alps, Cisalpine, vi. 1.

cis-rhénanus, a, um, adj. (Rhénaus). On this side of the Rhine, vi. 2.

citatus, a, um, part. (cito, ire, to put in motion). Driven, urged forward, hastened; quick, rapid.

citior, us, adj. G. 166 (cis). On this side, hither.

cito, citius, cissime, adv. (cieo, to cause to go). Quickly, rapidly.

citra, prep. with acc. (cis). On this side of.

citro, adv. (cis). Hither; ultro cistroque, hither and thither, to and fro, i. 42.

civis, is, m. and f. A citizen.

civitas, atis, f. (civis). A body of citizens, state; the privilege of citizenship, citizenship, i. 47.

clam, adv. (for célam, from cólo). Secretly, in private.

clámito, ire, avi, atum, v. freq. (clamo, to cry out). To cry out violently, shout aloud.

clámor, oris, m. (clámo, to cry out). A loud cry, a shout, noise, clamor.

clandestinus, a, um, adj. (clam). Secret, hidden, concealed, private.

clárus, a, um, adj. Clear, distinct; plain, loud; renowned, famous.

classis, is, f. A fleet.

Claudius, i, m. Appius, consul at Rome, 54 B. C. v. 1.

claudio, ire, si, sum, v. tr. To close, shut up, enclose; agmen claudere, to close the line, bring up the rear, i. 25.

clávus, i, m. A nail.

clementia, ae, f. (clémens, mild). Moderation, mildness, forbearance, clemency, mercy, kindness.

cliens, entis, m. and f. (for chüena, cliuo, to hear). A client, dependant, vassal, retainer, subject, i. 31.

clientela, ae, f. (clien). Clientship, protection, alliance.

clivus, i, m. (cliño, to ascend). A gently ascending height; a hill, eminence, elevation.

Clódius, i, m. Publicus Pulcher, a turbulent tribune of the people. He was killed near Rome 52 B. C., in an encounter with his enemy Milo, vii. 1.

Caneus, better written Ganeus, i, m. A Roman praenomen.

côacervo, ire, avi, atum, v. tr. (con, acervo, to heap up). To heap up together; to accumulate, collect in a mass.

coactus, a, um, part. from cógo.

cocactus, us, m. (cögo). Constraint, compulsion.


coarto, ire, avi, atum, v. tr. (con, arto, to press). To press together; to press into a small space, vii. 70.

Cocosætes, tum, m. A people of Aquitania, iii. 27.

coëgi. See Cögo.

cœlestis, e, adj. (coelum, heaven). Heavenly, celestial. Subs. pl., the heavenly beings, the gods, vi. 17.

coëmo, ire, emi, emptum, v. tr. (con, émo). To buy up, purchase.

ceo, ire, i or ii, tum, v. intr. (con, eo). To go or come together; to meet, assemble, collect.


coepus, a, um, part. See Coepi.

coercoeo, ire, ui, tum, v. tr. (con, areo, to shut up). To enclose on all
sides; to restrain, confine; to keep back, check.

cogitatio, ōnis, f. (cōgito). Thinking, reflection; design, plan.

cōgito, ĕre, ĕvi, ētum, v. tr. (con, āgō). To consider, reflect upon, meditate, weigh; to design, plan, intend.

cognātio, ōnis, f. (con, nascor). 1) Relationship. 2) Those who are related, family relatives; magnae cognationis, with numerous relatives, vii. 32.

cognoscō, ĕre, ĕvi, ētum, v. tr. (con, nosco). To know; to ascertain, learn, discover; to examine, investigate.

cōgo, ĕre, ĕgi, actum, v. tr. (con, āgo). To drive together, collect, assemble; to force, constrain, compel.

cōhors, tis, f. A cohort, the tenth part of a legion, consisting of six centuries; praetoria cohors, the commander’s staff or body-guard, i. 40.

cōhortātio, ōnis, f. (cōhortor). Exhortation, encouragement.

cōhortor, ĕri, ētus sum, v. dep. (con, hortor). To exhort, encourage.

cōire. See Cōro.

cōlātus, a, um, part. from cōnferō.

cōllaundo, ĕre, ĕvi, ētum, v. tr. (con, laudo). To praise, commend highly, extol.

collectus, a, um, part. from collīgo, ĕre.

collīgo, ĕre, ĕvi, ētum, v. tr. (con, īgo, to bind). To bind together, fasten, connect.

collīgo, ĕre, ĕgi, lectum, v. tr. (con, īgo, to collect). To collect together, assemble; to gain, acquire, vii. 12; se colligere, to compose one’s self, iiii. 6.

collis, is, m. A hill, high ground.

collūcō, ĕre, ĕvi, ētum, v. tr. (con, lōco, to place). To lay, put, place; to set up, erect; to station, quarter; to arrange; nuptium . . . colligere, to give in marriage, i. 18.

collōquium, i, n. (collōquor). Conversation, conference, interview.

collōquor, i, cītus sum, v. dep. (con, lōquor). To speak with; to converse; to hold a conference or parley.

cōle, ĕre, cōkai, cultum, v. tr. To till, cultivate; to honor, revere, reverence, worship.

cōlōnia, ae, f. (colōnus, colonist). Colony, settlement.

cōlor, ĕri, m. The color, complexion, tint.

combāro, ĕre, bussi, bustum, v. tr. (con, ĩro, to burn). To burn up, consume.

cōmes, tis, m. and f. (con, eo). One who goes with another, a companion, comrade, associate.

comitium, i, n. (con, eo). The comitium, a portion of the Roman Forum. Plur., the assembly held in the comitium for electing magistrates, etc.; hence, election; proximi comititis, at the last election, vii. 67.

comitōtor, ĕri, ētus sum, v. dep. (cōmes). To accompany, attend, follow.

commētātus, us, m. (commoe). 1) A passage, trip, expedition, v. 23. 2) Supplies, provisions, i. 48.

commēmōro, ĕre, ĕvi, ētum, v. tr. (con, mēmor). To bring to mind, call to mind, remind; to recount, relate.

commendo, ĕre, ĕri, ētum, v. tr. (con, mando). To commit to; to intrust, commend.

commoeo, ĕre, ĕvi, ētum, v. intr. (con, meo, to go). To go back and forth, resort to, visit.

commilito, ōnis, m. Comrade.

commimus, adv. (con, mānus). In close contest, hand to hand.

commissūra, ae, f. (committo). A joining together; juncture, joint.

committo, ĕre, mīsī, missum, v. tr. (con, mittō) 1) To join; connect together, maie, vii. 22; proelium committere, to join battle, commence battle. 2) To begin, undertake. 3) To commit (as a crime or offence). 4) To intrust, allow, permit, risk.

Commius, i, m. A leader of the Atrebates, iv. 21, 27, 35; v. 22; vii. 6; vii. 76.

commōde, adv. (commōdus). Opportunity, seasonably; properly, suitably; easily, without difficulty.
commōdum, i, n. (commōdus). Advantage, profit, gain, utility; convenience.

commōdus, a, um, adj. (con, mō dus). Convenient, suitable; profitable, advantageous, useful, favorable, agreeable.

commōnēfācio, ēre, ēfī, fāctum, v. tr. (con, mōneo, ōce, fācio). To remind, admonish, inform.

commōror, āri, ātus sum, v. dep. (con, mōror). To stop, linger, stay, sojourn.

commōveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, v. tr. (con, mōveo). To move; to affect, excite; to disturb.

commūnicō, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. (commūnis). To make common, share with, communicate, impart; consilia, to take common counsel, vi. 2.

commūnīco, ēri, ēri or ī, ētum, v. tr. (con, mūni). To fortify on all sides or strongly; to secure, intrench.

commūnīs, e, adj. (con, mūnus). Common, general, public, ordinary.

commūtatio, mīnis, f. (commūnis). A changing, change, alternation.

commūto, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. (con, mūdo). To change entirely, alter; to exchange.

compāro, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (compar, alike). To place in comparison, compare, i. 31.

compāro, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (con, pāro). To prepare with zeal, make ready; to procure, acquire, gain.

compello, ēre, pāli, pulsum, v. tr. (con, pello). To drive together, collect; to compel, drive, constrain.

compendum, i, n. (con, pendo). Gain, profit, advantage.

compērio, ēre, pēri, pertum, v. tr. To get a knowledge of, ascertain, learn, discover; compartiment habere, to have ascertained, i. 44; pro re comperta, as (for) an established fact, vii. 42.

compertus, a, um, part. from compērio.

complector, i, exus sum, v. dep. (con, plecto, to plait). To embrace, surround, enclose, encircle.

compleo, ēre, plēvi, plētum (con, pleo, to fill). To fill, make full; to complete, fill up; montem, to cover, i. 24.

complāres, a and īa, adj. (con, plaus). Several, many, very many.

compōno, ēre, pōsui, pōstum, v. tr. (con, pōno). To put or place together; to compose, arrange; to build.

comporto, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (con, porto). To bring together, collect, convey.

compréhendo, ēre, di, sum, v. tr. (con, prēhendo). To take hold of, seize, apprehend; to catch, take captive, arrest, iv. 27; to lay hold of, to take by the hand, v. 31; ignem, to take fire, v. 43.

comprōbo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. (con, próbo). To approve fully; to sanction; to justify.

compulsus, a, um, part. from compello, ēre.

cōnātus, us, m., cōnātum, i, n. (cōnor). Attempt, undertaking.

con-cēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, v. tr. and intr. To go away, retire, withdraw; to yield, grant; to permit, allow, concede.

con-certo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. (certo, to contend). To match one's self with another in battle; to contend.

concessus, us, m. (concēdo). Permission, leave.

con-cīdo, ēre, cīdi, v. intr. (cādo). To fall; to perish.

con-cīdo, ēre, cīdi, cīsum, v. tr. (caedo). To cut to pieces; to cut down, destroy; to divide, intersect.

concilio, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. (concilium). To bring together, unite; to gain the favor of, win, conciliate; to obtain, gain, procure.

concilium, i, n. (concīo, to collect). An assembly, meeting, council.

concīo, mīnis, f. (concīo, to collect). An assembly, esp. of the people or of an army, meeting, council.

concīōnor, āri, ātus sum, v. dep. (concīo). To harangue, discourse, make a speech.
con-cipio, ēre, cēpi, ceptum, v. tr. (cēpio). To take, receive; to conceive, understand, comprehend.

concisus, a, um, part. from con-cido.

con-cito, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. (otto, to put in motion). To move violently; to arouse, stir up, incite, instigate, provoke.

con-clāmo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. intr. (clāmo, to cry out). To cry out with a loud voice, shout, call out; ad arma, to call to arms.

con-cludo, ēre, si, sum, v. tr. (clau-do). To shut up, confine.

con-crēpo, ēre, ui, itum, v. intr. (crēpo, to rattle). To make a noise, make a clatter, vii. 21.

con-curro, ēre, ecurri or curri, cursum, v. intr. To rush together; to hasten, run to; to engage in fight, charge; to run to assist, i. 48.

concurso, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. intr. (freq. of concurrro). To run to and fro, run about.

concurrusus, us, m. (concurro). A running to and fro; a rushing together, onset, attack; concursus navium, collision of vessels, v. 10.

con-demno, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. (damno). To charge with, accuse of, condemn.

condicio, ōnis, f. (con, do). Condition, situation, state, nature, quality; stipulation, terms, agreement, provisions.

con-dōno, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. To remit punishment; to pardon, excuse.

Condŭsī, ōrum, m. A people of Gallia Belgica, on the right bank of the Mōsa (Meuse), ii. 4; iv. 6; vi. 32.

con-dūco, ēre, xi, ctum, v. tr. To lead, bring or draw together; to conduct; to collect; to hire, ii. 1.

Conetodūnus, i, m. A leader of the Carnates, vii. 3.

confectus, a, um, part. from con-ficio.

con-fercio, ēre, fersi, fertum (farcio, to stuff). To press together, crowd.

con-fēro, ferre, contūli, collātum, v. tr. To bear or bring together, collect, carry; to unite, join; to compare, i. 31; to ascribe, attribute; to defer; se conferre, to betake one's self.

confectus, a, um, part. from confercio. Crowded, pressed together, thick, close, dense.

con-festim, adv. (festīno, to hasten). Immediately, speedily, without delay.

con-ficio, ēre, fici, factum, v. tr. (fācio). 1) To prepare, compose, execute, finish, complete, accomplish, bring to pass. 2) To exhaust, weaken, destroy, kill. 3) To collect, procure, furnish, ii. 4.

con-fīdo, ēre, fisum sum, v. semi-dep. G. 283, 3; 283 (fīdo, to trust). To trust confidently, rely upon, believe, hope, confide in.

con-figo, ēre, fisī, fisum, v. tr. (figa, to fix). To fasten together, to join.

con-finis, e, adj. Bordering upon, next to.

confinium, i, n. (confīnis). Border, limit, frontier.

con-fio. See Confit.

confirmāto, ōnis, f. (confirmo). Confirmation, assurance, word, assertion.

con-firmo, ēre, ēri, ētum, v. tr. To establish, render firm, strengthen; to encourage, console; to assure, assert.

con-fīsus, a, um, part. from con-fido.

con-fit, confēri, v. def. G. 297, III. 2. It is done, accomplished.

con-fīteor, ēri, fessum sum, v. dep. (fāteor, to confess.) To confess, admit; to concede, acknowledge.

confixus, a, um, part. from configo.

con-flāgro, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. intr. (flāgro, to burn). To burn up, be destroyed by fire.

confecto, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. (freq. from configo). To strike together violently; to struggle with. Pass., to be troubled, harassed, afflicted.
con-figo, ēre, ficxi, fīctum, v. tr. (fīgo, to dash against). To strike together. Instr., to be in conflict, fight, engage in combat with.

confluens, entis, m. (confu∈). The place where two rivers unite, the confluence.

con-fluo, ēre, xi, v. intr. To flow together; to flock together.

con-fugio, ēre, fūgi, fāgītum, v. intr. To flee for refuge; to have recourse to.

con-fundo, ēre, fūdi, fūnum, v. tr. To pour or mix together; to unite, join, blend.

con-gēro, ēre, gessi, gestum, v. tr. To bear, carry, or bring together; to collect, heap up.

con-grēdior, i, gressus sum, v. dep. (gradior, to go). To go, come, or meet with one; to unite with, vi. 5; to fight, contend, engage.

congressus, a, um part. from con-grēdior.

congressus, us, m. (congrēdior). A meeting, a hostile encounter, engagement.

conjectūra, ae, f. (conjectio). Conjecture, supposition, conclusion.

con-jicio, ēre, jōci, jectum, v. tr. (jīcio). To cast or throw together; to hurl, send, cast, put; to ascribe, impute; to infer, conjecture.


con-jungo, ēre, xi, c tum, v. tr. To join together, connect, unite, associate.


con-jūro, ēre, āvi, ātum, v. intr. To swear together; to form a plot or conspiracy.

conjugus, ūgis, m. and f. (conjungo). Husband, wife.

cōnors, āri, ātus sum, v. dep. To undertake, attempt, try, venture.

con-quisco, ēre, ēvi, étum, v. intr. (quies). To be wholly at rest; to take rest, repose.

con-quirō, ēre, quišivi, quišītum, v. tr. (guaero). To seek or search for; to procure, bring together, collect.

conquisitis, a, um, part. from con-quirō.

con-sanguineus, a, um, adj. (sanguis). Related by blood, kindred. Subs. A kindred, relative.

con-scendo, ēre, di, sum, v. tr. and intr. (scando, to climb). To mount, ascend; to go on board, embark.

conscientia, ae, f. (con, scio). Consciousness, knowledge, feeling; sense.

con-scisco, ēre, scivi, scītum, v. tr. (scio). To approve, decree in common; to adjudge, determine; to appropriate; sibī mortem, to commit suicide.

conscius, a, um, adj. (con, scio). Conscious; privy to, participant in, accomplice, witness of, guilty of.

con-scribo, ēre, scripsi, scriptum, v. tr. To write together; to write; to enrol, enlist, levy.

con-sēcro, ēre, sēri, sētum, v. tr. (sacro, to hallow). To make sacred; to consecrate.

con-sector, āri, ātum, v. dep. To follow after eagerly, pursue.

consēcutus, a, um, part. from con-sēquor.


consensus, us, m. (consentio). Agreement, unanimity, consent.

con-sentio, ēre, sensi, sensum, v. intr. To agree, accord, be of the same mind; to conspire, join in a conspiracy.

con-sēquor, i, cūtus sum, v. dep. To follow, go after, accompany; to pursue; to reach, overtake; to gain, obtain, acquire.

con-servo, ēre, sēri, sētum, v. tr. To preserve, keep safe or unharmed; to observe.

Considius, i, m. Publius, an ex. experienced officer in Caesar's army, l. 21, 22.

con-sido, ēre, sēdi, sessum, v. intr. (sēdeo, to sit). To sit together, hold sessions, meet; to settle down, take up one's abode; to encamp, take post.
consilium, i, n. (consul). Deliberation, consultation; plan, purpose, design, intention; wisdom, understanding, judgment, penetration, prudence; a council, council of war.

consulmis, e, adj. Very similar, quite like.

consistio, esse, stiti, stitum, v. intr. To stand still, remain standing; to take a stand, keep a position; to remain, dwell; to halt, stop, linger, stay; to consist of or in, depend upon.

consobrinus, i, m. (soror). The son of a mother’s sister, a cousin.

consolor, æri, ætus sum, v. dep. (sōlor, to console). To console earnestly, comfort, encourage, cheer, animate.

conspectus, us, m. (conspectio). Look, sight, view, presence.

conspicio, esse, specti, spectum, v. tr. (spēcio, to look). To view attentively, observe, see, look at, perceive, behold.

conspicior, āri, ātus sum, v. dep. (conspicio). To get a sight of, see, descry, behold.

consipiro, āre, āri, ātum, v. intr. (spiro, to breathe). To agree together in thoughts or plans; to combine, conspire

constantia, ae, f. (con, sto). Firmly, steadily; uniformly, constantly.

constantia, ae, f. (con, sto). Firmness, steadiness; constancy, perseverance, resolution.

consterno, āre, āri, ātum, v. tr. (sterno, to stew). To alarm, terrify, overwhelm with dismay.

consterno, āre, strāvi, strātum, v. tr. (sterno, to stew). To stew over, to cover by stewing, to spread over.

constipio, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (stypo, to press). To press or crowd together.

constituo, āre, ui, ātum, v. tr. (stātuo.) To put, place, establish; to station, naves, iv. 24; to post, praestidia, vii. 7; to set in order; to erect, build, construct, turres, ii. 12; to arrange, regulate, settle, constitute; to appoint, regem, iv. 21; to determine, fix upon, agree upon, diem, i. 8; to decree, resolve; to levy.

consto, āre, stiti, stātum, v. intr. To stand still, remain firm, remain unchanged; to consist in, depend upon, in aie[nā virtūte, vii. 84; to continue, exist. Constant, impera., it is evident, an acknowledged fact, generally admitted.

constrātus, a, um, part. from conserno, ēre.

consuusco, ēre, suēvi, suētum, v. intr. (suusco, to be wont). To become accustomed, be wont, have the habit.

consuetudo, us, f. (consuusco). Custom, habit, use, usage; intimacy, intercourse; manner of living.

consuetus, a, um, part. from consuusco.

consul, ālis, m. A consul, one of the two highest magistrates at Rome, chosen annually after the expiration of the kings.

consulatus, us, m. (consul). Consulship.

consulō, ēre, ui, ultum, v. tr. and intr. To consult, take counsel, deliberate, consider; to consult for, take care for, have regard for.

consulto, adv. (consultum). Designedly, with deliberation, on purpose.

consulto, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (consulō). To reflect, consider maturely; to take counsel, deliberate.

consultum, i, n. (consulō). Decree, deliberation, decision.

consumo, ēre, sumpi, sumptum, v. tr. To take to one’s self; to consume, devour, waste, destroy, use; to pass, spend.

consurgo, ēre, rexi, rectum, v. intr. (surgō, to rise). To rise together; to arise.

constabulo, ēre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (tábula, a board). To cover with boards; to furnish with floorings, to build several stories high.

contagio, ōnis, f. (contingo). A touching, contact.
contāmino, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (tango). To defile, pollute, contaminate.

contēgo, ēre, testi, tectum, v. tr. To cover, cover over, conceal.

contemno, ēre, tempsi, temptum, v. tr. (temno, to slight). To despise, scorn, esteem lightly, hold in contempt.


contemptus, us, m. (contemno). Contempt, scorn, disdain.

contendo, ēre, di, tum, v. tr. and intr. To stretch vigorously; to exert one’s self for, strive for, seek to obtain, make efforts for; to maintain. Intr., to direct one’s course to, proceed to, arrive at, march, hasten; to contend with, fight, strive against.

contentio, ōnis, f. (contendo). Contest, exertion, struggle, dispute, controversy.

contentus, a, um, adj. (tēneō). Content, satisfied with.

contester, ārī, ātus sum, v. dep. (testis). To call to witness, invoke.

contexo, ēre, texui, textum, v. tr. (tēxo, to weave). To weave, entwine, join together, unite, connect.

contigi. See Contingo.

continens, entis, part. and adj. (contineō). Hanging together, uninterrupted, contiguous, adjoining; continual. Subs. (sc. terra), the continent, the main-land.


continentia, ae, f. (contineō). A holding back; temperance, self-control, moderation.

contineō, ēre, us, tentum, v. tr. (tēneō). To hold together, bind; to guard, restrain; to bound, confine; to embrace, occupy, enclose; to hold back, check; se continere, to restrain one’s self; to remain, continue.

contingo, ēre, tigi, tactum, v. tr. (tango). To touch, border upon, extend to; to happen, fall to one’s lot.

continuātio, ōnis, f. (continuo). Continuance, succession.

continuo, adv. (continus). Immediately, directly, without delay.

continuus, a, um, adj. (continuo). Successive, following one after another, uninterrupted.

contra, prep. and adv. 1) Prep. with acc. Over against, opposite to, contrary to, against. 2) Adv. On the contrary, differently, on the other hand; contra atque, otherwise than.

contūhō, ēre, traxi, tractum, v. tr. To draw together, collect, unite; to make smaller, contract.

contrārius, a, um, adj. (contra). Opposite, opposed, contrary; inimical, hostile, at variance with; ex contrario, on the other hand, on the contrary, vii. 30.

contröversia, ae, f. (contra, verto). Strife, controversy, dispute.

contūli. See Conßero.

contumēlia, ae, f. Abuse, insult, affront, disgrace, ignominy; injury, violence.

convalesco, ēre, ēui, v. intr. (vāleo). To become strong, gain strength, recover.

con-vallis, is, f. An enclosed valley, a valley.

convēho, ēre, testi, vectum, v. tr. To carry, bear, or bring together.

convēnio, ēre, vēni, vectum, v. intr. To come together, assemble; to go or come to, arrive; to speak to, address, accost; to be agreed upon, ii. 19. Convēniōn, impers., it is fit, suitable, proper, agreed upon.

conventus, us, m. (convĕnio.) A meeting, assembly, court, assembles.

con-verto, ēre, ti, sum, v. tr. To turn about, wheel around; to turn back; to change, alter, transform; to turn, direct, iv. 17; in fugam, to put to flight, i. 52.

Convictolitāvis, is, m. A chief of the Aedui, viii. 32, 33, 37, 42, 55, 67.

con-vinco, ēre, vicī, victum, v. tr. To overcome completely; to convict, show clearly, prove.
com-vōce, āre, āri, ātum, v. tr. To call together, summon.

coērior, āri, ortus sum, v. dep. (cen, orior). To rise together; to rise, break out, appear suddenly.

cōpia, ae, f. (con, ope). Plenty, abundance, fulness; means, riches; provisions; number, multitude. Plur., generally, military forces, troops.

cōpiōsus, a, um, adj. (cōpia). Well supplied, rich, well stocked, copiously provided with.

cōpūla, ae, f. A grappling-hook, a grapnel.

cor, cordis, n. The heart; cordi esse, to be near the heart, to be dear, pleasing, agreeable.

cōrām, adv. In person, personally, with one's own eyes.

cōrium, i, n. Skin, hide, leather.

cornu, us, n. A horn; trumpet; the wing, flank.

cōrōna, ae, f. A crown, chaplet; sub coroā vendere, to sell as slaves, i.e., with chaplets upon their heads, iii. 16; corona militum, the line or circle of besiegers, vii. 72.

corchum, oris, n. The body, corpse, person; totum corpus, the entire works, vii. 72.

corzripio, ēre, ripti, reptum, v. tr. (con, rāpio). To seize violently; to plunder; to attack.

corruptum, ēre, rupī, ruptum, v. tr. (con, rumpo, to break). To break in pieces; to destroy, damage, injure, lay waste, ruin.

cortex, tōis, m. and f. The bark of a tree.

cōrus, i, m. The north-west wind.

Cōta, ae, m. See Aurunculēus.

Cotūtus, i, m. A leader of the Carnūtēs, vii. 3.

Cōtus, i, m. An Aeduan, rival of Convictolitāvis, vii. 32, 33, 39, 67.

cfassitūdo, tīnis, f. (crassus, thick). Thickness.

Crassus, i, m. 1) Marcus Lēcinius, a triumvir with Caesar and Pompey; he defeated Spartācus and his rebel slaves in Lucania 71 B.C; consul 55 B. C., i. 21; iv. 1. 2) Pūblius Licinius, son of Marcus. Crassus, lieutenant in Caesar's army, i. 52; ii. 34; iii. 7, 3, 20, sq. 3) Marcus Lēcinius, son of the triumvir, quaestor in Caesar's army, v. 24, 46; vi. 6.

crātēs, is, f. Wicker-work; a hurdle, fascine, fagot.

crēber, bra, brum, adj. Frequent, numerous, crowded.

crēbro, adv. (crēber). Frequently, often.

crēdo, ēre, dīdi, ētum, v. tr. To believe, trust, rely upon; to think, imagine; to intrust, commit, consign.

crēsmo, āre, āvi, ētum, v. tr. To burn.

crēo, āre, āvi, ētum, v. tr. To create, make, produce; to appoint, elect, choose.

cresco, ēre, crēvi, crētum, v. intr. To grow, increase, augment; to grow into power or influence, i. 20.

Crētes, um, m. [sing. Cretas, ētis]. Cretans, inhabitants of the island of Crete, now Candia, ii. 7.

crēmen, tīnis, n. (cerno). A charge, accusation; crime, offence, fault.

crinis, is, m. The hair.

Cripōgnātus, i, m. A chief of the Arvernī, vii. 77.

crūcītās, us, m. (crūcio, to torment). Torment, torture, pain, suffering, anguish.

crūdēlis, e, adj. (crūdus, bloody). Cruel, merciless.


crūdēlītor, adv. (crūdēlia). In a cruel manner, cruelly.

crūs, crūris, n. The leg, the shin.

cūbile, is, n. (cūba, to lie down). A resting-place, vi. 27.

culmen, tīnis, n. Top, summit.

culpa, ae, f. Fault, guilt; blame, crime.

cultus, us, m. (cūlo). Arrangements for living, manner of life, culture, refinement; dress; worship.

cum, prep. with abl. With, together with, among; at the same time with.
cum, conj. G. 517. When, as, after, as soon as, while, because, since, although; cum ... tum, while ... so also, not only ... but also, both ... and; cum primum, as soon as.

*cunctatio, ënis, f. (cunctor). Delay, lingering.

cunctor, ări, ëtus sum, v. dep. To delay, linger; to hesitate, doubt.

cunctus, a, um, adj. (for conjunction; con, junte). All united in one whole, all together, all, entire.

cuneátim, adv. (cuneus). In the form of a wedge, in masses.

cuneus, i, m. A wedge, troops marshalled in the form of a wedge.

cuniculus, i, m. 1) A rabbit. 2) A burrow, a passage under ground, a mine.

cūpide, adv. (cūpio). With zeal, eagerly, earnestly.

cūpiditas, ālis, f. (cūpidus). Desire, wish, longing; eagerness, enthusiasm; svarice.

cūpidus, a, um, adj. (cūpio). Desirous, eager, fond of.

cūpio, ēre, ēri or ēii, tum, v. tr. To desire, wish, long for; to wish well to, Helvetiis, i. 18.

cur, adv. Why? wherefore? for what purpose?

cūra, ae, f. (quaere). Care, attention, anxiety, diligence; trouble, solicitude; sībi curas esse, to be to him an object of attention, i. 33.

Curiosolitae, ārum, or Curiosolites, sum, m. An Armoric people of Gallia Celtica, ii. 34; iii. 7; vii. 75.

cūro, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. (cūra). To care for, attend to, provide for. With part. in dus, to order, cause to be done; pontem faciendum curare, to cause a bridge to be built, i. 13.

curro, ēre, cūcurri, cursum, v. intr. To run; to flow.

currus, us, m. (currus). A wagon, car.

cursus, us, m. (currus). Running, speed; course; passage, voyage.

custodios, ae, f. (custos). A watchman, guard, care, custody; disponere custodias, to station guards, vii. 27.

custódio, õre, õvi or õii, tum, v. tr. (custos). To guard, keep watch.

custos, õdis, m. and f. A guard, watch, keeper, attendant.

D.

Dāci, õrum, m. The Dacians, the inhabitants of Dacia, comprising modern Transylvania, Moldavia, Wallachia, and upper Hungary, vi. 25.

danno, õre, õvi, õtum, v. tr. (damnōm). To condemn, doom, sentence.

dannum, i, n. Loss.

Dānuvius, i, m. The Danube, vi. 25.

dē, prep. with abl. I. Of space: from, away from; de finibus suis, from their territory, i. 2. II. Of time: directly after, in, by, in the course of, during; de tertiā vigilia, in the third watch, i. 12. III. Of other relations: from, of, concerning, in regard to, for, on account of, by; de pace, for peace, ii. 31; de numero dierum, in respect to the number of days, vi. 36; de improvisō, unexpectedly, ii. 3.

dēbeo, ēre, ēi, tum, v. tr. (dē hā-beo). To have something from some one; hence, to owe, be in debt. With the inf., to be in duty bound; dēbeo, I ought. Pass., to be due.

dē-cēde, ēre, cessi, cessum, v. intr. To go from, depart, withdraw, retire, retreat; to shun, avoid; to die.

decem, num. adj. Ten.

dē-cerno, ére, crīvi, crītum, v. tr. To think, judge, conclude; to deliberate, resolve, determine; to decide, pronounce, settle; to decree, vote, appoint; to fight, contend.

dē-certo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. intr. (certo, to contend). To fight, contend, engage.

dēcessus, us, m. (dēcādo). The withdrawal, going away; aestus, ebb of the tide, iii. 13.

DECIDO—DEPU

dé-ciðo, ère, iti, v. intr. (cado). To fall off.
Decimus, i, m. A Roman praenomen.
décimus, a, um, num. adj. (décem). Tenth.
dé-cipio, ère, cēpi, ceptum, v. tr. (cāpio). To catch, ensnare, entrap, deceive.
dé-clāro, ère, ēri, ērum, v. tr. (clārēre). To make clear, declare, announce publicly.
dé-clivis, è, adj. (clivus). Sloping, descending.
déclivitas, ētis, f. (décîvis). Descent, declivity.
décērētum, i, n. (dēcerno). Decree, decision, resolution.
décērētus, a, um, part. from décerno.
décimānus, a, um, adj. (dēcem). Of or belonging to the tenth; portae decumanae, the decuman gate of the camp, so called because in the consular army the tenth cohorts of the legions were stationed near it, the entrance opposite the porta praetoria, which was the gate nearest the enemy.
dé-ciūrio, önīs, m. (déciūria). A decurion, the commander of a small body of cavalry (déciūria), originally ten, afterwards more.
dé-curru, ère, cūcurri, cursum, v. intr. To run down, hasten, march down quickly.
dé-dēcus, ōris, n. (dēcuss, honor). Disgrace, dishonor, infamy, shame.
dēdül. See Do.
dēdīdi. See Dēdo.
dēdītius, a, um, adj. and subs. (dēdo). Having surrendered; one who has surrendered; a subject.
dēdītio, önīs, f. (dēdo). Surrender, capitulation.
dēdītus, a, um, 1) part. from dēdū; 2) adj. Devoted, vi. 16.
dē-dō, ère, dēdi, dūtum, v. tr. To give up, yield, surrender, deliver; to consign, devote.
dē-dūco, ère, dūxi, ductum, v. tr. To lead or bring away; to lead or bring down; to convey, conduct, re-
move, withdraw, lead out, bring; to induce, lead, influence; to launch; to conduct home, as a bride, to marry, v. 14.
dē-est. See Dēsum.
dēfātigātū, önīs, f. (dēfātīgo). Fatigue, weariness, exhaustion.
dē-fātigo, ère, ēri, ērum, v. tr. (fātīgo, to weary). To make weary, tire out, fatigue, exhaust.
dēfectio, önīs, f. (dēficēio). Defection, desertion, revolt.
dē-fendo, ère, di, sum, v. tr. To ward off, repel, keep off; to defend, protect.
dē-fensio, önīs, f. (dēfendō). Defence, protection.
dē-fensor, önīs, m. (dēfendō). A defender, protector.
dē-fēro, ferre, tuli, lātum, v. tr. To bear or bring away, carry, convey; to tell, inform; to produce, offer, present, bring before, iii. 23; to confer upon, bestow, v. 6.
dēfessus, a, um, adj. (dēfēticor, to grow weary). Weary, tired out, fatigued, exhausted.
dē-ficēio, ère, fēci, factum, v. tr. and intr. (fāciō). To fail, fall away from, separate from, revolt; to become feeble, grow weak; to perish; to be wanting; animo deficere, to become discouraged, vii. 30.
dē-fīgo, ère, fīxi, faxum, v. tr. (fīgo, to fix). To drive down, fasten, fix, plant.
dē-fīnio, ère, iōr or iū, iūtum, v. tr. To set bounds to, define, determine, restrict.
dē-fīxus, a, um, part. from dēfīgo.
dē-fluo, ère, uxi, uxum, v. intr. To flow down, flow, lv. 10.
dē-fōre = dēfūtūrum esse, v. def. G. 297, III. 2. To be about to be wanting, v. 56.
dē-formis, è, adj. (forma). Misshapen, deformed, ugly, unsightly.
dē-fūgio, ère, fūgi, fūgitum, v. tr. and intr. To flee away; to shun, avoid.
dē-fūi. See Dēsum.
DEINCEPS — DEPRECOR 305

deinceps, adv. (deinde, stiptio). One after the other, successively; after, next after.
de-inde, adv. Then, afterwards, next.
dejectus, us, m. (dejectio). A depression, declivity, descent.
decjicio, ēre, jōci, jectum, v. tr. (jacio). To throw down, cast down, dislodge, drive; to precipitate; to destroy, kill; to deprive of, disappoint, spe, i. 8.
delātus, a, um, part. from dēfero.
dēlecto, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. (lācio, to entice). To allure, please, delight. Pass., to delight in, find pleasure in, iv. 2.
dēlectus, us, m. (dēlago, ēre). A choice, selection; a levy of soldiers.
dēlectus, a, um, part. from dēlago, ēre.
dēleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. To destroy, blot out, overthrow.
dēlibero, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. (libra, pair of scales). To weigh well in mind; to ponder upon, consider; to determine, resolve; to take counsel, consult.
dēlibro, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. (liber, bark). To take off the bark, to peel, vii. 73.
dēlicitum, i. n. (dēlinguo, to fail). A crime, offence, fault.
dēligo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. (ligo, to bind). To bind, tie, fasten.
dēligo, ēre, lēgi, lectum, v. tr. (lēgo, to collect). To select, choose; to levy; to detail, v. 11.
dēltesco, ēre, ētui, v. intr. (lāteo). To hide away, conceal one’s self.
dēmentia, ae, f. (dē, mene). Madness, folly, want of reason.
dēmeto, ēre, messum, messum, v. tr. To cut down; to reap.
dēmigro, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. intr. (migro, to migrate). To move from, remove, go away, depart, withdraw.
dēminuo, ēre, ui, ētum, v. tr. (mi-nuo). To diminish, lessen; to take away from, weaken, impair.
dēmitto, ēre, misi, missum, v. tr. To send or thrust down; to let down, let fall; to lower; se demittere, to descend, v. 32; se animo demittere, to lose courage, vii. 29; demissa loca, places lying low, vii. 72.
dēmo, ēre, dempsi, demptum, v. tr. (dē, ëmo). To take off, remove.
dēmonstro, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. (monstro, to show). To point out, show, demonstrate; to name, designate; to declare, state, mention.
dēmōrō, āri, ētus sum, v. dep. To delay, hinder, detain; to linger, tarry.
dēmum, adv. At length, at last, finally.
dē-nēgo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. To deny, refuse.
dēnī, ae, a, num. distrib. (dēcem). Ten by ten, every ten, each ten.
dēnique, adv. (prob. for deinde). And then; at last, at length, finally; in short, in a word, ii. 33.
densus, a, um, adj. Thick, dense, close, crowded.
dē-nuntio, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. To announce, declare, intimate; to menace, threaten; to command, vi. 10.
dē-pello, ēre, puli, pulsum, v. tr. To drive out or away; to remove, repel, dislodge; to ward off, avert.
dē-perdo, ēre, ēdi, ētum, v. tr. (perdo, to destroy). To lose, forswear.
dē-pēreo, ēre, ii, v. intr. To go to ruin, perish, be lost.
dē-pōno, ēre, pōsui, pōstum, v. tr. To lay aside, put away; to place, deposit; to lay down, give up.
dē-pōpūlor, āri, ētus sum, v. dep. To lay waste, ravage, plunder. Perf. part. with pass. sig. G. 231, 2, depopulatis agris, i. 11.
dē-porto, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. To carry off, convey away.
dē-posco, ēre, pōposci, v. tr. To demand, require, request earnestly.
dēpōelitus, a, um, part. from dē-pōno.
dēprēcātor, āris, m. (dēprēcor). An intercessor, mediator.
dēprēcor, āri, ētus sum, v. dep.
DEPREHENDO — DETURBO

(précor, to pray). To avert by prayer; to pray for deliverance from, mortem, v. I. 40; to beseech, implore, intercede.

dé-prehendo, āre, āi, sum, v. tr. To seize, capture; to discover, find; to surprise.

dé-primo, āre, presi, presum, v. tr. (prēme). To sink; to depress.

dé-pugno, āre, āvi, ātum, v. Intr. To fight earnestly; to contend.

dé-pulsumus, a, um, part. from dé-pello.

dé-rivo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (rīve). To draw off; to convey away.

dé-rōgo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. 1) To repeal in part. 2) To take away, lessen.

dé-scendo, āre, di, sum, v. Intr. (scendo, to climb). To come down, descend, march down; to agree to, resort to, v. 29.

dé-sèco, āre, ui, tum, v. tr. To cut off.

dé-sēro, ēre, ui, tum, v. tr. To leave, forsake, abandon, desert.

désertor, ōris, m. (dēsēro). A deserter.

désertus, a, um, 1) part. from désēro; 2) adj. Desert, solitary, uninhabited.

désidēro, āre, āri, ātum, v. tr. To long for, desire; to miss, feel the want of; lose, v. 23.

dē-sidīa, ae, f. (sēdeo, to sit). Idleness, inactivity, slothfulness.

dē-signo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (signo, to mark). To mark out, designate, describe; to signify, denote.

dē-sīlio, ēre, ui or īi, sūlum, v. Intr. (sālio, to leap). To leap down; to alight, dismount.

dē-sisto, ēre, stiti, stitum, v. Intr. To leave off, desist, cease.

despectus, a, um, part. from despicio.

despectus, us, m. (despicio). A looking down upon, a view from. Phr.: heights, ii. 29.

despērātiō, ōnis, f. (despēro). Despair, desperation.

despēro, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. and intr. To despair, lose confidence in, despond; desperati homines, desperate men, vii. 3.

despicio, āre, spezi, spectrum, v. tr. (spēcio, to look). To look down upon, despise, disregard, undervalue.

despōlio, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. To rob, plunder, deprive of.

destino, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. To make fast; to bind to, fasten; to determine, destine; to appoint.

destiti. See Dēsisto.

destituo, āre, ui, ātum, v. tr. (stātuo). To abandon, forsake, not to aid, i. 16.

destricus, a, um, part. from de-stringo.

destringo, ēre, strinxi, strictum, v. tr. To strip off; to unsheathe, draw; gladii destricis, with drawn swords, i. 25.

dē-sum, esse, fui, v. intr. To be wanting, fail, be absent.

dē-sūper, adv. From above, above.

dētērior, us, adj. G. 166. Worse, inferior.

dē-terreo, ēre, ui, ītum, v. tr. To frighten away, deter; to prevent.

dē-testor, āri, ātus sum, v. dep. (testis). To imprecate, curse.

dē-tīneo, ēre, ui, tentum, v. tr. (tēneo). To keep back; to detain, stop, hinder.

dē-tracto, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (trāho). To refuse, decline, avoid.

dētrectus, a, um, part. from dē-trāho.

dē-trāho, ēre, zi, ītum, v. tr. To draw off, remove; to take from or away, withdraw.

dētrimentōsus, a, um, adj. (dērimentum). Hurtful, detrimental.

dērimentum, i, n. (dētero, to rub away). Loss, damage, injury, detriment; defeat, overthrow.

dē-trūdo, ēre, zi, sum, v. tr. (trūdo, to thrust). To thrust off, remove.

dētūli. See Dēfero.

dē-turbo, ēre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (turbo, to disturb). To drive, thrust,
or cast down; to dislodge, drive away.

dē-ūro, ēre, usi, uṣum, v. tr. To burn up, consume.

deus, i. m. A god, deity.

deuṣtus, a, um. part. from deūro.

dē-vēho, ēre, xi, cūm, v. tr. To carry or convey away; to bring, convey, remove.

dē-vēnīo, ēre, vēni, ventum, v. intr. To come from; to go to, arrive at, reach.

dēvexus, a, um. adj. (dēvēho). Inclining downward, sloping, steep.

dē-vinco, ēre, vinici, victum, v. tr. To conquer completely, subdue, subjugate.

dē-vōco, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. To call away, call down; to involve; in dubium, to hazard, v. l. 7.

dēvōtus, a, um. part. from dēvēveo; 2) adj. Devoted, attached, faithful. Subs. pl. Faithful followers, iii. 22.

dē-vōveo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. To vow, devote as an offering, vi. 17; to give up, attach, iii. 22.

dexter, tēra, tērum, and tra, trum, adj. Right, on the right; dextra, ae, f. subs. (sc. mānus), the right hand.

Diablīntes, um, m. See Aukerici.

dico, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. (dico, ēre). To dedicate, consecrate; to devote, give, offer.

dico, ēre, dīzi, dīctum, v. tr. To say, tell, mention; to speak; to appoint, name; to pronounce, deliver; causam, to plead a cause, make a defence, i. 4; locum colloquio, to fix upon, appoint, i. 34; jus, to administer justice, vi. 23.

dictio, ônis, f. (dico). A speaking, pleading; causa, causae, dictionis, for (of) making his defence, i. 4.

dictum, i, n. (dico). Word, saying, command; dicto audientes esse, to be obedient, i. 39.

di-dūco, ēre, xi, cūm, v. tr. To draw apart, separate, divide; to distribute, disperse, scatter.

dies, ēs, m. and f. G. 123. A day; in dies, from day to day, daily; multo die, late in the day, i. 22; diem ex die, day after day, from day to day, i. 16.

diffĕro, ferro, distō, distūm, v. tr. (dis, fĕro). To carry in different directions; to scatter, disperse; to put off, delay, protract. Intr., to differ.

difficilīs, e, adj. (dis, fāctīs). Difficult, troublesome; difficult to pass, impracticable, i. 6.

difficillīter, difficilītus, difficillītīme, adv. (difficilītīs). With difficulty.

difficultās, ātis, f. (difficilītās). Difficulty, trouble, perplexity.

dīfīdō, ēre, fīdō, sum, v. semidep. G. 288 (dis, fīdō, to trust). To distrust, despair of; not to trust in.

dīfundō, ēre, fūdī, fūsum, v. tr. (dis, fundo). To spread apart, to extend.

dīgitus, ī, m. Finger; dīgitus pollex, the thumb, iii. 13; an inch, or, more exactly, the sixteenth part of a Roman foot, vii. 73.


dignus, a, um. adj. Worthy, deserving, suitable.

dii. See Deus.

di-jūdīco, ēre, āvi, ētum, v. tr. To judge, decide, determine.

dilligenter, adv. (diligo). With care, carefully, attentively, punctually, accurately.

dilligentia, ae, f. (diligo). Carefulness, attentiveness, diligence, punctuality.

dilligo, ēre, lexi, lectum, v. tr. (dis, lexō, to choose). To value or esteem highly; to love.

di-mētior, īri, mensūs sum, v. dep. To measure. Perf. part. with pass. sig., G. 231, 2, opera dimenso, the ground having been measured off, ii. 19.


di-mico, ēre, āvi, ētum, v. intr. (mico, to brandish). To fight, struggle, contend, skirmish.
DIMIDIUS—DITISSimus


**dimitto**, ére, mii, misum, v. tr. To send different ways, send forth, send out; to dismiss, let go, break up; to discharge, release; to abandon, give up, renounce.

**directe**, adv. (directus). Directly, entirely; *directus ad perpendicularum*, vertically, perpendicularly, iv. 17.

**directus**, a, um, 1) part. from *dirigo*; 2) adj. Straight, direct, upright, perpendicular; level, horizontal.

**dirigo**, ére, resi, rectum, v. tr. (dis, rígo). To place in a straight line; to arrange, order, dispose, regulate; to set upright, place perpendicularly.

**dirímo**, ére, émi, emptum, v. tr. (dis, seme). To take apart, separate; to break off, interrupt.

**dirípio**, ére, ripui, réptum, v. tr. (dis, rápio). To tear asunder; to lay waste, ravage, plunder, pillage.


**Dis**, Détis, m. Pluto, the god of the infernal regions, vi. 18.

**dis-cédo**, ére, cessi, cessum, v. intr. To go apart; to depart, go away, march from; to leave, set out; to forsake, abandon.

**disceptátor**, óris, m. (discepto, to decide). An umpire, judge, arbiter.

**dis-cerno**, ére, crôsi, crósum, v. tr. To distinguish.

**discessus**, us, m. (discédo). A going asunder, separation; departure, decamping.

**disciplina**, ae, f. (disco). Instruction, learning, knowledge, science, discipline, system.

**dis-clúdo**, ére, si, sum, v. tr. (clando). To shut apart, separate, divide; to keep apart, iv. 17.

**disco**, ére, dídicí, v. tr. To learn, study, become acquainted with.

**discrimen**, snis, n. (discerno). Separation, distinction; the decisive point, the critical moment; peril.


**diajectus**, a, um, 1) part. from *disjicio*; 2) adj. Scattered, dispersed.

**disjicio**, ére, jéci, jectum, v. tr. (jácio). To throw asunder; to disperse, scatter; to rout, put to flight.

**dis-par**, óris, adj. Unlike, dissimilar, different.

**dis-páro**, óre, aivi, átum, v. tr. To separate, divide.

**dispergo**, óre, si, sum, v. tr. (dis, spargo, to scatter). To scatter about, disperse, distribute.

**dis-póno**, óre, postui, postérum, v. tr. To place here and there; to arrange, set in order, station, distribute.


**dis-pútio**, óre, aivi, átum, v. tr. To discuss, debate, argue.


**dis-sentio**, óre, sensi, sensum, v. intr. To differ in opinion; to disagree, dissent.

**dis-seóro**, óre, aivi, átum, v. tr. To sow or plant, vii. 73.

**dis-simulio**, óre, aivi, átum, v. tr. (simulás). To dissemble, disguise; to hide, conceal.

**dis-sipo**, óre, aivi, átum, v. tr. To scatter, disperse.

**dis-suádeo**, óre, suási, suásum, v. tr. (suádeo, to advise). To dissuade, advise the opposite, oppose.

**dis-tineo**, óre, ui, sentum, v. tr. (tineó). To keep apart; to separate, hold apart; to hinder, prevent, detain.

**dis-sto**, óre, v. intr. To stand apart; to be distant or apart.

**dis-tráho**, óre, xi, ctum, v. tr. To draw asunder; to separate, divide, disjoin.

**dis-tríbuo**, óre, ui, átum, v. tr. To distribute, divide.

**distulli. See Différo.**

**ditio**, snis, f. (do). Dominion, sway, authority, rule, power, sovereignty.

**ditissimus. See DíISIS.”**
**DIU—DUM**

**diu**, *diūius, diūiustume, adv. (*dius*). For a long time, a long time.

**diurnus**, *a, um*, adj. (*dius*). Belonging to the day, daily, by day.

**diūius**, *a, um*, adj. (*diu*). Of long duration, lasting, long.

**diūturnitas**, *ātis, f.* (*diu*). Long continuance, length of time.

**diūturnus**, *a, um*, adj. (*diu*). Of long duration, lasting, long.

**diversus**, *a, um, 1* part. from *divertus*; 2 adj. Turned different ways, separated; unlike, different, remote.


**Divico**, *ōnis, m.* A nobleman of the Helveti, i. 13, 14.

**divido**, *āre, vīsi, vīsum, v. tr.* To divide; to separate.


**Divitiācus**, *i, m.* 1 Brother of Dumnōrix, chief of the Aedui, and friend of Caesar, i. 3, 16, 18, 20, 31, 41; ii. 5, 10, 14; vi. 12; vii. 39. 2 A king of the Suessones, ii. 4.

**di-vulgo**, *āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.* (*vulgo*). To spread among the people; to publish, make known, divulge.

**do**, *dāre, dādi, dātum, v. tr.* To give, give up; to grant, present, offer; to occasion, furnish, bestow; *dare manu*, to yield, v. 31; *in fugam dare*, to put to flight, v. 51.

**dōceo**, *ēre, ēi, ētum, v. tr.* To teach, instruct, show, indicate, inform, tell.

**dōcimentum**, *i, n.* (*dōceo*). A lesson, example, warning.

**dōleo**, *āre, ēi, ētum, v. intr.* To grieve, deplore, lament, regret.

**dōlor**, *ōris, m.* (*dōleo*). Grief, sorrow, pain, distress, anguish, trouble; vexation, mortification.

**dōlus**, *i, m.* Guile, fraud, deceit, deception, stratagem.

**domesticus**, *a, um*, adj. (*domus*). Domestic, familiar, private, civil; *domesticis copiis*, supplies from their own land, ii. 10.

**dōmesticum**, *i, n.* (*dōmus*). A dwelling, habitation, abode, residence.

**dōminor**, *āri, ātus sum, v. dep.* (*dōminus*). To be master; to have dominion, bear rule.

**dōminus**, *i, m.* (*dōmus*). Master, proprietor; lord, ruler.

**Dōmitius**, *i, m.* Lūcius Dōmitius Athenobarbus, consul at Rome, 54 B.C. v. 1.

**dōmus**, *us and i, f.* G. 380, 2, 1); 426, 2. A house, home; *domi*, at home, i. 18; *domum*, homeward, to one’s home, li. 10; *domo*, from home, i. 5.

**dōno**, *āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr.* (*dōnum*). To present, bestow, grant, confer, give.

**Donnataurus**, *i, m.* See Vālerius.

**dōnum**, *i, n. (do).* A gift, present, reward, offering.

**dorsus**, *i, m., and dorsum, i, n.* The back; *jugi*, the ridge or brow of a hill, vii. 44.

**dos**, *dōis, f. (do).* A marriage portion, dowry.

**Druides**, *um, m.* The Druids, the priests of the ancient Gauls and Britons, vi. 13, 14, 16, 21.

**Dūbis**, *is, m.* A river of Gallia Celta, now the Doubs, rising in Mt. Jura, and flowing into the Arar (Saône), i. 38.

**dubitatio**, *ōnis, f.* (*dubito*). Doubt, uncertainty, hesitation.

**dūbito**, *ēre, āri, ātum, v. intr.* (*duo*). To doubt, hesitate, delay.

**dūbius**, *a, um*, adj. (*duo*). Doubtful, uncertain; irresolute, indecisive.

**dūcenti, ae, a*, num. adj. (*duo, centum*). Two hundred.

**dūco**, *ēre, duxi, ductum, v. tr.* To lead, conduct, bring, convey, draw; to protract, prolong, i. 38; to consider, think, iv. 30; to reckon, count, vi. 32; to make, construct, vii. 72; in *matrimonium ducere*, to marry, i. 9.

**ductus**, *us, m.* (*dūco*). The lead, generalship, command.

**dum**, conj. While, as long as, until.
Dumnorix, ἐγίς, m. An Aeduan, brother of Divitiacus. i. 3, 9, 18, sq.; v. 6, 7.

duo, ae, o, num. adj. Two.
duo-décim, num. adj. (decem). Twelve.
duo-décimus, a, um, num. adj. Twelfth.
duo-déni, ae, a, num. adj. distrib. Twelve by twelve, every twelve.
duo-dé-viginti, num. adj. Eighteen.
duplex, tcis, adj. (duo, pláceo, to fold). Twofold, double.
dúplex, ãre, ávi, átum, v. tr. (dúpléx). To double, enlarge, increase.
dúrtlia, ae, f. (dúrús). Hardness.
dúro, áre, ávi, átum, v. tr. (dúrús). To harden; to make hardy.

Durocortórum, i, n. The capital of the Rémi, in Gallia Belgica, now Rheims, vi. 44.

Dúrus, i, m. See Labéris.
dúrus, a, um, adj. Hard, rough; severe, difficult; adverse, laborious; unfortunate, unfavorable.
dux, dúcis, m. and f. (duco). A leader, commander, general; guide.

E.

ē, or ex, prep. with abl. See Ex.

Eburónes, um, m. A people of Gallia Belgica, between Liego and Aix-la-Chapelle, ii. 4; iv. 6; v. 24, 28, 39; vi. 5, 31, 34, 35, 43.

Eburóvices, um, m. See Aulerci.

é-disco, ãre, dixi, dictum, v. tr. To declare, make known; to order, command.

é-disco, ãre, didici, v. tr. To learn, commit to memory.

edítus, a, um, 1) part. from édo; 2) adj. High, elevated, lofty, raised.

é-do, ãre, didi, ditum, v. tr. To give out, make known; to exhibit; to inflict upon, i. 31.

é-dóceo, ãre, ui, tum, v. tr. To teach thoroughly; to instruct; to inform, make known, tell.

e-dóceo, ãre, xi, ctum, v. tr. To lead forth, draw out; to march out; to take from; to bring or convey away.

effarció, or effarció, ãre, si, tum, v. tr. (ex, farció, to cram). To stuff, fill out, fill.

effémine, ãre, ávi, átum, v. tr. (ex, fémîna). To make effeminate; to enervate, make delicate.

efférre, ferre, extálci, slátum, v. tr. (ex, férro). To bear or carry out; to bring forth, produce, bear; to lift up, raise, elevate; to set forth, publish, divulge, proclaim.

effició, ãre, feci, factum, v. tr. (ex, fácio). To bring to pass, effect, execute; to make, construct, produce, accomplish; to cause, render, occasion.

effódio, ãre, fodi, fossum, v. tr. (ex, fodio). To dig out; to tear out.

effossus, a, um, part. from effódio.

effugio, ãre, fugi, fugitum, v. intr. (ex, fugio). To flee away, escape. Trans., to avoid, shun.

égens, entis, 1) part. from ágeo; 2) adj. Needy, in want, very poor.

ēgi. See Ago.

égeo, ãre, ái, v. intr. To be in need; to be without, lack, be destitute of.

égestas, ásit, f. (ágeo). Want, poverty, need.

égo, pers. pron. I.

é-grédior, i, essus sum, v. dep. (grédior, to go). To go out from; to march forth, depart from, leave; to disembark, land; to go beyond; to pass out of, i. 44.

égrégie, adv. (égrégius). Remarkably well, excellently, admirably.

égrégius, a, um, adj. (ē, grex, herd). Distinguished, excellent, admirable, eminent, remarkable.

égressus, us, m. (égrédior). Landing, landing-place.

éjectus, a, um, part. from éjicio.

é-jicio, ãre, jici, jectum, v. tr. (jácio). To cast out, drive out; to banish, expel; se ejicere, to rush out, sally forth, make a sortie, v. 15; naves in litoré ejactae, stranded, v. 10.
ejusmodi, (is, módus), G. 186, note.
Of that nature, of such a kind, such.
ē-lābor, i, lapsus sum, v. dep. To
slip away, escape, get clear.
ēlapisus, a, um, part. from ēlābor.
ēlātus, a, um, part. from efferro.
Elāver, ēris, n. A river in Gaul
emptying into the Liger (Loire), now
the Allier, vii. 34, 35, 53.
ēlectus, a, um, 1) part. from ēlago;
2) adj. Picked, selected, chosen,
choice, excellent.
ēlefphantus, i, m. The elephant.
Eleetēti, ērum, m. A people of
Gaul, subject to the Arverni, vii. 75.
ē-hicío, ēre, ui, ἔτομ, v. tr. (lācio,
to allure). To entice out, lure forth,
bring out.
ē-līgo, ēre, lēgi, lectum, v. tr. (lēgo,
to choose). To pick out, select, choose.
Elusātes, ium, m. A Gallic tribe
in Aquitania, iii. 27.
ē-migrō, āre, āvi, ātum, v. intr.
(migro, to migrate). To remove, de-
part from; to emigrate.
ē-minō, ēre, ui, v. intr. (minō,
to hang over). To stand out, project.
ē-minus, adv. (mānus). From afar,
from a distance.
ē-mitto, ēre, misi, missum, v. tr.
To send out, send forth; to let out, let
go; to throw away, cast aside; to
throw, cast, hurl, discharge.
ēmo, ēre, ēmi, emptum, v. tr. To
buy, purchase.
ē-nascor, i, nātus sum, v. dep. To
grow out, sprout out, ii. 17.
ēnim, conj. For; in fact, indeed.
ē-nitor, i, nīmus or nīxum sum, v.
dep. To exert one's self.
ē-nuntio, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. To
disclose, divulge; to announce, de-
clare, reveal; to express, say.
ēo, ēre, eri or ei, ētum, v. intr. To
go, march, proceed; to pass.
ēo, adv. (is). To that place, thither,
there; to such a degree, to such an ex-
tent; to the end, to the purpose; for
is, or in ēs, upon them, i. 42; on that
account, so quod, i. 23; before a comp.,
the, so magis, the more, i. 23.
eōdem, adv. (idem). To the same
thing, to the same place, to this.
ēhippiātus, a, um, adj. (ēhippi-
um). Using housings or saddles, iv. 2.
ēhippium, i, n. A saddle, hous-
ing, iv. 2.
ēpistōla, ae, f. A letter, an epistle.
Eporōdērīx, tīgis, m. 1) A chief
of the Aedui, vii. 38, 39, 54, 55, 63, 64,
76. 2) Another Aeduan leader, vii.
67.
ēpūlæ, ārum, f. [sing. ēpūlum,
i, n. G. 143]. Sumptuous entertain-
ments, banquets, feasts, vi. 28.
ēque = ē or ex and que.
ēquēs, tīris, m. (ēquēs). 1) A rider,
a horseman. 2) A soldier serving on
horseback, a trooper. Phar., Cavalry.
3) Equites, the order of knights, hold-
ing a rank between the Senate and
Plebs, ili. 10.
ēquester, trīs, tre, adj. (ēques). Be-
longing to the cavalry, of the horse,
equestrian.
ēquītātus, us, m. (ēquēs). A body
of horsemen, cavalry, horsemen.
ēquus, i, m. A horse.
Eratosthēnes, is, m. A distin-
guished philosopher, and the first sys-
tematic geographer, born 276 B. C., in
Cyrène; died 194 B. C., in Alexandria,
vi. 24.
ērectus, a, um, 1) part. from ērīgo;
2) adj. Elevated, high, upright, lofty.
ērga, prep. with acc. Towards.
ērgo, conj. Therefore, then.
ē-ōrīgō, ēre, ōrīxi, rectum, v. tr.
(rēgō). To set up, raise, erect.
ē-ōripio, ēre, ōripui, rectum, v. tr.
(rēpio). To snatch out or away; to
tear away; to rescue, liberate, free; se
ēripere, to flee, escape, i. 4; unus na-
vium ēripitur, is taken away, is gone,
il. 14.
ērro, āre, āvi, ātum, v. intr. To
wander, stray; to wander from the
truth, err, mistake.
ē-rumpo, ēre, rūpi, ruptum, v. intr.
rumpo, to break). To burst forth,
brake forth; to make a sortie, rush
forth.
ERUPTIO—EXCLUDO

Éruptio, ēonis, f. (ērumpe). A breaking out, a bursting forth; a sortie, a sally.

Essidēa, ae, f., or essēdum, i, n. A two-wheeled chariot used by the Gauls and Britons, iv. 32.

Essēdāria, i, m. (essida). One who fought from a chariot, a soldier in a war chariot.


Et, conj. And, also, even; et...et, both...and, not only...but also.

ētiam, conj. (et, jam). And also, furthermore, likewise, besides; even, yet, still, indeed.

et-si, conj. Even if, although.

ē-vādo, ēre, si, sum, v. intr. (vādo, to go). To go from, escape.

ē-veillo, ēre, veelli, vulsum, v. tr. (veillo, to pluck). To pull out, tear out.

ē-vēnīo, ēre, vēnī, ventum, v. intr. To come out; to result, turn out, happen.

Evēntus, us, m. (ēvēnio). An occurrence, event, result, issue, fate.

ē-vōco, ēre, ēvī, ētum, v. tr. To call out, call forth; to draw, entice; to summon, to invite; to invite to military service; evocati, veteran volunteers, vii. 65.

ē-vōlo, ēre, ēvī, ētum, v. intr. (vōlo, to fly). To fly forth; to rush out, spring forth, sally forth.

ex or ē, prep. with abl. E only before consonants, ex before vowels and consonants. I. Of space: out of, from, away from, down from; ex muro, on the wall, līt., from the wall, the place from which the action proceeds, ii. 30; ex equis, on horseback, i. 43; ex vinculis, in chains, i. 4; ex itinere, in the midst of their march, ii. 6. II. Of time: immediately after, directly after, after; ex eo die, after that day, i. 42; diem ex die, day after day, i. 16. III. Of other relations: because, on account of, by, through, according to, of, from, out of; ex commutationes reum, on account of the change, l. 14; ex consuetudine, according to custom, i. 55; ex vestigio, on the spot, immediately, iv. 5; unus e filiis, one of the sons, i. 26; ex cortice factis, made out of bark, ii. 33; soror ex matre, sister on the mother’s side, or by the same mother, l. 18.

Exactus, a, um, part. from exigo.

Ex-āgīto, āre, ārī, ātum, v. tr. To drive out; to disturb, harass, disquiet, vex, annoy.

Exāmīnāo, āre, āvī, ātum, v. tr. (exāmen, a test). To weigh out, weigh, v. 12.

Exānīmo, āre, āvī, ātum, v. tr. (āntima). To deprive of life, kill, destroy. Paas., to be exhausted, be weakened.

Ex-ardeșco, āre, arsī, ārsum, v. intr. (ardeo). To kindle, take fire; to be inflamed, break out; to be violently excited, v. 4.

Ex-audīo, ēre, sei or si, ētum, v. tr. To hear from a distance; to hear, perceive, listen to.

Ex-cēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, v. intr. To go out, go away, depart, withdraw, retire.

Excello, ēre, ui, v. intr. To be eminent, surpass, excel.

Excelsus, a, um, adj. (excello). High, lofty, elevated.

Excepto, ēre, ēvī, ētum, v. tr. (freq. of excipio). To take up, vii. 47.

Ex-cido, ēre, cidi, cīsum, v. tr. (caedo). To cut or hew down; to demolish, destroy.

Ex-cipio, ēre, cēpī, cēptum, v. tr. (cēpio). To take out; to take up, receive; to incur, meet; to sustain, undergo; to surprise, take captive, capture. Intr., to succeed, follow, vii. 88.

Excīto, ēre, ēvī, ētum, v. (freq. of excicio, to rouse). To call forth, arouse, excite; to erect, raise, construct, ill. 14; to kindle, vii. 24; to encourage, animate, incite, stimulate, impel, ill. 10.

Ex-clūdo, ēre, si, sum, v. tr. (claudo). To shut out, exclude; to prevent, cut off, hinder.
EXCOGITIO—EXPLORATUS 313

ex-cógito, äré, ärí, átum, v. tr. To find out by thinking; to contrive, devise; to consider thoroughly.

ex-cruciatio, äré, ärí, átum, v. tr. (cruciatio, to torture). To torture excessively, torment.

excúbitior, ärís, m. (excúbo). A watch, guard, sentinel.

ex-cúbo, äré, cábui, cábitum, v. intr. (cúbo, to lie). To lie out of doors; to be on guard, keep guard; to watch.

ex-culco, äré, ärí, átum, v. tr. (calco, to tramp). To tread down; to make firm by stamping, vii. 73.

excursio, onís, f. (ex, curro). An excursion; sally, onset, attack, invasion.

excusático, onís, f. (excúso). Excuse, apology, defence.

ex-cúsa, äré, ärí, átum, v. tr. (causa). To excuse, allegue in excuse; to defend.

exemplum, ó, n. (exímo, to take out). An example, warning; kind, manner, way.

ex-eo, ére, éri or ii, átum, v. intr. To go out or forth, go away, depart, withdraw; to march forth, move out, leave.

ex-erCEO, äré, ui, átum, v. tr. (arceo, to drive off). To exercise, occupy, practise, employ. Pásu, to be occupied; to exercise one’s self, busy one’s self, vii. 77.

exercitatio, onís, f. (exército). Exercise, practice, use.

exercitátus, a, um, 1) part. from exercetto; 2) adj. Exercised, trained, practised, skilled, versed.

exercitó, äré, ärí, átum, v. tr. (fréqu. of exército). To practise, exercise.

exercitús, ús, m. (exército). An army, infantry.

ex-haurio, ére, hauíst, haustum, v. tr. (haurio, to draw). To draw out; to take away, remove, v. 42.

ex-igo, ére, égi, actum, v. tr. (ágio). To drive out; to complete, finish; to spend, pass; to demand.

exigne, adv. (exígnus). Scarcely, hardly.

exíguitas, ánis, f. (exígnus). Smallness, small size, scarcity, poverty, shortness, small number, iii. 23.

exíguus, a, um, adj. (exígo). Scanty, small, short, meagre, slight.

exímius, a, um, adj. (exímo, to take out). Select, distinguished, remarkable, excellent.


ex-ístimo, äré, ärí, átum, v. tr. (aestimo). To judge, think, suppose, consider, esteem.

exítus, ús, m. (exeo). The going out, departure; the issue, result, end, conclusion.

ex-pédio, ére, éri or ii, átum, v. tr. (pes). To free, extricate, disengage; to clear, level, facilitate; to arrange, prepare, make ready; to procure.


ex-pédíitus, a, um, 1) part. from ex-pédio; 2) adj. Free, easy, unencumbered, unimpeded; without baggage; light-armed, lightly burdened; íer ex-pédítius, more practicable, more passable, easier, i. 6.

ex-pello, ére, pāti, pulsárum, v. tr. To drive out or away; to expel, eject; to remove.

ex-péríor, éri, pertus sum, v. dep. To try, make trial of; to prove, put to the test; to know by experience; événtum ex-périri, to await the issue, iii. 3.

expertús, a, um, part. from ex-péríor.

ex-pío, äré, ärí, átum, v. tr. (pio, to appease). To atone for, make amends for; to remedy, make good, v. 52.

ex-pleo, ére, éri, étum, v. tr. (pleo, to fill). To fill up; to complete, make good, finish.

explórátor, óris, m. (explóро). A spy, scout.

explórátus, a, um, part. (explóро). Ascertained, established, known, certain, sure, vi. 6.
explōro, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. To search out, spy out, examine carefully; to reconnoitre.

ex-pōno, ēre, pōsui, pōstum, v. tr. To put or set out; to set on shore, disembark, iv. 37; to draw up, to marshal, iv. 23; to explain, set forth, vii. 52.

ex-porto, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. To carry out, convey away.

ex-posco, ēre, pōspōsi, v. tr. To ask earnestly, request, entreat, implore, demand.

ex-prīmo, ēre, sēsui, sēsum, v. tr. (prēmo). To press out; to force, exert, elicit; to raise up, vii. 22; to express, describe, declare.

expugnātiō, ūnis, f. (expugno). The act of taking by storm, storming, assault.

ex-pugnō, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. To take by assault; to storm, capture, reduce, subdue.

ex-quiro, ēre, sīvi, sītum, v. tr. (quaro). To seek for; to ascertain; to inquire into, investigate; to ask, iii. 3.

ex-sequor, iūtus sum, v. dep. To follow, pursue; to follow up, accomplish; to assert, maintain, i. 4.

ex-sēro, ēre, sērui, sērunt, v. tr. To thrust out; to uncover; humeris averteri, uncovered, bare, vii. 50.

ex-sistō, ēre, stitī, stitum, v. intr. To stand forth, emerge, appear; to proceed, arise; to be, exist.

ex-spectō, ēre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. To look for, await, expect; to desire, long for; to await with fear, to fear; to wait to see, ii. 9.

ex-spōliō, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. To deprive of, strip, rob.

ex-stinguo, ēre, nxi, nctum, v. tr. (stingvo, to extinguish.) To put out, extinguish; to destroy, annihilate.

ex-sto, ēre, stitī, v. intr. To stand out or above; to project, appear, be visible.

ex-struō, ēre, xī, etum, v. tr. (struo, to pile). To pile or heap up; to raise, construct, erect.

exsul, ālis, m. and f. (ex, sólum). An exile.

exter, or extérnus, a, um [rare in the sing.], comp. extérieus, sup. extrēmus or extimus, adj. (ex). On the outside, outer, foreign. Extrēmus, the outermost, extreme, last, most remote; ab extremitate, in the rear, ii. 11.

ex-terreo, ēre, uti, stum, v. tr. To strike with terror, terrify.

ex-timesco, ēre, meui, v. tr. (timēo). To fear, dread, await with fear.

ex-torquō, ēre, torsui, tortum, v. tr. (torqueo, to turn). To wrench; to obtain by force, extort.

extra, 1) adv. Without, outside; 2) prep. with acc. Out of, outside of; contrary to; besides, except.

ex-trāho, ēre, traxi, tractum, v. a. To draw out; to protract, prolong; to waste, spend.

extrēmus, a, um, sup. of exter.

ex-trūdo, ēre, trūsi, trūsum, v. tr. (trūdo, to thrust). To thrust out; to keep back or out, iii. 12.

extīli. See Effōro.

exuō, ēre, uti, stum, v. tr. To strip off; to deprive; to despoil; armis, to disarm, iii. 6.

ex-ūro, ēre, usi, usum, v. tr. (ūro, to burn). To burn up, consume by fire.

exūtus, a, um, part. from exuo.

F.

fāber, bri, m. An artisan, artificer, mechanic, smith, workman.

Fābius, i, m. 1) Quintus Fābius Maxĭmus, consul 122 B. C. He conquered the Arverni, Rutēnī, and Allobroges, i. 45. 2) Gaius Fābius Maxĭmus, one of Caesar's lieutenants, v. 24; vii. 90. 3) Lūcius Fābius Maxĭmus, a brave centurion, vii. 47, 50.

fācile, factūs, facillīme, adv. (fācilius). Easily, without difficulty, readily, well; non facile, not safely, iii. 23.

fācilis, e, adj. (facio). Easy to do,
easy, ready; courteous, gentle; prosperous, favorable; *ter modo facilius*, much more practicable, i. 6.

**facinus**, óris, n. (*fácio*). A deed, action; a bad deed, crime, daring crime.

**fácio**, óre, féci, factum, v. tr. and intr. To make or do; to act, commit; to construct, prepare; to cause, render; to furnish, give; *castra*, to pitch a camp, i. 48; *fidem*, to give a pledge, iv. 11; *nihil rei quī fecerunt*, they left nothing undone, ii. 26.

**factio**, ónis, f. (*fácio*). Making, doing; a political party, faction.

**factum**, i, n. (*fácio*). A deed, act, operation; conduct, achievement, exploit.

**factus**, a, um, part. from *fáci*.

**fácultas**, ódis, f. (*fácio*). Ability; opportunity, means; abundance, plenty, stock, store; wealth. *Plur.*, property, resources.

**fágus**, i, f. A beech-tree.

**fallo**, óre, féfelli, falsum, v. tr. To deceive, cheat; to disappoint, li. 10; to escape notice, elude observation.

**falsus**, a, um, adj. (*fallo*). False, untrue, unfounded.

**fálx**, fálci, f. A sickle, reaping-hook; a military hook used in pulling down walls, iii. 14.

**fáma**, ae, f. Rumor, report; fame, reputation, renown.

**fámes**, is, f. Hunger, famine.

**familia**, ae, f. (*fámilius*, a slave). A household, family; servants, vassals, retinue.

**fámiliáris**, e, adj. (*fámilius*). Belonging to the family, domestic, private; *rem familiarem*, private property, l. 18. *Subs.*, a familiar acquaintance, friend.

**fámiliáritas**, ódis, f. (*fámiliáris*). Intimacy, friendship, acquaintance.

**fás**, n. indecl. (*fári*, to speak). The right, that which accords with the divine law (*jus*, the right by human law); the divine will, right.

**fastigáte**, adv. (*fastigátmus*). Sloping, in a sloping position.

**fastigátmus**, a, um, 1) part. from *fastigo*; 2) adj. Sloping to a point, sloping down, steep, descending.

**fastigium**, i, n. (*fastigo*). The top, summit, height, eminence; slope, declivity, descent.

**fastigo**, óre, óvi, ótum, v. tr. To make pointed; to cause to slope or incline.

**fátum**, i, n. (*fári*, to speak). What is ordained; fate, destiny.

**fáveo**, óre, fávi, fásum, v. intr. To favor; to look with favor upon.

**fáx**, fácis, f. A torch, firebrand.


**fémína**, ae, f. A female, woman, wife.

**fémur**, óris, n. The thigh.

**féro**, ae, f. A wild beast.

**férax**, ócis, adj. (*férus*). Fruitful, productive, fertile.

**férre**, adv. (*férus*). Nearly, almost, about; generally; for the most part, in the rule, iii. 18; *non fere*, not usually, vii. 35.

**férro**, ferre, túlī, tútum, v. tr. To bear, carry, bring; to move, lead; to endure, bear, suffer; to produce; with *se*, to move one's self, to go, hasten; *signa ferre*, to advance the standards, i. e., to march, l. 39; *Rhenus ferre*, is borne, i. e., flows, iv. 10; *molesta ferre*, to bear it ill, be troubled, ii. 1; to allow, demand, vi. 7; to receive, vi. 4; to say, declare, vii. 17; to offer, furnish, li. 26; to propose, iv. 11.

**ferramentum**, i, n. (*ferrum*). A tool of iron, iron implement, v. 42.

**ferraria**, ae, f. (*ferrum*). An iron mine.

**ferræus**, a, um, adj. (*ferrum*). Of iron, iron.

**ferrum**, i, n. Iron; any iron instrument, the sword, javelin.

**fertilis**, e, adj. (*férre*). Fruitful productive, fertile.
FERTILITAS—FORTUNA


férrus, a, um, adj. Wild, rude, uncultivated, barbarous, cruel.

fervfácio, āre, feci, factum, v. tr. (fero, facio). To melt; to heat.

serveo, āre, vi and bui, v. intr. To glow with heat; to be red hot, v. 43.

fibula, ae, f. (fīgo, to fix). A clasp, brace, pin.

ficus, a, um, part. from fingo.

fīdelis, e, adj. (fīdes). Faithful, true, trustworthy, sure.

fīdes, ēs, f. (fīdo, to trust). Trust, faith, confidence, reliance, belief; security, protection, credit; pledge, promise, word; fīdem dare, to give a pledge or promise; fīdem servare, to keep one’s word; in fīdem recipere, to receive under one’s protection.

fīdiā, ae, f. (fīdo, to trust). Confidence, reliance, assurance; self-confidence, boldness, courage.

fīgūra, ae, f. (fīgo). A form, figure, shape; kind, nature, species.

fīlia, ae, f. Daughter.

fīlius, i, m. Son.

fīngō, āre, ēnxi, factum, v. tr. To form, fashion, shape, make; to arrange; to devise; vāllum fīngere, to control the countenance, l. 39.

fīnīo, āre, ēvi or ii, ētum, v. tr. (fīnis). To limit, bound, iv. 16; to determine, compute, vi. 18; to terminate, finish.

fīnis, is, m. Limit, boundary; territory; end, conclusion.

fīnītīmus, a, um, adj. (fīnis). Bordering upon, adjoining, neighboring; Fīnītīm, ōrum, m. pl. Neighbors.

fīō, fīrī, factus sum, v. irreg. To be made, become; to arise, occur; certior fīeri, to be informed. Fīt, imp., if happens.

firmīter, adv. (firmus). With firmness, firmly.

firmūtūdō, tinis, f. (firmus). Firmness, durability, strength.

firmō, āre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. (firmus). To strengthen; to establish; to confirm, encourage.

firmus, a, um, adj. Firm, steadfast, strong; durable, lasting; valiant.

fīstūca, ae, f. A rammer, pile-driver, iv. 17.

Flaccus, i, m. See Valērius.

fāgītō, āre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. To solicit earnestly; to importune, demand.

flamma, ae, f. Flame, blaze; glow, enthusiasm.

flectō, āre, zi, zum, v. tr. To bend, turn, direct, guide.

fleō, āre, ēvi, ētum, v. intr. To weep, lament.

fētus, us, m. (fleō). Weeping, lamentation; magnō fētus, with many tears, i. 32.

fō, āre, ēvi, ētum, v. intr. To blow.

fōrens, entis, adj. (fōreo, to flourish). Flourishing, prosperous, excellent; influential, viii. 32.

fōs, fōris, m. Flower.

fūctus, us, m. (fīuo). Wave, billow; flood.

fāmen, tinis, n. (fīuo). A river, stream; flūmine secundo, down or with the stream, vii. 58; flūmine adverso, up or against the stream, vii. 60.

fūo, āre, zi, zum, v. intr. To flow.

fōdio, āre, fōdi, fossum, v. tr. To dig, dig out, dig up.

foedus, ēris, n. A league, treaty, compact, alliance.

fōns, fontis, m. A fountain, source.

fōrem, fōre, fōres, fōrums esse, G. 204, 2.

fōris, adv. Without, out of doors, outside.

forma, ae, f. The form, shape, figure, pattern, kind.


fortis, e, adj. (fēro). Strong; brave, valiant, bold; powerful, mighty.

fortiter, fortius, fortissime, adv. (fortis). Bravely, courageously, valiantly, firmly.

fortūtā, tinis, f. (fortis). Bravery, courage, fortitude.

fortūtūo, adv. (fors). By chance, accidentally.

fortūna, ae, f. (fors). Chance, for-
tune. Plur., gifts of fortune, property, possessions; fate, lot, destiny.

fortunatus, a, um, adj. (fortuna). Prosperous, fortunate, happy; well off, rich.

fôrum, i, n. (foris). A public place, market-place, forum.

fossa, ae, f. (fôdio). A trench, ditch, fosse.

fôvea, ae, f. A deep pit for taking wild beasts, a pitfall, vi. 28.

frango, âre, frôgi, fractum, v. tr. To break, shatter; to subdue, weaken; to dishearten, discourage.

frâter, tris, m. Brother; an honorary title for an ally, i. 33.

frâternus, a, um, adj. (frâter). Brotherly, fraternal.

fraus, fraudis, f. Deceit, imposition, fraud, treachery.

frîmitus, us, m. (frômo, to murmur). A murmuring, muttering, a noise, clamor.

frêquens, tis, adj. Repeated, frequent; in great numbers, numerous, crowded.

frêus, a, um, adj. Relying upon, depending on, trusting to.

frígida, ius, um, adj. (frigus). Cold.

frigus, òris, n. Cold, frost, cold weather.

frons, frontis, f. The forehead, brow, front; a fronte, in front, li. 25.

frûctuèsus, a, um, adj. (frûctus). Fruitful, productive.

frûctus, us, m. (fruor). The use, employment; profit, fruit, income, advantage; effect, result.

frûmentarius, a, um, adj. (frûmentum). Of or belonging to corn, abounding in provisions; res frumentaria, corn, supplies.

frûmentátio, ònis, f. (frûmentor). A providing of corn, foraging.

frûmentor, òri, òtus sum, v. dep. (frûmentum). To procure corn; to forage.

frûmentum, i, n. (fruor). Corn, grain.

fruor, i, frûtus or frûctus sum, v. dep. To enjoy.

frustra, adv. Without effect, in vain, to no purpose.

füga, ae, f. Flight; dare, conjicere, convertere in fugam, to put to flight; fugam peter, capere, to take to flight, to flee.

fugio, âre, fugî, fugitum, v. tr. and intr. To flee; to escape, avoid, shun.

fugitivus, a, um, adj. (fugio). Fleeing away, fugitive. Fugitivus, i, m. A deserter.

fûgo, âre, âxi, âtum, v. tr. To cause to flee, put to flight, rout.

fûno, âre, âxi, âtum, v. intr. (fûmus). To smoke, emit smoke.

fûmus, i, m. Smoke.

funda, ae, f. A sting. Funda librîs, a sling or machine for hurling stones a pound in weight, vii. 81. See Librîs.

funditor, òris, m. (funda). One who fights with a sling, a slinger.

fundó, âre, fundi, fûnum, v. tr. To pour out; to fuse, cast; to scatter, throw, hurl; to prostrate, vanquish, rout.

fungor, i, functus sum, v. dep. To perform, execute, discharge.

fûnis, is, m. A rope, line, cable.


fûrör, òris, m. (fûro, to rage). Madness, rage.

fur tum, i, n. (fur, a thief). Theft.

füsillus, e, adj. (fundo). Molten, liquid, softened; fusili ëx argílla, made of softened clay, v. 43.

Fûsius, i, m. Gáius Fûsius Cita, a Roman knight, vii. 3.

fütûrus, a, um, part. from sum.

G.

Gaháli, Ïrum, m. A people of Gallia Celtica. The chief town was Anderitum (Antèrìcus), vii. 7, 64, 75.

Gâbinius, i, m. Aulus, consul with Piso, 68 B. C., i. 6.

gaesum, i, n. A Gallic weapon, a heavy javelin.
Gálus, i, m. A Roman praenomen.  
Galba, ae, m. 1) Servius Sulpicius, one of Caesar’s lieutenants, iii, 1, 3.  
2) A king of the Sequani, ii, 4, 18.  
galēa, ae, f. A helmet, usually of leather.  
Gallia, ae, f. Gaul, the country of the Gauls. 1) Gallia Citerior, or Cisalpina, Hither Gaul, or Gaul on this side of the Alps, i, 24, 54; ii, 1; v, 1.  
2) Gallia Ulterior, or Transalpina, Farther Gaul, or Gaul beyond the Alps, embracing modern France, Belgium, Netherlands, the greater part of Switzerland, and the Rhine provinces of Germany, i, 1, 7; vii, 1. Under Caesar, Gallia Ulterior was divided into Gallia Citerior, Belgica, and Aquitania, i, 1. Hence the plur. Galliae, iv, 20. The Provincia Romana, also called Gallia Narbonensis and Provincia, was not included in these divisions.  
Gallicus, a, um, adj. (Gallus).  
gallina, ae, f. (gallus, a cock). A hen.  
Gallus, a, um, adj. Gallicus. Gallus, i, m. A Gaul, an inhabitant of Gaul; in a restricted sense, an inhabitant of Gallia Belgica, i, 31; ii, 30.  
Garumna, ae, m. A river of Gaul, rising in the Pyrenees, and flowing into the Bay of Biscay, now the Garonne, i, 1.  
Garunni, ērum, m. A people of Aquitania, near the sources of the Garumna (Garonne), iii, 27.  
Gates, ium, m. A people of Aquitania, on the left bank of the Garumna (Garonne), iii, 27.  
gaudēo, ēre, gāvius sum, v. semidep. G, 268, 3. To rejoice; to be glad or pleased.  
gāvius, a, um, part. from gaudēo.  
Geidānī, ērum, m. A Gallic tribe under the protection of the Nervii, v, 39.  
Gēnābensis, is, m. An inhabitant of Genābium, vii, 11.  
Gēnābium, i, n. The chief town of the Carnātes, in Gallia Celtica, on the Liger (Loire), now Orléans, vii, 3, 11, 17, 28.  
gēner, ēri, m. A son-in-law.  
gēnērātim, adv. (gēnus). By tribes or nations.  
Genāva, ae, f. A city of the Allobrogés, on the border of the Helvetians, now Geneva, i, 6, 7.  
gēns, gentis, f. A tribe, race, nation; class, kind; a clan embracing several families.  
gēnus, ēris, n. Birth, descent; race, people; kind, manner, style, nature.  
Gergōvīa, ae, f. 1) A fortified city of the Arverni, near Clermont in Auvergne, vii, 4, 34, 36, sqq., 41. 2) A town of the Boii, east of the Liger (Loire), viii, 9.  
Germani, ērum, m. The Germans, inhabitants of Germany, i, 1, 27, 31; iv, 1; vii, 11, 12, 21.  
Germania, ae, f. Germany. Ancient Germany was bounded on the north by the German Ocean and the Baltic, on the east by the Vistula and the Sarmatian Mountains, on the south by the Danube, and on the west by the Rhine and the German Ocean, iv, 4; vii, 24.  
Germanicus, a, um, adj. (Germania). Germanic, German, iv, 16.  
Germanus, a, um, adj. (Germania). German, from Germany, vii, 37; vii, 13.  
gēro, ēre, gessum, v. tr. To bear, carry; to administer, manage, carry on, wage; to conduct, perform.  
glādīus, i, m. A sword.  
glans, glandis, f. An acorn; a ball of lead or clay; ball, bullet.  
glēba, ae, f. A clod, lump of earth; a piece, lump.  
glōria, ae, f. Glory, renown, name, reputation.  
glōrior, āri, ātus sum, v. dep. (glōria). To glory, boast, pride one’s self.  
Gobannitio, ōnis, m. One of the Arverni, uncle of Vercingetorix, vii, 4.  
Gnaeus, i, m. A Roman praenomen.
GRAIOCELLI — HINC

Græcus, a, um, adj. Greek, Gre-  
dian. Græcus, i, m. A Greek, Gre-  
dian. Græciōcelli, ōrum, m. A Gallic  
tribe in the Graian Alps, i. 10.
grandis, e, adj. Great, large.
grātia, ae, f. (grātus). Favor, es-  
teem, regard, influence, friendship,  
popularity; gratitudo, acknowledgment,  
return; thanks; gratias agere,  
to give thanks, i. 41; gratiam referre,  
to return a favor, v. 27; gratīā, for  
the sake of, vii. 43.
grātīlātio, ōnis, f. (grātūlōr). A  
manifestation of joy, rejoicing,  
congratulation.
grātūlōr, āri, ātus sum, v. dep.  
(grātus). To manifest joy; to con-  
gratulate, wish joy; to thank.
grātus, a, um, adj. Pleasing, ac-  
ceptable, agreeable; thankful, grate-  
ful.
grāvis, e, adj. Heavy, weighty,  
important, grave, dignified; violent,  
unpleasant, severe; oppressive, diffi-  
cult; gravīs aetas, advanced age, iii.  
16.
grāvitās, ātis, f. (gravēs). Heavi-  
ness, weight; importance, power,  
influence.
grāvīter, gravēsīus, gravēssīme, adv.  
(gravēs). Violently, strongly, severely;  
unwillingly, with displeasure, seri-  
ously.
grāvo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (gravēs).  
To vex, disturb, oppress. Pass., to  
be vexed or annoyed, feel displeasure;  
to be reluctant, hesitate, i. 35.
Grudii, ōrum, m. A people of Gal-  
lia Belgica, clients of the Nervii, v. 39.
gūbernātor, ōris, m. (gūberno, to  
gusto, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. To  
taste, eat, partake of.

H.

hābeo, ēre, ēri, ētum, v. tr. To have,  
possess, hold, keep; to consider, es-  
teem, regard, know; to make, de-  
liver; in animo habere, to have in  
mind, to intend; habere rationem offi-  
ciī, to have regard to duty, v. 27;  
gratiam habere, to be grateful, vii. 20;  
after se habere, to be different, ii. 19.
haesīto, āre, āri, ātum, v. intr.  
(freq. of haeréo, to stick). To stick  
fast; to remain fixed, vii. 19.
hānus, i, m. A hook.
harpāgo, ōnis, m. A grappling-  
hook, grapple.
Harādes, um, m. A Germanic  
people, who dwelt north of Lake Con-  
stance, i. 31, 37, 51.
haud, adv. Not.
Helvēticus, a, um, adj. (Helētīi).
Helvetian, vii. 9.
Helvētii, ōrum, m. The Helveti-  
ans, a Gallic people, whose country,  
lying between the Rhine, Mount Jura,  
and the Rhaetian Alps, now forms a  
part of modern Switzerland, i. 1-25,  
26, 29, 30, 40; iv. 10; vi. 25, vii. 75.
Helvētius, a, um, adj. (Helētīi).
Helvetian, i. 2, 12.
Helvīi, ōrum, m. A Gallic people  
in the Provincia, vii. 7, 64.
Hercynia silva, ae, f. The Hercy-  
nian forest, extending, according to  
Caesar, from the banks of the Rhine  
on the west to the country of the Da-  
cians on the east, vii. 24, 25.
hērēditas, ātis, f. (hēres, an heir).  
Inheritance, heirship.
hibernāciūm, i, n. (hibernus).  
Winter-quarters.
Hibernia, ae, f. Ireland, v. 13.
hibernus, a, um, adj. (hiems). Per-  
taining to winter, winter. Hīberna (sc.  
castra), ōrum, n., winter-quarters.
hic, haec, hoc, dem. pron. This,  
it; the latter; such. Abl. hoc, on this  
account, therefore; with quod, iii. 4.  
With comparatives, the; hoc faciūs,  
the more easily, i. 2.
hic, adv. Here, in this place.
hīsimo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. intr.  
(hiems). To winter; to pass the win- 
ter.
hiems, ēmis, f. Winter, winter  
time, rainy season, storm.
hinc, adv. From this place, hence.
Hispánia, ae, f. Spain, in Caesar’s time divided into two provinces: Hispánia Cúlterior, north of the river Iberus (Ebro), and Hispánia Ulterior, south of that river. Hispánia included modern Spain and Portugal, i. 1; iii. 23; v. 1, 13; vii. 55.

Hispánus, a, um, adj. (Hispánia). Spanish.

hódie, adv. (hic, dies). To-day, this day.

hóme, hás, m. and f. A man, a human being, person.

hónestus, a, um, adj. (hónor). Regarded with honor, respected, distinguished, honored, noble; worthy, respectable, honorable, eminent.

hónor, or hónos, óra, m. Honor, repute, esteem; a post of honor, public office, vii. 57; hónoris causá, out of respect, ii. 15.

hónoríficus, a, um, adj. (hónor, fácio). Honorable, conferring honor, i. 43.

hóra, ae, f. An hour. G. 645; 645, 2; hóra septima, the seventh hour, r. e., one o’clock, i. 26.

hórreo, òre, ui, v. tr. To tremble at, shudder at, i. 32.

horríbilis, e, adj. (hórreo). Terrible, horrible, dreadful.

horríduus, a, um, adj. (hórreo). Rough, wild, savage, frightful.

hórtor, óri, órus sum, v. dep. To incite, instigate; to encourage, exhort.

hóspes, tís, m. and f. A stranger, guest, friend.

hóspitium, i, n. (hóspes). Friendship, hospitality.

hostis, is, m. and f. An enemy, a public enemy. Inimicus, a private or personal enemy.

huc, adv. (hic). Hither, to this place; to this point, so far.

hujusmodi (híc, módis). Of this kind, of such a nature, such.

húmnitás, óris, f. (húmnus). Humanity; civilized life, liberal culture, refinement, elegance of manners.

húmnus, a, um, adj. (hómo). Human; of refined culture, polished, cultivated.

húmérus, i, m. The shoulder.

húmilitas, oft, fr. (húmilis). Lowness; insignificance; weakness, feebleness.

I.

íbi, adv. (is). There, in that place.

iccius, i, m. A nobieman of the Rémi, ii. 3, 6, 7.

ictus, us, m. (teo, to strike). A blow, stroke, thrust, stab.

idcìrcum, adv. (id, circa). On that account, for that reason, therefore.

ídem, códem, ídem, dim. pron. (ís, dém). The same; códem ratione, in the same manner, v. 40; códem atque Belgárum, the same as of the Belgians, ii. 6; ídem ... et, the same ... as.

Identídem, adv. (ídem-ídem). Repeatedly, often, again and again, at intervals, ii. 19.

Id-eo, adv. Therefore, on that account.

Idónēus, a, um, adj. Fit, suitable, meet, proper, convenient; capable, trustworthy, iv. 21.

ídus, usum, f. The ides, the 15th day of March, May, July, and October; and the 13th of the other months, i. 7. G. 642, 3.

ignis, is, m. Fire.

ignóbilis, e, adj. (in, móbius). Unknown, undistinguished, obscure.

ignómínia, ae, f. (in, nómen). Disgrace, dishonor, ignominy.

ignóro, óre, óvi, óvum, v. tr. (ignórus, ignorant). Not to know; to be ignorant of.

ignóscio, óre, nóri, nórum, v. tr. and intr. (in, nosco). To pardon, forgive.

ignotus, a, um, 1) part. from ignóscio; 2) adj. Unknown.

illisus, a, um, part. from inféro. Ille, illa, illud, dim. pron. That;
he, she, it; hic ... ille, this one ... that one.

ille, adv. (ille-ce). There, in that place.

illigo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (in, āgo, to bind). To bind on, fasten on, attach; to connect, bind.

illo, adv. To that place, thither; to that end; eodem illo pertinere, to that very purpose, iv. 11.

illustris, e, adj. (in, iustro, to purify). Bright, clear; illustrious, distinguished, honorable; remarkable, important, vili. 3.

Illyricum, i. n. The country of Illyria, on the Adriatic Sea, extending from the river Arsa (Arsō) to the Cerunaian mountains, ii. 35; ii. 7; v. 1.

Immanuientes, i, m. King of the Trinobantes, v. 20.

imbēcilīitas, ātis, f. (imbēcillus, weak). Weakness, feebleness.

imber, brīs, m. A violent rain, a rain-storm, shower.

imitor, āri, ātus sum, v. dep. To copy, imitate.

immānis, e, adj. Immense, enormous.

immōnea, āre, v. intr. (in, mōneō, to hang over). To project over, to overhang; to be near, vii. 38.

immittō, āre, missī missum, v. tr. (in, mittō). To send into, throw into; to introduce; to despatch against; immisso equitatu, the cavalry having been sent on, vii. 40; trabibus immisis, beams having been let in, iv. 17.

immōlo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (in, mōla, sacrificial meal). To sacrifice, offer in sacrifice.

immortālis, e, adj. (in, mortālis, mortal). Immortal, eternal.

immūnis, e, adj. (in, mūnus). Free or exempt from public service, free from taxation.

immūnitas, ātis, f. (immūnis). Exemption from public service and burdens, immunity.

impārātus, a, um, adj. (in, pārātus). Unprepared, unprovided, not ready.


impēdio, āre, iō or iī, ātum, v. tr. (in, pes). To entangle; to hinder, detain, obstruct, impede; to render difficult to traverse, vii. 57.

impēditus, a, um, 1) part. from impēdio; 2) adj. Entangled, embarrassed, distracted, impeded, hindered, prevented; obstructed, difficult of passage.

impello, āre, pāli, pulsum, v. tr. (in, pello). To drive against; to urge, impel; to incite, move, persuade, induce.

impendeo, āre, v. intr. (in, pendo, to hang). To overhang; to be near, impend, threaten.

impensus, a, um, 1) part. from impendo, to expend; 2) adj. Great, dear; impenso pretio, at great cost, iv. 2.

impērātor, ārīs, m. (impērō). A commander-in-chief, general, leader, chief.

imperātum, i, n. (impēro). Command, order.

imperfectus, a, um, adj. (in, perāctus). Unfinished, incomplete, imperfect.

imperītus, a, um, adj. (in, pēritus). Inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant, unacquainted with.

impērium, i, n. (impēro). Command, order, direction; authority, power, sway, dominion; empire, government.

impēro, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (in, pēro). To command, order; to make a requisition for; to give orders for, demand, i. 7.

impētro, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (in, pētro, to bring to pass). To accomplish, effect; to obtain, secure, procure; de salute impetrare, to obtain terms of safety, v. 36.

impētas, us, m. (impēto, to attack). Attack, assault, onset; violence, fury, force.

impīus, a, um, adj. (in, pius, plius). Irreverent, ungodly, impious.
implícō, āre, āvī, ātum, or uī, ītum, v. tr. (in, plīco, to fold). To entangle, involve; to interlace, unite closely, vi. 73.

implōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, v. tr. (in, plōrō, to cry out). To entreat, beseech, implore.

implōno, āre, pōnui, pōtītum, v. tr. (in, pōno). To place or put upon; to set on; to put on board, embark; to lay or impose upon; to put, set, station.

importo, āre, āvī, ātum, v. tr. (in, porto). To bring, carry or convey into; to import.

implōnīmus, adv. (in, primus). Especially, principally, in a special degree.

implūbus, a, um, adj. (in, prōbus, upright). Bad, wicked, depraved, base; seditions, violent; shameless, bold, impudent.

implūviso, adv. (implūvisus). Suddenly, unexpectedly.

implūvisus, a, um, adj. (in, prōvēdeō). Unforeseen, unexpected, sudden.

implūdens, tīs, adj. (in, prūdens, prudent). Not foreseeing, not anticipating or expecting, unaware, ignorant, inconsiderate, imprudent.

implūdentia, ae, f. (implūdens). Want of foresight, thoughtlessness, imprudence, ignorance.

implūbes, ēris, adj. (in, pūbes). Not having attained to manhood; unmarried, chaste, vi. 21.

impugno, āre, āvī, ātum, v. tr. (in, pugno). To attack, assail; to charge.

impulsus, a, um, part. from impello. Impulse; instigation, incitement, influence.

impōne, adv. (in, poena). Without punishment, with impunity.

impūnītas, ētīs, f. (in, poena). Exemption from punishment, impunity.

imōs, a, um, adj. sup. of infrērus. in, prep. with acc. and abl. I. With accus., in answer to the question, Whither? 1) Of space: into, to, among, against, towards, in. 2) Of time: up to, till, into, for. 3) Of other relations: on, about, respecting, towards, against, for, as, in, into. II. With the abl., in answer to the question, Where? 1) Of space: in, upon, over, among, at, within. 2) Of time: in, during, at, in the course of. 3) Of other relations: in, on, upon, in the case of.

imānis, e, adj. Empty; vain, useless, idle.

incaute, adv. (incautus). Incautiously, inconsiderately.

incautus, a, um, adj. (cāceo). Incautious, heedless, off one's guard, vi. 30.

in-cēdo, āre, cessi, cessum, v. intr. To move on, advance; to come to, befall, attack, seize.

incendium, i, n. (incendo). A fire, conflagration, burning.

in-cendo, āre, di, sum, v. tr. (caddeō, to blow). To set fire to, kindle, burn; to inflame, arouse, stir up, excite.

in-certus, a, um, adj. Uncertain, indefinite, doubtful; unreliable, not sure, not trustworthy.

in-cīdo, āre, cidi, causum, v. intr. (cādo). To fall upon, come upon unexpectedly; to meet; to occur, happen, arise.

in-cidō, āre, cidi, cāsum, v. tr. (caedeo). To cut into; to lop, ii. 17.

in-cipio, ēre, cēpi, cepsum, v. tr. (cēdeo). To seize upon, lay hold of; to begin, commence; to undertake, attempt.

in-cito, āre, āvī, ātum, v. tr. (cito, to move rapidly). To set in motion, urge forward; to incite, spur on, encourage, stimulate, rouse; incitato equo, at full speed, iv. 12; se accēs us incitaviisset, had rushed in, ili. 12.

in-cognitus, a, um, adj. (cognoscō). Unknown.

in-cōlo, ēre, cólui, cultum, v. tr. and intr. To dwell, live; to inhabit.

in-commode, adv. Unfortunately.
in-commôdeum, i. n. Inconvenience, trouble, detriment, injury, misfortune; defeat, loss.
in-commôdus, a, um, adj. Inconvenient, unfortunate.
in-crêpto, ëre, ëri, ëtum, v. tr. (freq. of incrépo, to chide). To call out to one; to chide, reprove, rebuke; to insult, taunt.
in-cumbo, ëre, cûbi, cûbitum, v. intr. (incûbo, to lie). To lean upon; to apply one's self to, exert one's self, attend to.
incursio, ënis, f. (in, curro). A running against, onset, attack, assault; an irruption, invasion.
incursus, us, m. (in, curro). An assault, attack, charge.
incusco, ëre, ësci, ëtum, v. tr. (in, causa). To accuse, find fault with, blame, complain of.
inde, adv. (i). From that place, thence; after that, thereupon, then.
indicium, i. n. (index, informer) Information, discovery, disclosure, evidence; proof, indication; per indicium = per indices, by informers, i. 4.
indicio, ëre, ësci, ëctum, v. tr. To declare publicly, proclaim, announce; to appoint, fix, enjoin.
indictus, a, um, 1) part. from indicto; 2) adj. Unpaid, unheard; indicta causa, the cause being unheard, without a hearing, vii. 38.
indignè, indignius, indignissime, adv. (indignus). Undeservedly; dishonorably, shamefully.
indignitas, ëtis, f. Unworthiness, shameful conduct; indignity, disgrace, insult.
indignor, ëri, ëtus sum, v. dep. (dignus). To consider unworthy; to be displeased with, be indignant; to disdain.
indignus, a, um, adj. Unworthy, unbecoming, shameful, dishonorable.
indiligens, ës, adj. (diligo). Careless, negligent.
INFESTUS — INSIDIOR

low or underneath, low; comp., lower, inferior; sup., lowest, last, deepest; the lowest part.

infestus, a, um, adj. Unsafe, insecure; hostile, troublesome, dangerous.

in-ficio, ëre, foci, fictum, v. tr. (faccio). To stain, color, paint, dye.
in-fidélis, e, adj. Unfaithful, faithless, false, treacherous.
in-figo, ëre, fxi, fixum, v. tr. (figo, to fix). To fix or fasten in.
in-fimus, a, um, sup. of inficus.
in-finitus, a, um, adj. (finis). Unbounded, boundless, unlimited, infinite, vast.
infirmitas, ëtis, f. (infirmus). Weakness, feebleness; want of courage; fickleness, inconstancy, iv. 5.
in-firmus, a, um, adj. Weak, feeble; infirmiore animo, more depressed in spirit, ill. 24.
in-dicto, ëre, zi, sum, v. tr. To bend; to curve.
in-fluo, ëre, zi, sum, v. intr. To flow into, empty into.
in-fódeo, ëre, fódi, fossum, v. tr. To dig in; to bury in the earth.
infra, 1) adv. Underneath, below; paulo infra, a little below, i. e., farther south, iv. 36; 2) prep. with acce. Below, under; infra elephanto, smaller than elephants, vii. 28.
in-gens, tis, adj. Vast, enormous, very great, huge.
in-gratis, a, um, adj. Unwelcome, disagreeable, unpleasant, unacceptable; ungrateful.
in-grèdior, i, gremis sum, v. dep. (gradior, to go.) To go into; to enter; to enter upon, begin, engage in.
inimicitia, ae, f. (inimicus). Enmity, hostility.
in-imicus, a, um, adj. (āmicus). Unfriendly, hostile, inimical.
iniquitas, ētis, f. (iniquus). Unevenness, vii. 45; unfavorable position, ill. 2; difficulty, crisis, lii. 22; injustice, unfairness; summa inequitas, greatest injustice, vii. 19.
in-inquus, a, um, adj. (aequus). Unequal, uneven; unfavorable, disadvan-
tageous; unjust, unreasonable; difficult, hard.
in-iütium, i. n. (ineo). Beginning, origin, commencement; element; ar-tificiorum initia, the elements of the arts, vi. 17.
in-jicio, ëre, joci, jacketum, v. tr. (jacio). To throw or cast into; to put or lay upon; to inspire, cause, occasion, infuse.
in-junge, ëre, junxi, junctum, v. tr. To join to, fasten upon; to bring upon, impose.
in-juria, ae, f. (jus). Injury, wrong, violence, injustice, damage, harm, insult.
in-jussu, m. [used only in abl. G. 134]. Without the command.
in-nascor, i, natus sum, v. dep. To be born in; to grow or spring up in.
in-natus, a, um, part. from innascor. Inborn, innate, natural.
in-nitior, i, nixus sum, v. dep. To lean upon, rest upon.
in-nixus, a, um, part. from innitior.
in-nocens, tis, adj. Harmless; blameless, innocent.
in-nocentia, ae, f. (innocens). Innocence; uprightness, integrity.
in-opia, ae, f. (in, ope). Want, scarcity, destitution, vii. 32.
in-quans, tis, adj. (dīnus, to expect). Not expecting, unprepared, unawares.
inquam, v. def. G. 297. To say.
in-sciens, tis, adj. (sciō). Not knowing, unaware, ignorant.
in-scientia, ae, f. (insciens). Want of knowledge, ignorance, inexperience.
in-scius, a, um, adj. (aceto). Not knowing, ignorant, unaware.
in-sèquor, i, cēr sum, v. dep. To follow; to pursue, press upon.
in-sèro, ëre, ui, summ, v. tr. To put in, insert.
insidae, ērum, f. (in, sidoe, to sit). An ambush, ambuscade; stratagem, artifice; treachery.
in-idior, āri, ātus sum, v. dep. (insidiae). To lie in ambush, lie in wait form an ambushade.
insignis, e, adj. (signum). Remarkable, distinguished, prominent, extraordinary, noted, marked.

in-silio, a, u or ii, v. intr. (salio, to leap). To leap upon, spring upon.

in-silto, a, e, a, atum, v. tr. To charge, blame, accuse.

in-simulo, a, e, a, atum, v. tr. (simulo, to bend). To make one's way into, get into, come among, generally with se, iv. 33.

in-sisto, a, stiti, v. intr. To set foot upon, stand upon, ii. 27; firmiter insistere, to get a firm footing; iv. 26; to follow, pursue, adopt, iii. 14; to apply one's self to, vi. 5.

in-soöenter, adv. (seövo). In an unusual manner; immoderately, haughtily, insolently.

in-specto, a, ē, ē, atum, v. tr. To look at, view, behold; inspectantibus nobis, before our eyes; ut, we looking on, vii. 25.

in-stābilis, e, adj. (sto). Unsteady, changeable.

instar, n. indecl. Image, likeness; instar = ad instar, according to the likeness of, like, ii. 17.

instigo, a, ē, ē, atum, v. tr. To urge on, instigate, incite.

in-stituo, a, ui, atum, v. tr. (stātuo). To put or place into; to build, erect, make; to prepare, get, procure; to begin, commence, vii. 70; to undertake; to arrange, form, iii. 24; to institute, establish, vii. 77; to train up, educate, i. 14; to fix upon, iv. 17.

institutum, i, n. (instituo). Design, intention, mode of life, habit, observance, custom.

in-sto, a, ē, sti, atum, v. intr. To stand upon; to draw near, approach, be at hand; to press upon, pursue, threaten.

instrumentum, i, n. (instruo). Utensil, tool, instrument, implement; instrumentum hibernorum, equipments of their quarters, v. 31.

in-struo, a, xi, atum, v. tr. (struo, to build). To build into; to arrange in order, draw up in battle array. Instructus, a, um, part. Arranged in order, drawn up; furnished, equipped.

in-suöfactus, a, um, adj. (suöco, to be wont, fācio). Accustomed, habituated, trained.

in-suötus, a, um, adj. (suöco, to be wont). Unaccustomed, unused to, vii. 30.

insūla, ae, f. An island.

in-sūper, adv. Above, on the top, from above.

in-téger, gra, grum, adj. (tango). Untouched, unimpaired, undiminished; fresh, vigorous, not exhausted; re integra, the thing being untouched, i. e., before anything was done, at the outset, viii. 30; integri militēs, fresh troops, vii. 41.

in-tēgo, a, xi, atum, v. tr. To cover.

intelligo, a, e, lexi, lectum, v. tr. (inter, lēgo). To understand, perceive, know, comprehend, observe.

in-tendo, a, di, tum or sum, v. tr. To stretch out, direct towards; to exert one's self, strive, iii. 26.

intentus, a, um, 1) part. from intendo; 2) adj. Attentive, intent upon, eager, fixed upon.

inter, prep. with acc. 1) Of space: between, among, with. 2) Of time: during, in the course of.

inter-cēdo, a, cessi, cessum, v. intr. To go between, interpose; to be or lie between, i. 30; to exist between, i. 43; to intervene, i. 7.

inter-cepio, a, cēpi, ceptum, v. tr. (cēpio). To intercept, ii. 27; to capture, seize, v. 39.

inter-clādo, a, e, si, sum, v. tr. (claudo). To cut off, separate; to hinder, deprive.

inter-dico, a, xi, atum, v. tr. To forbid, prohibit, exclude; aquā atque igni interdicere, to forbid the use of fire and water, i. e., to proscribe or banish, vi. 44.

inter-din, adv. By day, in the daytime.
inter-dum, adv. Sometimes, occasionally, now and then, at times.

intēr-ēa, adv. Meanwhile, in the mean time.

intēr-ēo, ēre, ēi, ērum, v. intr. To be lost, perish, go to ruin.

intercessae. See Intercessum.

inter-fīcic, ēre, ēcī, ēctum, v. tr. (fīcic). To destroy, kill, slay.

intērīrimus, adv. Meanwhile, in the mean time.

intērior, us; sup. intērinus, adj. G. 166. Inner, interior.

intēritus, us, m. (intēreo). Destruction, death, ruin.

inter-jīcic, ēre, jēcī, jectum, v. tr. (jēcic). To throw or cast between; to place or put between; tantum spatio interjecto, so little space lying between, i.e., as they were so near, vii. 19; brevi spatio interjecto, a short time having intervened, ill. 4.

inter-mitto, ēre, misi, missum, v. tr. and intr. I. trans. 1) To put between, interpose, separate; to leave vacant; paribus intermissae spatiis, separated by equal spaces, vii. 23; intermissa a flamma, left vacant or undefended, vii. 17. 2) To omit, let pass, neglect; to interrupt, abate; agricultura, iv. 1; flamma, v. 43; triduo intermissa, after the lapse of three days, i. 26. 3) To suspend, make vacant; intermissae magistratibus, as the magistracies were vacant, vii. 33. II. intr. To cease, discontinue; subsemissae, ii. 25.

inter-nēcio, ānis, f. (nēco). A massacre, slaughter, destruction, extermination.

inter-pēllo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (pello = laquer). To interrupt by speaking; to hinder, prevent, disturb.

inter-pōno, ēre, pōnui, pōstumum, v. tr. To place between, interpose; to urge, adduce, allege, i. 42; to propose, bring forward; to make, excite, iv. 32.

inter-pres, ētis, m. and f. (praes, a surety). An interpreter, mediator.

interprētōr, āri, ātus sum, v. dep. (interpretōs). To interpret, expound, explain.

inter-rōgo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. To ask, question, inquire.

inter-rumpo, ēre, rūpi, rupērum, v. tr. (rumpo, to break). To break off, interrupt; to break down, destroy.

inter-sciendo, ēre, tēdi, tissum, v. tr. To bear asunder, cut down, destroy.

inter-sumus, esse, fui, v. intr. To be between, i. 15; to be present, take part in, iv. 16; to attend to, vi. 13. Interest, impera., it concerns, is important, ii. 5.

inter-vallum, i, n. (valle). The space between two palisades; interval, distance.

inter-vēnīo, ēre, vēnī, ventum, v. intr. To come between; to arrive; to happen, occur.

interventus, us, m. (intervēnīo). Intervention, interposition, aid.

in-texto, ēre, xeti, xtum, v. tr. (texto, to weave). To weave into; to interweave; to cover.

in-tōlērānter, adv. (tōlero). Immoderately, excessively, earnestly.

intra, prep. with acc. 1) Of space: within, in. 2) Of time: within, in, during.

in-trītus, a, um, adj. (tēro, to rub). Not exhausted, not worn out.

intro, adv. Within.

intro, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. To enter, penetrate, go into.

intrō-dūco, ēre, duxi, ductum, v. tr. To lead or conduct within; to introduce.

intro-ēo, ēre, ēvi or ii, ētum, v. intr. To go within; to enter.

introitus, us, m. (introeco). Entrance, access.

intrō-mitto, ēre, mīsi, missum, v. tr. To let in; to introduce; to send in, cause to enter.

introrsus, adv. (for intro-terraus). On the inside, within, inland, vi. 10. intrō-rumpo, ēre, rūpi, ruptum, v. intr. (rumpo, to break). To break or burst into; to enter by force, v. 51.

in-tueor, ēri, tūtis sum, v. dep. To look at; to look down to, i. 32.

intus, adv. On the inside, within.
In-usitatus, a, um, adj. Unusual, uncommon, strange, extraordinary.

in-usitilis, e, adj. Unserviceable, useless, unprouitable.

in-vênia, ère, ènii, vênum, v. intr.
To come upon; to find, meet with; to discover, find out.

inventor, èris, m. (invenio). An inventor, author.

in-vêterasce, ère, râvi, râtum, v. intr. (vôtas). To grow old; to become established, v. 41; to settle, ii. 1.

in-vicem, adv. (vicio). In turn, one after the other; one another, each other, mutually.

in-victus, a, um, adj. (vîceo). Unconquered, invincible, unconquerable.

in-video, ère, vîdi, vîsum, v. tr.
To look with envy at; to envy.

in-vïdïa, ae, f. (invidio). Envy, jealousy, hatred, unpopularity, malice.

in-violïtus, a, um, adj. (violo). Inviolable, inviolate, sacred.

invisus, a, um, part. from invideo.

invito, ère, âvi, âtum, v. tr. To invite, summon; to allure, attract, entice.

invitus, a, um, adj. Unwilling, reluctant; se invito, against his will, tis, he being unwilling, i. 8.

ipse, a, um, dem. pron. (is, pse). Himself, herself, itself; he, she, it; just exactly, very, precisely.

ïra, ae, f. Anger, wrath, passion.

iracundia, ae, f. (îrâcundus). A hasty temper, anger, rage, passion.

iracundus, a, um, adj. (îra). Irritable, passionate, irascible.

irridio, ère, si, sum, v. tr. and intr. (in, rideo, to laugh). To laugh at, jeer, ridicule.

irridicile, adv. (irrideo). Without wit.

irrumpo, ère, ëpi, upsum, v. intr. (in, rumpo, to break). To break into, rush into; to force one’s way into, enter by storm.

irruratio, onis, f. (irrumpo). A breaking into, invasion; attack, sortie, vii. 70.

Is, es, ea, id, dem. pron. He, she, it; this, that; such; eo, on this account, l. 14; eo, quod, on this account, because, i. 23. Eo with the comp. may often be rendered by our def. article the.

iste, a, ad, dem. pron. (is, te). This, that, often denoting contempt, vii. 77.

Ita, adv. (is). So, thus, to such a degree, in this manner; ita ut, just as, vii. 76.

Itâlia, ae, f. Italy, including Gallia Cisalpina, i. 10, 40; ii. 35; vi. 1; vii. 1.

Itâ-que, conj. And so, therefore; accordingly, hence.

Itém, adv. (is). In like manner, likewise, also.

Itr, òtôrâ, n. (eo). A journey, march; way, route, road; the right of way, i. 8.

Itrum, adv. Again, a second time; semel atque itum, repeatedly, i. 31.

Itius, i, m. A port in Gaul from which Caesar sailed for his second invasion of Britain; according to Reichard, modern Wissant; according to Napoleon III., Boulogne, v. 2, 5.

Itûrus, a, um, part. from eo.

J.

jâceo, ère, si, v. intr. To lie; to lie dead; to have fallen.

jâcio, ère, jîci, jactum, v. tr. To throw, hurl; to throw up, construct, ii. 12.

jacto, ère, âvi, âtum, v. tr. (freq. of jâcio). To throw, cast; to discuss, talk about, i. 18; to toss about, i. 25.

jactûra, ae, f. (jâcio). A throwing away; loss, sacrifice, damage; magnis jacturis, with great sacrifices, vi. 12.

jâculum, i, n. (jâcio). Javelin, dart.

jam, adv. Now, already, indeed, truly; jam ... jam, at one time ... at another time, now ... now, vii. 69.
jūba, ae, f. The mane.

jūbeco, āre, āusi, āsum, v. tr. To command, order, direct, give orders.

jūdicium, i, n. (jūdes, a judge). A judgment; trial, l. 4; sentence, opinion, decision, l. 41; the power of judgment, discernment, choice, purpose, vi. 31.

jūdicō, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (jus, dicō). To pronounce a sentence; to judge, adjudge; to pronounce, declare, v. 56; to determine, conclude, resolve, i. 40; to consider, think, decide, i. 30.

jūgum, i, n. A yoke, iv. 33; a yoke as a symbol of submission, formed by two upright spears, supporting a third in a horizontal position; mittere sub jugum, to send under the yoke, i. 7, 12; the summit of a hill, a height, ridge, i. 21, 24.

jūmentum, i, n. (for jūgmentum, from jungō). A beast of burden, draught animal; horse, ox, etc.

junctūra, ae, f. (jungō). A joining, junction, joint, union, iv. 17.

jungō, āre, āuxi, jungum, v. tr. To join; to bind or connect together, fasten together.

jūnīor. See Jūnēnis.

Jūnius, i, m. 1) Quintus, a Spaniard in the service of Caesar, v. 27, 28. 2) Decimus Jūnius Brūtus. See Brūtus.

Jūpiter, Jōvis, m. Jupiter, the son of Saturn, brother and husband of Juno, the chief god among the Romans, worshipped also by the Gauls, vi. 17.

Jūra, ae, m. A chain of mountains extending from the Rhine to the Rhone, l. 2, 6, 8.

jūro, āre, āvi, ātum, v. intr. To swear, take an oath; to promise under oath.

jūs, jūris, n. Right, law, justice; power, authority; jus suum, their rights, l. 4; jus bellī, the right or rule of war, i. 36; jus dicere, to administer justice, vi. 23.


jussu, m. [used only in the abl.] (jūbeo). By or with the command, by order, vii. 3.

justītia, ae, f. (justus). Justice, fair dealing, uprightness.

justus, a, um, adj. (jus). Just, right, fair, proper, appropriate; justa funera, appropriate funeral ceremonies, vi. 19; sufficient, suitable, vii. 23.

jūvēniss, e, comp. jūniōris, adj. Young, youthful. Jūniōres, um, young men, those capable of military service, from seventeen to forty years of age, vii. 1.

jūventus, ātis, f. (jūvēnis). The age of youth, youth; young persons, the youth, young men, iii. 16.

jūvo, āre, jūvi, jūvum, v. tr. To help, aid, assist.

juxta, 1) adv. Near by, near, by the side of; 2) prep. with acc. Near to, near.

L.

Lābērius, i, m. Quintus Lābērius Dūrus, a military tribune, v. 15.

Lābiēnus, i, m. Titus Attius Lābiēnus, one of the ablest and most experienced of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war. In the civil war he deserted to Pompey, and was killed at Munda, i. 10, 21, 54; v. 57; vi. 7; viii. 34.

lābor, i, lapsus sum, v. dep. To fall, slip down; to fail in duty; to err, mistake, commit a fault, v. 3; lac spee lapsus, deceived in this hope, v. 55.

lābor, āris, m. Labor, toil, hardship, fatigue, effort, exertion, work.

lābōro, āre, āvi, ātum, v. intr. (lā-bor). To toil, labor, exert one's self, strive; to be in distress, difficulty, or danger; to suffer; animo laborare, to be solicitous, anxious, vii. 31.

lābrum, i, n. A lip; superius, the upper lip, v. 14; the rim; ab labris, at the rim or edge, vi. 28; brink, margin, vii. 72.

lac, lactis, n. Milk.

lācessro, āre, etsi or ii, āsum, v. in
(lácio, to entice). To excite, provoke, exasperate; to attack, assail.

lácrima, ae, f. A tear.

lácrimo, öre, öni, önum, v. intr. (lácitma). To shed tears, weep.

lácus, us, m. A lake.

laedo, öre, laesi, laesum, v. tr. To strike; to injure, violate, offend, impair, vi. 9.

laetātio, önis, f. (laetor, to rejoice). Rejoicing, joy.

laetitiae, ae, f. (laetus). Joy, gladness, delight, exultation.

laetus, a, um, adj. Joyful, glad, delighted, pleased.

languide, adv. (languidus). Slowly, languidly.

languidus, a, um, adj. (languere, to be weak). Faint, weak, sluggish, dull, inactive.

languor, öris, m. (languere, to be weak). Feebleness, languor, inactivity, weakness, lassitude.

lapis, ösis, m. A stone.

lāqueus, i, m. A noose.

largior, śri, itus sum, v. dep. (largus, abundant). To give bountifully; to bestow, supply, vi. 24; ad largiendum, for giving largesses, for bribing, i. 18.

largiter, adv. (largus, abundant). Abundantly, largely; largiter possi, to have great influence, i. 18.

lāgūtio, önis, f. (lāgūtio). A giving freely; bribery, corruption; liberality, generosity, i. 9.

lassitūdō, önis, f. (lassus, weary). Weariness, fatigue, faintness.

lāte, lātius, lātissimus, adv. (lātus). Widely, extensively; longe aequus, far and wide, iv. 35.

lātēbra, ae, f. (lāteo). A hiding-place, lurking-place, covert, retreat.

lāteo, öre, us, v. intr. To be concealed, lie hidden; to lurk; to remain unnoticed, iii. 14.

lāttitūdō, önis, f. (lātus). Breadth, width; extent, size.

Latomici, örum, m. A Gallic people, neighbors of the Helvetii, i. 5, 28, 29.

lātro, önis, m. A robber, bandit, brigand.

lātrōcinium, i, n. (lātro). Robbery, plundering.

lātus, a, um, adj. Broad, wide; large, extensive, spacious.

lātus, a, um, part. from fēro. Lātus, öris, n. The side; flank, wing of an army.

lauo, öre, öni, önum, v. tr. (laus). To praise, commend.

laus, laudis, f. Praise, glory, renown, fame, commendation, honor, reputation; worth, prowess.

lāvo, öre, lāvi, lautum, lātum, lātārum, v. tr. To bathe, wash. Pass., to bathe one’s self, bath, iv. 1.

lāxo, öre, öni, önum, v. tr. (lāxus, loose). To extend, stretch out; mancipulos, to open the ranks, ii. 25.

lectus, a, um, part. from lēgo.

lēgātio, önis, f. (lēgo, öre, to depute). Embassy, legation, delegation; the office of an ambassador; ambassadors.

lēgātus, i, m. (lēgo, öre, to depute). An ambassador, legate, envoy; lieutenant; legatus pro praetore, a lieutenant with proconsular power, i. 21.

lēgio, önis, f. (lēgo, öre). A legion, a body of soldiers consisting of ten cohorts and a division of cavalry. The number of soldiers in a legion was not always the same; in the time of Caesar it was probably about four thousand. The legions were designated by numbers, prima, secunda, tertia, etc. Caesar, in the first year of the Gallic war, had six legions, viz., the seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, eleventh, and twelfth; and in the second year he added two more, the thirteenth and fourteenth. After the defeat of Sabinus and Cotta, by which the fourteenth was annihilated, he levied two new legions, the fourteenth and fifteenth, and received the first from Pompey. Afterwards the sixth was also added.

lēgiōnārius, a, um, adj. (lēgio). Belonging to a legion, legionario.

lēgo, öre, lēgi, lectum, v. tr. To
LEMANNUS — LITTERA

bring together, collect; to choose, select; to read. Lactus, a, um, part. Chosen, selected, picked.

Lemannus, i, m. The lake of Geneva, i. 2, 8; iii. 1.

Lemovices, um, m. 1) A people of Gallia Celtica, south of the Bituriges, vii. 4, 75, 83. 2) One of the Armorice tribes, viii. 75.


lémiter, adv. (lémis). Gently, mildly; gradually, slowly; lenius, less violently, v. 17.

Lépontii, ērum, m. A Gallic tribe dwelling among the Alps, iv. 10.

lépus, oris, m. The hare, v. 12.

Leuci, ērum, m. A people of Gal- lia Belgica, between the Mediomatri and the Lingones, i. 40.

Levāci, ērum, m. A people of Gallia Belgica, under the protection of the Nervii, v. 39.

levis, e, adj. Light; unimportant, trivial, slight; capricious, fickle; inconconsiderate, v. 28.

lēvitas, ētis, f. (levis). Lightness; fickleness, inconstancy, capriciousness, ii. 1.

lévo, ēre, ēvi, ērum, v. tr. (lēvis). To make light, lighten, diminish; to relieve, alleviate; to aid, assist; hiber- nis, to relieve of winter quarters, v. 27.

lex, lēgis, f. A law, ordinance, decree.

Lexovii, ērum, m. A people of Gallia Celtica, near the mouth of the Sequana. Their chief town was Noviodumagus, now Lisieux, in Normandy, iii. 9, 11, 17, 29; vii. 75.

lībenter, adv. (lībens, willing). Willingly, cheerfully, gladly.

līber, ēra, ērum, adj. Free, unrestrained, independent.

lībĕralitas, ētis, f. (līber). Generosity, liberality; kindness, munificence, gifts.

lībĕraliter, adv. (līber). Generously, liberally, kindly, richly, profusely.

lībĕre, īberiūs, adv. (līber). Freely, unreservedly, boldly; īberiūs, too freely, v. 19.

lībere, ērum, m. Children.

lībere, ēre, ēvi, ērum, v. tr. (līber). To make free; to liberate, release, extricate.

lībertas, ētis, f. (līber). Freedom, liberty, independence; unrestrained freedom, iv. 1.

lībritas, e, adj. (lībra, a pound). Weighing a pound. See Funda libri-

tas.

līcens, tie, part. from līceor.

līcentia, ae, f. (līceo). Unrestrained license, lawlessness; want of discipline, presumption, v. 62.

līceor, ēri, tius sum, v. dep. To bid at auction.

līceo, ēre, ēvītis and līcitum est, v. imperfs. It is lawful, allowable, permitted; one may or can.

līger, ēris, m. A river in Gaul, now the Loire, ii. 9; viii. 5, 11, 55, 56, 59.


līgnātor, ēris, m. (lignum, wood, wood). One sent to procure wood, a woodcutter.

līlium, i, n. A lily; a military defence in the form of a lily, vii. 73.

līnea, ae, f. (līnum). Line, row.

līngones, um, m. A people of Gallia Celtica, living near the sources of the Moselle (Meuse) and the Marne (Marne), i. 26, 40; iv. 10; vi. 44; viii. 9, 66.

līngua, ae, f. The tongue; speech, language.

līngūla, ae, f. (līngua). A tongue of land.

līnter, tris, f. rarely m. A small boat, skiff.

līnum, i, n. Flax, linen.

lis, ētis, f. Strife, dispute; the subject of dispute; damages, v. i.

Līscus, i, m. A supreme magistrate of the Aedui, i. 16, 17.

Litavicus, i, m. A nobleman of the Aedui, vii. 37, 42, 54, 57, 67.

līttēra, ae, f. (līno, to smear). A
letter of the alphabet; litterae, ärum, letters of the alphabet; an epistle, letter, despatches; litteras publicas, public documents, v. 47.

Litus, iris, n. The sea-shore, seashore, coast.

Locus, i, m., plur. loci and loca, m. and n. A place, spot, region, locality, position; occasion, opportunity; eodem loco habere, to regard in the same situation, i. 26; loco obsidium, as hostages, v. 5; condition, rank, station, ii. 26; in cum locum, to such a pass, vi. 43.

Longe, adv. (longus). At a distance, far off; far away; widely, greatly, far; longe abesse, to be of no avail, i. 36; longe lateque, far and wide, iv. 35.

Longinquus, a, um, adj. (longus). Long, long continuing, v. 29; far distant, remote, iv. 27.

Longitudo, inis, f. (longus). Length.

Longitarius, i, m. (longus). A long pole.

Longus, a, um, adj. Long, distant; of long duration.

Loquor, i, eis cum, v. dep. To speak, say, tell, declare.

Lorica, ae, f. A coat of mail, cuirass, corselet; breastwork, parapet, v. 40.

Lucanius, i, m. Quintus, a Roman centurion, v. 35.

Lúcius, i, m. A Roman praenomen.

Lucetius, i, m. A Gaul, one of the Cadurci, whom Caesar sent against the Rutési, vii. 5, 7, 8.

Lugotörix, igis, m. A chief and noble of the Britons, v. 22.

Lūna, ae, f. The moon, worshipped as a goddess by the Germans, vi. 21.

Lūtētia, ae, f. A town of the Parisii, on an island of the Sequana (Seine); later Parisii, now Paris, vi. 5; vii. 57, 58.


Lux, lūcis, f. Light, daylight; sub luceam, towards daybreak, vii. 85.

Luxuria, ae, f. (luxus, excess). Extravagance, luxury, excess.

M.

Mācēria, ae, f. A wall, enclosure.

Mahācinatō, ónis, f. (mācīnātor, to contrive). Machine, engine.

Magetōbrīa, better written Ad-
magetobriga, ae, f. A town in Gaul, probably near the Sātīna, i. 31.

Māgis, maxime, adv. (major). More, in a higher degree, rather.

Māgistrātus, us, m. (māgiāter, a master). A magisterial office, magistracy; a magistrate, officer, public functionary.

Magnificus, a, um, adj. (magnus, fācio). Splendid, magnificent.

Magnitūdō, inis, f. (magnus). Greatness, size, magnitude; animi, greatness of soul, ii. 27.


Magnus, a, um, comp. major, sup. maximus, adj. Great, large, much; important; mighty, powerful. Major, maximus, with or without nātus, older, elder; oldest, eldest, ii. 13. Majores, forefathers, ancestors.

Majestas, aëris, f. (major). Greatness, dignity, majesty.

Major, comp. of magnus.

Mālācia, ae, f. A calm at sea, a calm, ill. 15.

Māle, pejus, pestem, adv. (mālus). Badly, ill; unsuccessfully, unfortunately.

Mālefeìum, i, n. (māle, fācio). An evil deed; mischief, damage, harm.

Mallius, i, m. Lūcius, proconsul of Gallia Ulterior during the war with Sertorius, 78 B. C., iii. 20.

Mālo, male, mālui, v. irr. G. 293. (māgias, volo). To choose rather, prefer.

Māllum, i, n. (mālus). An evil, misfortune, calamity.

Mālus, a, um, comp. pejor, sup. pesetem, adj. Bad, evil, injurious, destructive.

Mālum, i, m. A mast; a long pole; turrium, the uprights, vii. 22.
mandátum, i. n. (mando). A charge, order, commission; injunction, command.

mando, āre, āri, ātum, v. tr. (in, mānum, do). To commit to one’s charge; to commission; to order, command, bid; fugae see mandare, to betake one’s self to flight, i. 12.

Mandubii, ērum, m. A people of Gallia Celtica, within the limits of the Aedui, on the borders of the Lingones. Their chief town was Alésia, now Dijon, vii. 68, 71, 78.

Mandubrius, i, m. A chief of the Trinobantes, in Britain, v. 20, 22.

māne, adv. In the morning, early in the morning.

māneo, āre, ās, sum, v. intr. To remain, stay; to continue; to last; to abide by; in eo manere, to adhere to that, i. 36.

mānipūlāris, ēs, adj. (mānipūlus). Belonging to a maniple or company; manipulares, soldiers of the same company, comrades, viii. 47.

mānipūlus, i, m. (mānus, plēnus). A handful; a company of soldiers, a maniple, so called from the wispy (handful) of grass which originally served as the standard of the company. Each maniple consisted of two centuries, and three maniples formed a cohort.

mānuēsio, fēri, factus sum, v. pass. (mānuēs, tame, fio). To be tamed.

mānuētādo, tris, f. (mānuētās, tame). Mildness, gentleness, clemency.

mānus, us, f. A hand; art; power, grasp; an armed body, force, band; per manus, from hand to hand, vii. 25; in manibus nostris, within our reach, close at hand, ii. 19; dare manus, to yield, v. 31.

Marcōmanni, ērum, m. A Germanic people, between the Rhine and the Danube, i. 51.

Marcus, i, m. A Roman praenomen.

māre, is, n. The sea.

māritīmus, a, um, adj. (māre). Maritime; bordering upon the sea, lying on the sea-coast, ii. 34.

Mārius, i, m. Gāius, a celebrated Roman general. He conquered Jugurtha, defeated the Cimbri and Teutones, and waged the civil war against Sulla, i. 40.

Mars, Martis, m. The god of war, vi. 17; war, battle; aequo Marte, in equal battle, i. 4, with equal prospect of success, vii. 19.

mās, māris, m. A male.

matāra, ae, f. (a Celtic word). A javelin, pike.

mātēr, tris, f. A mother, matron.

mātēria, ae, f., and mātēries, ēs, f. (mātēr). Material; timber for building, timber, beams.

mātērior, āri, v. dep. (mātēria). To fell or procure timber.

Matisco, ōnis, f. A town of the Aedui, on the Arar (Saône), now Macon, vii. 90.

mātrimōnium, i, n. (māter). Marriage, matrimony, wedlock; in matrimonium ducere, to marry, i. 9; dare in matrimonium, to give in marriage, i. 3.

Mātrōna, ae, m. A river in Gallia Celtica, now the Marne, i. 1.

mātūre, mātūris, mātūrīmus, adv. (mātūrus). Seasonably; soon, speedily, quickly, rapidly.

mātūresco, ēre, ērui, v. intr. (mātūrus). To become ripe; to ripen.

mātūro, āre, āri, ātum, v. tr. and intr. (mātūrus). To hasten; to make haste.

mātūrus, a, um, adj. Ripe, mature; early, iv. 20; seasonable, timely; proper, suitable.

maxime, adv., sup. of māgis. Very greatly; especially, principally, mainly.

maximus, a, um, adj., sup. of magnus.

Maximus, i, m. See Fabius.

mēdeor, ēri, v. dep. To remedy, heal; to relieve, provide against.

mēdiōcris, ē, adj. (mēdius). middling, moderate, ordinary.
médiocrítēr, adv. (mēdiōcrīs). In
an ordinary degree, moderately.

Mediocrītēs, ōrum, and Medio-
matrices, um, m. A people of Gallia
Belgica, between the Vesōges and the
Rhenus (Rhine). Divodārum (Metz)
was their capital, iv. 10; vii. 75.

mēditerrāneus, a, um, adj. (mē-
dius, terra). Midland, inland, remote
from the sea, v. 12.

mēdius, a, um, adj. In the mid-
dle or midst, in the middle of, inter-
vening; mēdiā nōx, midnight, ii. 7.

Mēldī, òrum, m., or Mēldae,
érum, m. A people of Gallia Celtica,
on the Marne, in the vicinity of the
modern Mēcaus, v. 5.

mēliōr, comp. of bōnus.

mēlius, comp. of bōne.

Mēlōdānum, i, n. A town of
Gallia Celtica, on the right bank of
the Seine, in the country of the Senā-
nes, now Mēλūn, vii. 58, 60, 61.

membrum, i, n. A member, limb.

mēminī, isse, v. def. G. 287, I. To
remember, recollect, bear in mind.

mēmor, òris, adj. Mindful.

mēmōria, ae, f. (mēmor). Memory,
recolletion, remembrance; the peri-
dod of recollection, memory, time.

Mēnapī, òrum, m. A people of
Gallia Belgica between the Merowe
and the Scheldt, ii. 4; iii. 9, 28; iv. 4, 22,
38; vi. 2, 5, 6, 9, 33.

mēndācium, i, n. (mendax, lying).
A falsehood.

mens, mentis, f. The mind, soul,
position; the intellectual faculties,
understanding, reason, judgment, dis-
cernment.

mensis, is, m. A month.

mensūra, ae, f. (mētōr). Measure,
measurement; ex āquam mensuris,
by means of the clepsydra, or water
measure, v. 13.

mentio, ēnis, f. (mēminī). A men-
tioning, mention.

mercātōr, ēris, m. (mercor, to
traffic). A trader, merchant.

mercātūra, ae, f. (mercør, to traf-
fc). Trade, traffic, commerce.

merces, ādis, f. (mēreo). Hire, pay,
wages, reward.

Mercārius, i, m. Mercury, the
son of Jupiter and Maia, the god of
eloquence and trade, the bestower of
prosperity, and the messenger of the
gods, vi. 17.

mēreo, ēre, ui, ētum, v. tr., also
mēreor, ēri, ētus sum, v. dep. To
deserve, merit, be worthy of; to earn,
gain, acquire; optime meritos, best
deserving, i. 45; to serve, vii. 16.

mēridiānus, a, um, adj. (mēridiae).
Of or belonging to midday, noon.

mēridies, ëi, m. (mēdiūs, dies).
Midday, noon; the south, v. 13.

mērito, adv. (mēritum). Accord-
ing to desert, deservedly, justly.

mēritum, i, n. (mēreor). Desert,
merit, service; favor, kindness, ben-
efit.

Messāla, ae, m. Marcus Valērius
Messāla, consul with Marcus Pēpius
Piso, 61 B.C., i. 2, 35.

mētōr, īri, mensus sum, v. dep.
To measure, deal out, distribute.

mēto, ēre, messei, messum, v. tr. To
reap, mow; to harvest, iv. 32.

Mettius, i, m. Marcus, a friend
of Ariovistus, i. 47, 53.

mētus, us, m. Fear, dread, terror;
metu territūre, to put in fear, terrify,
v. 6.

mens, a, um, poss. pron. (ēgo, meri).
My, mine.

miles, itis, m. and f. A soldier,
private; infantry, v. 10.

milītāris, e, adj. (miles). Of or
belonging to a soldier, military, sol-
dier-like, warlike.

milītia, ae, f. (miles). Military
service, warfare; militiae vacationem,
exemption from military duty, vi. 14.

mille, subs. and adj. G. 178. A
thousand. Plur. millia, ium, subs.;
mille passuum, i. 28; mēlia passuum, or
milia alone, Roman miles, i. 2; iv. 14.

Minerva, ae, f. The goddess of
wisdom and the arts, vi. 17.

minimē, adv., sup. of pārum. Least
of all, least, by no means; minimē...
saepè, i. e., rarissime, very seldom, i. 1.

miùimus, a, um, adj., sup. of parvus. Least, smallest; quae minimum spati, the least possible time, lli. 19.

miùor, us, adj., comp. of parvus. Smaller, less.

Minācius, i, m. Lūcius Minācius Basitus, one of Caesar’s lieutenants, vi. 29; vii. 90.

mianno, är, ui, ātum, v. tr. (miùor). To make less, diminish, lessen; to weaken, impair; to adjust, settle. Intr., to become less; minuente adestu, at the ebbing of the tide, lli. 12.

miùus, adv., comp. of pārsum. Less; not; si id minus vellet, if he did not wish this, l. 47; minus dubitationis, less hesitation, i. 14. G. 397, 3.

miror, ärì, ātus sum, v. dep. To wonder or marvel at; to be astonished at.

mirus, a, um, adj. Wonderful, marvellous; extraordinary.

miùer, ärō, ārum, adj. Wretched, pitiable, unfortunate, lamentable.

miùercoerdia, ae, f. (miùerco, to pity, cov.). Pity, compassion, mercy, clemency.

miùeror, ärì, ātus sum, v. dep. (miùer). To lament, bewail, deplore; to commiserate, pity.

missus, us, m. (mitto). A sending, dispatching; mīssus Caesaris, by commission from Caesar, i. e., sent by Caesar, v. 27.

mite, miùus, miùesme, adv. (miùis, mild). Gently, mildly, in a friendly manner.

mitto, ère, ēsì, missum, v. tr. To send, dispatch; to cast, discharge, hurl; to let go, release.

mōbilis, e, adj. (for mōbilis, from mōveo). Easy to be moved; changeable, inconstant, fickle.

mōbilitas, àtis, f. (mōbilis). Movableness; agility, rapidity, speed, iv. 33; inconstancy, fickleness, ii. 1.

mōbiliter, adv. (mōbilis). Rapidly, quickly, readily.

mōdēror, ärì, ātus sum, v. dep. (mōdus). To manage, regulate, govern, direct.

mōdestia, ae, f. (mōdestus, modest). Moderation, modesty, ready obedience.

mōdo, adv. (mōdus). Only, but; just, even, merely; imperium modo, even an attack, vi. 8; non modo ... sed etiam, not only ... but also; modo ... modo, now ... now, sometimes ... sometimes.

mōdus, i, m. The measure, extent, quantity; manner, way, mode, style.

moenia, īum, n. plur. (mūnio). Defensive walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, the walls of a town.

mōestus, a, um, adj. (mōerea, to grieve). Mournful, sad, downcast.

mōles, is, f. A huge, massive structure; a dike, dam, mole, iii. 12.

mōlestus, adv. (mōlestus, troublesome). With trouble or difficulty; ferre, to take it ill, be annoyed, ii. 1.

mōlimentum, i, n. (mōler, to strive). A great exertion, i. 34.

mōlitus, a, um, part. from mōdo.

mollia, ère, èvi, ātum, v. tr. (mollis). To soften; to make gentle.

mollis, e, adj. (for mōbilis). Gentle, easy, not steep; weak, feeble.

mollifics, èi, f. (mollis). Effeminy, weakness, irresolution.

mōlo, ère, ui, ātum, v. tr. (mōla, a millstone). To grind.

mōmentum, i, n. (for mōvementum, mōveo). Weight, importance, influence.

Mōna, ae, f. An island near Britain, probably the Isle of Man, v. 13.

mōneo, ère, ui, ātum, v. tr. To admonish, advise, warn; to instruct, counsel.

mons, montis, m. A mountain; summus mons, the top of the mountain, i. 22.

mōra, ae, f. A delay, hindrance, obstacle.

morbus, i, m. A sickness, disease, illness.

Mōrnav, īnum, m. A people of Gallia Belgica, near the Channel. They
occupied the coast from Boulogne northward, perhaps as far as Dunkirk, ii. 4; iii. 9, 28; iv. 21, 22, 37, 38; v. 24; vi. 75, 76.

mōrēr, i and ēri, mortus sum, v. dep. To die.

Moritasgus, i, m. Brother of Carvarinus, chief of the Senones, v. 54.

mōrō, ēri, ērō sum, v. dep. (mōra, delay). To tarry, remain; to retard, detain, hinder, delay.

mors, mortis, f. (mōrō). Death.

mos, mōris, m. Manner, custom, usage, character, practice.

Mōsa, ae, m. A river in Gallia Belgica, now the Meuse, iv. 9, 10, 12, 15; v. 24; vi. 33.

mōtus, us, m. (mōveo). A movement; a political movement, tumult, commotion.

mōveo, āre, āvēi, āvēsum, v. tr. To move, set in motion; to excite, affect, influence; castra movere, to break up, remove, decamp.

mūlier, ēris, f. A woman, wife.

mūlio, ēnis, m. (mūlus). A mule-driver, muleteer.

multātūdo, ēnis, f. (multus). A great number, multitude, crowd; the common people, populace.

multo, āre, āvi, āvum, v. tr. (multus, a fine). To punish; to fine; to take away, vii. 54.

multo, abl. of multus. By far, much.

multum, adv. (multus). Much, very, greatly, especially; non ita multum, not so very long, v. 47.

multus, a, um, comp. plus, sup. plurimum, adj. Much, many, numerous, frequent; multum aestatis, a great part of the summer, v. 22; ad multum noctem, late into the night, i. 26; multo die, the day being far advanced, i. 22.

mūlis, i, m. A mule.

Mūnātius, i, m. Lācius Mūnātius Plancus, a lieutenant of Caesar, v. 24, 26.

mundus, i, m. The world, universe.

mānimentum, i, n. (mūnio). A defence, fortification, protection.

mūnio, ēre, ēvi or ii, ēvum, v. tr. To fortify, defend by a wall; to protect, cover, secure.

mūnīte, ēnis, f. (mūnio). A fortifying, protecting; fortification, protection; rampart, intrenchment, walls, works of defence.

mūnītus, a, um, 1) part. from mūnio; 2) adj. Fortified, protected; secure, defended.

mūnus, ēris, n. Service, office, function; favor, present, gift.

mūrālis, e, adj. (mūrus). Pertaining to a wall, mural.

mūrus, i, m. A wall, rampart.

musculus, i, m. (dim. from mus, a mouse). A little mouse; in milit. lang., a shed, mantelet, vii. 84.

mūtīlus, a, um, adj. Maimed, broken, mutilated; mutiiae cornibus, with mutilated horns, vi. 27.

mūto, āre, āvi, āvum, v. tr. (for mōveo, mōveo). To change, alter; to avoid, vii. 45.

N.

nāctus, a, um, part. from nancisor.

Namēius, i, m. A distinguished Helvetic, i. 7.

nāmque (a strengthened form for nam), conj. For.

nancisor, i, nactus sum, v. dep. To get, obtain, acquire; to meet with, find.

Nannētes, um, m. A people of Gallia Celtica, near modern Nantes, iii. 9.

Nantuātes, um or um, m. A people of Gallia Narbonensis, at the foot of the Alps, north-east of the Allobroges, iii. 1, 6; iv. 10.

Narbo, ēnis, m. A town in Gaul, from which Gallia Narbonensis takes its name, now Narbonne, iii. 20; vii. 7.

nascor, i, nātus sum, v. dep. To be born, arise, proceed; to take its or-
Nasua, ae, m. A brother of Cimberius, and a leader of the Suêbi, i. 37.

nātālis, e, adj. (nācōr). Pertaining to birth; āēs, the birthday, vi. 18.

nātio, ēnis, f. (nācōr). A race of people, nation, people.

nātivus, a, um, adj. (nātus). Produced by nature, natural, vi. 10.

nātu, m., only in the abl. (nācōr). Birth; āmaiores natū, the elders, ii. 13.

nātūra, ae, f. (nācōr). Nature; the natural disposition, character, inclination.

nātus, a, um, part. from nācōr.

nauta, ae, m. (nūetta, nūvis). A sailor.

nauticus, a, um, adj. (nauta). Of or belonging to sailors, nautical.

nāvālis, e, adj. (nāvis). Of or belonging to ships, naval.

nāvīcula, ae, f. (dim. of nāvis). A little boat, skiff.

nāvigatio, ēnis, f. (nācōgo). Sailing, navigation; a voyage by sea.

nāvigium, i, n. (nācōgo). A vessel, ship; tectorium, a transport, v. 8.

nāvīgo, āre, āri, ātum, v. intr. (nāvis, āgo). To sail, go by ship, navigate.

nāvis, is, f. A ship, vessel; navis longa, a ship of war; oneraria, a transport ship; actuaria, a light galleys, v. 1.

nāvo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (nācus, active). To perform vigorously, or with zeal, ii. 25.

nē, adv. and conj. Not, so that not, lest in order that not; ne ... quidem, not even.

nē, inter. particle, enclitic. Whether; ne ... ne, whether ... or, vii. 14.

nec, conj. See Nēque.

nēcessārio, adv. (nēcessārius). By necessity, of necessity, necessarily.

nēcessārius, a, um, adj. (nēcessae). Necessary, needful, indispensable; unavoidable, critical, pressing. Subs., a relative, kinman, friend, i. 11.

nēcesse, adj. indecl. (nē, cōde).

Necessary, unavoidable, indispensable.

nēcessitas, ēdis, f. (nēcesse). Necessity, need, compulsion, constraint.

nēcessitādo, ēnis, f. (nēcesse). A close personal relationship, intimacy, friendship, alliance, i. 43.

nec-ne, adv. Or not, i. 50.

nēco, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (nēx). To kill, put to death.

nēcūbi, conj. (nē, ālīcūbi, somewhere). That nowhere, lest anywhere.

nēfārius, a, um, adj. (nēfas). Impious, abominable, wicked.


nēgigo, āre, āxi, estum, v. tr. (nec, lēgo). Not to heed; to neglect, disregard, slight.

nēgo, āre, āri, ātum, v. tr. and intr. (ne, āio, to say). To refuse, deny, v. 6; to say no or not, declare not, i. 8.

nēgōtior, āri, ādis sum, v. dep. (nēgōtium). To trade, traffic, carry on business.

nēgōtium, i, n. (nec, ātum). Business, occupation, affair; difficulty, trouble, labor.

Nēmētes, um, m. A Germanic people of Gallia Belgica, on the left bank of the Rhine, in the vicinity of Speyer, duchy of Baden, i. 51; vi. 25.

nēmo, ēnis, m. and f. G. 457, 2 (nē, hōmo). No one, nobody.

nē-quāquam, adv. By no means, not at all.

nē-que, or nec, conj. and adv. And not, also not, but not; neque ... neque, nec ... nec, neither ... nor.

nē-quivem. See Nē.

nē-quivam, adv. In vain, to no purpose, without reason, ii. 27.

nē-quis. See Quis.

Nervicus, a, um, adj. (Nervii). Of the Nervii, Nervian, ill. 5.

Nervii, ērum, m. A powerful and warlike people of Gallia Belgica, between the Sabins (Sambri) and the Scaldis (Scheldt), ii. 4, 15-19, 23, 28, 29; v. 24, 38-42.
ner
tus, i, m. A nerve, sinew, muscle; force, power, strength.

neuter, tra, trum, gen. neutrius, adj. (nē, eter). Neither of (two), Neuter, plur., neither of (two parties).

nē-ve, or neu, con. And not, nor.

nex, nēcis, f. A violent death, murder, slaughter, death.

nihil, n. indecl. Nothing; not, in no respect, not at all.

nihil, (abl. of nihilum), adv. In no respect; nihil secius, none the less, the less in no respect, i. 49; nihil to minus, nevertheless, i. 5.

nimis, adv. Too much, very much, very; non nimis firmo, not very strong, vii. 36.

nimus, a, um, adj. (nimis). Beyond measure, excessive, too great, too much.

ni-si, conj. If not, unless; except.

Nitiobriges, um, m. A people of Gallia Celtica, on the right bank of the Garumna (Garonne). Their chief town was Agnoma, now Agen, vii. 7, 31, 46, 76.

nitor, i, nītus or nixus sum, v. dep. To rest upon, rely upon; to exert one's self, strive, endeavor, attempt.

nix, nīvis, f. Snow.

nōbilis, e, adj. (for noscitīlis, nosco). Known, distinguished, noted; high-born, of noble birth, noble.

nōbilitas, ātis, f. (nōbilis). Celebrity, renown; noble birth, rank; the nobility, nobles, i. 2, 31.

nōcēns, tis, adj. (nōcēo). Hurtful, injurious. Nōcēndes, ium, the guilty, vi. 9.

nōcēo, ēre, ui, tūtum, v. intr. To harm, hurt, injure.

nōctu, f., only in abl. (nōx). By night, in the night.

nōcturnus, a, um, adj. (nōx). By night, nightly, in the night.

nōdus, i, m. A knot; a knob or node on a joint, vi. 27.

nōle, nolle, nōlui, v. irreg. G. 293. (non; volo). To be unwilling; not to wish; to refuse, object.

nōmen, nīnis, n. (nosco). A name, title, designation; suo nomine, on his own account, on personal grounds, i. 18; pretense, excuse; obsidum nomine, as hostages, ill. 2.

nōminātim, adv. (nōmīnō). By name, expressly.

nōminō, ēre, ēri, ērum, v. tr. (nōmen). To name, call by name, mention.

nōn, adv. Not, no.

nōnāginta, num. adj. Ninety.

nōn-dum, adv. Not yet.


nōn-nullus, a, um, adj. Some, a few, several.

nōn-nunquam, adv. Sometimes, at times.

nōnus, a, um, num. adj. (nōvum). The ninth.

Nōrēia, ae, f. The capital of the Taurisci, in Noricum, now Neumarkt in Styria, i. 5.

Noricus, a, um, adj. Noric, pertaining to Noricum, i. 5, 53.

nōsco, ēre, nōvi, nōtum, v. tr. To know, learn, understand, become acquainted with.

nōster, tra, trum, poss. pron. (nos). Our, ours.

nostri, ārum, subs. Our troops, our men.

nōtītia, ae, f. (nōtus). Knowledge, acquaintance.

nōtus, a, um, part. and adj. (nōsco). Known, familiar, manifest.


Noviodūnum, i, n. 1) A town of the Aedui, on the east side of the Loire, now Nevers, vii. 55. 2) A town of the Bituriges, in Gallia Celtica, now Nevers sur Baranjon, or, according to others, Nouan, vii. 12, 14. 3) A town of the Sessiones in Gallia Belgica, now Soissons, ii. 12.

nōvitas, ātis, f. (nōvus). Newness, novelty, strangeness.

nōvus, a, um, adj. New, strange, uncommon; fresh, recent. Sup., novissimus, a, um, the newest, i. e., latest, last; agmen novissimum, the rear.
nox, noctis, f. Night; multā nocte, late in the night, ii. 26.

noxia, ae, f. (noxio). Fault, offence, crime, vi. 16.

nābo, ēre, psí, ptum, v. intr. To veil one’s self; to marry (of the bride), i. 18.

nādeo, ēre, ēvi, ēatum, v. tr. (nādu-

nāduis, a, um, adj. Naked, uncovered; unprotected, exposed.

nālius, a, um, adj. G. 151. (nē, ulius). Not any, no, none, without any.

num, interrog. particle. Whither.

nūmen, tnis, n. (nuo, to nod). The divine will, power.

nūmerus, i, m. A number; rank, position, vi. 13; crowd, multitude.

Nūmida, ae, m. A Numidian, ii. 7, 10, 24.

numnumis, i, m. A piece of money, a coin.

nune, adv. Now, at present.

nunquam, adv. (nē, unquam). Never, at no time.

nuntio, ēre, ēvi, ēatum, v. tr. (nun-

nuntius, i, m. A messenger, courier; message, news, tidings; an order.

nūper, adv. (nósūper, from nōvus). Newly, recently, not long ago.

nūtus, us, m. (nuo, to nod). A nod, will, pleasure, command.

O.

ōb, prep. with acc. On account of, in consideration of, for.

ōb-acrātus, a, um, adj. (acis). Involved in debt. Sucks, debtor.

ōb-dūco, ēre, duxi, ductum, v. tr. To lead or draw before; to dig, make, fossam, ii. 8.

ōb-ecō, ēre, ēri or ī, ētum, v. intr. To go to or around; to perform, execute, do, accomplish; omnia per se, to perform all things personally, v. 33.

ōbitus, us, m. (ōbeo). Downfall, destruction, death.

objectus, a, um, 1) part. from objici- cio; 2) adj. Lying before or opposite, v. 13; thrown up, vi. 10; interposed, lying in the way, vi. 37.

objiciō, ēre, ēci, jactum, v. tr. (jactio). To throw, place, or set against; to place in the way, offer, present, vii. 59; to expose, i. 47; to throw up, oppose, i. 26.

oblātus, a, um, part. from oﬀerō.

oblique, adv. (obliquus). Obliquely, in a slanting direction, iv. 17.

obliquus, a, um, adj. Slanting oblique, running in an oblique direction, vii. 73.

oblīviscor, i, oblitus sum, v. dep. To forget; to lose all recollection of.

ob-sēcro, ēre, ēvi, ēatum, v. tr. (sac-

obsequiae, ae, f. (ob, séquor). Compliance, obsequiousness.

ob servo, ēre, ēvi, ētam, v. tr. To watch, mark, notice; to attend to, observe, regard, obey, v. 35.

obesse, ēdis, m. and f. (ob, sédeo, to sit). A hostage, surety, pledge.


ob sideo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, v. tr. (sādeo, to sit). To sit down before, besiege, invest, blockade.


ob signo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. (signo, to mark). To seal; to sign and seal.

ob sīsto, ēre, stiți, stītum, v. intr. To set one’s self against; to oppose, resist, withstand.

obstinātio, adv. Firmly, resolutely.

ob stringo, ēre, inxi, iactum, v. tr. (stringo, to bind). To bind, tie, fetter; to lay under obligation; to pledge.

ob struo, ēre, xi, ctum, v. tr. (struo, to pile up). To build before or against; to block up; to barricade.
ob-tempéro, āre, āvi, ātum, v. intr. To comply with, conform to, submit to, obey.

ob-testor, āri, ātus sum, v. dep. (testis). To implore by calling the gods to witness; to beseech, entreat, supplicate.

ob-tineo, ēre, ut, tentum, v. tr. (tēnō). To hold, possess, maintain; causam, vii. 37; to gain, acquire, obtain.

obtāli. See Offero.

ob-vēnio, ēre, vēni, centum, v. intr. To come before; to meet; to occur, happen.

ob-viam, adv. In the way, towards, against; obviam proficiens, to go to meet, vii. 12.

occāsio, ānis, f. (octūdo). An occasion, opportunity; favorable moment.

occāsus, us, m. (octūdo). A going down, setting; the quarter in which the sun sets, the west, i. 1.

occidens, tis, part. from occūdo. Going down, setting; occidens sol, the setting sun, the west, v. 13.

occūdo, ēre, cūdi, cūsum, v. intr. (ob, cūdo). To fall or go down; to set; to perish, die, be lost, vii. 37.

occūso, ēre, cūdi, cūsum, v. tr. (ob, caeco). To cut down, kill, slay.


occulte, adv. (occūlto). Secretly, privately.

occūlto, ēre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (freq. of occūlo, to hide). To hide, conceal, secrete.

occūltus, a, um, part. and adj. (occūlo, to hide). Hidden, concealed, secret.


occūpto, ēre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (ob, cūpio). To take possession of, seize, occupy; to invade, attack; to engage, employ, busy.

occūro, ēre, curri and cūcurri, sursum, v. intr. (ob, curro). To run to meet; to meet, come to, go to; to op- pose, counteract; to occur, present itself, vii. 85.

occūro, ēre, āvi, ātum, v. intr. (freq. of occūro). To rush against, attack.

ōcēānus, i, m. The ocean.

Ocelīum, i, n. A town of Gallia Cisalpina, modern Usseau, in Piedmont, i. 10.

ōcīns, adv. comp. of ēcter (rare). Quickly, speedily, v. 44.

octāvus, a, um, num. adj. (octo). The eighth.

octingenti, ae, a, num. adj. (octo, centum). Eight hundred.

octō, num. adj. indecl. Eight.


Octodūrus, i, m. A town of the Veragri, in Gallia Narbonensis, now Martigny, iii. 1.

octōgiāta, num. adj. Eighty.

octōni, ae, a, num. adj. Eight each, eight by eight.

ōcūlus, i, m. An eye; the sight, presence.


ōdium, i, n. (ōdi). Hatred, animosity; enmity, displeasure.

offendo, ēre, dī, sum, v. tr. To offend, err, give offence; to hurt, harm, wound, i. 19.

offensio, ānis, f. (offendo). An offence, harm; displeasure, aversion.

offēro, offerre, obtāli, obtātum, v. tr. (ob, fēro). To bring before, present, offer, ii. 21; to confer, vi. 42; with se, to expose one's self, encounter, meet.

officium, i, n. (ob, fācio). A service, kindness, favor; subjection, obedience, allegiance; office, employment, business, duty.

Olovīco, ānis, m. A king of the Nitobriges, vii. 31.

ōmitto, ēre, missi, missum, v. tr. (ob, mittō). To let go, let fall; to lay aside, not to use, vii. 88; to neglect, disregard, ii. 17.

ōmnino, adv. (ōmnis). Altogether,
at all, entirely, wholly, utterly; in general, generally; in all, only, i. 6.
omnis, e, adj. All, every, the whole; of every kind, v. 6.
oënérarius, a, um, adj. (ōnus). Of a burden, that carries freight; navis, a transport ship, iv. 22.
oentro, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (ōnus). To load, freight.
oēs, ēris, n. A load, burden, freight, cargo; weight, size, ii. 30; trouble, difficulty.
opera, ae, f. Pains, exertion, labor; care, attention; operam dare, to bestow care, give attention, take pains, vii. 9; aid, service, means, agency, v. 25.
opinio, ōnis, f. (opinor, to think). Opinion, supposition, belief, conjecture; opinio timoris, the impression of fear, iii. 17; reputation, repute, fame, vi. 24.
opertet, ēre, uit, v. impers. (ōpus). It is necessary, needful, proper, becoming; one must, ought.
oppidānus, a, um, adj. (oppidum). Belonging to the town. Subs., m. pl., the inhabitants of the town, citizens, ii. 7.
opidum, i, n. A town, a walled town; any fortified place, as a wood, forest, etc., v. 21.
opôno, ēre, pōstiti, pōstitum, v. tr. (ob, pōno). To set or place against; to oppose, place opposite.
opportūnē, adv. (opportūnus). Fitly, seasonably, at a proper time, timely.
opportūnitas, ātis, f. (opportūnus). Fitness, convenience; favorable situation, loci, iii. 12; favorable opportunity or moment, temporis, vi. 29; advantage; nisi opportunitate aliqūā datā, unless some advantage offered itself, iii. 17.
opportūnus, a, um, adj. (ob, portus, before the port). Fit, meet, seasonable, convenient, suitable, advantageous, favorable.
oppossitū, a, um, part. from oppōno.
arise, begin; to spring from, be born, descend.

ornamentum, i, n. (orn). An ornament, decoration, distinction, honor, i. 44.

ornatus, a, um, 1) part. from ornare; 2) adj. Furnished, equipped, fitted out.

ornare, āre, ārei, ārum, v. tr. To fit out, furnish, equip; to adorn, honor, distinguish.

ōro, āre, ārei, ārum, v. tr. To speak, beseech, entreat, implore, pray.

ortus, us, m. (ōrior). The rising.

ōs, ōris, n. The mouth; the face, countenance.

Osisimī, ērum, m. A people in the north-western portion of Gallia Celtica, ii. 34; iii. 9; vii. 75.

ostendere, ēre, di, sum and tum, v. tr. (ōdē, tendō). To show, disclose, exhibit, manifest; to tell, declare, make known, say.

ostentatio, ōnis, f. (ostento). A show, display; idle show, vain display, ostentation; pretense, deception.

ostentō, āre, ārei, ārum, v. tr. (freq. of ostendō). To show frequently, exhibit; to display, make a show of, make a demonstration.

ōtium, i, n. Leisure, rest, repose, quiet.

ōvum, i, n. An egg.

P.

pābulatio, ōnis, f. (pābulor). Foraging, collecting fodder.

pābulātor, āris, m. (pābulor). One who seeks fodder, a forager.

pābulor, āri, ērum sum, v. dep. (pābulum). To seek fodder; to forage.

pābulum, i, n. (paseo, to feed). Food for cattle, fodder, provender.

pācātus, a, um, 1) part. from pāco; 2) adj. Pacified, peaceful; subdued, reduced to subjection; quiet, calm.

pāco, āre, ārei, ērum, v. tr. (pax). To bring into a state of peace and tranquillity; to pacify; to subdue.

pactum, i, n. (pacio, to make a bargain). An agreement, compact; manner, way, vil. 53.

Pādus, i, m. The Po, a river in upper Italy, v. 24.

Paemāni, ērum, m. A Germanic tribe of Gallia Belgica, ii. 4.

paene or pēne, adv. Almost, nearly.

pāgus, i, m. A district, canton.

pālam, adv. Openly, publicly, before the people.

palma, ae, f. The palm of the hand.

pālus, ādis, f. A marsh, swamp, morass.

pāluster, tris, tre, adj. (pālus). Marshy, swampy.

pando, ēre, pandi, pannum or passum, v. tr. To spread out, extend, stretch out; passus manibus, with outstretched hands, i. 51; passus capillus, dishevelled hair, vil. 48.

pār, pāris, adj. Equal, like, similar, a match for, i. 40; with ut, atque, ac, the same . . . as, like . . . as, i. 28.

pārētus, a, um, 1) part. from pāro; 2) adj. Prepared, equipped, provided, furnished; ready, willing:

parce, adv. (parcus, frugal). Sparingly, frugally.

parco, ēre, pēperci or parsi, paretum or parsum, v. intr. (parcus, frugal). To be frugal or sparing; to spare, not to injure; to preserve.

pārens, ēris, m. and f. (pārio). A father or mother, parent.

pārente, ēre, ērei, ērum, v. tr. (pārens). To make offerings in honor of the dead; to avenge, vil. 17.

pāreo, ēre, ui, tum, v. intr. To obey, comply with, submit to.

pārio, ēre, peperi, partum, v. tr. To bring forth, bear; to gain, acquire; procure; to accomplish, occasion.

Pārisii, órum, m. A people of Gallia Celtica; their chief town was Lutetia, now Paris, vi. 3; vii. 4, 34, 57, 75.

pāro, ēre, ērei, ērum, v. tr. To prepare, provide, furnish; to make
pătientia, ae, f. (pătior). Patience, endurance; patient endurance, vi. 24.

pătior, i, passus sum, v. dep. To suffer, support, bear, endure; to allow, permit.

pătrius, a, um, adj. (pater). Fatherly, ancestral.

pătrŏnus, i, m. (pater). A protector, defender, patron.

pătrus, i, m. (pater). A father's brother, uncle.

pauci, ae, a, adj. [rare in sing.]. Few, not many.

paucitas, ātis, f. (pauci). A small number, frowenness, scarcity.

paŭlātim, adv. (paŭnum). Little by little, gradually, by degrees.

paŭlis per, adv. (paŭnum, per). For a little while, for a short time.

paŭlo, adv. (prop. abl. of paŭlus). A little, somewhat.

paŭlŭnum, adv. (paŭlus). A little, a very little.

paŭlus, a, um, adv. (paŭlus). A little, somewhat.

paŭlovus, a, um, comp. mīnor, sup. mīnimus, adj. Small, slight, insignificant, unimportant.

paŭvĕlī, adv. (paŭus, pando). Here and there, in all directions.

paŭsus, us, m. (pando). A step, a pace; a pace as a measure of length, consisting of five Roman feet; mīlī paŭsus, a Roman mile.

paŭtēfācio, ēre, ēsci, factum, v. tr. (paētēo, ēscio). To throw open; to open; to make known, disclose, bring to light.

paŭtēlio, flori, factus sum, v. pass. of paētēfācio.

paŭtens, tis, 1) part. of paēto; 2) adj. Open, unobstructed, passable, accessible.

paēto, ēre, ui, v. intr. To be open; be passable; to stretch out, extend.

paēter, tris, m. A father, sire. Plur., fathers, forefathers, ancestors.

paētiēnter, adv. (paētior). Patiently, with submission.
pellis, is, f. A skin, hide; a tent for soldiers (covered with skin); sub pellibus, in tents, in the camp, iii. 29.

pello, are, pēpāli, pāsum, v. tr. To drive out or away; to expel; to rout, drive back, discomfit; to overpower, conquer.

pendo, are, pépendi, pensum, v. tr. To weigh out; to pay, pay out; poenas, to suffer punishment, vi. 9.

penes, prep. with acc. With, in the possession of, in the power of; penes eos, in their hands, vii. 21.

pēnitus, adv. Deeply, far within, into the inmost part, vi. 10.

per, prep. with the acc. Through. I. Of space: through, over, through the midst of; are per fines, to go through the territory, i. 6. II. Of time: during, through, throughout, for the space of. III. Of other relations: 1) Means: through, by means of, by; per eos, through them, i. 4. 2) Manner: with, by, in the manner of; per causam, under the pretense, vii. 9. 3) Cause: on account of, for the sake of, for; per aetatem, on account of age, ii. 18.

pēr-ago, are, a-i, actum, v. tr. To carry through, go through with; to execute, complete, accomplish, close, end, finish.

pēr-augustus, a, um, adj. Very narrow.

per-clijio. are, cāpi, ceptum, v. tr. (cāpio). To take fully, receive, acquire, obtain; to perceive, learn, hear, hear of.

percontatio, ōnis, f. (percontor, to inquire). An asking, inquiry, question.

per-curro, are, cācurri or curri, cursum, v. intr. To run along, iv. 33; to run through, traverse.

percussus, a, um, part. from percūrio.

per-cūtio, are, cussi, cussum, v. tr. (quattio, to smite). To strike through; to slay, kill, v. 44.

per-discio, are, didici, v. tr. To learn thoroughly, get by heart, vi. 14.

perdītus, a, um, adj. (perdo, to ruin). Lost, abandoned, bad, ruined.

per-duco, are, xi, ductum, v. tr. To lead, bring, or conduct through; to convey, lead, bring; to continue, prolong, v. 31; to persuade, win, vii. 4; to carry, construct, i. 8.

per-rendīnus, a, um, adj. After tomorrow; dies, v. 30.

per-ecce, are, ei or iī, itum, v. intr. To pass away; to perish, be destroyed, be lost.

per-cūito, are, a-i, actum, v. intr. (ēquus). To ride through; to ride around, iv. 33.

per-exignus, a, um, adj. Very small, very little.

per-fācilis, e, adj. Very easy.

per-fēro, ferre, tuli, latum, v. tr. To bear or carry through; to bring, convey; to endure, suffer, undergo, bear, i. 32; to report, spread abroad, make current, ii. 35.

per-ficio, are, fāci, factum, v. tr. (fācio). To finish, execute, achieve, perform, complete; to bring to pass, cause, effect, i. 9.

per-fidia, ae, f. (fidēs). Faithlessness, dishonesty, treachery, perfidy.

per-fringo, are, frāgi, fractus, v. tr. (frango). To break through, burst through, force one's way through.

per-fūga, ae, m. (perfūgio). A desert.

per-fūgio, are, fūgi, fūgatum, v. intr. To flee to a place for refuge; to take refuge; to go over, desert.

per-fūgium, i, n. (perfūgio). A place of refuge, a shelter.

pergo, are, perrei, perrectum, v. intr. (per, vēgo). To go on, continue, proceed, advance.

per-rēcor, ari, āsus sum, v. dep. (perfūcium). To make a trial of; to try, attempt; to hazard, venture; tc be in peril, be exposed to danger, vi. 34.

per-rēcūs, a, um, adj. (perfūcium). Full of danger, dangerous, perilous, hazardous.
PERICULUM—PERTURBATIO

pericúllum, i, n. A trial, attempt, experiment; risk, danger, peril, hazard.

pérítus, a, um, adj. Experienced, skilled, acquainted with.

perlátus, a, um, part. from perfíero. protectus, a, um, part. from perlégó.

per-légó, ēre, légí, lectum, v. tr. To read through; to read.

per-luo, ēre, ui, ütum, v. tr. (luo, to wash). To wash one's self, bathe.

per-magnus, a, um, adj. Very great.

per-máneó, ēre, manse, mansum, v. intr. To remain to the end; to stay, continue, endure, persist.

per-misceó, ēre, cui, stum or stum, v. tr. (miscée, to mix) or mingle together; to confuse.

per-mitto, ēre, misé, missum, v. tr. To send through, cast, hurl; to give up, concede, surrender; to intrust, commit, v. 3; to allow, suffer, permit, i. 35.

permíxtus, a, um, part. from permisceó.

permótus, a, um, part. from permóvóeo.

per-móvóeo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, v. tr. To move deeply, stir up, excite; to induce, influence, persuade, prevail upon; to arouse, affect.

per-mulceó, ēre, si, sum or stum, v. tr. (mulceó, to soothe). To soothe, appease, calm.

permulsus, a, um, part. from permulceó.

pernícies, ēi, f. (per, náeco). Destruction, ruin, disaster, calamity.

per-pauci, ae, a, adj. plur. Very few.

perpendicúllum, i, n. (per, pendó). A plummet, plumb-line; ad perpendiculum, perpendicularly, iv. 17.

per-péptor, i, perssum, v. dep. (péptor). To suffer patiently; to endure, bear.

perpétuno, adv. (perpétusus). Constantly, uninterruptedly, perpetually, ever, always.

per-péstusus, a, um, adj. (pétó). Constant, uninterrupted, perpetual, continual, continuous; perpetuus viiá, during his whole life, i. 40; in perpetuum, forever, iv. 34.

per-quiro, ēre, sívì, situm, v. tr. (quaero). To make diligent search for; to inquire after, ascertain, vi. 9.

per-rumpo, ēre, rúpi, ruptum, v. tr. (rumpo, to break). To break through, force one's way through; to break, demolish, vii. 23.

per-scribo, ēre, psi, ptum, v. tr. To write out, describe, report.

per-sácqueor, i, sácctus sum, v. dep. To follow perseveringly; to pursue, press upon; to proceed against, punish; to avenge; to perform, execute, accomplish.

per-sévěro, ēre, ēxi, atum, v. intr. (sévěrus, stern). To persist, remain firm, persevere.

per-solvó, ēre, solvi, solútum, v. tr. To release or discharge completely; to pay, pay out; poenas, to suffer punishment, i. 12.

per-spécio, ēre, exí, exctum, v. tr. (spécio, to look). To see or look through; to examine, inspect; to perceive, observe, behold, ascertain.

per-sto, ēre, sti, atum, v. intr. To stand firmly; to remain firm, persist.

per-suádeo, ēre, si, sum, v. tr. (suádeo, to advise). To convince, persuade, prevail upon; to inculcate teach, vi. 14; sibi persuasum habere, to be convinced, iii. 2.

per-terreo, ēre, ui, atum, v. tr. To frighten greatly; to terrify.

per-tímesco, ēre, mui, v. inch. (tímco). To become greatly alarmed; to fear greatly.

per-tinácia, ae, f. (pertinax, obstinate). Obstinance, pertinacity.

per-tíneo, ēre, ui, v. intr. (tíneo). To stretch out; to extend to; to aim at, tend; to pertain to, concern, relate. belong to.

pertilli. See Perfíro.

perturbátio, ēinis, f. (perturbo). Confusion, disorder, disturbance.
perturbo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (turbō, to disturb). To throw into confusion or disorder; to confuse, disturb, discompose, embarrass.

per-vāgor, āri, ātus sum, v. dep. To wander through, roam around, rove about.

per-vēnia, ēre, ēnī, ēntum, v. intr. To come to, arrive at, reach; ad sum pars ... pervenit, to him comes a part, s. e., he receives a part, vi. 19.

pes, pēdis, m. The foot; a foot (as a measure); pedem referre, to retreat, iv. 25; pedibus, by land, ill. 12; ad pedes desītere, to dismount, iv. 12.

pēsto, ēre, ēvi or īti, ītum, v. tr. To repair to; to attack, assault; to aim at, seek, ask, demand, solicit; to seek to obtain, strive after; go to, direct one’s course to.

Petrōcōrīi, ārum, m. A people of Gallia Celtica, vii. 75.

Petrōnius, ī, m. Marcus, a centurion of the eighth Roman legion, vii. 50.

Petrosidius, ī, m. Lūcius, a standard-bearer of the army under Cotta and Sabinus, v. 37.

phasis, gis, f. A phalanx, a band of soldiers drawn up in close order, a compact mass of troops, i. 24.

Pictōnes, um, m. A people of Gallia Celtica on the south of the Liger (Loire), ill. 11; vi. 4, 75.

plētas, ātis, f. (pītus, dutiful). Dutiful conduct, papy, devotion; loyalty, patriotism.

plīnum, ī, n. The heavy javelin of the Roman infantry, javelin, dart.

plīus, ī, m. (plīum). A maniple of the triarii, who formed the third division or line in the Roman legion; primus plīus, the first maniple; primi plīi centūriō, the centurion of the first maniple, i. e., the chief centurion of the legion, ill. 5.

pinna, ae, f. A feather; a pinnacle, parapet, battlement, v. 40.

Pirustae, ārum, m. A people of Illyricum, v. 1.

piscis, is, m. A fish.

Piso, ēnis, m. 1) Lūcius Calpurnius Piso, a lieutenant of the consul Lūcius Cassius Longinus, who was defeated and slain by the Tigurini, 107 B. C., i. 12. 2) Lūcius Calpurnius Piso, father-in-law of Caesar, consul 58 B. C., i. 6, 12. 3) Marcus Čāpius Piso Calpurniānus, consul 61 B. C., i. 2, 35. 4) Piso, an Aquitanian, iv. 12.

pix, pīcis, f. Pitch.

plāceo, ēre, īui, ītum, v. intr. To please, be acceptable to, satisfy; to seem good, be resolved on, be ordered, be decided, vii. 15.

plācīde, adv. (plāceo). Calmly, gently, quietly.

plāco, ēre, ēvi, ītum, v. tr. To appease, reconcile, propitiate.

Plicanīus, ī, m. See Munātius.

plāne, adv. (plānus). Plainly, clearly, distinctly; entirely, completely, vi. 43.

plānitīes, ī, f. (plānus). Level ground, a plain.

plānus, a, um, adj. Flat, level, even, smooth.

plēbes, ī, f., or plebs, pībis, f. The commons or common people, as opposed to the patricians, senators, &c.; the multitude, populace.

plēne, adv. (plēnus). Fully, entirely, completely.

plēnus, a, um, adj. Full, entire, complete, whole.

plērusque, adj. (plērusque). For the most part, mostly, commonly, very often.

plērusque, aequum, arequum, adj. [rare in the sing.], plur. plērque, aequus, aequum, the most, very many, a great part.

Pleonoxii, ārum, m. A people of Gallia Belgica, under the rule of the Nervii, v. 39.

plumbum, ī, n. Lead; plumbō album, tin, v. 12.

plūrimum, adv., sup. of multum. Very much, especially, exceedingly.

plūrimum, a, um, adj. sup. of multum [rare in sing.]; plur., plūrīme, ae, a, the most, the greatest number, very
many; quae plurimi, as many as possible, v. 11.


plátteus, i, m. A breastwork, parapet, vil. 25.

póculum, i, n. A drinking-cup, bowl, goblet.

poena, ae, f. A fine, punishment, penalty, satisfaction, expiation.


pollex, ēcis, m. The thumb.

polliceor, ēri, ēris sum, v. dep. To promise, offer.

pollicitatio, ēonis, f. (polliceor). A promise, offer.

Pompéius, i, m. 1) Gnaeus Pompéius Magnus, the celebrated Roman general and conqueror, born 106 B.C. With Caesar and Crassus he formed the first triumvirate, but soon afterwards became involved in a struggle for supreme power. After his defeat by Caesar, at Pharsalia, he fled to Egypt, where he was murdered by the command of Ptolemy, 48 B.C., vil. 1; vil. 6. 2) Gnaeus Pompéius, an interpreter in the service of Titürius, v. 36.

pondus, ėris, n. (pendo). Weight, burden.

pōno, ēre, pōnui, pōsitum, v. tr. To put or place; to set, lay; castra, to pitch a camp, encamp; to erect, make, build; to take off, lay aside, arma, iv. 37; to regard, consider; pro certo, to regard as certain, vil. 5; to station, post, praesidium, ii. 5.

pons, pontis, m. A bridge.

pōposci See Posto.

póptilatius, ēonis, f. (póptilorrh). A laying waste, ravaging, pillaging, i. 15.

póptilus, ēri, ēris sum, v. dep. (póptilus). To ravage, lay waste, pillage, depopulate, devastate.

pópilus, i, m. A people, nation, multitude.

porrectus, a, um, part. from por-rigo.

porrigo, ēre, recti, rectum, v. tr. (pro, régó). To stretch out, reach out, extend; to offer.

porro, adv. Furthermore, moreover.

porta, ae, f. A gate, entrance, passage; decumána porta, see Decumánum.

porto, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. To carry, convey, transport, bring, bear.

portőrium, i, n. (porto). A tax or duty on goods imported or exported, toll, impost.

portus, us, m. A harbor, port.

posco, ēre, pōposci. To ask for, demand, require, importune, entreat.

pōsitus, a, um, 1) part. from pōno; 2) adj. Situated, placed, lying.

possessio, ēonis, f. (possideo). A possessing, possession; property, estate.

possideo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, v. tr. (pōsis, able, sēdeo). To hold, possess, occupy.

possuum, possae, pōsui, v. irr. (pōsis, able, sum). To be able; to have influence or power; to avail, be able to accomplish; largiter posse, to have great influence, i. 18; plurimum posse, to be very powerful, have very great influence, i. 3, 9.

post, adv. After, afterwards.

post, prep. with acc. After. 1) Of space: behind, next to, after; post legiones, behind the legions, ii. 19. 2) Of time: after, since; paulo post mediam noctem, a little after midnight, iv. 38.

post-ea, adv. Afterwards, after this, later.

post-ea-quam, adv. After that, after.

postérns, a, um, comp. postérior, sup. postérnum and postérnumus, adj. (post). Coming after, following, next, ensuing, postero dis, on the following day, i. 15; postérri, òrum, coming generations, descendants, posterity, vil. 77.

post-pōno, ēre, pōsiti, pōsitum, v. tr. To put after, esteem less, disregard, neglect.
post-quam, conj. After that, after, as soon as, when.

postremo, adv. (postremus). At last, finally.

postremus, a, um, adj., sup. of posterus. The last, in the rear, hindmost.

postridie, adv. (postero, die). On the following day, the day after; postridie ejus diei (a pleonasm), on the day after this day, i. 23.

postillum, i, n. (postulō). A demand, request.

postulo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (posco). To demand, ask, request.

pōtens, tis, adj. (possimum). Able, powerful, influential, mighty, strong.

pōtentissimus, us, m. (pōtens). Power, might, dominion, rule.

pōtentiā, ae, f. (pōtens). Power, ability, might, influence, authority, political power.

pōtestas, āris, f. (possimum). Ability, power, legal power, right, i. 16; in potestate ejus, in his power, i.e., subject to him, i. 32; opportunity, privilege, i. 40; leave, permission, iv. 11.

pōtior, īri, ītus sum, v. dep. (pōtis, able). To become master of, acquire, gain, get, obtain.

pōtius, comp.; sup. pōtissimus and pōtissimum, adv. Rather, in preference, sooner.

praec, prep. with abl. Before; in comparison with, ii. 30; for, on account of, because of, by reason of, vii. 44.

praecūitus, a, um, adj. Sharpened at the end, sharpened, pointed.

praecbeo, ēre, īti, ētum, v. tr. (praec, ēbeo). To hold forth, reach out; to offer, extend, present; to show, exhibit; to give, furnish, supply, afford.

praecāveo, ēre, cāvi, cautum, v. intr. To be on the guard against, take precautions.

praecēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, v. intr. To go before; to surpass, excel, be superior to.

praecceps, cepitis, adj. (prae, caput). Head foremost, headlong; hastens, precipitate; precipitous, steep, iv. 33.

praecipuum, i, n. (praecipio). An order, direction, command; advice, counsel, precept.

praecipuo, ēre, ēpi, eptum, v. tr. (capio). To take beforehand, obtain in advance; to suspect, vii. 9; to give orders; to advise, direct, instruct.

praecipuo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (praecipe). To throw or cast headlong; in flumen, to plunge (cast one's self) into the river, iv. 15.

praecipue, adv. (praecipus). Especially, principally, chiefly.

praecipus, a, um, adj. (praeci-

praecipuo. Particular, especial, extraordinary, peculiar.

praecīlādo, ēre, ēi, sum, v. tr. (cludō). To shut up, close, block up.

praeco, ōnius, m. A herald.

Praecōnīnus, i, m. See Valē-

praecurro, ēre, cācurri or curri, cursum, v.intr. To run before, hasten on before; to surpass, excel, outstrip.

praeda, ae, f. Property taken in war, booty, plunder, spoil.

praedico, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. To make known in public; to proclaim, declare, say, tell, affirm, report, iv. 34; to vaunt, boast, i. 44.

praedor, āri, ātus sum, v. dep. (praedà). To make booty, rob, plunder, ravage.

praedūco, ēre, duxi, ducatum, v. tr. To draw before; to make or construct before; murum, vii. 46.

praefectus, i, m. (praeficio). An overseer, leader, commander; praefec-

tus equitum, a commander of the cavalry, iii. 26.

praefōre, ferre, tāli, tātum, v. tr. To bear before; to prefer, choose rather, esteem more; se miliibus praefōrre, to place one's self in front of the soldiers, ii. 27.

praeficio, ēre, feci, factum, v. tr. (ficio). To set over; to place in authority over, appoint to the command of, i. 52.
praefigio, ēre, zi, sum, v. tr. (figo, to fix). To set up in front.

praefui. See Praesum.

praemēntum, ēre, ut, v. intr. (mē-
tus). To fear beforehand; to be anxious about.

praemitto, ēre, missi, missum, v. tr. To send before; to send in advance.

praemium, i. n. (praes). Profit, advantage; reward, distinction.

praecooccūpo, ēre, ēvi, ēsum, v. tr. To occupy beforehand, take possession of, preoccupy.

praecoopto, ēre, ēvi, ēsum, v. tr. (opto, to wish). To choose rather, desire rather; to prefer.

praepāro, ēre, ēvi, ēsum, v. tr. To make ready beforehand; to prepare.

praepōno, ēre, posui, postumum, v. tr. To put or set before; to place in command of, appoint over.

praerumpo, ēre, ūpi, rupturn, v. tr. (rumpo, to break). To break off in front; to break off, tear away.

praeruptus, a, um, 1) part. from prae-rumpo; 2) adj. Broken or torn off, abrupt, steep, rugged, craggy.

praescrībo, ēre, scripsi, scriptum, v. tr. To write before; to direct, order, dictate, appoint, command, prescribe.

praescriptum, i. n. (praescrībo). Order, direction, instruction, command; ad alterius praescriptum, at the dictation of another, i. 36.

praesens, enis, adj. (praesum). Present, in person; so prae-sente, in his presence, i. 53.

praesentia, ae, f. (praessens). The present; animi, presence of mind, courage, firmness, v. 43.

praesentio, ēre, sensi, sensum, v. tr. To feel or perceive beforehand; to foresee, observe.

praesèpio, ēre, psi, ptum, v. tr. (sèpio, to hedge in). To block up, barricade.

praesertimi, adv. (praec, sèro). Especially, particularly, chiefly.

praesidium, i. n. (praec, sèdeo). A defence, protection, help, support, aid, security; a guard, garrison; convoy, escort; fortification, post, station, intrenchment, camp.


praesto, ēre, stiti, stitum, v. tr. and intr. To stand before; to surpass, excel, be superior to; to discharge, accomplish, perform; to show, exhibit, evince, manifest. Praestat, impers., it is better, iv. 14.

praesum, esse, fui, v. intr. To be before, be in command of; to have the charge of, preside over.

praeter, prep. with acc. (praec). Past, by, beyond, i. 48; except, besides, iv. 1; together with, in addition to, i. 43; contrary to, against, ill. 3.

praetēr-ea, adv. Besides, beyond this, moreover.

praetēr-eo, ēre, òri or ò, tūm, v. tr. and intr. To go or pass by; to omit, pass over, neglect.

praetēritis, a, um, 1) part. from praetēreo; 2) adj. Past, gone by, departed.

praetēr-mitto, ēre, misi, missum, v. tr. To let go; to let pass, iv. 13; to pass over, omit, make no mention of, vii. 25.

praetēr-quam, adv. Beyond, besides, except.

praetēr-vēhor, i, vectus sum, v. dep. To ride by or past, to sail.

praetor, òri, m. A praetor, an officer next in rank to the consul; a commander, general.

praetōrius, a, um, adj. (praecor). Relating to the praetor, praetorian.

praē-āro, ēre, ussi, ustum, v. tr. (āro, to burn). To burn at the end.

praē-vertō, ēre, ti, sum, v. tr. To be beforehand, anticipate; to give attention to, vii. 33.

prāvus, a, um, adj. Wrong, wicked, bad, unjust, depraved.

prēces, um, f. pl. [rare in sing., but prēci, prēcem, and prēces occur]. Requests, prayers, entreaties, imprecations, vii. 31.
PRÆHENDO — PRODUÇO 349

prēhendo, or prendo, ēre, ēri, sum, v. tr. To seize, lay hold of, grasp.

prēmo, ēre, presi, pressum, v. tr. To press, press hard upon, crowd, pursue closely, vi. 19; to press down; to burden, load; to oppress, harass, annoy, vi. 13; re frumentariā primi, to be distressed for supplies, v. 28.

prendo. See Prēhendo.

prētium, i. n. Worth, value, price. prēx. See Prēxius.

prīdie, adv. (priōri, die). On the day before.

prīmīpius, i. m. (prīmus, pīius) The chief centurion, ii. 25.

prīme, adv. (prīmus). At first, in the first place.

prīmum, adv. (prīmus). At first, in the first place, in the beginning; with ut, ubi, cum, as soon as, ii. 2; quam prīnum, as soon as possible, i. 40.

prīmus, a, um, adj., sup. of prior. The first, the first part of, the beginning of; the foremost, principal, most influential, ii. 3; prīnum agmen, the van, i. 15; prīmā luce, at daybreak, i. 22.

prīnceps, ēpis, adj. and subs. m. and f. (prīmus, cāpio). The first in order or rank, chief, the most eminent; leader, chief, head, author.

prīncipātus, us, m. (prīnceps). The first place, the chief position; rule, sovereignty, dominion.

prior, us, gen. ōris, adj., comp. (sup. prīmus). Former, previous; priores, those in front, ii. 11.

prīstinus, a, um, adj. Former, early, primitive, original; prīstini diei, of the preceding day, iv. 14.

prīus, adv. Before, sooner, previously.

prīus-quam, adv. Before, sooner than.

prīvatim, adv. (prīvātus). As a private citizen, for one’s self; in private, privately.

prīvātus, a, um, adj. (prītico, to deprive). Belonging to an individual, private. Sub., a private citizen, one who holds no public office, vi. 13.

pro, prep. with abl. Before, in front of; pro castīris, before the camp, i. 51; for, for the advantage of, for the protection of, in behalf of, ii. 14; in proportion to, in comparison with, according to, v. 27; as, for; pro per-fugā, as a deserter, iii. 18; on account of, by reason of.

prōbo, ēre, ōvi, ētum, v. tr. (prō-bus, upright). To test, examine; to approve, be satisfied with; to prove, show, demonstrate, i. 3.

prō-cēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, v. intr. To go forth, proceed, advance.

Procilius, i. m. See Vālerius.

prō-clino, ēre, ōvi, ētum, v. tr. (clino, to incline). To bend forward. Priclinātus, a, um, part., verging to consummation, tending to ruin, vii. 42.

prō-consul, ōlis, m. A proconsul, a military governor or commander, invested with the power of consul, iii. 20.

prōcul, adv. (prōcello, to drive away). Afar off, in the distance, from afar.

prō-cumbo, ēre, cabui, cabitum, v. intr. To fall forward; to sink or bend down; to lie down, be beaten down, vi. 43.

prō-cāre, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. To take care of, look after, attend to.

prō-curro, ēre, cuccurri or curri, cursum, v. intr. To run forth, hasten forth, rush forward.

prōdeo, ēre, ivo or ii, itum, v. intr. (pro, eo). To go forward, advance, proceed, march forward.

prōditio, ōnis, f. (prōdo). Betrayal, treachery, treason.

prōdītor, ōris, m. (prōdo). A traitor.

prō-do, ēre, dīdi, ditum, v. tr. To give forth, publish, divulge, make known; to hand down, transmit, bequeath; to give up, betray, surrender, abandon.

prō-dāco, ēre, duxi, ductum, v. tr. To lead forth, bring out; to stretch
oat, lengthen, extend, prolong, pro-
tract, iv. 30.
proelior, āri, ātus sum, v. dep. (proelium). To join battle; to engage, fight, contend.
proelium, i, n. A battle, combat, engagement.
prōfectio, ōnis, f. (prōfectisor). A going away, departure, march.
prōfectus, a, um, part. from prō-
ficio.
prōfectus, a, um, part. from prō-
ficiscor.
prō-fērō, ferre, tuli, lātum, v. tr.
To bear forth, bring out, produce, bring forward.
prō-fīcio, ēre, fāci, fectum, v. tr.
and intr. (fācio). To make progress, advance; to accomplish, effect, obtain.
prō-ficiscor, i, prōfectus sum, v.
dep. (fācio). To put one's self forward; to set out, go, march, travel, depart, proceed.
prō-fītēor, ēri, fessus sum, v. dep.
(fātēor). To declare publicly, confess openly, acknowledge, avow; to profess; to offer freely, propose voluntarily, promise.
prō-fīgo, ēre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (fī-
go, to strike). To strike to the ground; to overthrow, conquer, defeat, overcome, rout, destroy.
prō-fīuo, ēre, xi, xum, v. intr. To flow forth; to issue.
prō-fīgio, ēre, fūgiō, fūgitum, v.
intr. To flee before or from; to flee, escape; to take refuge, flee for refuge.
prōfīui. See Prōsum.
prōgnātus, a, um, adj. Born, descended, sprung from.
prō-grēdior, i, greatus sum, v. dep.
(grēdior, to go). To go forward, advance, proceed.
prō-hībeō, ēre, ui, tūm, v. tr. (la-
beo). To hold back, check, restrain, prevent, debar, keep from; tinere exercitum, to check the march of the army, i. 10; to save from, protect, preserve, v. 21.
prō-inside, adv. Hence, therefore, accordingly.
prō-jiciō, ēre, jāciō, jactum, v. tr.
(jācio). To throw forth; to cast away, give up, renounce, reject; to fling away, lay down; se projicere ad pedes, to throw one's self at the feet, i. 27, 31; se ex navi, to leap from the ship, iv. 25.
prōlātus, a, um, part. from prōfero.
prōminens, entis, part. (prōmineo).
Leaning forward, projecting, vii. 47.
prō-mīneo, ēre, ui, v. intr. (mineo, to project). To reach out, project.
prōmīscue, adv. (prō, miscēo, to mix). In common, promiscuously.
prō-mitto, ēre, misi, missum, v. tr.
To promise; to let go; to let grow; ca-
pillo promissor, with long hair, v. 14.
prōmontórium, i, n. (prō, mōns).
A headland, promontory.
prō-mōveo, ēre, moveri, movum, v.
tr. To move forward, advance, push on, cause to advance.
promptus, a, um, adj. (prōmō, to bring forward). Ready, quick, active.
promē, adv. (prōmus, inclined). In an inclined position, sloping downwards, iv. 17.
promīntio, ēre, avi, ātum, v. tr.
To make known publicly; to proclaim, announce, tell, narrate, pronounce, report.
prōpe, prōpīus, prōxīme, adv. Near, close to, beside; nearly, almost, v. 20; recently, lately, i. 24.
prōpe, prep. with acc. Near, near by, i. 22.
prō-pello, ēre, pāli, pussum, v. tr.
To drive forward, urge on; to put to flight, rout, i. 15.
prōpēro, ēre, avi, ātum, v. intr.
(prōperus, quick). To hasten, make haste.
prominuitas, ātis, f. (prōpinquus).
Nearness, vicinity, proximity; relationship, ii. 4.
prominuquus, a, um, adj. (prōpe).
Near, neighboring; near at hand, die,
PROPrium—PUBES

iv. 36; nearly related, akin. Subs., a relative, kinsman, kinswoman, i. 18.

prōpior, ius, gen. ĕris, sup. proxĭmĭs. Nearer. For sup. see Proxĭmus.

prōpius, adv. See Prōpe.

prō-pōnō, ĕre, pŏsui, pŏstĭmum, v. tr. To set forth, expose to view, present, display; to make known, represent, declare, tell, explain, relate; to propose, promise, offer, præemia, v. 40; animo proponere, to purpose, intend, vii. 47.

prō-pōsĭtus, a, um, part. from prō-pōnō.

prōprius, a, um, adj. Peculiar, one’s own, ēnes, vi. 22. Proprium, i, n. subs., a special characteristic, peculiarity, prŏprĭum virtŭsĭs, vi. 23.

propter, prep. with acc. On account of, by reason of.

proptĕr-ea, adv. Therefore, for that reason, on that account; propter-ea quod, because that, because.

prō-pŭgnătōr, ēris, m. (pugno). A defender.

prō-pŭgnō, ĕre, ēvi, ētŭm, v. tr. To fight for; to rush out to battle, make sorties, v. 9; to contend in defense of, to defend one’s self.

prōpŭlĭ. See Prōpello.

prōpŭlso, ĕre, ēvi, ētŭm, v. tr. (prōpŭllo). To drive back, keep off, ward off.

prōra, ae, f. The fore-part of a ship, the prow.

prō-ruo, ĕre, ruii, rŭtŭm, v. tr. (ruo, to rush down). To tear down, demolish.

prō-sēquor, i, cūtus sum, v. dep. To follow, accompany, attend; to pursue; oratĭone prosequī, to address, ii. 5.

prospectus, us, m. (prospetĭo). Prospect, sight, view; in prospectu, in sight, v. 10.

pro-spiciō, ĕre, exī, ectŭm, v. tr. (spicīo, to look). To look forward; to provide for, take care of, consult for.

pro-sterneo, ĕre, străvĭ, strătŭm, v. tr. (sterneo, to stretch out). To prostrate, overthrow, destroy.

prō-sum, prodesse, prūsī, v. intr. To be useful, be of service; to benefit, profit, avail, conduct.

prō-tĕgo, ĕre, xi, tŭm, v. tr. To cover before or in front; to defend, protect.

prō-terreo, ĕre, ui, tŭm, v. tr. To frighten away; to terrify.

prōtĭnus, adv. (prō, tĕnus, as far as). Right on, continuously; immediately, directly, forthwith, instantly.

prō-turbo, ĕre, ēvi, ētŭm, v. tr. (turbo, to confuse). To drive forward, repulse, rout, ii. 19.

prōvectus, a, um, part. from prō-vĕxo.

prō-vĕxo, ĕre, vexi, vectŭm, v. tr. To carry forward; to bear or drive away.


prōventus, us, m. (prōvĕnĭo). A coming forth, issue, consequence, result, success, good fortune.

prō-vĕdeo, ĕre, vĕdi, vĕtŭm, v. tr. To see before one’s self; to discern; to make provision for, provide for, take care of.

prŏvĭncia, ae, f. (prŏ, vinco). A province, a conquered territory under a military governor; in provinciam redigere, to reduce to a province, i. 45. See Provincia, under Gallia.

prŏvĭnciălis, e, adj. (prŏvĭncia). Relating to a province, provincial.

prŏ-vŏlo, ĕre, ēvi, ētŭm, v. intr. (vŏlo, to fly). To fly forth, rush out.

proxĭme, adv., sup. of prŏpe. Very near, very recently, last.

prŏxĭmus, a, um, adj., sup. of prŏpior. Nearest, next, i. 11; following, ensuing, i. 40; previous, last, i. 44; ĕter, the shortest, i. 10.

prŭdentĭa, ae, f. (prŭ, vĭdeo). Săgacity, foresight, wisdom, prudence, discretion.

Ptianni, ĕrum, m. A people of Aquitania, in the region of Pau, ii. 27

pŭbes, or pŭber, ēris, adj. Grown up, of ripe age, adult. Pŭbĕres, um, m. pl., adults, men, v. 56.
publice, **adv.** (**publice**). By public authority, in the name or in behalf of the state; **publice esse laudem**, in a national point of view, iv. 3; **publicer**, in the name of the state, i. 16.

publice, **āre**, **āvi**, **ātum**, v. tr. (**publice**). To make public property; to confiscate.

**publicus**, a. **um**, adj. (for **pōpūlicus**, from **pōpūlus**). Of or belonging to the state, public, common. **Publicus**, i. m., a public officer, magistrate; **publicum**, i. n., a public place, vi. 18; in **publicum**, publicly, before the people, vi. 28.

**Publius**, i. m. A Roman praenomen.

pūdet, **āre**, **uit**, or **pūditum est**, v. impers. To be ashamed.

pūdor, **ōris**, m. (pūdet). The feeling of shame, respect, regard; a cause for shame, disgrace, ignominy.

puer, **ēri**, m. A boy, child; a puēris, from childhood, iv. 1.

puēris, **ēri**, adj. (puer). Boyish, childish, youthful.

**pugna**, ae, f. (**pugno**). A battle, combat, contest, action, engagement.

pugno, **āre**, **āvi**, **ātum**, v. intr. To fight, contend, give battle, engage.


**Pulchrum**, ēmis, m. **Tvius**, a centurion of distinguished bravery, v. 44.

pulvis, **āre**, **um**, part. from **pello**.

pulvisus, **us**, m. (**pelus**). A striking, beating, stroke; **remorum**, the stroke of the oars, rowing, iii. 13.

pulvis, **ōris**, m. Dust.

puppis, **is**, f. The stern of a ship.

purgo, **āre**, **āvi**, **ātum**, v. tr. (**pūrus**, pure, ago). To excuse, justify, exculpate.

pūlo, **āre**, **āvi**, **ātum**, v. tr. To think, believe; to consider, esteem, account; to decide, judge.

Pyrrhæneus, **a**, **um**, adj. Pyrenean; **montes**, the Pyrenees, i. 1.

**Q.**

quā, **adv.** (abl. of **qui**, sc. **parte**). In which place, where, on which side; also for **per quos**, **unde**, etc., v. 46.

quādrāgēni, ae, a, num. adj. Forty each.

quādrāginta, num. adj. (**quattuor**). Forty.

quādringenti, ae, a, num. adj. (**quattuor**, centum). Four hundred.

quaero, **ēre**, **sīvi**, **sītum**, v. tr. To seek, search for, procure, obtain; to ask, inquire, demand; to examine into, investigate.

quaeatro, ēnis, f. (**quaero**). A seeking, inquiring; an inquiry, question; a judicial inquiry, a public investigation, vi. 19.

quaeotor, ēris, m. (**quaero**). Quaeator, a Roman officer intrusted with the care of the public money, a paymaster, treasurer, with the rank of legatus.

quaeestus, us, m. (**quaero**). A gaining, gain, acquisition.

quālis, **ēri**, adj. (**quies**). Of what sort or kind, of what nature; as, such as.

quam, **adv.** (**quae**). In what manner, how; as, than. **With the superlative**: possible, as possible; **quām maximus**, the greatest possible, i. 3; **quām primum**, as soon as possible, i. 40.

quām-diū, **adv.** How long, as long as.

quām-ōb-rem, **adv.** For which reason, on which account, wherefore.

quām-vis, **adv.** As much as you wish, however much, however, very.

quando, **adv.** When; **si quando**, if ever.

quantōpērē, **adv.** (**quantus**, ὥς). How greatly, how much.

quanton, **a**, **um**, adj. (**quantum**). How great, how much; **quantum boni**, how much good, i. 40. With or without **tantus**, as, such as, as great as, as much as, ii. 11. **With comparatives**, **quanto... tanto**, the... the, v. 45.

quantonvis, **ēris**, **umvis**, **adj.** However great, ever so great.
quâ-re, adv. From what cause, wherefore, why; for which reason, therefore; that, so that.

quartus, a, um, num. adj. (quattuor). Fourth.

quási, adv. As if, just as if, as it were, as though.

quattuor, num. adj. Fourth.

quattuor-décim, num. adj. (décem). Fourteen.

que, conj. [always enclitic, i.e., appended to another word]. And; que...que...et, both...and.

quâm-ad-módam, adv. In what manner, how.

quêror, i, questus sum, v. dep. To complain, lament, bewail.

qui, quae, quod, rel. pron. Who, which, what; that; ut qui, as one who, like one who. Qui is often used for is, i, 11, 12; for quâs, li. 4; for is qui, vi. 11; for ut is, i. 15; for quam is or quipppe qui, v. 4. See G. 445, 1-9; 453.

qui-cumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. pron. Whoever, whichever, whatever, whatsoever, every possible, all.

quidam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam, indef. pron. Certain, a certain one, some one, somebody, something.

quidem, conj. Indeed, truly, at least, certainly; ne...quidem, not even.

quies, élis, f. Rest, quiet, repose.

quívit, a, um, adj. (quies). At rest, calm, quiet, peaceful, undisturbed.

quin, conj. (qui, ne). That not, but that; quin etiam, nay even, moreover, i.17. After nemo, nullus, etc., that not, which not, v. 53.

quìnám. See Quinam.

quinuncx, uncis, m. (quinque, uncia, a twelfth). Five twelfths, the five spots on dice; in quincuncem, arranged in oblique lines or rows, thus, *, **, ***, vii. 73.

quindécim, num. adj. (quinque, décem). Fifteen.

quinènti, ae, a, num. adj. (quinque, centum). Five hundred.

quiní, ae, a, num. adj. distrib. (quinque). Five each, every five.

quinquāginta, num. adj. (quinque). Fifty.

quinque, num. adj. Five.

 quintus, a, um, num. adj. (quinque). The fifth.

 Quintus, i, m. A Roman praenomen.

quis, quae, quid [used substantively]; qui, quae or quid, quod [used adjectively]. 1) Interrog. pron. Who? Which? What? Quid in exclamations, what! how! in inquiries often, why? wherefore? i. 47. 2) Indef. pron. [usually after ne, si, nisi]. Any, some, any one, some one, anything, something.


quis-piam, quaequipiam, quodquipiam, or quidquipiam, indef. pron. Any, some, any one, some one, anything, something.

quis-quam, quaequam, quidquam or quicquam, indef. pron. Any, some, any one, anything.

quisque, quaeque, quodque or quidque, indef. pron. Whoever it be, each, every, whatever, any, all.

quis-quis, quaequeus, quidquid, quic- quid, and quodquod, indef. pron. Whoever, whosoever, whoever, whatsoever, every one, each, every, all.

qui-vis, quaevis, quidvis, and quodvis, indef. pron. Who or what you please, any whatever, any one, anything, every one, everything.

quo, adv. (abl. from qui). Where, iv. 1; wherein, vi. 11; to which, whither, ii. 16; after si, to any place, anywhere, i. 48; to what end, or for what purpose, wherefore, why, on which account, how far, to what degree. With comparatives, quo...so, the...the. Conj. That, in order that, that by this means; quo minus or quominus, that not, from, with the subj. after verbs of hindering, preventing, etc.
quo-ad, adv. So long as, as far as; until, till.

quod, conj. (qui). That, in that; because; in so far as, i. 35; as touching that, as to this; now; quod si, now if, but if; quod si, but if not.

quō-nimus. See Quo.

quōniam, conj.(quom — cum, jam). Since now, because, whereas, since.

quōque, conj. Also, likewise.

quōquo, adv. (quisquis). To whatever place, whithersoever.

quōquōversum, or -versum, adv. (quisquis, verter). In every direction, every way, on all sides.

quōt, indecl. adj. How many, as many as.

quōt-annis, adv. (annis). Every year, yearly.

quōtidiānus, a, um, adj. (quōtīdie). Daily, every day; usual, ordinary.

quōtīdie, adv. (quōt; dies). Daily, every day.

quōtīes, adv. (quōt). How often, how many times.

R.

rādix, icis, f. A root; the lower part of an object, the foot or base of a hill, mountain, etc.


rāmus, i, m. A branch, bough, twig; a branch of a stag’s antlers, vi. 26.

rāpiditas, ātis, f. (rāpidus, swift). Swiftness, velocity, rapidity.

rāpina, as, f. (rāpio, to seize). Robbery, plundering, pillage.

rārus, a, um, adj. Far apart, scattered about, dispersed, single; rari propugnabant, made sorts in small detachments or squads, v. 9; rarae milītēs, soldiers in small squads, vii. 45.

rātio, ōnis, f. (reor, to think). A reckoning, account, calculation, computation; transaction, affair, vi. 14; respect, regard, concern, consideration, care, v. 37, vii. 71, 78; judgment, understanding, reason, i. 40, vii. 16, 21; plan, method, conduct, direction, vi. 33, vii. 63; manner, nature, sort, kind, i. 42; science, knowledge, iv. 1; motive, ground, reason, i. 28.

rātis, i, f. A raft, a float.

Rauricii,orum, m. A Gallic people who dwelt on the Rhine, neighbors of the Helvetii and of the Tulingi; their chief town was Augusta Rauricorum, modern Augst, near Bâle, i. 5, 29; vi. 25; vii. 75.

rē or rēd, insep. prep. G. 344, 6.

rēbellio, ōnis, f. (rē, bellum). A renewal of war, a revolt, rebellion.

Rebilus, i, m. Gāius Consīnius Rebilīus, one of Caesar’s lieutenants, vii. 83, 90.

rē-cēdo, āre, cessi, cessum, v. intr. To go back, retreat, withdraw, depart, retire.

rēcens, ēris, adj. New, recent; not exhausted by fatigue, fresh, vigorous.

rē-censeo, ēre, uesti, uestum, v. tr.

To count over, enumerate, review.

rēceptātīum, i, n. (rē, cāpio). A place of shelter, a lurking-place, retreat.

rēceptus, us, m. (rēcīpio). A drawing back, a retreat, a falling back; a place of retreat, refuge, vi. 9; receptīus canere, to sound or give the signal for a retreat, or for a halt, vii. 47.

rēceptus, a, um, part. from rēcīpio.

rēcessus, us, m. (rēcēdo). A going back, retreat; an opportunity to retreat, v. 43.

rē-cēdo, āre, cēdi, cēsum, v. intr. (rē, cādo). To fall back, recoil, fall upon, light upon; to occur, vii. 1.

rē-cīpio, āre, cēpi, cēptum, v. tr. (cāpio). To take back, get back, regain, recover; to receive, accept, admit, allow, vii. 26; se recipere, to take one’s self, withdraw, retire; to recover, collect one’s self, se ex terrore, ii. 12; in fēdem recipere, to take under one’s protection, ii. 15; suos incoluentes, to bring off, rescue, vii. 12.

rē-cīto, āre, āvi, āsum, v. tr. (cīto, to call out). To read aloud, v. 48.
Rē-clīna, āre, āri, ātum, v. tr. To lean back, recline.
Rectē, adv. (rectus). In a straight line; rightly, correctly, well, duly, properly.
Rectus, a, um, adj. (rēgo). Straight, direct; rectā regione, in a straight line, vol. 46.
Rē-cūpēro, āre, āri, ātum, v. tr. (cāpio). To regain, recover.
Rē-cūsō, āre, āri, ātum, v. tr. (causa). To refuse, reject, decline, object.
Redō, āre, īdī, ātum, v. tr. To give back, restore, return; to give up, yield, relinquish; to make, cause, render.
Rēdemptus, a, um, part. from rēdimō.
Rēd-eō, āre, īvi or ī, ātum, v. intr. To go back, turn back, return; to be brought or reduced, v. 48, vol. 11; to descend, ii. 8.
Rēd-iōgo, āre, īgi, actum, v. tr. (īgo). To drive or bring back; to restore; to reduce, render, make; to constrain, force, compel.
Rēd-imō, āre, ēmi, emptum, v. tr. (ēmo). To buy back; to ransom, release, redeem; to buy up, to undertake by contract, to farm, i. 18; to procure, purchase, i. 37, 44.
Rēd-integō, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (intēgō). To make whole again; to renew, restore, recruit, refresh, revive.
Rēdictō, ānis, f. (rēdeo). A going or coming back, a return.
Rēditus, us, m. (rēdeo). A return.
Redōnēs, um, m. A people of Gallia Celtīca, in the neighborhood of the modern Rennes, in Brittany, ii. 34; vol. 75.
Rē-dūco, āre, duxi, ductum, v. tr. To lead or conduct back; to bring back, convey back; to draw back, remove.
Rē-fōro, fēre, tāli, lātum, v. tr. To bear back, bring back, i. 29; to bring, convey, carry; to restore, return, pay back, i. 35; to report, announce, refer; pedem referre, to retreat, withdraw.
Rē-ficō, āre, fēci, fectum, v. tr. (fācio). To make again or anew; to restore, repair, rebuild; to invigorate, refresh, cause to rest, ill. 5; vol. 32.
Rēfractus, a, um, part. from refringo.
Rē-fringo, ēre, frēgi, fractum, v. tr. (frango). To break open, destroy; to check, lessen, repress, vol. 56.
Rē-fugio, ēre, fūgi, fūgitum, v. intr. To flee back, run away, escape; to retreat, go back, recede.
Rēgins, i, m. See Antistius.
Rēgio, ōnis, f. (rēgo). Direction, line, vi. 25; ē regione, in the opposite direction, over against, opposite, vii. 25, 35; a boundary; a region, district, territory, country; regio agri, tract of land, vii. 13.
Rēgius, a, um, adj. (rex). Royal, regal, kingly.
Regno, āre, īvi, ātum, v. tr. (regnum). To have royal power; to rule, reign, govern, be king.
Regnum, i, n. (rex). Kingly government, royal power; kingdom, dominion, sovereignty.
Rēgo, āre, īt, ātum, v. tr. To keep straight; to guide, conduct, direct; to sway, control, govern.
Rē-grēdior, ī, pressus sum, v. dep. (grādior, to go). To go back, return.
Rējectus, a, um, part. from rēficō.
Rē-jicō, āre, jēci, jectum, v. tr. (jācio). To throw back, cast or hurl back, i. 46; to throw away, fling down, i. 52; to force back, drive back, repel, i. 24, ii. 33; to reject, cast off.
Rē-languesco, āre, guis, v. intr. To grow languid or faint; to become enfeebled.
Rēlātus, a, um, part. from rēfero.
Rē-lēgo, āre, ēci, ātum, v. tr. (lēgo, āre, to depute). To send back or away; to remove.
Rēlictus, a, um, part. from rēlinquo.
Rēligio, ōnis, f. Reverence for the gods, piety, religion. Plur., religious matters, the doctrines and usages of religion, vi. 13; religious obligations, v. 6; religious observances, vi. 18; superstitious alarms, vi. 37.
Rē-linquo, āre, liqui, lictum, v. tr.
(linguo, to leave). To leave behind; to abandon; to omit, leave.
reliquiae, ārum, f. pl. (reliquus). The remains, remnant, rest.
reliquus, a, um, adj. (relinguo). Remaining, the rest; future, subsequent, i. 20, ill. 18; the remainder of, the rest of. Rēliquum, i, n., the remainder, the rest; nihil est reliquī, there is nothing left, i. 11.
re-māneo, āre, mānsi, mānsum, v. intr. To remain behind, stay; to continue, hold out, last, vii. 35.
re-mex, tgis, m. (remsus, ago). A rower.
Rēmi, ārum, m. A people of Gallia Belgica. Their chief town was Durocortūrum, now Rheims, li. 3, sq.; ill. 11; v. 3, 24, 53; vi. 4, 12, etc.
re-mīgo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (re-ago). To row.
re-migro, āre, āvi, ātum, v. intr. (migro, to remove). To remove back, go back, return.
re-mīniscor, i, v. dep. To recall to mind, recollect, remember.
re-missus, a, um, 1) part. from re-mitto; 2) adj. Relaxed, not rigid or hard, gentle, mild; remissorā frigora, less severe, v. 12.
re-mitto, āre, misi, missum, v. tr. To send back, despatch back; to hurl back, ii. 27; to slacken, relax, relieve, impair, abate, v. 49; to give up, surrender, sacrifice, i. 44; to give back, resign, vii. 20.
re-mollesco, āre, v. intr. (mollis). To become soft again; to become enervated, iv. 2.
re-mōtus, a, um, 1) part. from re-moveo; 2) adj. Distant, remote, afar off.
re-mōveo, āre, mōvi, mōtum, v. tr. To move back, remove, withdraw, take away.
re-māneror, āri, ātus sum, v. dep. (mānus). To repay, recompense, reward.
re-mus, i, m. An oar.
Rēmus, i, m. One of the Remi.
re-no, ēnis, m. A reindeer.
re-nōvo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (nō-vo). To renew, revive.
re-nuntio, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. To bring or carry back word; to report, announce, declare, proclaim; to declare elected, vii. 33.
re-pello, āre, pāli, pulsnum, v. tr. To drive back, repel, repulse, remove; to disappoint, a spe, v. 42.
re-pente, adv. (rēpens, sudden). Suddenly, unexpectedly.
re-pentinum, a, um, adj. (rēpens, sudden). Sudden, unexpected, unlooked for.
re-pērio, āre, pēri, pertum, v. tr. (pērio). To procure or find again; to find, meet with; to discover, ascertain, learn, perceive; to obtain, find out, invent, devise, vi. 13.
re-pertus, a, um, part. from re-pērio.
re-pēto, āre, īti, ītum, v. tr. To demand back, ask again; poenas repere, to demand satisfaction, i. 30.
re-pleo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. To fill again; to supply.
re-porto, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. To bring back, convey back.
re-posco, āre, v. tr. To demand back, ask for.
re-praesento, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (praesens). To bring before; to do or perform without delay, not to defer, i. 40.
re-prēhendo, āre, di, sum, v. tr. To check or restrain; to blame, censure, reprove, rebuke, find fault with.
re-prēpressus, a, um, part. from re-prēmo.
re-primo, āre, presi, presum, v. tr. (prēmo). To press back, keep back, check, restrain, hinder, prevent.
re-pūdio, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (pū-det). To reject, refuse, decline, i. 40.
re-pugno, āre, āvi, ātum, v. intr. To fight against, contend against, oppose; to be contrary to; to be inconsistent or incompatible, i. 19.
re-pūllī. See Rēpello.
re-pulsus, a, um, part. from re-pella.
re-quiro, āre, īvi, ītum, v. tr. (quaero). To seek again; to look af
rer, search for, ask for, to require, demand, vi. 34; to miss, look for in vain, vii. 63.

res, rēs, f. A thing, object, matter; affair, event, occurrence; cause, reason, ground; benefit, profit, advantage; act, measure; res militaris, military matters, the art of warfare; res frumentaria, provisions; res divīna, matters of religion; res publica, the common weal, the state, the republic; res familiaris, private property.

rē-sarcio, ēre, ēri, sartum, v. tr. (sarcio, to mend). To mend again; to repair, restore, vi. 1.

re-scindo, ēre, scaētā, scissum, v. tr. To cut or break down; to destroy, tear down.

re-scisco, ēre, sī or ii, sētum, v. tr. (scio). To learn, find out, ascertain.

re-scribo, ēre, scripse, scriptum, v. tr. To write or enroll again; ad equum rescribere, to transfer to the cavalry, i. 42.

rē-servo, āre, āsī, ātum, v. tr. To keep back, reserve; to preserve, retain, vii. 89.

rē-sideo, ēre, sēdī, sessum, v. intr. (sēdeo, to sit.) To be left, to remain.

rē-sido, ēre, sēdī, sessum, v. intr. (sēdo, to settle). To settle down; to become calm, be appeased, vii. 64.

rēsistentes, tia, 1) part. from rēsistō; 2) adj. Resisting, opposing, unyielding, firm, resolute, persevering, iii. 19.

rē-sisto, ēre, stīti, stītum, v. intr. To remain behind, make a halt, vii. 35; to withstand, resist, oppose, hold out against; a Cottā resistitur, opposition is made by Cotta, v. 30.

re-spicio, ēre, sēxi, cātum, v. tr. (spēcio, to look). To look back, look behind; to have a care for; to regard, have respect to, consider, be mindful of, vii. 77.

re-spondeo, ēre, di, sum, v. tr. (spondeo, to promise). To promise in return; to reply, answer.

responsum, i, n. (respondeo). An answer, a reply.

res publica, rēs publicae, f. The republic, state, commonwealth, government; public affairs, public business.

re-spuo, ēre, ui, ātum, v. tr. (spuo, to spit). To spit out; to reject, spurn, refuse, i. 42.

restinctus, a, um, part. from re-stinguo.

re-stinguo, ēre, nxi, nctum, v. tr. (stingō, to extinguish). To extinguish, put out, quench.

restīti. See Rēstitō.

re-stītuo, ēre, ui, ātum, v. tr. (stītuō). To place back, replace; to build again, repair, renew; to reinstate, i. 18; to give back, restore, i. 53.

restitūtus, a, um, part. from restītuo.

rētentus, a, um, part. from rētīneō.

rē-tīneō, ēre, ui, tentum, v. tr. (tīneō). To hold back, detain, hinder, prevent; to retain, keep, preserve; to maintain, hold, vii. 21; to check, restrain.

re-trāho, ēre, xi, cātum, v. tr. To draw back, bring back, recover, v. 7.

rētūlii. See Rēferō.

rē-vello, ēre, velli, velsum, v. tr. (vello, to pluck). To tear away, to tear up, to pull up or away, i. 52.

rēversus, a, um, part. from rēvertero.

rē-vertero, ēre, ti, sum, v. intr. and rēverteror, i, ans sum, v. dep. To turn back, come back, return. Rēverter supplies the tenses of the present system and the part. rēversus.

rē-vincio, ēre, vincī, vincētum, v. tr. To bind, tie, fasten; to bind or fasten firmly.

rēvincītus, a, um, part. from rēvincio.

rē-vōco, ēre, ēvi, ātum, v. tr. To call back, recall, withdraw.

rex, rēgis, m. (rēgo). A king, sovereign, monarch.

rhēda, ac, f. A four-wheeled carriage of the Gauls, a travelling carriage.

Rhēnum, i, m. The river Rhine, l. 1, 2; lv. 10, 15, sq.; vi. 9, etc.
Rhödánus, i., m. A river in Gaul, now the Rhône, i., 1, 2, 6, 8, 10, 12, etc. ripa, ae, f. The bank of a river. rivus, i., m. A brook, rivulet.

rōbur, āris, n. A very hard kind of oak, iii. 13; strength, power.

rōgo, āre, āci, ātum, v. tr. To ask, demand, request, beg, solicit; to inquire; in mitt. long., to administer the military oath, to enlist, vi. 1.

Rōma, ae, f. Rome, i. 31; vi. 12. Rōmannus, a, um, adj. (Rōma). Roman. Rōmānus, i., m., a Roman.

Roscius, i., m. Lucius Roscius Fa·bitus, one of Caesar's lieutenants, v., 24, 53.

rostrum, i., n. (rōdo, to gnaw). The beak or bill of a bird; the beak of a ship.

rōta, ae, f. A wheel.

rūbus, i., m. A bramble-bush, bramble.

Rūfus, i., m. See Sul·pi·cius.

rumor, āris, m. A rumor, report, common talk, hearsay.

rūpes, is, f. A rock, cliff.

rursus, adv. (contr. from rēversus). Turned back; again, anew, in turn; backwards, back.

Rūtēni, īrum, m. A people of Gallia Celtica, partly in the limits of the Roman province, hence called Rutēnī provinciāles. Their chief town was Segidānum, now Rhodes, i. 45; vii. 5, 7, 75, 90.

Rūtīlus, i., m. See Semprōnius.

S.

Sābinus, i., m. See Titōrius.

Sabis, is, m. A river in Gallia Belgica, now the Sambre, ii. 16, 18.

sācerdōs, sētis, m. and f. (sācer, sacred). A priest or priestess.

sācrāmentum, i., n. (sācer, sacred). An oath, the military oath, vi. 1.

sācrificium, i., n. (sācer, sacred, fācio). A sacrifice.

saepe, saepius, saepissime, adv. Often, frequently, many times; minuit me saepe, very seldom, very rarely.

saepe-ālēmōre, adv. Oftentimes, frequently, time and again.

saevio, tre, trī or iī, utum, v. intr. (saevus, cruel). To be fierce or furious; to blow violently, iii. 13.

sāgitta, ae, f. An arrow.

sāgittārius, i., m. (sāgitta). An archer, Bowman.

sāgūlum, i., n. (dim. of sāgum, a mantle). A small military cloak, v. 42.

saltus, us, m. (sālio, to leap). A pass, defile; a pass through a forest or woody ravine, viii. 19.


Sāmārōbrivīra, ae, f. A city of the Ambiani, in Gallia Belgica, now Ami·us, v., 24, 47, 53.

sancio, tre, nzi, nctum and nctum, v. tr. To render sacred or inviolable; to sanction, ordain, confirm, ratify.

sanctus, a, um, 1) part. from sanctio; 2) adj. Sacred, holy, inviolable.

sanguis, tnis, m. Blood.

sānitas, ātis, f. (sānus). Soundness of bodily health; soundness of mind, good sense, reason, discretion, sanity, i. 42.

sāno, āre, āci, ātum, v. tr. (sānus). To heal, cure, restore, remedy; to repair, obviate, vii. 29.

Santōnes, um; Santōni, īrum, m. A people of Gallia Celtica. Their chief town was Mediolānum, now Sainctos, i. 10, 11; iii. 11; vii. 75.

sānus, a, um, adj. Sound, sensible, discreet, reasonable; pro sano facere, to act like a sane or sober-minded man, v. 7.

sauxi. See Sancio.

sāpio, āre, iāri and iī, v. intr. To have a taste of; to understand, know, v. 30.

sarcina, ae, f. (sarcio, to mend). A bundle, burden, pack; the baggage which each soldier carried; sub sarcínis exercitus, an army encumbered with packs or baggage, ii. 17.
sarcio, ăre, ăi, tūm, v. tr. To mend, repair, make good, compensate for.
sarmentum, i, n. (serpo, to trim). Twigs, brushwood, fascines, usually plur., ill. 18.
sātis, adv. Enough, sufficiently, quite, pretty, tolerably, well enough; satis esse causae, to be a sufficient reason, i. 19; satis habebat, deemed it sufficient, was contented, i. 15.
sātis-fācio, ăre, fāci, factum, v. intr. To give satisfaction; to satisfy, i. 14, v. 1; to make excuse, apologize; to excuse one's self, justify one's self, i. 41; v. 54.
sātus, a, um, part. from sēro.
sancius, a, um, adj. Wounded.
saxum, i, n. A rock, a large stone.
sclās, ae, f. (sectum, to climb). A ladder, scaling ladder.
Scaldis, ăs, m. A river in Gallia Belgica, now the Scheldt, vi. 33.
scēlērātus, a, um, adj. (scēlus). Bad, impious, wicked, accursed, infamous; vicious, flagitious. Subs., a wretch, miscreant.
scēlus, ēris, n. An evil deed, a wicked or heinous action, crime, enormity, villany, guilt.
scientiōna, ae, f. (scio). Knowledge, skill, expertness, science.
scientiōnus. See Scienter.
scindo, ăre, scīti, scīsum, v. tr. To cut, tear, or rend asunder; to tear up, break in pieces; to destroy, demolish, ill. 5; v. 51.
scio, ăre, scīvi or scīi, scītum, v. tr. To know, understand.
scōpūlus, i, m. A high rock, a cliff.
scorpio, ōnis, m. A military engine for throwing darts, stones, and other missiles, a scorpion, vii. 25.
scribo, ăre, psi, pīum, v. tr. To write, write down; to communicate by writing.
scrōbis, ăs, m. and f. A ditch, trench, hole, pit.
scultum, i, n. An oblong shield, buckler.
sc. See Sui.
scēcium, adv., comp. of sēcūs. Less, otherwise, differently; nihil secius, none the less, nevertheless, notwithstanding.
scēce, āre, cūt, cūtum, v. tr. To cut, cut off; to mow, cut down, vii. 14.
scērēto, adv. (sēcerno, to separate). Apart, separately; in secret, secretly.
sectio, ōnis, f. (secto). A distribution by auction of captured or confiscated goods; booty, spoils, ii. 33.
secutus, āri, ātus sum, v. dep. (freq. of sēquor). To follow after, pursue; to seek, strive to obtain, vi. 35.
sectūra, ae, f. (secto). A cutting; a place where anything is cut or dug; aerarie secturae, copper mines, ili. 21.
sē-cum. See Sui.
scēcundum, prep. with acc. (sēcundus). Following after; 1) Of space: along, by, near, close to; 2) Of time: next, after, immediately after; 3) Fig., according to, after, secundum naturam fluminis, iv. 17.
scēcundus, a, um, adj. (sēquor). Following, next; the second; secundum fluminem, down the river, vii. 58; favorable, successful, fortunate, prosperous, ventōs, iv. 23; proelium, ili. 1; secundiores res, more favorable circumstances, greater prosperity.
sēcūris, is, f. (secto). A hatchet, an axe; Roman authority, power, sovereignty, as the axe in the fasces was the symbol of Roman power, vii. 77.
sēcūtus, a, um, part. from sēquor. sed, conj. But yet, nevertheless; now; non solum ... sed etiam, not only ... but also.
sēdēcim, num. adj. (sex, dēcem). Sixteen.
sēdes, is, f. (sēdeo, to sit). A seat, dwelling-place, residence, habitation, abode, home, settlement.
sēdītio, ōnis, f. (sīne, stio, o). A going aside; an insurrection, dissension, civil discord, strife, sedition.

sēdītīōnus, a, um, adj. (sēdītio).

Full of discord, faction, turbulent, sedulous, reasonable.

Sedulius, i, m. A leader of the Lemovices, vii. 88.

Sedūnī, ōrum, m. A people of Gallia Celtica. Their chief town was Sedūnī, now Sitten (Sion), iii. 1, 2, 7.

Sedusii, ōrum, m. A Germanic people, between the Maine and Neckar, i. 51.

sēges, sēs, f. A field of grain, cornfield, vii. 36; standing grain, growing corn, crop.

Segrai, ōrum, m. A people of Gallia Belgica, between the Eburōnes and the Treviri, vi. 32.

Segōnax, ctis, m. A king of Kent, v. 22.

Segontiaci, ōrum, m. A people dwelling in the southern part of Britain, v. 21.

Segusii, ōrum, m. A people of Gallia Celtica. Their chief town was Lugdanum, now Lyons, i. 10; vii. 64, 75.

sēmel, adv. Once; semel atque iterum, once and again, repeatedly, i. 31. sementis, is, f. (sēro). A sowing.

sēmta, ae, f. A narrow way, a foot-path.

semper, adv. Always, continually.

Sempōnii, i, m. Marcus Sempōnii Rātīus, one of Caesar’s lieutenants, vii. 90.

sēnātōr, ōris, m. (sēnex). A senator.

sēnātus, us, m. (sēnex). The senate, the highest council of a state or city, the Roman senate.

sēnātus-consultum, i, n. A decree or act of the senate.

sēnex, gen. sēnis, comp. sēniōr, adj. Old, aged. Subs., an old man, i. 29.

sēni, ae, a, num. adj. distrib. Every six, six by six, six each.

Sēnōnes, um, m. A people of Gallia Cēltica. Their chief town was

Agendicum, now Sens, ii. 2; v. 54, 56; vi. 2, 3, 5, 44; vii. 4, 11, 34, 36, 58, 75.

sententia, ae, f. (sentio). An opinion, thought; purpose, intention, determination, design; decision, judgment, resolution; sentence, vi. 44.

sentio, ĕre, ĕrī, ĕrīnum, v. tr. To discern by the senses; to perceive, feel, observe, notice, hear, find out, ascertain, learn; to think, judge, suppose, imagine, believe.

sentis, is, m. A brier, bramble, ii. 17.

sēpārātīm, adv. (sēpāro). Apart, separately.

sēpāre, ĕre, ĕrī, ĕrīnum, v. tr. (sē, for sēne, pāre). To separate, divide, disjoin.

sēpes, is, f. A hedge.

septem, num. adj. indecl. Seven.

septem-trīōnes, um, m. pl. The seven stars that form the constellation called the Wain, or the Great Bear; the Little Bear; the north pole, the north.

septimus, a, um, num. adj. ord. (septem). The seventh.

septingenti, ae, a, num. adj. (septem, centum). Seven hundred.

septuaginta, num. adj. indecl. Seventy.

sēpultūra, ae, f. (sēpelio, to bury). Burial, interment.

Sēquāna, ae, m. A river in Gaul, now the Seine, i. 1; vii. 57, 58.

Sēquāni, ōrum, m. A people of Gallia Belgica, between the Saône and the Jura. Their chief town was Vésonio, now Besançon, i. 1, sq., 31 sq.; vi. 12; vii. 66, 75, 90.

Sēquānus, a, um, adj. Of or belonging to the Sequani, Sequanian.

sēquor, ĕ, cūtus sum, v. dep. To follow, accompany, attend; to pursue, seek to gain, follow up, aim at, attain.

sermo, ōnis, m. (sēro). Discourse, conversation, talk, speech, interview.

sēro, sērius, sēriātīme, adv. (sērus, late). Late, too late.

sēro, ĕre, sēvi, sēvum, v. tr. To sow, plant.
Sertorius, i, m. Quintus, a Roman general who served under Marius, and after his death continued the war in Spain against Sulla. He was treacherously murdered by Perpenna, 72 B.C., iii. 23.

Servilis, e, adj. (servus). Of or pertaining to a slave, servile; tumidus, the servile insurrection (under Spartacus), l. 40; in servium modum, like slaves, vi. 19.

Servio, ëre, ëri or ii, ëatum, v. intr. (servum). To serve, be a slave to, be subservient to; to pay attention to, give heed to, busy one’s self with.

Servitus, ëtis, f. (servus). Slavery, bondage, servitude.

Servius, i, m. A Roman praenomen.

Servo, ëre, ëvi, ëatum, v. tr. To save, keep; to preserve, maintain; to observe, mind, heed; to hold, guard, watch; fidem servare, to keep one’s word, vi. 36.

Servus, i, m. A slave, bondman, servant.

Sese. See Sui.

Sesquipedalis, e, adj. (sesqui, one half more, pes). Of a foot and a half; a foot and a half thick, iv. 17.

Sesuvii, ërum, m.; more correctly written Sasubii, which see, ii. 94. seu, conj. (sive). Whether.

Sèveritas, ëtis, f. (sèverus, severe). Harshness, rigor, severity.

Sèvósce, ëre, ëvi, ëatum, v. tr. To call apart; to draw aside, v. 6.

Sevum, i, n. Fat, tallow.

Sex, num. adj. indecl. Six.


Sexcenti, ae, a, num adj. (sex, centum). Six hundred.

Sexdecim, or sedecim, num. adj. indecl. Sixteen.

Sextius, i, m. 1) Titus, a lieutenant in Caesar’s army, vi. 1; vii. 49, 51, 90. 2) Publius Sextius Bactius, a brave centurion in Caesar’s army, ii. 25; iii. 5; vi. 38.

Sì, conj. If, if perchance, if indeed; whether; si minus, for si non, i. 47 ii. 9; si quando, if ever, when once, iii. 12.

Sibi. See Sui.

Sibuzatas, um, m. A people of Aquitania, in the vicinity of Sauvus or Sobusae, between Dax and Bayonne, iii. 27.

Sic, adv. So, thus, in such a manner; sic . . . ut, so . . . as; ut . . . sic, so . . . that, i. 38; ii. 32.

Siccitas, ëtis, f. (siccus, dry). Dryness; drought, dry weather.

Sicc-ut or sic-ìti, adv. Just as, as if, as it were.

Sidus, ërís, n. A constellation, star.

Sigambri, ërum, m. A Germanic people between the river Sieg and the Lippe, iv. 16, 18; vi. 35.

Signifer, ërì, m. (signum, féro). A standard-bearer.

Significatio, ëonis, f. (significo). Intimation, declaration, notice, warning; meaning, import, sense.

Significo, ëre, ëvi, ëatum, v. tr. (signum, facio). To give or convey an intimation; to signify, indicate, show, declare.

Signum, i, n. A sign, mark, token; in milit. lang., a signal for battle; a standard, ensign; signa subsequi, to follow the standard, keep in order of battle, iv. 26; ab signis discedere, to desert the standards, leave the ranks, v. 16, 33; signa ferre, to advance the standards, march; signa convertere, to wheel, face about; signa inferre, to make an attack, advance to the attack.

Silanus, i, m. Marcus Junius, one of Caesar’s lieutenants, vi. 1.

Silentium, i, n. (sileo, to be silent). Stillness, silence, quiet.

Silius, i, m. Titus, a military tribune under Caesar, iii. 7, 8.

Silva, ae, f. A wood, forest.

Silvestris, e, adj. (silvas). Woody, overgrown with woods.

Similis, e, adj. Resembling, like, similar.

Similitudo, tnis, f. (similis). Likeness, resemblance, similarity.
simul, adv. Together, at once, at the same time; simul ... simul, partly ... partly, iv. 13; simul ac or atque, as soon as.

simulacrum, i, n. (símulo). An image, likeness, figure, effigy, status.

simulátio, onis, f. (símulo). An assumed appearance, a false show; pretense, deceit, disguise, seeming, color.

simuláre, àre, ári, árum, v. tr. (símū-). To feign, pretend, assume the appearance of, counterfeit.

simulátes, átis, f. (símulo). Secret enmity, resentment, hatred, animosity; jealousy, rivalry.

sin, conj. But if, if however.

sincère, adv. (síncreus, pure). Uprightly, honestly, frankly, sincerely, candidly, plainly, without disguise.

sine, prep. with abl. Without.

singillátim, adv. (singulī). One by one, singly, severally.

singillāris, e, adj. (singulī). One only, alone of its kind; singular, unique, matchless, extraordinary, remarkable, unparalleled.

singulī, ae, a, adj. One to each, separate, single, individual, each, every.

sinister, trà, trum, adj. Left, on the left hand or side; unlucky, unfavorable, adverse; sub sinistrā (sc. parte), on the left, v. 8.

sinistrorúsus, adv. (for sinisterorúsus; sinister, verto). Towards the left side; to the left, vi. 25.

sín, òre, scí, situm, v. tr. To let, permit, allow, suffer, iv. 2.

sí-quot, adv. If ever, if at any time.

sí-quis, and sí qui, sí qua, sí quod, and sí quid, indef. pron. If any one, if any, whoever, whatever.

sísto, òre, stíti, stárum, v. tr. and intr. To place, set; to stop, stand still.

sítus, us, m. (sítus). Situation, position, locality, site.

sí-ve, conj. Or if, and if, or; whether; sive ... sive, be it that ... or that, if ... or if, whether ... or.

sócer, ári, m. A father-in-law.

sóciétas, átis, f. (sócious). Fellowship, union, communion, society; a political league, alliance, confederacy, vi. 2.

sócius, a, um, adj. Participating in, sharing, joining; united, allied, associated. Sócicus, i, m., an ally, confederate; companion, associate.

sól, sólis, m. The sun.

sólicium, i, n. (sólor, to console), Comfort, relief, solace, consolation, viii. 15.

sóldurii, òrum, m. (a Celtic word). The retainers or vassals of a chieftain, iii. 22. See Dóvius.

sólī, òre, òtus sum, v. semi-dep. G. 268, 3. To be accustomed, be wont.

sōlēr, ac, f. (sólere, skilled). Skill, shrewdness, adroitness, expertness, dexterity, quickness of mind, ingenuity.

sólītūde, inis, f. (sólus). Loneliness, solitude; a lonely place, desert, wilderness, iv. 18; vi. 23.

sóllicitó, òre, ári, òtum, v. tr. (sól-ius = tōtus, cień). To move violently; to stir up, rouse, instigate, incite, provoke, tempt; to urge to rebellion; to induce, persuade, iii. 8.

sóllicitātūra, inis, f. (sóllicito). Disquiet, anxiety, care, concern, solicitude.

sólūm, i, n. The ground, bottom, base; soil, land, country, region.

sólus, adv. (sólus). Only.

sólus, a, um, gen. sólīus, adj. Only, alone, single, sole, merely.

sólov, òre, sólevi, sólūtum, v. tr. To loose, untie, unbind; in nav. lang., to lose the vessel from shore; to weigh anchor, sail away, set sail, put to sea.

sōnitus, us, m. (sōno, to sound). A noise, sound.

Sontiástes, um m. A people of Aquitania, in the neighborhood of modern Sàs, iii. 20, 21.

sōnus, i, m. Noise, sound.

sōror, õris, f. A sister; sōror ex matre, a sister on the mother's side, half-sister, l. 18.
sors, sortis, f. (sēro). A lot, fate, destiny, fortune, chance.

spatium, i. n. Space, distance, extent; a space of time, period, interval; leisure, opportunity.

spēcies, ēs, f. (spēcio, to look). A seeing, look, sight; the appearance, shape, form, figure; show, semblance, pretence, cloak, color; ad speciem, for the sake of appearances, for show, i. 51; in speciem, for a pretext, v. 51; summa species, the full appearance, vi. 27.

specto, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (freq. of spēcio, to look). To look at, gaze at, watch, observe; of localities: to look, face, lie, be situated towards; to regard, respect, care for, have in view; to await, seek, expect, look for.

spēculātor, ēris, m. (spēculor). A spy, scout, messenger.

spēculātorius, a, um. adj. (spēculor). Of or belonging to spies or scouts; navis, spy-boats, vessels of observation, iv. 26.

spēculor, ēri, ēitus sum, v. dep. (spēcio, to look). To spy out, watch, explore, observe; to reconnoitre.

spēro, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. To hope, trust, expect, look for, long for.

spes, ēs, f. Hope, expectation.

spirītus, us, m. (spēro, to breathe). A breath; spirit, soul; a haughty spirit, pride, arrogance, lofty airs.

spōlio, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (spōlium, spoil). To strip, rob, plunder, pillage; to deprive, depoll.

sponte, abl., gen. spontis, from obs. sponsa, f. Of free will, of one’s own accord, voluntarily, willingly, freely; by one’s self, without the aid of others.

stābilīo, āre, īvi, ītum, v. tr. (stābilis, firm). To make firm, fix, make steadfast, vii. 73.


stātim, adv. (sto). On the spot, forthwith, straightforward, immediately.

stātio, ēs, f. (sto). A standing, station; in milit. lang., a post, station, guard; in statione esse, to be on guard, iv. 32. Phr., sentries, sentinels, outposts, pickets, guards.

stātuo, āre, us, ātum, v. tr. (stātus, from sto). To put, place, set, establish; to fix, decide, determine, conclude; gravius staturē, to pass too severe a sentence, i. 20; to hold, believe, consider, think, i. 11, 42.

stātūra, ae, f. (sto). Height, stature, ii. 30.

stātus, us, m. (sto). Standing, position; condition, situation, state, posture.

stimulūs, i, m. A pointed instrument, a pointed stake concealed beneath the surface of the ground to repel hostile troops, a spur, vii. 73, 82.

stipendiārius, a, um. adj. (stipendium). Liable to impost, tributary.

stipendium, i, n. (stips, contribution, pendo). A tax, impost, tribute; pay, dues.

stipes, ētis, m. A stake, post, trunk of a tree, vii. 73.

stirps, stirpis, f. The trunk of a tree; a stem, stock, race, family, lineage, vi. 34.

sto, āre, stāti, stātum, v. intr. To stand, remain standing, stand firm; to persevere, persist; to abide by, continue in, stand to, vi. 13.

strāmentum, i, n. (sterno, to strewn). Straw, thatch; covering, pack-saddle, vii. 45.

strēpitus, us, m. (strēpo, to make a noise). A noise, rattling, rustling, rumbling, clattering; confusion, tumult.

stūdeo, āre, us, v. intr. To be eager or zealous, apply one’s self to, attend to, cultivate; to devote one’s self to, pay particular attention to; to accustom one’s self to, inure one’s self to, vi. 21; to be eager for, desire, wish, strive for.


stūdium, i, n. (stūdeo). Assiduity, zeal, eagerness; fondness, inclination, desire; attachment, devotion, good will, i. 19; exertion, persuit, endeavor.
stultitia, ae, f. (stultus, foolish). Folly, foolishness, simplicity.

sub, prep. with acc. and abl. Under.
I. With the acc., in answer to the question, Whither? 1) Of space: under, below, beneath, to, near by, close to, up to; sub jugum mittere, under the yoke, i. 7, 12. 2) Of time: towards, about; sub cresperum, towards evening, ii. 33. II. With the abl., in answer to the question, Where? 1) Of space: under, below, beneath; sub sarcinis, under their packs, ii. 17; at the foot of, by, near, before; sub monte, at the foot of the mountain, i. 21. 2) Of time: in, within, during, on.

sūbactus, a, um, part. from subigo.

sub-dōitus, a, um, adj. (dōitus, guile). Crafty, cunning, deceitful, vii. 31.

sub-dūco, ēre, xi, ctum, v. tr. To draw from under; to draw or pull up; in naut. lang., to draw or haul up, iv. 29; in milit. lang., to draw off from another position to another, to withdraw, remove, take away, i. 22.

sub-ductio, ōnis, f. (subdūco). The act of hauling up, a hauling ashore, drawing to land, v. 1.

sūbco, ēre, scī or sī, ctum, v. intr. and tr. To go under; come under, i. 36, vii. 88; to advance or proceed to, to draw near, come up; to undergo, submit to, sustain, endure, suffer, encounter, i. 5; vii. 78.

sūbesse. See Subsum.

sūbīgo, ēre, sīgi, acetum, v. tr. (ago). To drive under; to put down, conquer, subjugate, compel, constrain, reduce, vii. 77.

sūbito, adv. (sūbitus). Quickly, suddenly, speedily, on a sudden.

sūbitus, a, um, adj. (sūbeo). Sudden, unexpected.

subjectus, a, um, part. from subjicio.

sub-jicio, ēre, jōci, jectum, v. tr. (jicio). To throw or cast from beneath, i. 26; to place under, iv. 17; to make subject, to subject, vii. 1, 77; to be exposed to; to encounter, iv. 86.

sublātus, a, um, 1) part. from sollo; 2) adj. Proud, haughty; elated.

sub-lēvo, āre, āri, āctum, v. tr. To raise up from beneath; to raise up, hold up, support, i. 48; to sustain, assist, help, relieve, aid, i. 16; to lessen, ease, lighten, alleviate, vi. 32.

sublica, ae, f. A stake, a pile, iv. 17.

sub-luc, ēre, lui, iūtum, v. tr. (luo, to wash). To wash beneath; to flow along the base of, to wash, vii. 69.

sub-maestro, āre, āri, āctum, v. tr. To furnish, supply, afford, give.

sub-mitto, ēre, mitti, missum, v. tr. To send below or from below; to place or put under; to send or despatch secretly; to send, ii. 6, 25; iv. 26; to send to the assistance of, send to aid, v. 88.

submōitus, a, um, part. from sub-mōeco.

sub-mōveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, v. tr. To send or drive away, remove, drive back, displace.

sub-rūo, ēre, rui, rūtum, v. tr. (ruo, to dig). To dig under; to undermine; to tear down, demolish, overthrow.

sub-sēquor, i, cūtus sum, v. dep. To follow close after, follow immediately, come after.

sub-sidium, ĕ, n. (sideo, to sit). The body of troops stationed in reserve in the third line of battle; hence, a body of reserves, auxiliary forces; support, aid, assistance, help, protection, relief; resources, means of help, remedy, iv. 31.

sub-sido, ēre, sēdī, sessum, v. intr. (sideo, to settle). To settle down; to establish one’s self; to remain, abide, stay.

sub-sisto, ēre, stītī, v. intr. To stand still; to make a halt, i. 15; to hold fast, stand, hold out, v. 10.

sub-sum, esse, fui, v. intr. To be under; to be near or at hand, be close to; to approach, iii. 27.

sub-trāho, ēre, xi, ctum, v. tr. To draw away from beneath; to remove,
carry off, take away by stealth; to withdraw.


sub-vēho, ère, vēxi, vēctum, v. tr. To bring up; to convey, transport, i. 16.

sub-vēnīo, ère, vēni, vēntum, v. intr. To come up; to come to one's assistance; to aid, assist, relieve, succor.

succēdo, ère, assi, assum, v. intr. and tr. (sub, cēdo). To go under; to go towards, approach, march on, advance, i. 24; ii. 6; to follow, come after, take the place of, v. 16; to follow after (in time), succeed; to be successful, prosper, go on well, vii. 26.

succendo, ère, di, sum, v. tr. (sub, cando [not in use], to light). To set on fire from below; to set on fire, burn.

succensus, a, um, part. from succendo.

successus, us, m. (succēdo). A coming up; an approach from below, approach, ii. 20.

succīdo, ère, cīdi, cīsum, v. tr. (sub, caedo). To fell, cut down; to mow down, iv. 19.

succīsus, a, um, part. from succīdo.

succumbō, ère, cūbui, cūbītum, v. intr. (sub, cumbo, to lie). To lie down under, sink down under; to yield, be overcome, vii. 86.

succurrō, ère, cācurri and curri, currum, v. intr. (sub, currō). To run under; to run to one's assistance; to help, aid, assist, succor.

stīdes, is, f. A stake, a pile.

stūdor, òris, m. (stūdo, to sweat). Sweat; exertion, toil, severe labor, fatigue.

Suessiones, um, m. A people of Gallia Belgica. Their chief town was Noviodūnum or Augusta Suessionum, now Soissons, ii. 3, 4, 12, 13.

Suēbi, òrum, m. A widely extended nation of Germany. Their name still appears in the word Suabia, i. 37, 51, 54; iv. 1, 3, 4, 7, 8, 19; vi. 9, 10, 29.

Suebus, a, um, adj. Belonging to the Suebi; Suebian.

sufficiō, ère, faci, factum, v. intr. (sub, facio). To hold out, be sufficient, vii. 20.

suffōdīo, ère, fōdi, fossum, v. tr. (sub, fōdio, to stab). To stab or pierce underneath; to stab in the belly, iv. 12.

suffossus, a, um, part. from suffōdīo.


suggestus, us, m. (sub, gēro). An elevated place, a raised place to speak from, a platform, stage, tribune, vi. 3.

sui, pers. pron. Of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves. As the subject of an inf. it may be rendered, that he, she, they, etc. Sese is a re-duplicated form for se. Cum, when used with se, is appended to it—secum.

Sullæ, ae, m. Lūcius Cornēlius, the dictator, and a bitter opponent of Marius, i. 21.

Sulpicius, i, m. Publius Sulpicius Rufus, a lieutenant in Caesar's army, iv. 22; vii. 90.

sum, esse, fui, v. intr. To be, exist, be present, stay, abide. With a predicate genitive, to pertain, belong, be the part, property, nature, mark, sign, duty, custom of. With two datives, to serve, afford, contribute. With the dative of possessor, to have; mibi est in animo. I have in mind, I intend, purpose, i. 7. With the predicate abl., to possess, be of, have, i. 6, 39.

summa, ae, f. (sc. res). The sum, the aggregate, the whole; summa exercitus, the whole of the army, the army as a whole, vi. 34; in summā, in the whole, in the mass, vi. 11; summā omnium rerum, the chief power, vi. 11; summā bellī, the conduct of the whole war, i. 41; summā imperii, the chief command, ii. 23.

summus, a, um, sup. of supērus. adj. The highest, greatest, very great, supreme; most important, consummate; the top of, the summit of, i. 22; vi. 26.
súmo, ēre, sumpsì, sumptum, v. tr. (sub, súmo = accipio). To take, take away; to take to one’s self, assume, arrogate, i. 23; ii. 4; to undertake, enter upon, iii. 14; supplicium de alióquo, to inflict punishment upon one.

sumptuósus, a, um, adj. (sumptus). Attended with great expense, expensive, costly, vi. 19.

sumptus, us, m. (súmo). Expense, cost, charge.

sumptus, a, um, part. from súmo. sumper, prep. with acc. or abl. Upon, above, over. With the acc. in answer to the question Whither? With the abl. in answer to the question Where?

súperbe, adv. (súper). Proudly, haughtily, arrogantly, i. 31. súperfíci. See Súpérsum.

súperior, us, adj., comp. of súperus (súper). I. Of space: higher, upper, that is above. II. Of time: previous, earlier, former, past, preceding. III. Of other relations: more distinguished, greater, superior, stronger, more powerful; superiorem pugnā esse, to be superior in battle, to be victorious, vii. 80.

súpero, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. and intr. (súper). To go over, overtop; to surpass, excel, exceed, outstrip; to overcome, conquer, subdue; to prevail, v. 31; to be left over, remain; to survive, outlive, vi. 19.

súper-sédeo, ēre, ēsēi, ēsēsum, v. tr. (sédēo, to sit). To sit upon or above; to be superior to; to forbear, abstain from, desist from, prosēo, ii. 8.

súper-sum, esse, fui, v. intr. To be over and above, be left, remain; to survive, i. 26; ii. 27.

súperus, a, um, comp. superior, sup. suprēimus or supérus, adj. (súper). Being above or over; upper.

suppētō, ēre, ēvi or ēi, ētum, v. intr. (sub, pētō). To be at hand, be present, be in store, i. 3, 16.

supplēmentum, i, n. (suppleo, to fill up). A filling up, a making up, recruiting; a body of supplies, reinforcements, vii. 7.

supplex, ści, adj. (sub, pīceo, to bend). Humbly beseeching, entreat, imploring; suppliant, i. 28.

supplīcatio, onis, f. (supplex). A religious solemnity, a religious festival or rejoicing, thanksgiving, ii. 35; iv. 38.

supplíciter, adv. (supplex). Implovingly, humbly, submissively.

supplīcium, i, n. (supplex). A kneeling down (to receive punishment); hence, punishment, torture, penalty, torment, pain, distress.

supporto, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. (sub, porto). To carry, bring, or convey to, i. 39, 48.

supra, 1. adv. (for súpērā, sc. pars). Above, previously, before; 2) prep. with acc., a) Of space: over, above, iv. 17; b) Of time: ante, before, vi. 19.

susceptus, a, um, part. from suscipio.

suscipio, ēre, cēpi, ceptum, v. tr. (sub, cēpio). To take or lift up, sustain; to undertake, take upon one’s self, i. 3, 9; to enter upon, begin, engage in, i. 16.

suspectus, a, um, adj. (suscipio, to suspect). Distrusted, suspected; an object of suspicion, v. 54.

suspicātus, a, um, part. from suspicor.

suspicio, onis, f. (suspicor). Suspicion, distrust; ground of suspicion, an appearance, indication, i. 19, 39.

.suspicor, ēri, ētus sum, v. dep. (suscipio, ēre, to suspect.) To suspect, distrust, mistrust; to surmise, apprehend, believe.

sustento, ēre, ēvi, ētum, v. tr. (freq. of sustineo). To hold up, sustain, support, maintain, ii. 14; to endure, suffer, hold out, withstand, bear, ii. 6; v. 39.

sustineo, ēre, ēi, tentum, v. tr. (surrum, tēnēo). To hold up, sustain, support; se, to hold himself up, stand alone, ii. 25; to take upon one’s self, bear, endure, i. 31; to hold out against, check, retard, withstand; to hold in,
hold back, check, iv. 33. Intrans., to hold out, make a stand, ii. 6.
suus, a, um, poss. pron. (svt). His, her, its, or their own; one’s own; his, her, its, their. Sui, subs. pl. m., one’s friends, soldiers, party, etc. Suae, subs. pl. n., one’s property, effects, possessions, etc.

tantilus, a, um, adj. (dim. of tantus). So little, so much, so trifling, so insignificant, ii. 30.
tantum, adv. (tantus). So far, so much, so very; only so much, only so far, only, merely, but, ii. 8; non tantum... sed etiam, not only... but also.
tantum-mōde, adv. Only, but, merely, iii. 5.
tantum-dem, adv. (tantus). So much, so far, just so far, vii. 72.
tantus, a, um, adj. (tam). Of such size or measure, so, great, so large, so numerous, i. 15; so mighty, so powerful, iii. 11; such, so small, so trivial, so slight, vi. 35; tantu esse, to be of so great value, i. 20; tanto with comparatives, by so much, so much the, the, v. 45. Tanto opere, see Tantopere.

Tarbelli, ārum, m. A people on the coast of Aquitania and in the lower part of the basin of the Adour. Their chief town was Aquae Tarbellicae, now Dax, iii. 27.
tardus. See Tarde.
tardo, ārē, āri, ārum, v. tr. (tardus). To delay, check, stop, hinder, retard, impede.
tardus, a, um, adj. Slow, sluggish, tardy, ii. 25.

Tarniātēs, īum, m. A people of Aquitania, in the neighborhood of the Tarbelli, iii. 23, 27.

Tasgetius, ī, m. A chief of the Carnātēs, v. 25, 29.
taurus, i, m. A bull, vi. 28.

Taximagilīus, ī, m. A king of the Britons, in Kent, v. 22.
taxus, i, f. The yew-tree, vi. 31.

Tectosāges, ēn, m. See Volcae.
tectum, ī, n. (tēgo). A roof, i. 38; house, dwelling, abode; shelter, cover, quarters.
tectus, a, um, part. from tēgo.
tēgimentum, ī, n. (tēgo). A covering, vi. 21; covering (made of leather) for shields, ii. 21.

Tēgo, ērē, ēsti, tectum, v. tr. To
cover, v. 43; to hide, conceal, vii. 45; to defend, protect.

tēlum, i. n. A weapon used for fighting at a distance, a missile, dart, spear, javelin.

teměrārius, a, um, adj. (tēmēre). Rash, thoughtless, headlong, inconsiderate, imprudent, i. 31.

temēre, adv. Rashly, inconsiderately, heedlessly, thoughtlessly, without reason, i. 40; easily, readily, iv. 20.


tēmo, ōnis, m. A beam, pole of a chariot, iv. 33.

temērāntia, ae, f. (temēro). Moderation, sobriety, self-control, discreetness, i. 19.

temērātus, a, um, 1) part. from temēro; 2) adj. Moderate, temperate, mild, v. 12.

temēro, ēre, āci, ēatum, v. tr. and intr. (tempus). To temper, moderate, restrain; to forbear, keep one's self from, govern one's self, abstain from, i. 7, 33.

tempestas, ātis, f. (tempus). A space of time, a period, season; weather, state of the weather, iv. 23; a storm, stormy weather, unfavorable weather, ili. 12.

tempus, āris, n. A portion or period of time, time; in reliquum tempus, for the remaining time, for the future, i. 20; iii. 16; ad huc tempus, up to this time, ii. 17; a critical moment, condition, circumstances, i. 18; the fitting time, the proper period, ii. 21.

Tentēri, ērum, m. A Germanic people on the Rhine between the Ruhr and the Sieg, iv. 1, 4, 16, 18; v. 55; vi. 35.

tendo, ēre, ētendi, tenens and tentum, v. tr. To stretch, stretch out, extend, ii. 13; to set up tents, encamp, vi. 37; to travel, march.

tēnēbræ, ārum, f. Darkness, obscurity, vii. 81.

tēneo, ēre, ui, tum, v. tr. To hold, have, possess, occupy, preserve, keep; to hold firm, iv. 17; se tenere, to keep one's self, to remain, i. 40, 49; to maintain, keep possession of; to hold back, delay, hinder; to bind, pledge, i. 31.

tēnēr, ēra, ērum, adj. Soft, tender, delicate; of tender age, young, ii. 17.

tento, ēre, āvi, ētum, v. tr. (freq. of tendo). To try, prove, put to the test, i. 14, 36; to try to gain, to tamper with, vi. 2; to make an attack upon, try to carry, attempt to gain, vii. 73.

tēmuis, e, adj. Thin, slender, slight; little, trifling, poor, mean, vi. 35; weak, poor, delicate, feeble, v. 40.


tēnuiter, adv. (tēnui). Slightly, lightly, ii. 13.

ter, num. adj. Three times, i. 53.

tēre, ēs, adj. (tūro, to rub). Tapering, rounded off, vii. 73.

tergum, i, n. The back; tergo veterem, to turn the back, i. 6, to take flight, to flee; ab tergo, in the rear, vii. 87; post tergum, behind the back, in the rear.

terni, ae, a, num. adj. distrib. (tres). Three by three, every three, three each, ili. 15; terna millia, vii. 75. G. 174, 2, 2).

terra, ae, f. The earth; orbis terrarum, the globe, the world, vii. 29; the land (in opp. to the sea), v. 13; the country, region, district, i. 30.

Terrasidius, i, m. Ttus, a military tribunal in Caesar's army, ili. 7, 8.

terrēnus, a, um, adj. (terra). Of earth, earthly, i. 43.

terreo, ēre, ui, tum, v. tr. To frighten, alarm, terrify, inspire with dread; to frighten away, deter, vii. 49.

terrīto, ēre, ēci, ētum, v. tr. (freq. of terreo). To put in great terror; to alarm greatly, frighten, affright.

terror, ēris, m. (terreo). Fear, terror, alarm, dread, apprehension.

tertio, adv. (tertius). For the third time.
**TERTIUS—TRAGULA**

**tertius, a, um, num. adj. ord. (ter).** The third.

**testamentum, i, n. (testis).** The last will or testament, a will, i. 39.

**testimonium, i, n. (testis).** Witness, evidence, testimony, i. 44; proof, vi. 28.

**testis, is, m. and f.** A witness.

**testudo, inis, f. (testa, a shell).** A tortoise; in milit. lang., a covering, shelter, formed by the shields close-locked over the heads of the soldiers, to protect them against missiles from above, ii. 6; v. 9; a shed or covering made of wood, to protect besiegers, v. 43.

**Teutomâta, i, m.** Son of Ollovico, king of the Nitobriges, vii. 31, 46.

**Teutôni, örum, and Teutônes, üm, m.** A Germanic people who dwelt on the shores of the Baltic. In conjunction with the Cimbri they invaded Southern Europe near the close of the second century B.C., i. 33, 40; ii. 4, 29; vii. 77.

**text.** See Teago.

**tignum, i, n. (tégō).** Building material; a stick of timber, beam, log, adv. 17.

**Tigurini, örum, m.** One of the four Helvetic tribes mentioned by Caesar. They probably dwelt in the neighborhood of Lake Morat in the canton of Waad or Pays de Vaud, i. 12.

**Tigurinius, a, um, adj.** Of or belonging to the Tigurini, i. 12.

**timeo, ère, ü, v. tr. and intr.** To fear, be afraid of; to be afraid, be in fear; with ne followed by the subj., to fear that or lest, ii. 26; with ut and the subj., to fear that not, i. 39; to be anxious or apprehensive, v. 57.

**timide, adv. (stímidus).** Fearfully, timidly, iii. 25.

**timidus, a, um, adj. (timeo).** Fearful, timid, afraid, cowardly.

**timor, öris, m. (timeo).** Fear, timidity, dread, alarm, anxiety, apprehension.

**Titurius, i, m.** Quintus Titurius Sabinus, one of Caesar’s lieutenants, ii. 5, 9, 10; iii. 11, 17, 18, 19; iv. 22, 38; v. 24, 26, 27, sq.; vi. 1, 32, 37.

**Titus, i, m.** A Roman praenomen.

**tôlêro, âre, âvi, ârum, v. tr.** To bear, endure, support, sustain, i. 28; to hold out, vii. 71; to maintain, nourish, preserve, vii. 77.

**tollo, âre, sustulî, sublîtum, v. tr.** To lift up, raise; ancoris sublatis, having weighed anchor, iv. 23; clamorem, to raise a shout, vii. 81; tolli, pass., to be elated, i. 15; v. 38; to take away, remove, convey away, iv. 28; vi. 17; to interrupt, break off, i. 42; to destroy, cut off, take away, i. 5.

**Tôlôsa, ae, f.** A town of Gallia Narbonensis, now Toulouse, on the Garonne, iii. 20.

**Tôlôsates, ium, m.** The inhabitants of Tôlôsa, i. 10; vii. 7.

**tormentum, i, n. (torqueo, to twist).** An engine for hurling missiles, ii. 8; iv. 25; a cord, rope, vii. 22; an instrument of torture; suffering, pain, torture, vi. 19.

**torreo, ère, âi, tostum, v. tr.** To roast, scorch, burn, v. 43.

**tôt, indecl. adj.** So many.

**tôt-îdem, indecl. adj.** Just so many, as many.

**tôtus, a, um, gen. totûs, G. 151, adj.** The whole, all, entire; the whole of; naves totae factae ex robore, made entirely of oak, iii. 13.

**traba, or trâbes, is, f.** A beam, timber, ii. 29.

**tractus, a, um, part. from trâho.**

**trâditus, a, um, part. from trâdo.**

**trâdo, ère, dîdi, dîtum, v. tr. (trans, do).** To give up, surrender, deliver, hand over; to pass along, vii. 25; to commit, intrust, confide (for protection, guidance, etc.), v. 25; to deliver over, give up (for punishment in war, etc.), i. 27, 28; ii. 13; to yield, grant, i. 44; vi. 8; to teach, propound, propose, vi. 14; to hand down to posterity, transmit.

**trâgûla, ae, f.** A pointed missile, javelin, dart.
TRAHO—TREVIRI

traño, arie, ari, aturn, v. tr. To draw ur’drag along, to drag away.
trajectus, us, m. (transício). A crossing or passing over, passage, iv. 21.
trans, prep. with acc. Across, over, beyond, on the farther side of.
Tranquilítas, ætis, f. (tranquillus, calm.) Quiet, stillness, rest, calmness; a calm, iii. 15.
transcapri, ade, atri, adsum, v. intr. (trans, scando, to climb). To climb or pass over; to get into or over by climbing, ill. 13.
trans-duce, are, duci, ductum, v. tr. To lead, bring, or convey from one place to another; to lead across, transfer, bring over, convey across, lead through, transport.
trans-eo, are, evi or ii, Æicum, v. intr. To go or pass over, to cross, go beyond; to go through, march through; of time: to pass away, pass by, elapse, ill. 2.
trans-féro, ferre, tuli, latum, v. tr. To bear or carry over or across; to transfer, convey over.
trans-fígo, are, fexi, fæsum, v. tr. (fico, to fix). To thrust or pierce through, transport.
trans-fódio, are, fódi, foassum, v. tr. To thrust or run through; to pierce through, transport, vii. 82.
trans-grédior, i, græsus sum, v. dep. (grædior, to go). To go or pass over; to cross, ii. 19.
transgressus, a, um, part. from transgrédior.
transitus, us, m. (transseo). A going over, passing over, crossing; a passage.
transjectus, a, um, part. from transjectio.
trans-jécio, are, jéci, jectum, v. tr. (jácio). To throw or cast across; to convey across; to thrust through, transport, stab through, pierce.
translatus, a, um, part. from transfero.
trans-marinus, a, um, adj. (märe). Beyond the sea, foreign, transmarine, vi. 24.
transmissus, a, um, part. from transmitto.
transmitto, are, misi, missum, v. tr. To send over or across, vii. 61.
transporto, are, avi, Æatum, v. tr. To carry from one place to another; to transport, bring, carry, or convey over.
Trans-rhénanus, a, um, adj. (Rhenus). On the other side of the Rhine, v. 2. Subs., pl. those living beyond the Rhine, iv. 16; vi. 5.
transstrum, i, n. A cross-beam, a cross-timber, iii. 13.
transversus, a, um, adj. (trans, verto). Turned across, athwart, crosswise, transverse, ii. 8.
Trébios, i, m. Marcus Trebius Gallus, a military tribune in Caesar’s army, iii. 7, 8.
Trebonius, i, m. 1) Gaius, a Roman knight, vi. 40. 2) Gaius, one of Caesar’s lieutenants, v. 17, 24; vi. 33; vii. 11, 81.
trécenti, ae, a, num. adj. (tres, centum). Three hundred.
trédecim, num. adj. indecl. (tres, décem). Thirteen.
trépido, are, avi, Æatum, v. intr. (trépĭdus, alarmed). To hurry about in a state of alarm; to be in confusion, be greatly agitated, tremble with fear, v. 33; totis trepidae castris, the whole camp is thrown into confusion, vi. 37.
tres, tría, num. adj. Three.
Trévir, tri, m. One of the Treviri, v. 26.
Trévir, órum, m. A people of Gallia Belgica, who occupied a large tract of country between the Æsus (Meuse) and the Rhēnus (Rhine). Their chief town was Augusta Trevirium, now
TRIBOCCI—TURRIS

Trier, i. 37; iii. 11; iv. 6, 10; v. 2, sq., 24, 47, 53; vi. 2, sq., 5, sq., 8, 29, 32, 44; vii. 63.

Triboci, orum, m. A Germanic people in Gallia Belgica, in the vicinity of modern Strasburg, i. 51; iv. 10.

tribōnus, i, m. (tribō, a tribe). A tribe, prop. one who presides over a tribe; tribōnus militum, a tribune of the soldiers, a military tribune. Each legion had six of these officers, who commanded in turn, each two months at a time, i. 39; iii. 5.

tribuo, or, us, ēsum, v. tr. To impart, assign, give, distribute, present; to show, render, pay, manifest, v. 7; to grant, concede, allow, vi. 1; to ascribe, attribute, i. 13; vii. 53.

tribus. See Tres.


tribuum, i, n. (tres, dies). The space of three days, three days, i. 26.

triremniionum, i, n. (tres, annus). The space of three years, three years, iv. 4.

trigēstum, a, um, num. adj. Thirtieth.

triginta, num. adj. indecl. Thirty.

trini, ac, a, num. adj. distr. (tres). Three by three, every three; three.

Trinobantes, ium, m. A people of Britain, in modern Essex, v. 20, 21.

tripartiō, adv. (tres, partio). In three divisions, v. 10.

triplex, tica, adj. (tres, pīcō, to fold). Threefold, triple, i. 24.

triquētrum, a, um, adj. Three-cornered, triangular, v. 13.

tristis, e, adj. Sad, sorrowful, rejected.

-tristitis, ae, f. (tristis). Sadness, dejection, sorrow.

truncus, i, m. A trunk or stock of a tree.

tu, tui, pers. pron. Thou.

tūba, ae, f. A trumpet.

tueor, ēri, ēturus or ēturus sum, v. dep. To see, look at, gaze at; to care for, maintain, preserve, defend, protect, vi. 34.

tōli. See Pāro.

Tulingi, ērum, m. A Germanic or Gallic people in Southern Germany or the northern part of Helvetia, i. 5, 25, 28, 29.

Tullius, i, m. See Cicero.

Tullus, i, m. See Volcātius.

tum, adv. Then, at that time; thereupon, moreover, furthermore; next, in the next place; and also; tum demum, then at length; sum ... tum etiam, not only ... but especially.

tūmultuor, ēri, ētum sum, v. dep. (tūmultus). To make a disturbance; to be in great uproar; to be in great tumult, vii. 61.

tūmultuō, adv. (tūmultus). With bustle or confusion, in great tumult, vi. 45.

tūmultus, us, m. (tūmoe, to swell). An uproar, bustle, disturbance, violent commotion; tūmultus servīlīs, an insurrection of the slaves, i. 40.

tūmulus, i, m. (tūmoe, to swell). A raised heap of earth, mound, hillock.

tunc, adv. (tum, ce). Then, at that time.

turma, ae, f. A division, squadron, a troop of horsemen of about thirty men, iv. 33.

Türōnes, um, and Tūrōnī, ērum, m. A people of Gallia Celtica, in the neighborhood of Tours, ii. 35; vii. 4, 75.

turpis, e, adj. Ugly, unsightly; unseemly; shameful, base, disgraceful, infamous, dishonorable.

turpiter, adv. (turpis). In an unseemly manner, shamefully, basely, dishonorably, disgracefully.

turpitūdō, tinis, f. (turpis). Disgrace, shame.

turris, i, f. 1) A tower. 2) A military tower for defence, used in protecting bridges, camps, etc. 3) A military tower for attack, used in sieges and assults. This was a high movable tower of wood, from the middle of which a bridge could be let down on the enemy's walls. It was stationed on the agger, and could be moved forward, as it stood on
wheels or rollers. Missiles were discharged from the upper stories, ii. 30; iii. 21.


tātus, a, um, adj. (tātus). Safe, secure; free from danger, protected.

tum, a, um, poss. pron. (tu). Thy, thine.

U.

ubi, adv. Where, in which place; when, after; as soon as, as; ubi primum, as soon as, iv. 12.

ubi-cumque, adv. Wherever, vii. 3.

ubiū, ūrum, m. A people of Germany, on the right bank of the Lower Rhine, in the vicinity of Cologne, i. 54; iv. 3, 8, 11, 16, 19; vi. 9, 10, 29.

ubiōque, adv. Anywhere, everywhere.

uliscor, ci, uliscum, v. dep. To avenge one’s self upon, take vengeance on; to punish, chastise.

ullus, a, um, gen. ullus, G. 151, adj. Any, any one.

ultior, us, gen. ēris, sup. ultimus, G. 186, adj. (ultor). Farther, on the farther side, beyond; the more remote, vii. 2.

ultimus, a, um, adj. sup. of ultior. The farthest, most distant, iii. 27; iv. 16; the last, v. 43.

ultra, adv. and prep. with acc. Beyond, farther, on the farther side of, past.

ultro, adv. To the farther side, beyond, on the other side; ulmo citroque, backwards and forwards, to and fro, hither and thither; besides, moreover, beyond; of one’s own accord, voluntarily, i. 42.

ulitus, a, um, part. from uliscor.

ūtilitās, ūs, m. (ūsilo, to howl). A howling, yelling; cries, shouts, v. 37.

ūna, adv. (ūnum). At the same time, together with, ii. 17; usually in connection with cum, i. 5, 17.

unde, adv. From which place, whence; often instead of a quo, a quibus, etc., i. 28; iii. 14.


undēcimus, a, um, num. adj. ord. (undecim). Eleventh.


undique, adv. (undē, que). From all parts, on all sides, everywhere.

Uænili, more properly written Venelli, ūrum, m. An Armoric people of Gallia Celtica, in the peninsula of Cotentin, Normandy, ii. 54; iii. 11, etc.

ūniversus, a, um, adj. (ūnum, verum). All, all taken collectively, whole, entire.

unquam, adv. (ūnum, quam). At any time, ever.

ūnus, a, um, num. adj. G. 151. One; one and the same; only, alone, merely; some one, a; ad unum omnes, all to a man, v. 37; the same; uno tempore, at the same time, ii. 19, 20; una aestate, in the same summer, i. 54.

urbānus, a, um, adj. (urbs). Of or relating to a city, esp. to Rome; urbanae res, affairs at Rome, vii. 6; urbano motu, disturbance in Rome, vii. 1.

urbs, urbis, f. A city, vii. 15; the city of Rome, i. 7; vi. 1.

urgeo, ēre, ursī, v. tr. To press upon, oppress; to drive, push back, press hard, ii. 25.

ūrus, i, m. A kind of wild ox, the European bison, vi. 23.

Usipētes, usum, m. A people of Germany, on the Rhine and the northern bank of the Lippe, iv. 1, 4, 16, 18; vi. 35.

ūsitātus, a, um, adj. (ūstor, ētor). Familiar, customary, common, vii. 22.

usque, adv. Even, as far as.

ūsus, a, um, part. from ētor.

ūsus, us, m. (ūtor). Use, practice, skill, experience; advantage, benefit, profit, i. 30, 38, 50; iii. 14; need, necessity; unus est, there is need, it is necessary, it becomes requisite, iv. 2; unus venire, to occur, happen, come to pass, vii. 9.
ut, pr ūtī, adv. As, just as, like, i. 16, 22; ii. 1; inasmuch as, as, iii. 8; v. 43; ut qui, as one who, like one who, v. 31; of time: when, as, after; ut semel, as soon as, when once, i. 31. Conj., that, in order that, ii. 1, 9; so that, so as to; though, although, iii. 9; after verbs of fearing: that not, G. 496, III. note 1.

ūter, ēra, ērum, gen. ētrius, G. 151, adj. Which of the two, which, i. 12; with uter or neuter, the other, v. 44.

ūter-que, trāque, trumque, G. 151, 4, adj. Each one of the two, both, each; uterque urique in conspectu, each in sight of the other, vii. 55; in utramque partem, in either direction, in either case, v. 29.

ūti. See Ut.

ūtīlis, e, adj. (ūtor). Useful, beneficial, advantageous, serviceable, profitable.

ūtīlitas, ātis, f. (ūtīlis). Usefulness, profit, advantage, service, benefit.

ūtor, ī ātus sum, v. dep. To use, make use of, avail one’s self of, employ, exercise, manage; to practise, adopt, show, manifest, cherish, have, i. 46; ii. 28.

ūtrīmque, adv. (ūterque). From or on both sides, on each side, i. 50.

ūtrum, adv. (ūter). Whether; in double questions followed by an or necne, G. 353, 1; i. 40, 80.

uxor, ĕris, f. A wife, spouse.

V.


vāco, āre, āvi, ātum, v. intr. To be unoccupied, to be uninhabited, i. 28; to lie waste, be uncultivated, iv. 3.

vācūsus, a, um, adj. (vāco). Empty, free from, stripped of, destitute of, vacant.

vādum, i, n. A ford; shallow place, shoal, iii. 13.

vāgīna, ae, f. A scabbard or sheath, v. 44.

vāgor, āri, ātus sum, v. dep. (vāgus, roaming). To wander about, stroll, roam around, i. 2.

Vāhālis, is, m. The Waal, the left arm of the Rhine, iv. 10.

vāleco, ēre, ēri, v. intr. To be strong or powerful, have strength or force; to avail, have weight or influence, be effectual.

Vālērius, i, m. 1) Gāius Vālērius Flaccus, a pro-praetor or governor of Gallia, 83 B. C., i. 47. 2) Lūcius Vālērius Praeconinus, a Roman commander in Gaul before Caesar’s time, iii. 20. 3) Gāius Vālērius Cabīrus, a Gaul who had been presented with the rights of Roman citizenship, i. 47; vii. 65. 4) Gāius Vālērius Prōcius, son of the preceding, a distinguished Gaal, and confidential friend of Caesar, i. 19, 47, 53. 5) Gāius Vālērius Donotaurus, a brother of the preceding, vii. 65.

Valetiācus, i, m. A distinguished Aeduan, brother of Cotus, vii. 32.

vālētūdo, ēnis, f. (vāleco). The state or condition of the body, health (good or bad); quam tenuissimā valeētūdinē esse, although he was in very feeble health, v. 40.

valles, or vallia, is, f. A valley, vale.

vallum, i, n. (vallus). A wall or rampart of earth, set with palisades, a wall of circumvallation, rampart, intrenchment, i. 28; ii. 6.

vallus, i, m. A stake, palisade, vii. 73.

Vangūiones, um, m. A Germanic people on the Rhine, near modern Worms, i. 51.

vāriētas, ātis, f. (vārius). Diversity, variety, difference.

vārius, a, um, adj. Diverse, manifold, various, changing, varying, ii. 22.

vasto, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (vāco). To lay waste, devastate, ravage, destroy.
vastus, a, um. adj. Vast, immense, enormous, very large.

Västicnähte, önis, f. (Västeor, to foretell). A foretelling, a prophetic response, i. 50.

ve, enclitic particle (vel). Or.

vectigal, älis, n. (vectus, väho). A tax, toll, impost; revenue, income.

vectigalis, e, adj. (vectigal). Taxable, tributary, iii. 8.

vectorius, a, um, adj. (väho). Suitable for carrying burdens; vectòrium navìgium, a transport ship, v. 8.

vēhìmenteer, vēhìmentius, vēhìmentìsìste, adv. (vēhìmens, violent). Violently, forcibly; exceedingly, very much, strongly, i. 37.

vēho, êre, esci, vectum, v. tr. To carry, convey.

vel, conj. Or, or indeed; even; vel... vel, either... or.

Veletius, i, m. Quintus, a military tribune in Caesar’s army, iii. 7, 8.

velium. See Velo.

Vellianodūnum, i, n. A town of the Senones in Gallia Celta, vii. 11, 14.

Vellâvi, örum, m. A people of Gallia Celta, in modern Velay, dependants of the Arverni, vii. 75.

Velocasses, ium, m. A people of Gallia Belgica. Their chief town was Rotomagus, now Rouen, ii. 4; vii. 75.

vellòcìsìste. See Velocter.

vellòctas, ödis, f. (velox). Swiftness, rapidity, speed, velocity.

vellöcter, vellöcius, vellöcìsìste, adv. (velox). Rapidly, quick, rapid, i. 48.

vēlum, i, n. (for vēhâlam, from väho). A sail.

vēl-at, adv. As, just as, as though; velut si, just as if, i. 32.

vēnätio, önis, f. (vēnor, to hunt). Hunting, the chase.

vēnätor, öris, m. (vēnor, to hunt). A hunter.

vendo, ëre, dēdi, dētum, v. tr. (vēnum, a sale, ëo). To sell, expose for sale, ii. 33.

Vënëti, örum, m. An Armoric people of Gallia Celtica, ii. 34; iii. 7, 8, 9, 11, etc.

Venelli, örum, m. See Unelli.

Venëtia, ae, f. The country of the Veneti, in Gallia Celta, iii. 9.

Vënëticus, a, um, adj. (Vënëtia). Of or pertaining to the Veneti, Venetian, iii. 18; iv. 21.

vënia, ae, f. Indulgence, favor, kindness, forbearance, forgiveness, pardon.

vënio, ëre, ceni, ventum, v. intr. To come, arrive at; to come into, enter into, fall into; to occur, happen; in spem venire, to indulge, cherish the hope; in údum ac potestatem venire, to submit to one’s protection and power, i. e., to make an unconditional surrender, ii. 13. Caesar often uses the pass. imper. construction, ubi co ventum est, i. 43.

ventito, ëre, ëvi, ëtum, v. intr. (freq. of vënio). To come often, resort to frequently, iv. 3.

ventus, i, m. The wind; quo vëntus ferrebat, where the wind was blowing, iii. 15; vento se dârê, to run before the wind, iii. 13.

ver, cēris, n. The spring.

Verägri, örum, m. A people of Gallia Belgica, on the Pennine Alps, near the borders of Italy, perhaps in the valley of the Drance, iii. 1, 2.

Verbugèmnus, i, m. One of the four cantons of Helvetia, i. 27.

verbùm, i, n. A word. Plur., words, expression, language, discourse, conversation.

Vercassivelloaunus, i, m. A chief of the Arverni, cousin of Vercingetorix, vii. 76, 83, 85, 88.

Vercingetorix, tgis, m. One of the Arverni, son of Cetillus, and commander of the Gauls, vii. 4, 8, 9, 12, 14, sq., 20, 28, etc., 89.

vëreor, ëri, ëtus sum, v. dep. To stand in awe of; to respect; to fear, dread, be afraid of.

vergo, âre, —, v. intr. To incline, turn towards, tend; to lie, be situated towards, i. 1; ii. 18.
Vergobretus, i, m. (a Celtic word). The title of the chief magistrate among the Aedui, i. 16.


Vēritis, a, um, part. from vēreo.

Vēro, adv. and conj. (vērus). In truth, truly, assuredly, in fact; but in fact, but indeed, however.

Veromandui, ūrum, m. A people of Gallia Belgica. Their chief town was Augusta Veromanduorum, now St. Quen tin, on the Somme, ii. 4, 16, 23.

Vērso, āre, āri, ātum, v. tr. (freq. of vērto). To turn often; to place in violent motion; sic fortuna utrumque versavi, fortune so directed or treated each in turn, v. 44.

Vērsor, āri, ātos sum, v. dep. (verso). To move about in a place; to frequent, dwell, live, be; to occupy one’s self with, be engaged in, be busy.

Vērsum, us, m. (vērto). A verse, line.

Vērsus, adv. (vērto). Towards; in connection with a prep., ad oceanum versus, towards the ocean, vi. 33.

Vērtico, ōnis, m. One of the Nervii, v. 45, 49.

Vērtō, ēre, ēi, ēnum, v. tr. and intr. To turn, turn around or about; terga vertere, to turn one’s back, take to flight, flee. Intr. to change, turn around.

Verudoctus, i, m. A messenger of the Helvetii, sent to Caesar, i. 7.

Vērus, a, um, adj. True, actual, real, i. 18; right, reasonable, consistent, iv. 8.

Vērūtum, i, n. (vēru, a spit). A dart, javelin, v. 44.

Vesontio, ōnis, m. A town of the Scauni, in Gallia Belgica, now Besançon, i. 38, 39.

Vesper, ēris, and vespērus, i, m. The evening star; the evening; sub vesperum, towards evening, ii. 33.

Vester, tra, trum, poss. pron. (vēsae). Your, yours.

Vestigiurn, i, n. A footstep, footprint, track, trace, vi. 27; spot, place, iv. 2; moment, point, iv. 5; a vestigio, on the spot, forthwith.

Vestio, ēre, ēi or i, ētum, v. tr. (vestis). To clothe; to cover over, vii. 23.

Vestis, i, f. Clothing, garments.

Vestitus, us, m. (vestio). Clothing, dress, garment.

Vētrānus, a, um, adj. (vētus). Old, tried, practised, veteran.

Vēto, āre, us, ētum, v. tr. To forbid, not to permit; to prohibit, prevent.

Vētus, ēris, adj. Old, long standing, ancient.

Vexillum, i, n. (vēko). A military ensign, standard, flag, vi. 36; a large banner or flag placed on the general’s tent as a signal to prepare for action, ii. 20. See 78.

Vexo, āre, ēri, ētum, v. tr. (freq. of vēko). To disturb, annoy, vex, trouble, molest, harass.

Via, ae, f. A way, road, passage; a march, journey; a passage or lane in a camp, v. 49.

Viātor, ōris, m. (via). A traveller.

Vicēni, ae, a, num. adj. distrib. (vēginti). Twenty each, twenty.

Vicusimius, a, um, num. adj. ord. (vīginti). Twentieth.


Vicīnitas, ētis, f. (vicinus, near.) The nearness, neighborhood, proximity; concrete, the neighbors, vi. 34.

Vicis, gen.; from obs. vix, f. Succession, change; in vicem, by turn, alternately, one after the other.

Victima, ae, f. (vico, to bind.) A beast for sacrifice, sacrifice, victim, vi. 16.

Victor, ōris, m. (vincio). A conqueror. Adj., victorious, i. 31; vii. 20.

Victoria, ae, f. (victor). Victory.

Victus, us, m. (vico). That which supports life, sustenance, provisions, nourishment, vi. 22; the way of life, mode of living, i. 31.

Vicus, i, m. A village, hamlet.
video, āre, ēdi, visum, v. tr. To see, behold, observe, look at, perceive; to understand, comprehend, learn.

videor, ēri, visum sum, v. pass. and dep. To be seen; to seem, appear; to seem good, seem proper or convenient, v. 36.

Vieja, ae, f. A town of the Allobroges, in Gallia Narbonensis, now Vienne, vil. 9.

vigilia, ae, f. (vigil, a watch). A keeping awake, wakefulness, sleeplessness, v. 31; a watching, watch, guard; the time of keeping guard or watch. The Romans divided the night, i. e., from sunset to sunrise, into four vigiliae, which varied in length according to the season of the year; the third watch began at midnight, i. 12, 40.

viginti, num. adj. indecl. Twenty.

vinum, īnis, n. (vico, to bind). A twig, a plant branch or vine, osier.

vincio, īre, īxi, victum, v. tr. To bind, i. 53.

vinco, ēre, ēsci, victum, v. tr. and intr. To conquer, gain the victory, prove superior to, subdue, vanquish, overcome; to prevail, have one's will or way, v. 30.

vincitus, a, um, part. from vincio.

vinculum, i. n. (vincio). A bond, fetters; in vincula coniicere, to throw into prison, i. i. 9; ex vinculis, in chains, i. 4.

vindico, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (vim, dēco). To lay claim to; to demand, assert, maintain, vil. 76; to free, liberate, deliver, restore; Gallium in libertatem vindicare, to set Gaul free, vil. 1; to avenge, revenge, punish, take vengeance upon, in aliquem, iii. 16.

vīna, ae, f. A kind of shed or mantlet, built like an arbor, for sheltering or protecting soldiers in their work, ii. 12, 30.

vinum, i. n. Wine.

vīdio, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (vis). To treat with violence; to injure, do violence to; to harm, vi. 23; to devastate, lay waste, vi. 32.

vir, vīri, m. A man; husband; a man of distinction, courage, or honor.

vīres, īum. See Vis.

virgo, ēnis, f. (vīreo, to flourish). A maid, maiden, virgin.

virgultum, i. n. Bush, brushtwood, ill. 18.

Viridomārnus, i. m. A chief of the Aeduli, vii. 38, 39, 40, 54, 55, 63, 76.

Viridōvix, vīcis, m. A chief of the Unelli, ill. 17, 18.

virītim, adv. (vir). Man by man, to each one separately, vil. 71.

vīrtus, ēnis, f. (vīr). Manliness; strength, power; courage, valor, bravery; goodness, worth, merit; excellency; energy, vigor, fortitude.

vis, vis, f. Power, strength, force; violence, hostile strength; vigor, energy; effect, influence, iv. 17; multitude, quantity, vi. 36; plur., vīres, īum, power, strength, might, force, i. 53.

visus, a, um, part. from vīdeo.

vīta, ae, f. (for victa, from vīco). Life.

vīto, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. To shun, avoid, seek to escape; to escape, evade.

vītrum, i. n. A plant used for dyeing blue, woad, v. 14.

vīvo, ēre, vīxi, viectum, v. intr. To live; to subsist on, nourish one's self with, support life, live upon, iv. 1, 10.

vīvus, a, um, adj. (vīco). Living, alive.

vīx, adv. With difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely.

Vocātes, īum, m. A people of Aquitania, south of the Garumna (Garonne), ill. 23, 27.

vōco, āre, āvi, ātum, v. tr. (vox). To call, summon, call upon; to invite, incite, summon, demand, vii. 32; to name, designate, v. 21.

Vocontii, ōrum, m. A people of Gallia Narbonensis, between the rivers Isāra (Isère) and Druentia (Durance), in the south-eastern part of Danphine, i. 10.

Vocatio, ōnis, m. A king of Noircum, i. 53.
VOLCAE — VULTUS

Volcae, ārum, m. A numerous people of Gallia Narbonensis or Provincia, divided into, 1) Volcae Arscosaei, from the Rhone to Narbo; chief town Nemausus, now Nîmes, vii. 7, 64; 2) Volcae Tectosages, from Narbo to the Pyrenees; chief town Tolosa, now Toulouse, vi. 24.

Volcatius, i, m. Gaius Volcatius Tullus, a young man to whom Caesar intrusted the guard of his bridge over the Rhine, vi. 29.

vōlo, velle, vōlui, v. irreg. To wish, desire; to purpose, intend, be disposed.

vōluntārius, a, um, adj. (vōlo). Voluntary, willing. Subs., a volunteer, v. 56.

vōluntas, ātis, f. (vōlo). Will, wish, choice, desire, inclination; consent, concurrence, approbation; good will, favor, affection.

vōluptas, ātis, f. (vōlo). Satisfaction, pleasure, joy, delight.

Volusēnus, i. Gaius Volusēnus Quadrātus, a military tribune, afterwards commander of the cavalry in Caesar's army, iii. 5; iv. 21, 23; vi. 41.

Verēnus, i, m. Lūcius, a brave centurion in Caesar's army, v. 44.

Vōsēgus, i, m. A chain of mountains in Gaul, now the Vosges, iv. 10.

vōveo, ēre, ēvī, vōvum, v. tr. To vow; to promise solemnly, vi. 16.

vox, vōcis, f. A voice, sound, call, cry; word, i. 32. Plur., expressions, reports, sayings, language, words, i. 39.

Vulcānus, i, m. Vulcan, the son of Jupiter and Juno; the god of fire, vi. 21.

vulgo, adv. (vulgus). Generally, everywhere, universally, here and there, i. 39.

vulgus, i, n., rarely m. The great mass, the multitude, the common people; a crowd, throng.

vulnērātus, a, um, part. from vulnēro. Wounded, v. 40.

vulnēro, ēre, ēri, ērum, v. tr. (vulnus). To wound, hurt, injure.

vulnus, ēris, n. A wound, an injury.

vultus, w, m. An expression of countenance, the looks, air, mien, aspect, features; vultum fingere, to control or command the countenance, i. 39.
STANDARD LATIN SERIES.

Harkness's Standard Latin Grammar.
"The most complete, philosophical, and attractive Grammar ever written." Adapted to all grades. 12mo. Introduction price, $1.12.

Harkness's New Latin Reader.
Especially adapted for use with the "Standard Latin Grammar." 12mo. Introduction price, 87 cents.

Harkness's Complete Course in Latin for the First Year.
Comprising an Outline of Latin Grammar and Progressive Exercises in Reading and Writing Latin, with Frequent Practice in Reading at Sight. Designed to serve as a complete introductory book in Latin—no grammar being required. 12mo. Introduction price, $1.12.

Harkness's Cæsar's Commentaries.

Harkness's Cicero's Orations.
With full Notes, Vocabulary, etc. 12mo. Introduction price, $1.22.

Harkness's Course of Latin Prose Authors.

Frieze's Editions of Vergil.
THE ÆNEID, with Notes only. 12mo. $1.40.
THE ÆNEID, with Notes and Dictionary. 12mo. $1.30.
SIX BOOKS OF THE ÆNEID, GEORGICS, AND BUCOLICS, with Notes and Dictionary. 12mo. $1.30.
VERGIL COMPLETE, with Notes and Dictionary. 12mo. $1.60.


(See next page.)
STANDARD LATIN SERIES—Continued.

Cornelius Nepos.
Prepared expressly for the Use of Students Learning to Read at Sight. With Notes, Vocabulary, Index of Proper Names, and Exercises for Translation into Latin. Illustrated by numerous Cuts. By Thomas B. Lindsay, Ph.D., Professor of Latin in the Boston University. 12mo. Introduction price, $1.22.
The Same, for Sight-Reading in Schools and Colleges, with English-Latin Exercises and Index of Proper Names. By Thomas B. Lindsay. 12mo. Introduction price, $1.00.

Selections from the Poems of Ovid.
With Notes. By J. L. Lincoln, LL.D., Professor of Latin in Brown University. The text is very carefully annotated and references made to Harkness's Standard Grammar. 12mo. Introduction price, $1.00.
The Same. With Notes and Vocabulary. 12mo. Introduction price, $1.22.

Livy.
Selections from the First Five Books, together with the Twenty-first and Twenty-second Books entire; with a Plan of Rome, a Map of the Passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the Use of Schools. By J. L. Lincoln, LL.D. 12mo. Introduction price, $1.22.

Horace.
With English Notes, for the Use of Schools and Colleges. By J. L. Lincoln, LL.D. 12mo. Introduction price, $1.22.

Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline.
With Notes and a Vocabulary. By Noble Butler and Minard Sturgus. 12mo. Introduction price, $1.22.

Germania and Agricola of Tacitus.
With Notes, for Colleges. By W. S. Tyler, Professor of the Greek and Latin Languages in Amherst College. 12mo. Introduction price, 87 cents.

Mailed, post-paid, for examination, at introduction prices. Send for full descriptive circulars.

D. APPLETON & CO., Publishers,
New York, Boston, Chicago, Atlanta, San Francisco